

ng-book 2

The Complete Book on Angular 2



Nate Murray
Felipe Coury
Ari Lerner
Carlos Taborda

ng-book 2

The Complete Guide to Angular

Written by Nate Murray, Felipe Coury, Ari Lerner, and Carlos Taborda

© 2017 Fullstack.io

All rights reserved. No portion of the book manuscript may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means beyond the number of purchased copies, except for a single backup or archival copy. The code may be used freely in your projects, commercial or otherwise.

The authors and publisher have taken care in preparation of this book, but make no expressed or implied warranty of any kind and assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. No liability is assumed for incidental or consequential damages in connection with or arising out of the use of the information or programs container herein.

Typeset using Leanpub.

Published in San Francisco, California by Fullstack.io.



We'd like to thank:

- Our technical editor Frode Fikke
- Nic Raboy, and Burke Holland for contributing the NativeScript chapter

Contents

Book Revision	1
Bug Reports	1
Chat With The Community!	1
Be notified of updates via Twitter	1
We'd love to hear from you!	1
How to Read This Book	3
Running Code Examples	3
Code Blocks and Context	4
Getting Help	4
Emailing Us	5
Technical Support Response Time	5
Chapter Overview	6
Writing Your First Angular Web Application	1
Simple Reddit Clone	1
Getting started	4
Node.js and npm	4
TypeScript	4
Browser	4
Special instruction for Windows users	5
Ensure IIS is installed (Windows)	5
angular-cli	5
Example Project	6
Writing Application Code	10
Running the application	10
Making a Component	12
Importing Dependencies	13
Component Annotations	14
Adding a template with templateUrl	14
Adding a template	15
Adding CSS Styles with styleUrls	15
Loading Our Component	16
Adding Data to the Component	17

CONTENTS

Working With Arrays	20
Using the User Item Component	23
Rendering the UserItemComponent	24
Accepting Inputs	25
Passing an Input value	26
Bootstrapping Crash Course	27
declarations	29
imports	29
bootstrap	29
Expanding our Application	29
Adding CSS	31
The Application Component	31
Adding Interaction	33
Adding the Article Component	37
Rendering Multiple Rows	46
Creating an Article class	46
Storing Multiple Articles	51
Configuring the ArticleComponent with inputs	52
Rendering a List of Articles	53
Adding New Articles	55
Finishing Touches	56
Displaying the Article Domain	56
Re-sorting Based on Score	57
Deployment	58
Building Our App for Production	58
Uploading to a Server	59
Installing now	59
Full Code Listing	60
Wrapping Up	60
Getting Help	61
TypeScript	62
Angular 2 is built in TypeScript	62
What do we get with TypeScript?	63
Types	64
Trying it out with a REPL	65
Built-in types	66
Classes	68
Properties	68
Methods	69
Constructors	71
Inheritance	72
Utilities	74

CONTENTS

Fat Arrow Functions	74
Template Strings	76
Wrapping up	77
How Angular Works	78
Application	78
The Navigation Component	79
The Breadcrumbs Component	79
The Product List Component	80
How to Use This Chapter	82
Product Model	83
Components	84
Component Annotation	86
Component selector	86
Component template	86
Adding A Product	87
Viewing the Product with Template Binding	89
Adding More Products	89
Selecting a Product	91
Listing products using <products-list>	91
The ProductsListComponent	94
Configuring the ProductsListComponent @Component Options	94
Component inputs	95
Component outputs	99
Emitting Custom Events	100
Writing the ProductsListComponent Controller Class	102
Writing the ProductsListComponent View Template	103
The Full ProductsListComponent Component	104
The ProductRowComponent Component	106
ProductRowComponent Component Configuration	107
ProductRowComponent Component Definition Class	108
ProductRowComponent template	108
ProductRowComponent Full Listing	109
The ProductImageComponent Component	109
The PriceDisplayComponent Component	110
The ProductDepartmentComponent Component	111
NgModule and Booting the App	112
Booting the app	113
The Completed Project	114
Deploying the App	115
A Word on Data Architecture	115
Built-in Directives	117

CONTENTS

Introduction	117
NgIf	117
NgSwitch	118
NgStyle	120
NgClass	123
NgFor	126
Getting an index	130
NgNonBindable	131
Conclusion	132
Forms in Angular 2	133
Forms are Crucial, Forms are Complex	133
FormControls and FormGroups	133
FormControl	133
FormGroup	134
Our First Form	135
Loading the FormsModule	136
Simple SKU Form: @Component Annotation	137
Simple SKU Form: template	137
Simple SKU Form: Component Definition Class	141
Try it out!	141
Using FormBuilder	143
Reactive Forms with FormBuilder	144
Using FormBuilder	144
Using myForm in the view	145
Try it out!	146
Adding Validations	147
Explicitly setting the sku FormControl as an instance variable	149
Custom Validations	154
Watching For Changes	155
ngModel	157
Wrapping Up	159
HTTP	160
Introduction	160
Using @angular/http	161
import from @angular/http	161
A Basic Request	162
Building the SimpleHTTPComponent @Component	163
Building the SimpleHTTPComponent template	163
Building the SimpleHTTPComponent Controller	164
Full SimpleHTTPComponent	166
Writing a YouTubeSearchComponent	167

CONTENTS

Writing a SearchResult	169
Writing the YouTubeService	169
Writing the SearchBox	178
Writing SearchResultComponent	185
Writing YouTubeSearchComponent	186
@angular/http API	190
Making a POST request	190
PUT / PATCH / DELETE / HEAD	190
RequestOptions	191
Summary	192
Routing	193
Why Do We Need Routing?	193
How client-side routing works	194
The beginning: using anchor tags	195
The evolution: HTML5 client-side routing	195
Writing our first routes	196
Components of Angular 2 routing	196
Imports	196
Routes	197
Installing our Routes	198
RouterOutlet using <router-outlet>	199
RouterLink using [routerLink]	200
Putting it all together	201
Creating the Components	203
HomeComponent	203
AboutComponent	203
ContactComponent	203
Application Component	204
Configuring the Routes	206
Routing Strategies	207
Path location strategy	208
Running the application	209
Route Parameters	211
ActivatedRoute	212
Music Search App	213
First Steps	215
The SpotifyService	216
The SearchComponent	217
Trying the search	227
TrackComponent	229
Wrapping up music search	231
Router Hooks	231

CONTENTS

AuthService	232
LoginComponent	233
ProtectedComponent and Route Guards	235
Nested Routes	241
Configuring Routes	242
ProductsComponent	242
Summary	247
Dependency Injection	248
Injections Example: PriceService	249
“Don’t Call Us...”	251
Dependency Injection Parts	253
Playing with an Injector	254
Providing Dependencies with NgModule	256
Providers	257
Using a Class	257
Using a Factory	258
Using a Value	260
Using an alias	260
Dependency Injection in Apps	260
Working with Injectors	262
Substituting values	269
NgModule	273
NgModule vs. JavaScript Modules	273
The Compiler and Components	274
Dependency Injection and Providers	274
Component Visibility	275
Specifying Providers	277
Conclusion	278
Data Architecture in Angular 2	279
An Overview of Data Architecture	279
Data Architecture in Angular 2	280
Data Architecture with Observables - Part 1: Services	281
Observables and RxJS	281
Note: Some RxJS Knowledge Required	281
Learning Reactive Programming and RxJS	281
Chat App Overview	283
Components	284
Models	285
Services	286
Summary	286

CONTENTS

Implementing the Models	287
User	287
Thread	287
Message	288
Implementing UserService	288
currentUser stream	289
Setting a new user	290
UserService.ts	291
The MessagesService	292
the newMessages stream	292
the messages stream	294
The Operation Stream Pattern	294
Sharing the Stream	296
Adding Messages to the messages Stream	297
Our completed MessagesService	300
Trying out MessagesService	303
The ThreadsService	305
A map of the current set of Threads (in threads)	305
A chronological list of Threads, newest-first (in orderedThreads)	310
The currently selected Thread (in currentThread)	310
The list of Messages for the currently selected Thread (in currentThreadMessages)	312
Our Completed ThreadsService	315
Data Model Summary	317
Data Architecture with Observables - Part 2: View Components	318
Building Our Views: The ChatApp Top-Level Component	318
The ChatThreads Component	321
ChatThreads Controller	321
ChatThreads template	322
The Single ChatThread Component	323
ChatThread Controller and ngOnInit	324
ChatThread template	325
ChatThread Complete Code	326
The ChatWindow Component	327
The ChatMessage Component	337
Setting incoming	338
The ChatMessage template	339
The Complete ChatMessage Code Listing	340
The ChatNavBar Component	345
The ChatNavBar @Component	345
The ChatNavBar Controller	345
The ChatNavBar template	347
The Completed ChatNavBar	347

CONTENTS

Summary	349
Next Steps	350
Introduction to Redux with TypeScript	351
Redux	352
Redux: Key Ideas	352
Core Redux Ideas	353
What's a <i>reducer</i> ?	353
Defining Action and Reducer Interfaces	354
Creating Our First Reducer	355
Running Our First Reducer	355
Adjusting the Counter With <i>actions</i>	356
Reducer <i>switch</i>	357
Action "Arguments"	359
Storing Our State	360
Using the Store	361
Being Notified with <i>subscribe</i>	361
The Core of Redux	365
A Messaging App	366
Messaging App state	366
Messaging App actions	367
Messaging App reducer	368
Trying Out Our Actions	371
Action Creators	372
Using Real Redux	374
Using Redux in Angular	376
Planning Our App	377
Setting Up Redux	377
Defining the Application State	378
Defining the Reducers	378
Defining Action Creators	379
Creating the Store	379
CounterApp Component	381
Providing the Store	382
Bootstrapping the App	383
The CounterComponent	384
imports	384
The template	384
The constructor	386
Putting It All Together	387
What's Next	389
References	390

CONTENTS

Intermediate Redux in Angular	391
Context For This Chapter	391
Chat App Overview	392
Components	393
Models	393
Reducers	394
Summary	394
Implementing the Models	395
User	395
Thread	395
Message	396
App State	396
A Word on Code Layout	397
The Root Reducer	397
The UsersState	398
The ThreadsState	398
Visualizing Our AppState	400
Building the Reducers (and Action Creators)	401
Set Current User Action Creators	401
UsersReducer - Set Current User	402
Thread and Messages Overview	403
Adding a New Thread Action Creators	403
Adding a New Thread Reducer	404
Adding New Messages Action Creators	405
Adding A New Message Reducer	406
Selecting A Thread Action Creators	408
Selecting A Thread Reducer	409
Reducers Summary	410
Building the Angular Chat App	410
The top-level ChatApp	412
The ChatPage	413
Container vs. Presentational Components	414
Building the ChatNavBar	415
Redux Selectors	417
Threads Selectors	418
Unread Messages Count Selector	419
Building the ChatThreads Component	420
ChatThreads Controller	421
ChatThreads template	422
The Single ChatThread Component	423
ChatThread @Component and template	424
Building the ChatWindow Component	425

CONTENTS

The ChatMessage Component	433
Setting incoming	433
The ChatMessage template	434
Summary	435
Advanced Components	437
Styling	437
View (Style) Encapsulation	439
Shadow DOM Encapsulation	443
No Encapsulation	445
Creating a Popup - Referencing and Modifying Host Elements	448
Popup Structure	448
Using ElementRef	450
Binding to the host	452
Adding a Button using exportAs	455
Creating a Message Pane with Content Projection	457
Changing the host CSS	458
Using ng-content	458
Querying Neighbor Directives - Writing Tabs	460
Tab Component	461
Tabset Component	461
Using the Tabset	463
Lifecycle Hooks	465
OnInit and OnDestroy	466
OnChanges	470
DoCheck	476
AfterContentInit, AfterViewInit, AfterContentChecked and AfterViewChecked	488
Advanced Templates	496
Rewriting ngIf - ngBookIf	497
Rewriting ngFor - ngBookRepeat	499
Change Detection	505
Customizing Change Detection	509
Zones	516
Observables and OnPush	517
Summary	521
Testing	522
Test driven?	522
End-to-end vs. Unit Testing	522
Testing Tools	523
Jasmine	523
Karma	524
Writing Unit Tests	524

CONTENTS

Angular Unit testing framework	524
Setting Up Testing	525
Testing Services and HTTP	528
HTTP Considerations	529
Stubs	529
Mocks	530
Http MockBackend	531
TestBed.configureTestingModule and Providers	531
Testing getTrack	532
Testing Routing to Components	538
Creating a Router for Testing	539
Mocking dependencies	542
Spies	542
Back to Testing Code	545
fakeAsync and advance	547
inject	548
Testing ArtistComponent's Initialization	548
Testing ArtistComponent Methods	550
Testing ArtistComponent DOM Template Values	551
Testing Forms	554
Creating a ConsoleSpy	556
Installing the ConsoleSpy	557
Configuring the Testing Module	558
Testing The Form	558
Refactoring Our Form Test	561
Testing HTTP requests	564
Testing a POST	565
Testing DELETE	566
Testing HTTP Headers	567
Testing YouTubeService	569
Conclusion	575
Converting an Angular 1 App to Angular 2	576
Peripheral Concepts	576
What We're Building	577
Mapping Angular 1 to Angular 2	578
Requirements for Interoperability	580
The Angular 1 App	580
The ng1-app HTML	582
Code Overview	583
ng1: PinsService	583
ng1: Configuring Routes	585
ng1: HomeController	586

CONTENTS

ng1: / HomeController template	586
ng1: pin Directive	587
ng1: pin Directive template	587
ng1: AddController	589
ng1: AddController template	591
ng1: Summary	594
Building A Hybrid	594
Hybrid Project Structure	594
Bootstrapping our Hybrid App	599
What We'll Upgrade	600
A Minor Detour: Typing Files	603
Writing ng2 PinControlsComponent	609
Using ng2 PinControlsComponent	610
Downgrading ng2 PinControlsComponent to ng1	611
Adding Pins with ng2	613
Upgrading ng1 PinsService and \$state to ng2	615
Writing ng2 AddPinComponent	616
Using AddPinComponent	622
Exposing an ng2 service to ng1	622
Writing the AnalyticsService	623
Downgrade ng2 AnalyticsService to ng1	623
Using AnalyticsService in ng1	624
Summary	625
References	626
 NativeScript: Mobile Applications for the Angular Developer	627
What is NativeScript?	627
Where NativeScript Differs from Other Popular Frameworks	628
What are the System and Development Requirements for NativeScript?	629
Creating your First Mobile Application with NativeScript and Angular	631
Adding Build Platforms for Cross Platform Deployment	631
Building and Testing for Android and iOS	631
Installing JavaScript, Android, and iOS Plugins and Packages	632
Understanding the Web to NativeScript UI and UX Differences	633
Planning the NativeScript Page Layout	633
Adding UI Components to the Page	635
Styling Components with CSS	636
Developing a Geolocation Based Photo Application	637
Creating a Fresh NativeScript Project	638
Creating a Multiple Page Master-Detail Interface	639
Creating a Flickr Service for Obtaining Photos and Data	643
Creating a Service for Calculating Device Location and Distance	648
Including Mapbox Functionality in the NativeScript Application	652

CONTENTS

Implementing the First Page of the Geolocation Application	653
Implementing the Second Page of the Geolocation Application	659
Try it out!	660
NativeScript for Angular Developers	661
Changelog	662
Revision 53 - 2017-03-01	662
Revision 52 - 2017-02-22	662
Revision 51 - 2017-02-14	662
Revision 50 - 2017-02-10	662
Revision 49 - 2017-01-18	662
Revision 48 - 2017-01-13	662
Revision 47 - 2017-01-06	663
Revision 46 - 2017-01-03	663
Revision 45 - 2016-12-05	663
Revision 44 - 2016-11-17	663
Revision 43 - 2016-11-08	663
Revision 42 - 2016-10-14	664
Revision 41 - 2016-09-28	664
Revision 40 - 2016-09-20	664
Revision 39 - 2016-09-03	664
Revision 38 - 2016-08-29	664
Revision 37 - 2016-08-02	665
Revision 36 - 2016-07-20	665
Revision 35 - 2016-06-30	665
Revision 34 - 2016-06-15	665
Revision 33 - 2016-05-11	665
Revision 32 - 2016-05-06	665
Revision 31 - 2016-04-28	666
Revision 30 - 2016-04-20	666
Revision 29 - 2016-04-08	666
Revision 28 - 2016-04-01	666
Revision 27 - 2016-03-25	667
Revision 26 - 2016-03-24	667
Revision 25 - 2016-03-21	667
Revision 24 - 2016-03-10	667
Revision 23 - 2016-03-04	667
Revision 22 - 2016-02-24	668
Revision 21 - 2016-02-20	668
Revision 20 - 2016-02-11	668
Revision 19 - 2016-02-04	668
Revision 18 - 2016-01-29	668
Revision 17 - 2016-01-28	668

CONTENTS

Revision 16 - 2016-01-14	669
Revision 15 - 2016-01-07	669
Revision 14 - 2015-12-23	669
Revision 13 - 2015-12-17	670
Revision 12 - 2015-11-16	670
Revision 11 - 2015-11-09	670
Revision 10 - 2015-10-30	671
Revision 9 - 2015-10-15	671
Revision 8 - 2015-10-08	672
Revision 7 - 2015-09-23	672
Revision 6 - 2015-08-28	672
Revision 5	672
Revision 4	672
Revision 3	673
Revision 2	673
Revision 1	673

Book Revision

Revision 53 - Covers up to Angular 2 (2.4.8, 2017-03-01)

Bug Reports

If you'd like to report any bugs, typos, or suggestions just email us at: us@fullstack.io¹.

Chat With The Community!

We're experimenting with a community chat room for this book using Gitter. If you'd like to hang out with other people learning Angular 2, come [join us on Gitter](https://gitter.im/ng-book/ng-book)²!

Be notified of updates via Twitter

If you'd like to be notified of updates to the book on Twitter, [follow @fullstackio](#)³

We'd love to hear from you!

Did you like the book? Did you find it helpful? We'd love to add your face to our list of testimonials on the website! Email us at: us@fullstack.io⁴.

¹<mailto:us@fullstack.io?Subject=ng-book%202%20feedback>

²<https://gitter.im/ng-book/ng-book>

³<https://twitter.com/fullstackio>

⁴<mailto:us@fullstack.io?Subject=ng-book%202%20testimonial>



Considering Angular.JS for your next project?

- Using Angular for your Internal Tools on top of an existing API?
- Building a modern single page app, cross-device mobile app?
- Having issues implementing Angular on Rails?
- Need a project that needs to be rescued?

You don't have to do it alone, we - **the authors of ng-book can help.**

We can help you:

- Build your next MVP
- Testing and Code Coverage
- Implement Build and Deployment automation
- We support Rails, Backbone.JS, React.JS and others.

We offer a free 30min discussion where we can help you identify if you might need our assistance either doing consulting, engineering or training your team in Angular.JS.

[Request Free Consultation](#)

Get in touch with carlos@ng-book.com or <http://ng-book.com/consulting>

How to Read This Book

This book aims to be the single most useful resource on learning Angular. By the time you’re done reading this book, you (and your team) will have everything you need to build reliable, powerful Angular apps.

Angular is a rich and feature-filled framework, but that also means it can be tricky to understand all of its parts. In this book, we’ll walk through everything from installing the tools, writing components, using forms, routing between pages, and calling APIs.

But before we dig in, there are a few guidelines I want to give you **in order to get the most out of this book**. Briefly, I want to tell you:

- how to approach **the code examples** and
- how to get help if something goes wrong

Running Code Examples

This book comes with a library of runnable code examples. The code is available to download from the same place where you downloaded this book.

We use the program `npm`⁶ to run **every example** in this book. This means you can type the following commands to run any example:

```
1 npm install
2 npm run go
```



If you’re unfamiliar with `npm`, we cover how to get it installed in the [Getting Started](#) section in the first chapter.

After running `npm run go`, you will see some output on your screen that will tell you what URL to open to view your app.

If you’re ever unclear on how to run a particular sample app, checkout the `README.md` in that project’s directory. Every sample project contains a `README.md` that will give you the instructions you need to run each app.

⁶<https://www.npmjs.com/>

Code Blocks and Context

Nearly every code block in this book is pulled from a **runnable code example**, which you can find in the sample code. For example, here is a code block pulled from the first chapter:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.ts

```
8 export class AppComponent {  
9   title = 'app works!';  
10 }
```

Notice that the header of this code block states the path to the file which contains this code: `code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.ts`.

If you ever feel like you’re missing the context for a code example, open up the full code file using your favorite text editor. **This book is written with the expectation that you’ll also be looking at the example code alongside the manuscript.**

For example, we often need to `import` libraries to get our code to run. In the early chapters of the book we show these `import` statements, because it’s not clear where the libraries are coming from otherwise. However, the later chapters of the book are more advanced and they focus on *key concepts* instead of repeating boilerplate code that was covered earlier in the book. **If at any point you’re not clear on the context, open up the code example on disk.**

Getting Help

While we’ve made every effort to be clear, precise, and accurate you may find that when you’re writing your code you run into a problem.

Generally, there are three types of problems:

- A “bug” in the book (e.g. how we describe something is wrong)
- A “bug” in our code
- A “bug” in your code

If you find an inaccuracy in how we describe something, or you feel a concept isn’t clear, [email us!](#) We want to make sure that the book is both accurate and clear.

Similarly, if you’ve found a bug in our *code* we definitely [want to hear about it](#).

If you’re having trouble getting your own app working (and it isn’t *our* example code), this case is a bit harder for us to handle.

Your first line of defense, when getting help with your custom app, should be our [unofficial community chat room](#)⁷. We (the authors) are there from time-to-time, but there are hundreds of other readers there who may be able to help you faster than we can.

If you're still stuck, we'd still love to hear from you, and here some tips for getting a clear, timely response.

Emailing Us

If you're emailing us asking for technical help, here's what we'd like to know:

- What [revision of the book](#) are you referring to?
- What operating system are you on? (e.g. Mac OS X 10.8, Windows 95)
- Which chapter and which example project are you on?
- What were you trying to accomplish?
- [What have you tried](#)⁸ already?
- What output did you expect?
- What actually happened? (Including relevant log output.)

The **absolute best way to get technical support** is to send us a short, self-contained example of the problem. Our preferred way to receive this would be for you to send us a Plunkr link by using [this URL](#)⁹.

That URL contains a runnable, boilerplate Angular app. If you can copy and paste your code into that project, reproduce your error, and send it to us **you'll greatly increase the likelihood of a prompt, helpful response**.

When you've written down these things, email us at us@fullstack.io¹⁰. We look forward to hearing from you.

Technical Support Response Time

We perform our free, technical support **once per week**.

If you need a faster response time, and help getting **any** of your team's questions answered, then you may consider our [premium support option](#)¹¹.

⁷<https://gitter.im/ng-book/ng-book>

⁸<http://mattgemmell.com/what-have-you-tried/>

⁹<https://angular.io/resources/live-examples/quickstart/ts/eplnkr.html>

¹⁰<mailto:us@fullstack.io>

¹¹<mailto:us@fullstack.io?Subject=Angular%20Premium%20Support&Body=Hello%21%20I%27m%20interested%20in%20premium%20Angular%20support%20for%20our%20team>

Chapter Overview

Before we dive in, I want to give you a feel for the rest of the book and what you can expect inside.

The first few chapters provide the **foundation** you need to get up and running with Angular. You'll create your **first apps**, use the **built-in components**, and start **creating your components**.

Next we'll move into intermediate concepts such as using **forms**, using **APIs**, **routing** to different pages, and using *Dependency Injection* to organize our code.

After that, we'll move into more **advanced concepts**. We spend a good part of the book talking about *data architectures*. Managing state in client/server applications is hard and we dive deep into two popular approaches: using **RxJS Observables** and using **Redux**. In these chapters, we'll show how to build the same app, two different ways, so you can compare and contrast and evaluate what's best for you and your team.

After that, we'll discuss how to write complex, **advanced components** using Angular's most powerful features. Then we talk about how to write **tests** for our app and how we can **upgrade our Angular 1 apps** to Angular 2+. Finally, we close with a chapter on writing **native mobile apps** with Angular using **NativeScript**.

By using this book, **you're going to learn how to build real Angular apps** faster than spending hours parsing out-dated blog posts.

So hold on tight - you're about to become an Angular expert, and have a lot of fun along the way. Let's dig in!

- Nate (@eigenjoy¹²)

¹²<https://twitter.com/eigenjoy>

Writing Your First Angular Web Application

Simple Reddit Clone

In this chapter we're going to build an application that allows the user to **post an article** (with a title and a URL) and then **vote on the posts**.

You can think of this app as the beginnings of a site like [Reddit¹³](http://reddit.com) or [Product Hunt¹⁴](http://producthunt.com).

In this simple app we're going to cover most of the essentials of Angular including:

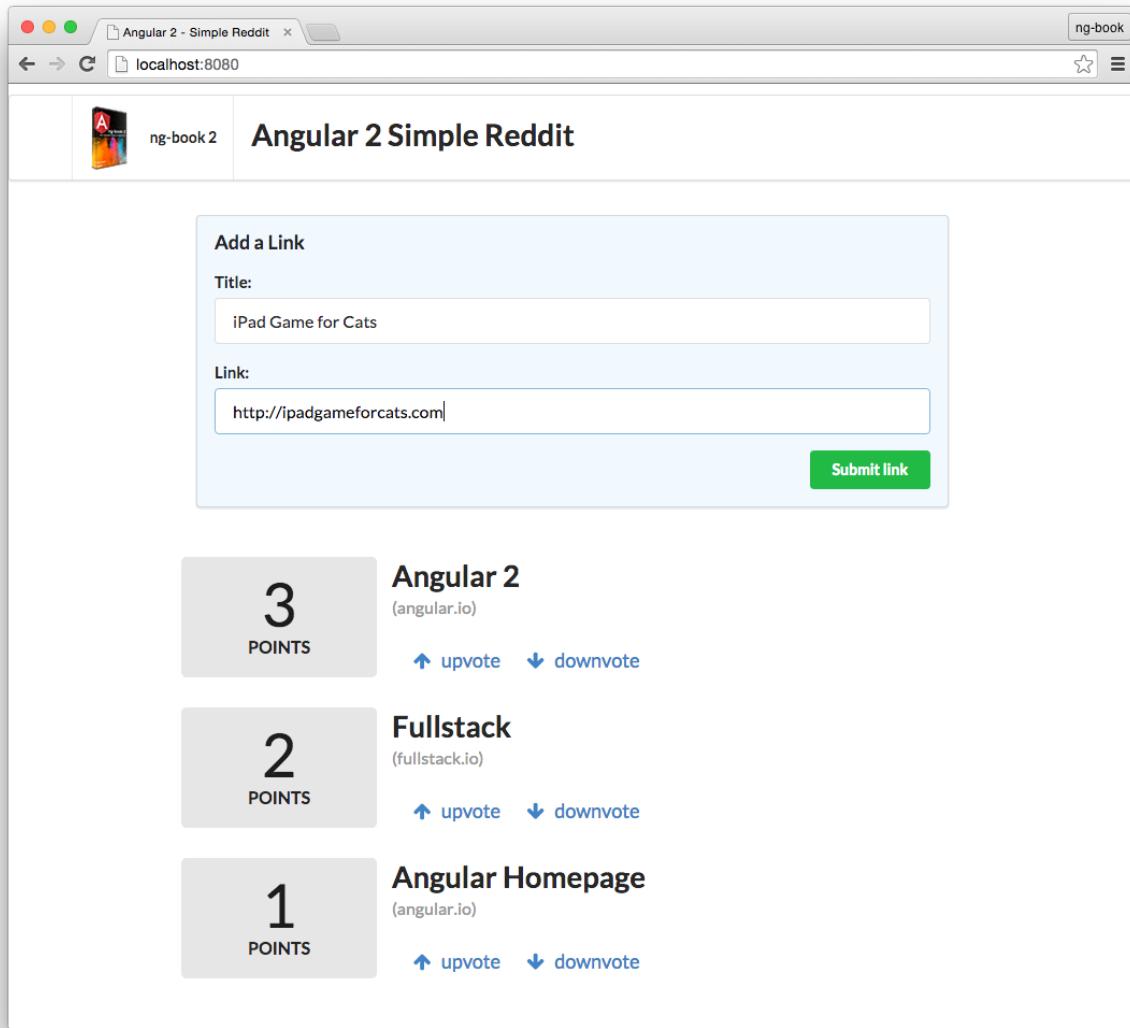
- Building custom components
- Accepting user input from forms
- Rendering lists of objects into views
- Intercepting user clicks and acting on them
- Deploying our app to a server

By the time you're finished with this chapter you'll know how to take an empty folder, build a basic Angular application, and deploy it to production. After working through this chapter you'll have a good grasp on how Angular applications are built and a solid foundation to build your own Angular app.

Here's a screenshot of what our app will look like when it's done:

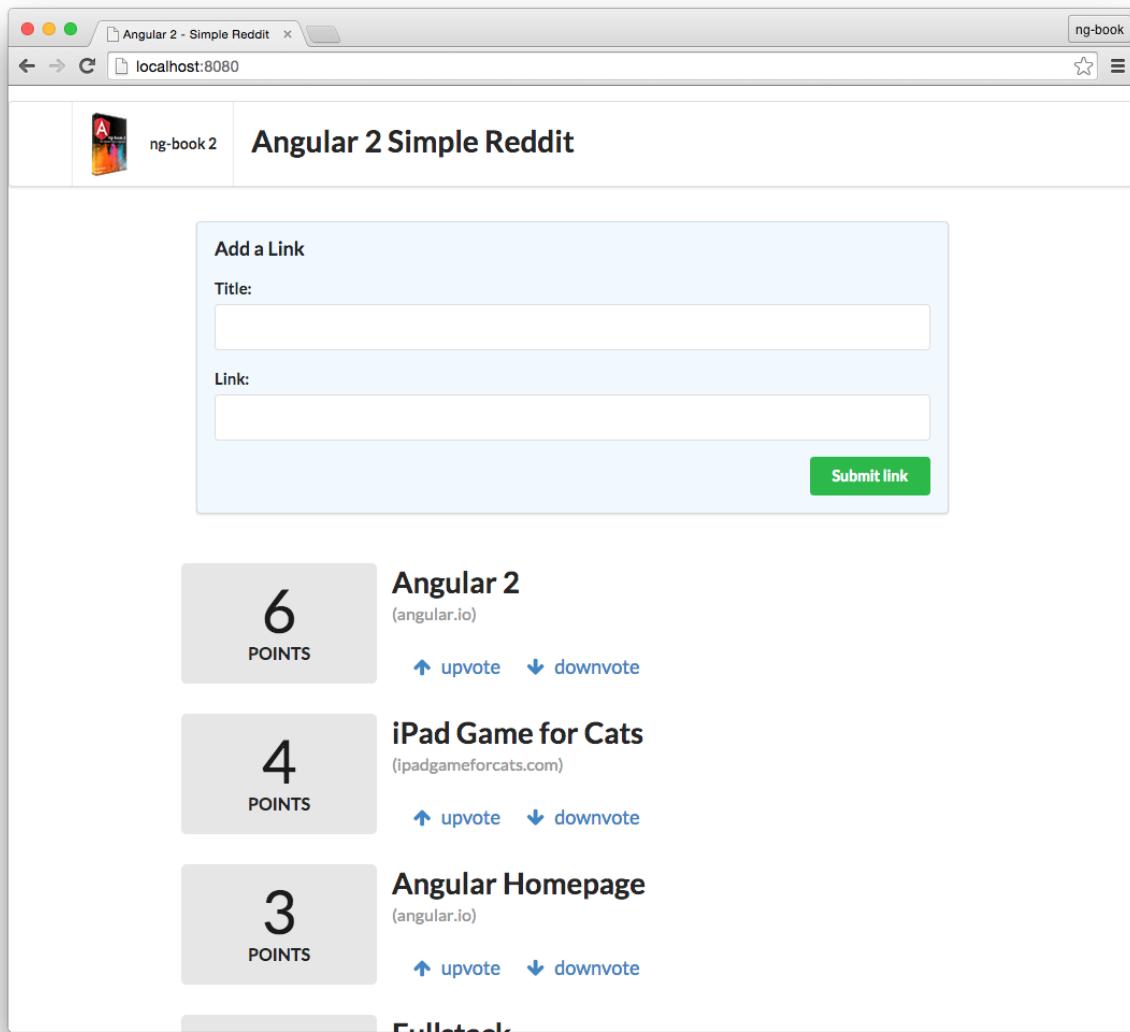
¹³<http://reddit.com>

¹⁴<http://producthunt.com>



Completed application

First, a user will submit a new link and after submitting the users will be able to upvote or downvote each article. Each link will have a score and we can vote on which links we find useful.



App with new article

In this project, and throughout the book, we're going to use TypeScript. TypeScript is a superset of JavaScript ES6 that adds types. We're not going to talk about TypeScript in depth in this chapter, but we'll go over **TypeScript more in depth in the next chapter**.

Don't worry if you're having trouble with some of the new syntax. If you're familiar with ES5 ("normal" javascript) / ES6 (ES2015) you should be able to follow along and we'll talk more about TypeScript in a bit.

Getting started

Node.js and npm

To get started with Angular, you'll need to have Node.js installed. There are a couple of different ways you can install Node.js, so please refer to the [Node.js website¹⁵](#) for detailed information.

Make sure you install Node 6.9.0 or higher.



If you're on a Mac, your best bet is to install Node.js directly from the Node.js website instead of through another package manager (like Homebrew). Installing Node.js via Homebrew is known to cause some issues.

The Node Package Manager (npm for short) is installed as a part of Node.js. To check if npm is available as a part of our development environment, we can open a terminal window and type:

```
$ npm -v
```

If a version number is not printed out and you receive an error, make sure to download a Node.js installer that includes npm.

Your npm version should be 3.0.0 or higher.

TypeScript

Once you have Node.js setup, the next step is to install TypeScript. Make sure you install at least version 2.1 or greater. To install it, run the following npm command:

```
1 $ npm install -g typescript
```



Do I have to use TypeScript? No, you don't *have* to use TypeScript to use Angular, but you probably should. Angular does have an ES5 API, but Angular is written in TypeScript and generally that's what everyone is using. We're going to use TypeScript in this book because it's great and it makes working with Angular easier. That said, it isn't strictly required.

Browser

We highly recommend using the [Google Chrome Web Browser¹⁶](#) to develop Angular apps. We'll use the Chrome developer toolkit throughout this book. To follow along with our development and debugging we recommend downloading it now.

¹⁵<https://nodejs.org/download/>

¹⁶<https://www.google.com/chrome/>

Special instruction for Windows users

Throughout this book, we will be using Unix/Mac commands in the terminal. Most of these commands, like `ls` and `cd`, are cross-platform. However, sometimes these commands are Unix/Mac-specific or contain Unix/Mac-specific flags (like `ls -lp`).

As a result, be alert that you may have to occasionally determine the equivalent of a Unix/Mac command for your shell. Fortunately, the amount of work we do in the terminal is minimal and you will not encounter this issue often.



Windows users should be aware that our terminal examples use Unix/Mac commands.

Ensure IIS is installed (Windows)

If you're on a Windows machine and have yet to do any web development on it, you may need to install IIS (Internet Information Services) in order to run web servers locally.

See [this tutorial¹⁷](#) for installing IIS.

angular-cli

Angular provides a utility to allow users to create and manage projects from the command line. It automates tasks like creating projects, adding new controllers, etc. It's generally a good idea to use `angular-cli` as it will help create and maintain common patterns across our application.

To install `angular-cli`, just run the following command:

```
1 $ npm install -g @angular/cli@1.0.0-rc.0
```

Once it's installed you'll be able to run it from the command line using the `ng` command. When you do, you'll see a lot of output, but if you scroll back, you should be able to see the following:

```
1 $ ng --version
```

If everything installed correctly, you should see the current version output to your terminal. Congratulations!

¹⁷<http://www.howtogeek.com/112455/how-to-install-iis-8-on-windows-8/>



If you're running OSX or Linux, you might receive this line in the output:

```
1 Could not start watchman; falling back to NodeWatcher for file system events.
```

This means that we don't have a tool called **watchman** installed. This tool helps `angular-cli` when it needs to monitor files in your filesystem for changes. If you're running OSX, it's recommended to install it using Homebrew with the following command:

```
1 $ brew install watchman
```



If you're on OSX and got an error when running brew, it means that you probably don't have Homebrew installed. Please refer to the page <http://brew.sh/> to learn how to install it and try again.

If you're on Linux, you may refer to the page <https://ember-cli.com/user-guide/#watchman> for more information about how to install watchman.

If you're on Windows instead, you don't need to install anything and `angular-cli` will use the native Node.js watcher.

If you're curious about all of the things that `angular-cli` can do, try out this command:

```
1 $ ng --help
```

Don't worry about understanding all of the options - we'll be covering the important ones in this chapter.

Now that we have `angular-cli` and its dependencies installed, let's use this tool to create our first application.

Example Project

Open up the terminal and run the `ng new` command to create a new project from scratch:

```
1 $ ng new angular-hello-world
```

Once you run it, you'll see the following output:

```
1 installing ng2
2   create .editorconfig
3   create README.md
4   create src/app/app.component.css
5   create src/app/app.component.html
6   create src/app/app.component.spec.ts
7   create src/app/app.component.ts
8   create src/app/app.module.ts
9   create src/assets/.gitkeep
10  create src/environments/environment.prod.ts
11  create src/environments/environment.ts
12  create src/favicon.ico
13  create src/index.html
14  create src/main.ts
15  create src/polyfills.ts
16  create src/styles.css
17  create src/test.ts
18  create src/tsconfig.json
19  create .angular-cli.json
20  create e2e/app.e2e-spec.ts
21  create e2e/app.po.ts
22  create e2e/tsconfig.json
23  create .gitignore
24  create karma.conf.js
25  create package.json
26  create protractor.conf.js
27  create tslint.json
28 Successfully initialized git.
29 Installing packages for tooling via npm.
30 Installed packages for tooling via npm.
```

This will run for a while while it's installing npm dependencies. Once it finishes we'll see a success message:

```
1 Project 'angular-hello-world' successfully created.
```

There are a lot of files generated! Don't worry about understanding all of them yet. Throughout the book we'll walk through what each one means and what it's used for.

Let's go inside the `angular-hello-world` directory, which the `ng` command created for us and see what has been created:

```
1 $ cd angular-hello-world
2 $ tree -F -L 1
3 .
4 └── README.md          // an useful README
5 └── .angular-cli.json   // angular-cli configuration file
6 └── e2e/                // end to end tests
7 └── karma.conf.js       // unit test configuration
8 └── node_modules/        // installed dependencies
9 └── package.json         // npm configuration
10 └── protractor.conf.js  // e2e test configuration
11 └── src/                // application source
12 └── tslint.json         // linter config file
```



The tree command is completely optional. But if you're on OSX it can be installed via
brew install tree

For now, the folder we're interested in is `src`, where we'll put our custom application code. Let's take a look at what was created there:

```
1 $ cd src
2 $ tree -F
3 .
4 |-- app/
5 |   |-- app.component.css
6 |   |-- app.component.html
7 |   |-- app.component.spec.ts
8 |   |-- app.component.ts
9 |   `-- app.module.ts
10 |-- assets/
11 |-- environments/
12 |   |-- environment.prod.ts
13 |   `-- environment.ts
14 |-- favicon.ico
15 |-- index.html
16 |-- main.ts
17 |-- polyfills.ts
18 |-- styles.css
19 |-- test.ts
20 `-- tsconfig.json
```

Using your favorite text editor, let's open `index.html`. You should see this code:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/index.html

```
1 <!doctype html>
2 <html>
3 <head>
4   <meta charset="utf-8">
5   <title>AngularHelloWorld</title>
6   <base href="/">
7
8   <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">
9   <link rel="icon" type="image/x-icon" href="favicon.ico">
10 </head>
11 <body>
12   <app-root>Loading...</app-root>
13 </body>
14 </html>
```

Let's break it down a bit:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/index.html

```
1 <!doctype html>
2 <html>
3 <head>
4   <meta charset="utf-8">
5   <title>AngularHelloWorld</title>
6   <base href="/">
7
8   <meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1">
9   <link rel="icon" type="image/x-icon" href="favicon.ico">
10 </head>
```

If you're familiar with writing HTML file, this first part is straightforward, we're declaring the core structure of the HTML document and a few bits of metadata such as page charset, title and base href.

If we continue to the template body, we see the following:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/index.html

```
11 <body>
12   <app-root>Loading...</app-root>
13 </body>
14 </html>
```

The `app-root` tag is **where our application will be rendered**. The text `Loading...` is a placeholder that will be displayed *before our app code loads*. For instance, we could put a loading “spinner” `img` tag here and the user would see this as our JavaScript and Angular app is loading.

But what *is* the `app-root` tag and where does it come from? `app-root` is a *component* that is defined by our Angular application. In Angular we **can define our own HTML tags** and give them custom functionality. The `app-root` tag will be the “entry point” for our application on the page.

Let’s try running this app as-is and then we’ll dig in to see how this component is defined.

Writing Application Code

Running the application

Before making any changes, let’s load our app from the generated application into the browser. `angular-cli` has a built in HTTP server that we can use to run our app.

To use it, head back to the terminal, and change directories into the root of our application.

```
1 $ cd angular-hello-world
2 $ ng serve
3 ** NG Live Development Server is running on http://localhost:4200. **
4 // ...
5 // a bunch of other messages
6 // ...
7 Compiled successfully.
```

Our application is now running on `localhost` port 4200. Let’s open the browser and visit:

[http://localhost:4200¹⁸](http://localhost:4200)

¹⁸<http://localhost:4200>



Note that if you get the message:

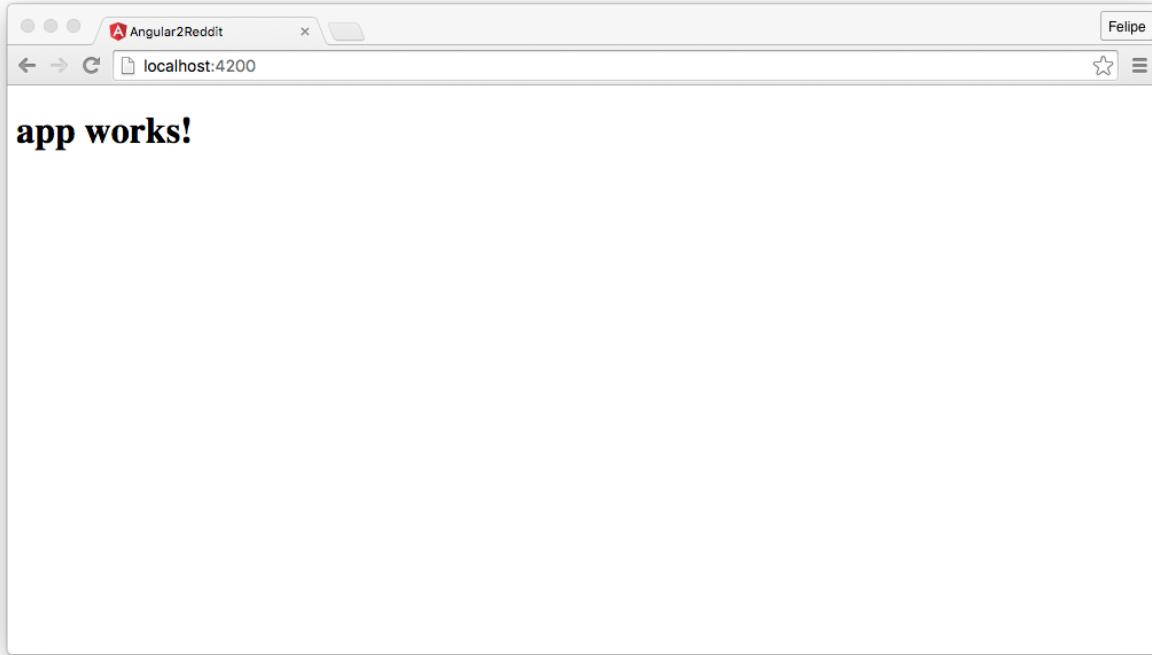
```
1 Port 4200 is already in use. Use '--port' to specify a different port
```

This means that you already have another service running on port 4200. If this is the case you can either 1. shut down the other service or 2. use the --port flag when running `ng serve` like this:

```
1 ng serve --port 9001
```

The above command would change the URL you open in your browser to something like: `http://localhost:9001`

Another thing to notice is that, on some machines, the domain `localhost` may not work. You may see a set of numbers such as `127.0.0.1`. When you run `ng serve` it should show you what URL the server is running on, so be sure to read the messages on your machine to find your exact development URL.



Running application

Now that we have the application setup, and we know how to run it, it's time to start writing some code.

Making a Component

One of the big ideas behind Angular is the idea of *components*.

In our Angular apps, we write HTML markup that becomes our interactive application, but the browser only understands a limited set of markup tags; Built-ins like `<select>` or `<form>` or `<video>` all have functionality defined by our browser creator.

What if we want to **teach the browser new tags**? What if we wanted to have a `<weather>` tag that shows the weather? Or what if we want to create a `<login>` tag that shows a login panel?

This is the fundamental idea behind components: we will **teach the browser new tags** that have custom functionality attached to them.



If you have a background in AngularJS 1.X, you can think of **components as the new version of directives**.

Let's create our very first component. When we have this component written, we will be able to use it in our HTML document using the `app-hello-world` tag:

```
1 <app-hello-world></app-hello-world>
```

To create a new component using `angular-cli`, we'll use the `generate` command.

To generate the **hello-world** component, we need to run the following command:

```
1 $ ng generate component hello-world
2 installing component
3   create src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.css
4   create src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.html
5   create src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.spec.ts
6   create src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.ts
```

So how do we actually define a new Component? A basic Component has two parts:

1. A Component annotation
2. A component definition class

Let's look at the component code and then take these one at a time. Open up our first TypeScript file: `src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.ts`.

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.ts

```
1 import { Component, OnInit } from '@angular/core';
2
3 @Component({
4   selector: 'app-hello-world',
5   templateUrl: './hello-world.component.html',
6   styleUrls: ['./hello-world.component.css']
7 })
8 export class HelloWorldComponent implements OnInit {
9
10   constructor() { }
11
12   ngOnInit() {
13   }
14
15 }
```

This snippet may seem scary at first, but don't worry. We're going to walk through it step by step.



Notice that we suffix our TypeScript file with `.ts` instead of `.js`. The problem is our browser doesn't know how to interpret TypeScript files. To solve this gap, the `ng serve` command live-compiles our `.ts` to a `.js` file automatically.

Importing Dependencies

The `import` statement defines the modules we want to use to write our code. Here we're importing two things: `Component`, and `OnInit`.

We `import Component` from the module `"@angular/core"`. The `"@angular/core"` portion tells our program **where to find the dependencies** that we're looking for. In this case, we're telling the compiler that `"@angular/core"` defines and exports two JavaScript/TypeScript objects called `Component` and `OnInit`.

Similarly, we `import OnInit` from the same module. As we'll learn later, `OnInit` helps us to run code when we initialize the component. For now, don't worry about it.

Notice that the structure of this `import` is of the format `import { things } from wherever`. In the `{ things }` part what we are doing is called *destructuring*. Destructuring is a feature provided by ES6 and TypeScript. We will talk more about it in the next chapter.

The idea with `import` is a lot like `import` in Java or `require` in Ruby: we're **pulling in these dependencies from another module** and making these dependencies available for use in this file.

Component Annotations

After importing our dependencies, we are declaring the component:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.ts

```
3 @Component({
4   selector: 'app-hello-world',
5   templateUrl: './hello-world.component.html',
6   styleUrls: ['./hello-world.component.css']
7 })
```

If you're new to TypeScript then the syntax of this next statement might seem a little foreign:

```
1 @Component({
2   // ...
3 })
```

What is going on here? These are called *annotations*.

We can think of annotations as **metadata added to our code**. When we use `@Component` on the `HelloWorld` class, we are “decorating” `HelloWorld` as a Component.

We want to be able to use this component in our markup by using a `<app-hello-world>` tag. To do that, we configure the `@Component` and specify the selector as `app-hello-world`.

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'app-hello-world'
3   // ... more here
4 })
```

The syntax of Angular's component selectors is similar to CSS selectors (though Angular components have some special syntax for selectors, which we'll cover later on). For now, know that with this selector we're defining a new tag that we can use in our markup.

The `selector` property here indicates *which DOM element* this component is going to use. In this case, any `<app-hello-world></app-hello-world>` tags that appear within a template will be compiled using the `HelloWorldComponent` class and get any attached functionality.

Adding a template with `templateUrl`

In our component we are specifying a `templateUrl` of `./hello-world.component.html`. This means that we will load our template from the file `hello-world.component.html` in the same directory as our component. Let's take a look at that file:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/hello-world/hello-world.component.html`

```
1 <p>
2   hello-world works!
3 </p>
```

Here we're defining a `p` tag with some basic text in the middle. When Angular loads this component it will also read from this file and use it as the template for our component.

Adding a template

We can define templates two ways, either by using the `template` key in our `@Component` object or by specifying a `templateUrl`.

We could add a template to our `@Component` by passing the `template` option:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'app-hello-world',
3   template: `
4     <p>
5       hello-world works inline!
6     </p>
7   `
8 })
```

Notice that we're defining our template string between backticks (`` ... ``). This is a new (and fantastic) feature of ES6 that allows us to do **multiline strings**. Using backticks for multiline strings makes it easy to put templates inside your code files.



Should you really be putting templates in your code files? The answer is: it depends. For a long time the commonly held belief was that you should keep your code and templates separate. While this might be easier for some teams, for some projects it adds overhead because you have to switch between a lot of files.

Personally, if our templates are shorter than a page, we much prefer to have the templates alongside the code (that is, within the `.ts` file). When we see both the logic and the view together, it's easy to understand how they interact with one another.

The biggest drawback to mixing views and our code is that many editors don't support syntax highlighting of the internal strings (yet). Hopefully, we'll see more editors supporting syntax highlighting HTML within template strings soon.

Adding CSS Styles with `styleUrls`

Notice the key `styleUrls`:

```
1   styleUrls: ['./hello-world.component.css']
```

This code says that we want to use the CSS in the file `hello-world.component.css` as the styles for this component. Angular uses a concept called “style-encapsulation” which means that styles specified for a particular component *only apply to that component*. We talk more about this in-depth later on in the book in the [Styling section of Advanced Components](#).

For now, we’re not going to use any component-local styles, so you can leave this as-is (or delete the key entirely).



You may have noticed that this key is different from `template` in that it accepts *an array* as its argument. This is because we can load multiple stylesheets for a single component.

Loading Our Component

Now that we have our first component code filled out, how do we load it in our page?

If we visit our application again in the browser, we’ll see that nothing changed. That’s because we only **created** the component, but we’re not **using** it yet.

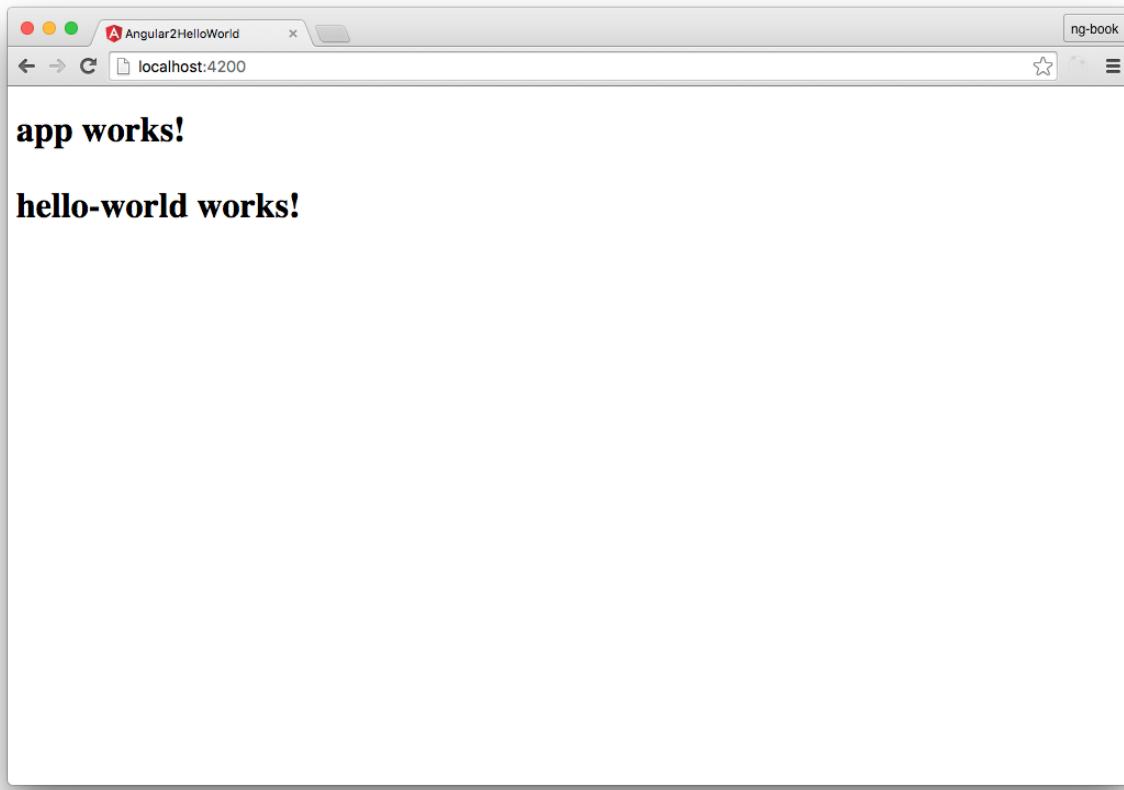
In order to change that, we need to add our component tag to a template that is already being rendered. Open up the file: `first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.html`

Remember that because we configured our `HelloWorldComponent` with the selector `app-hello-world`, we can use the `<app-hello-world></app-hello-world>` in our template. Let’s add the `<app-hello-world>` tag to `app.component.html`:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.html`

```
1 <h1>
2   {{title}}
3
4   <app-hello-world></app-hello-world>
5 </h1>
```

Now refresh the page and take a look:



Hello world works

It works!

Adding Data to the Component

Right now our component renders a static template, which means our component isn't very interesting.

Let's imagine that we have an app which will show a **list of users** and we want to show their names. Before we render the whole list, we first need to render an individual user. So let's create a new component that will show a user's name.

To do this, we will use the `ng generate` command again:

```
1 ng generate component user-item
```

Remember that in order to see a component we've created, we need to add it to a template.

Let's add our `app-user-item` tag to `app.component.html` so that we can see our changes as we make them. Modify `app.component.html` to look like this:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.html

```

1 <h1>
2   {{title}}
3
4   <app-hello-world></app-hello-world>
5
6   <app-user-item></app-user-item>
7 </h1>

```

Then refresh the page and confirm that you see the `user-item works!` text on the page.

We want our `UserItemComponent` to show the name of a particular user .

Let's introduce `name` as a new *property* of our component. By having a `name` property, we will be able to reuse this component for different users (but keep the same markup, logic, and styles).

In order to add a name, we'll introduce a property on the `UserItemComponent` class to declare it has a local variable named `name`.

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-item/user-item.component.ts

```

8 export class UserItemComponent implements OnInit {
9   name: string; // <-- added name property
10
11  constructor() {
12    this.name = 'Felipe'; // set the name
13  }
14
15  ngOnInit() {
16  }
17
18 }

```

Notice that we've changed two things:

1. `name` Property

On the `UserItemComponent` class we added a *property*. Notice that the syntax is new relative to ES5 Javascript. When we write `name: string;` it means that we're declaring the `name` property to be of *type string*.

Being able to assign a type to a variable is what gives *TypeScript* its name. By setting the type of this property to `string`, the compiler ensures that `name` variable is a `string` and it will throw an error if we try to assign, say, a `number` to this property.

This syntax is also the way *TypeScript* defines instance properties. By putting `name: string` in our code like this, we're giving every instance of `UserItemComponent` a property `name`.

2. A Constructor

On the `UserItemComponent` class we defined a *constructor*, i.e. a function that is called when we create new instances of this class.

In our constructor we can assign our `name` property by using `this.name`

When we write:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-item/user-item.component.ts`

```
11  constructor() {  
12    this.name = 'Felipe'; // set the name  
13  }
```

We're saying that whenever a new `UserItemComponent` is created, set the name to 'Felipe'.

Rendering The Template

When we have a property on a component, we can show that value in our template by using two curly brackets `{{ }}` to display the value of the variable in our template. For instance:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-item/user-item.component.html`

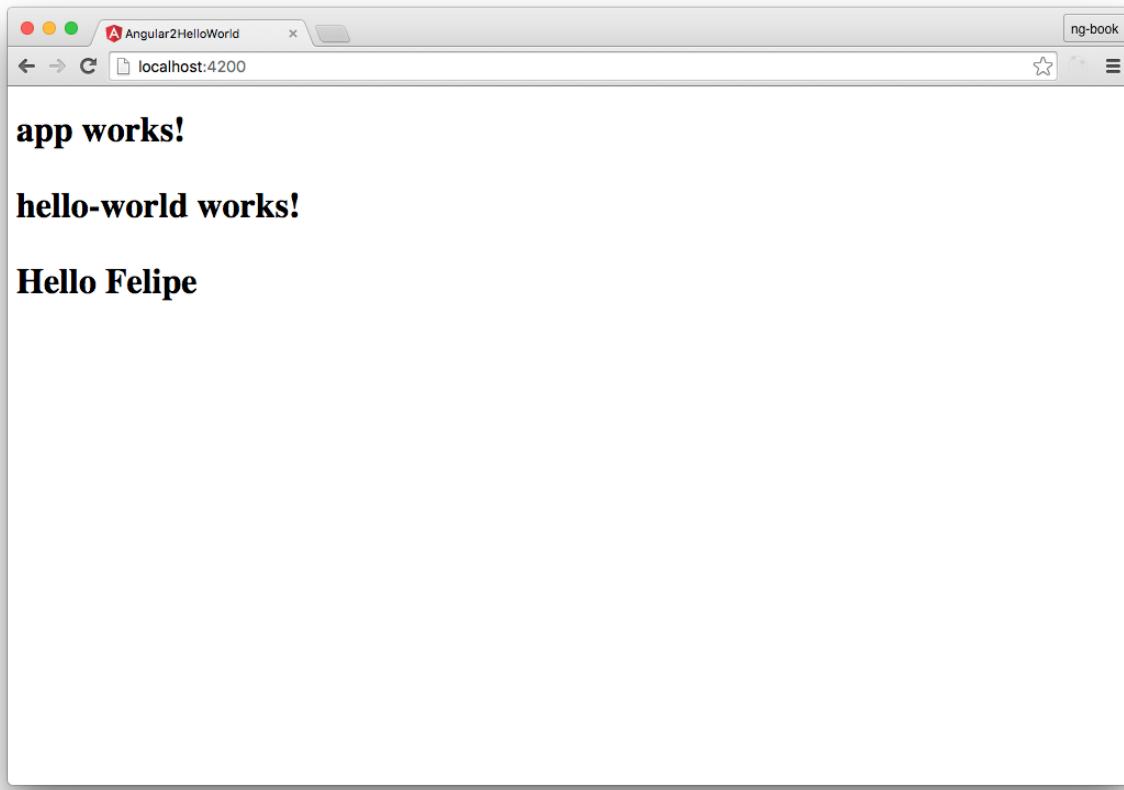
```
1 <p>  
2   Hello {{ name }}  
3 </p>
```

On the template notice that we added a new syntax: `{{ name }}`. The brackets are called *template tags* (or sometimes *mustache tags*).

Whatever is between the template tags will be expanded as an *expression*. Here, because the template is *bound* to our Component, the `name` will expand to the value of `this.name` i.e. 'Felipe'.

Try It Out

After making these changes reload the page and the page should display Hello Felipe



Application with Data

Working With Arrays

Now we are able to say “Hello” to a single name, but what if we want to say “Hello” to a collection of names?

In Angular we can iterate over a list of objects in our template using the syntax `*ngFor`. The idea is that we want to **repeat the same markup for a collection of objects**.



If you’ve worked with AngularJS 1.X before, you’ve probably used the `ng-repeat` directive. NgFor works much the same way.

Let’s create a new component that will render a *list* of users. We start by generating a new component:

```
1 ng generate component user-list
```

And let's replace our `<app-user-item>` tag with `<app-user-list>` in our `app.component.html` file:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.component.html`

```
1 <h1>
2   {{title}}
3
4   <app-hello-world></app-hello-world>
5
6   <app-user-list></app-user-list>
7 </h1>
```

In the same way that we added a `name` property to our `UserItemComponent`, let's add a `names` property to this `UserListComponent`.

However, instead of storing only a single string, let's set the type of this property to *an array of strings*. An array is notated by the `[]` after the type, and the code looks like this:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-list/user-list.component.ts`

```
8 export class UserListComponent implements OnInit {
9   names: string[];
10
11   constructor() {
12     this.names = ['Ari', 'Carlos', 'Felipe', 'Nate'];
13   }
14
15   ngOnInit() {
16   }
17
18 }
```

The first change to point out is the new `string[]` property on our `UserListComponent` class. This syntax means that `names` is typed as an `Array of strings`. Another way to write this would be `Array<string>`.

We changed our constructor to set the value of `this.names` to `['Ari', 'Carlos', 'Felipe', 'Nate']`.

Now we can update our template to render this list of names. To do this, we will use `*ngFor`, which will

- iterate over a list of items and
- generate a new tag for each one.

Here's what our new template will look like:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-list/user-list.component.html

```
1 <ul>
2   <li *ngFor="let name of names">Hello {{ name }}</li>
3 </ul>
```

We updated the template with one `ul` and one `li` with a new `*ngFor="let name of names"` attribute. The `*` character and `let` syntax can be a little overwhelming at first, so let's break it down:

The `*ngFor` syntax says we want to use the `NgFor` directive on this attribute. You can think of `NgFor` akin to a `for` loop; the idea is that we're creating a new DOM element for every item in a collection.

The value states: `"let name of names"`. `names` is our array of names as specified on the `HelloWorld` object. `let name` is called a *reference*. When we say `"let name of names"` we're saying loop over each element in `names` and assign each one to a *local* variable called `name`.

The `NgFor` directive will render one `li` tag for each entry found on the `names` array and declare a local variable `name` to hold the current item being iterated. This new variable will then be replaced inside the `Hello {{ name }}` snippet.



We didn't have to call the reference variable `name`. We could just as well have written:

```
1 <li *ngFor="let foobar of names">Hello {{ foobar }}</li>
```

But what about the reverse? Quiz question: what would have happened if we wrote:

```
1 <li *ngFor="let name of foobar">Hello {{ name }}</li>
```

Answer: We'd get an error because `foobar` isn't a property on the component.



`NgFor` repeats the element that the `ngFor` is called. That is, we put it on the `li` tag and **not** the `ul` tag because we want to repeat the list element (`li`) and not the list itself (`ul`).

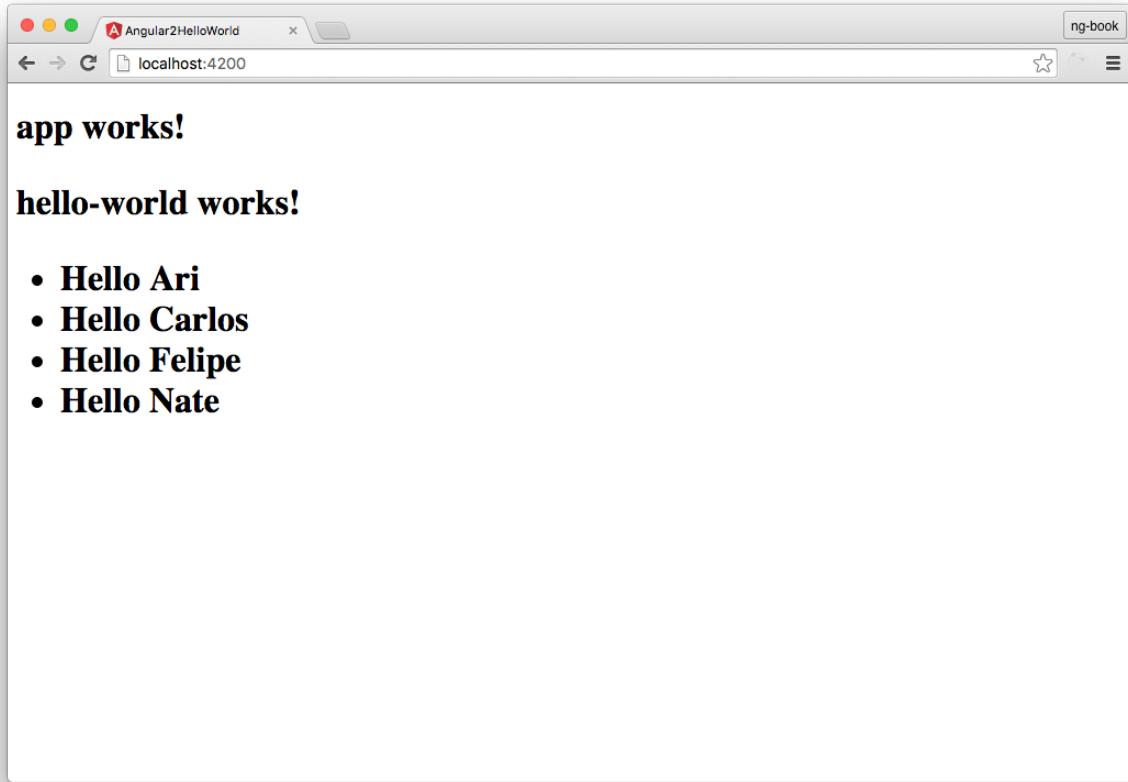
Note that the capitalization here isn't a typo: `NgFor` is the capitalization of the *class* that implements the logic and `ngFor` is the "selector" for the attribute we want to use.



If you're feeling adventurous you can learn a lot about how the Angular core team writes Components by reading the source directly. For instance, you can find the source of the `NgFor` directive [here¹⁹](#).

¹⁹https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/master/modules/%40angular/common/src/directives/ng_for.ts

When we reload the page now, we'll see that we now have one `li` for each string on the array:



Application with Data

Using the User Item Component

Remember that earlier we created a `UserItemComponent`? Instead of rendering each name within the `UserListComponent`, we ought to use `UserItemComponent` as a *child component* - that is, instead of rendering `li` tags directly, we should let our `UserItemComponent` specify the template (and functionality) of **each item in the list**.

To do this, we need to do three things:

1. Configure the `UserListComponent` to render to `UserItemComponent` (in the template)
2. Configure the `UserItemComponent` to accept the `name` variable as an *input* and
3. Configure the `UserListComponent` template to **pass the name** to the `UserItemComponent`.

Let's perform these steps one-by-one.

Rendering the UserItemComponent

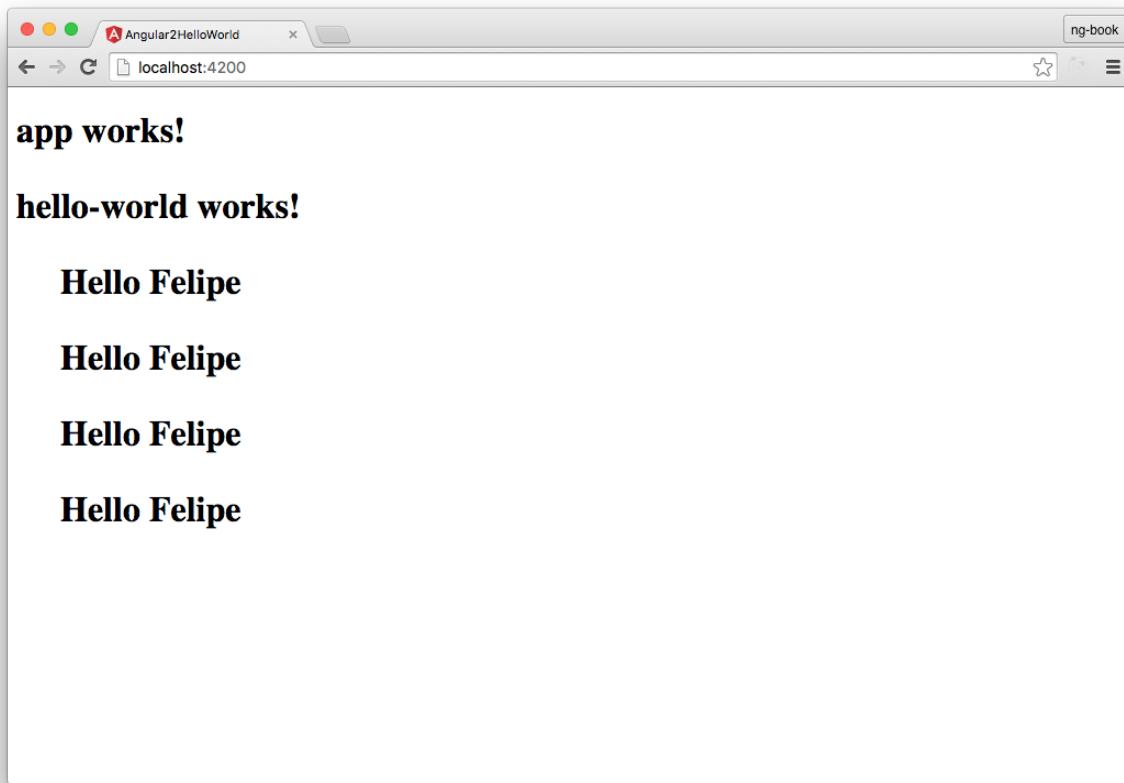
Our UserItemComponent specifies the selector `app-user-item` - let's add that tag to our template. What we're going to do is replace the `` tag with the `app-user-item` tag:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-list/user-list.component.html

```
1 <ul>
2   <app-user-item
3     *ngFor="let name of names">
4   </app-user-item>
5 </ul>
```

Notice that while we swapped out the `li` tag for `app-user-item` we left in the `ngFor` attribute because we *still want to loop* over the list of names.

Notice that we also removed the inner content of this template because *the component* has its own template. If we reload our browser, this is what we will see:



Application with Data

It repeats, but something is wrong here - every name says “Felipe”! We need a way to *pass data into the child component*.

Thankfully, Angular provides a way to do this: the `@Input` annotation.

Accepting Inputs

Remember that in our `UserItemComponent` we had set `this.name = 'Felipe'`; in the constructor of that component. Now we need to change this component to accept a value for this property.

Here’s what we need to change on our `UserItemComponent`:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-item/user-item.component.ts`

```

1 import {
2   Component,
3   OnInit,
4   Input      // <-- added this
5 } from '@angular/core';
6
7 @Component({
8   selector: 'app-user-item',
9   templateUrl: './user-item.component.html',
10  styleUrls: ['./user-item.component.css']
11 })
12 export class UserItemComponent implements OnInit {
13   @Input() name: string; // <-- added Input annotation
14
15   constructor() {
16     // removed setting name
17   }
18
19   ngOnInit() {
20   }
21
22 }
```

Notice that we changed the `name` property to have an *annotation* of `@Input`. We talk a lot more about Inputs (and Outputs) in [the next chapter](#), but for now, know that this syntax allows us to pass in a value *from the parent template*.

In order to use `Input` we also had to add it to the list of constants in `import`.

Lastly, we don’t want to set a default value for `name` so we remove that from the constructor.

So now that we have a `name` `Input`, how do we actually use it?

Passing an Input value

To pass values to a component we use the *bracket []* syntax in our template - let's take a look at our updated template:

code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/user-list/user-list.component.html

```
1 <ul>
2   <app-user-item
3     *ngFor="let name of names"
4       [name]="name">
5   </app-user-item>
6 </ul>
```

Notice that we've added a new attribute on our `app-user-item` tag: `[name] = "name"` . In Angular when we add an attribute in brackets like `[foo]` we're saying we want to pass a value to the *input* named `foo` on that component.

In this case notice that the `name` on the right-hand side comes from the `let name ...` statement in `ngFor`. That is, consider if we had this instead:

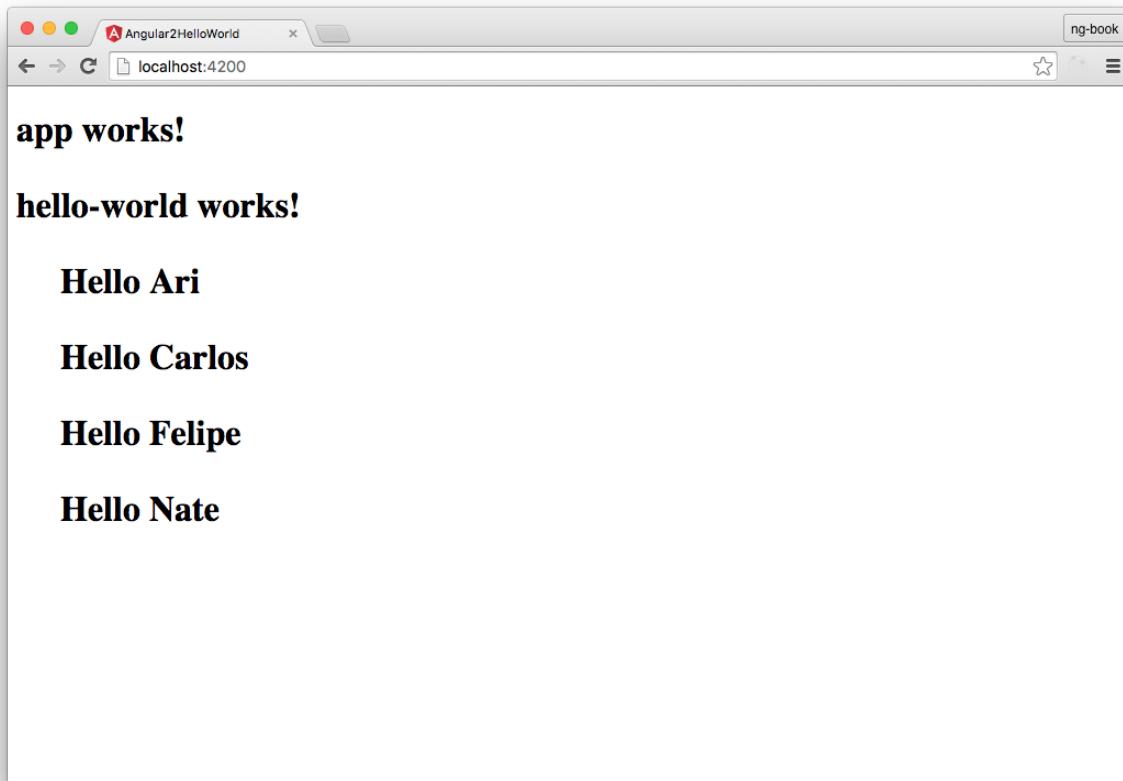
```
1 <app-user-item
2   *ngFor="let individualUserName of names"
3     [name] = "individualUserName">
4   </app-user-item>
```

The `[name]` part designates the `Input` on the `UserItemComponent`. Notice that we're *not* passing the literal string `"individualUserName"` instead we're passing the *value* of `individualUserName`, which is, on each pass, the value of an element of `names`.

We talk more about inputs and outputs in detail in the next chapter. For now, know that we're:

1. Iterating over `names`
2. Creating a new `UserItemComponent` for each element in `names` and
3. Passing the value of that name into the `name` `Input` property on the `UserItemComponent`

Now our list of names works!



Application with Names Working

Congratulations! You've built your first Angular app with components!

Of course, this app is very simple and we'd like to build much more sophisticated applications. Don't worry, in this book we'll show you how to become an expert writing Angular apps. In fact, in this chapter we're going to build a voting-app (think Reddit or Product Hunt). This app will feature user interaction, and even more components!

But before we start building a new app, let's take a closer look at how Angular apps are bootstrapped.

Bootstrapping Crash Course

Every app has a main entry point. This application was built using `angular-cli` (which is built on a tool called Webpack). We run this app by calling the command:

```
1 ng serve
```

`ng` will look at the file `.angular-cli.json` to find the entry point to our app. Let's trace how `ng` finds the components we just built.

At a high level, it looks like this:

- `.angular-cli.json` specifies a "main" file, which in this case is `main.ts`
- `main.ts` is the entry-point for our app and it *bootsraps* our application
- The bootstrap process boots an **Angular module** – we haven't talked about modules yet, but we will in a minute
- We use the `AppModule` to bootstrap the app. `AppModule` is specified in `src/app/app.module.ts`
- `AppModule` specifies which *component* to use as the top-level component. In this case it is `AppComponent`
- `AppComponent` has `<app-user-list>` tags in the template and this renders our list of users.

For now the thing we want to focus on is the Angular module system: `NgModule`.

Angular has a powerful concept of *modules*. When you boot an Angular app, you're not booting a component directly, but instead you create an `NgModule` which points to the component you want to load.

Take a look at this code:

`code/first_app/angular-hello-world/src/app/app.module.ts`

```
11 @NgModule({
12   declarations: [
13     AppComponent,
14     HelloWorldComponent,
15     UserItemComponent,
16     UserListComponent
17   ],
18   imports: [
19     BrowserModule,
20     FormsModule,
21     HttpModule
22   ],
23   providers: [],
24   bootstrap: [AppComponent]
25 })
26 export class AppModule { }
```

The first thing we see is an `@NgModule` annotation. Like all annotations, this `@NgModule(...)` code **adds metadata to the class immediately following** (in this case, `AppModule`).

Our `@NgModule` annotation has three keys: `declarations`, `imports`, and `bootstrap`.

declarations

`declarations` specifies the components that are **defined in this module**. This is an important idea in Angular:

You have to declare components in a `NgModule` before you can use them in your templates.

You can think of an `NgModule` a bit like a “package” and `declarations` states **what components are “owned by” this module**.

You may have noticed that when we used `ng generate`, the tool automatically added our components to this `declarations` list! The idea is that when we generated a new component, the `ng` tool assumed we wanted it to belong to the current `NgModule`.

imports

`imports` describes which *dependencies* this module has. We’re creating a browser app, so we want to import the `BrowserModule`.

If your module depends on other modules, you list them here.



import vs. imports?

You might be asking the question, “What’s the difference between importing a class at the top of the file and putting a module in `imports`? ”

The short answer is that you put something in your `NgModule`’s `imports` if you’re going to be using it in your templates or with *dependency injection*. We haven’t talked about *dependency injection*, but rest assured, we will.

bootstrap

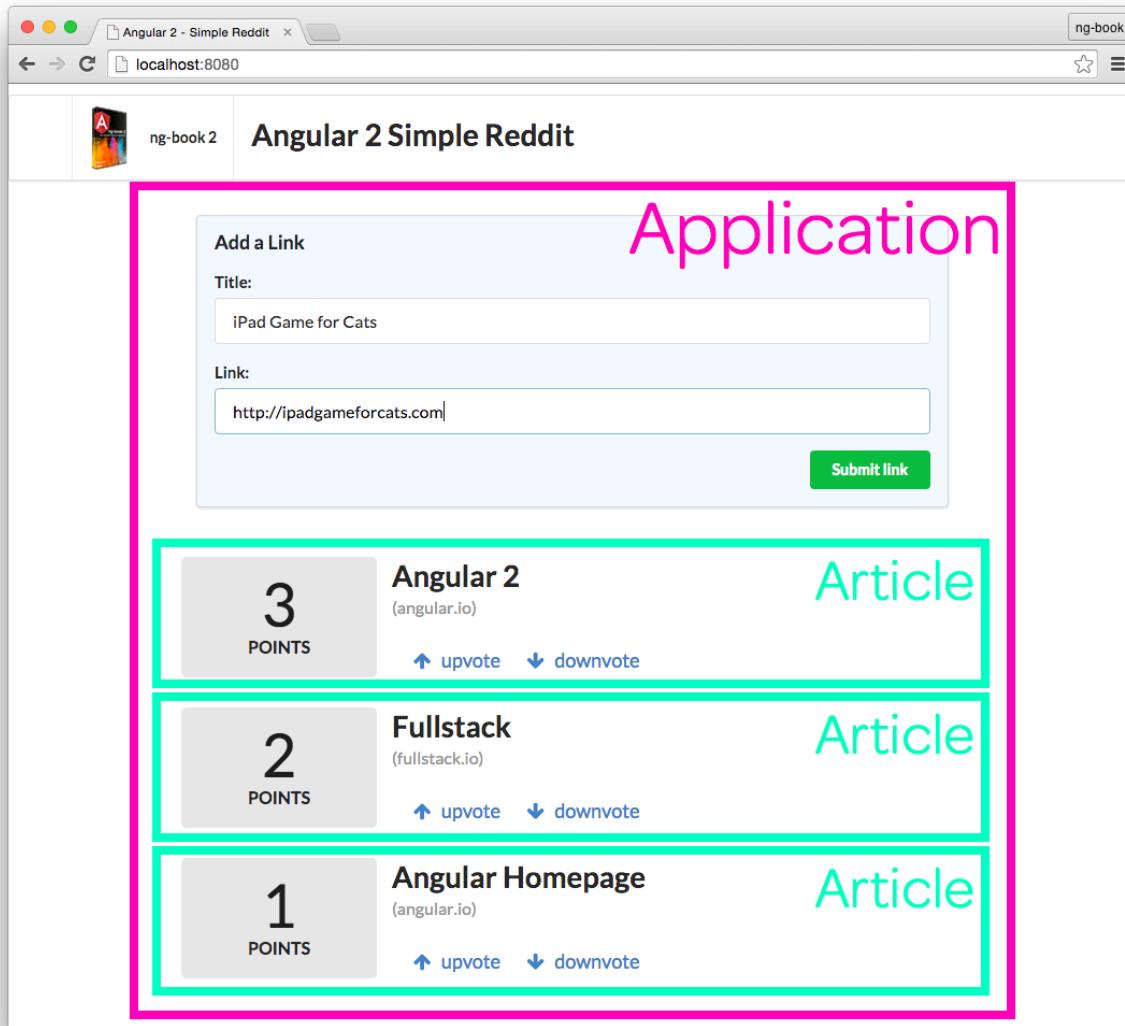
`bootstrap` tells Angular that when this module is used to bootstrap an app, we need to load the `AppComponent` component as the top-level component.



We talk more about `NgModules` in [the section on NgModules](#), but for now we know enough to continue building our app.

Expanding our Application

Now that we know how to create a basic application, let’s build our Reddit clone. Before we start coding, it’s a good idea to look over our app and break it down into its logical components.



Application with Data

We're going to make two components in this app:

1. The overall application, which contains the form used to submit new articles (marked in magenta in the picture).
2. Each article (marked in mint green).



In a larger application, the **form** for submitting articles would probably become its own component. However, having the form be its own component makes the data passing more complex, so we're going to simplify in this chapter and have only two components.

For now two components will work fine, but we'll learn how to deal with more sophisticated data architectures in later chapters of this book.

But first thing's first, let's generate a new application by running the same `ng new` command we ran before to create a new application passing it the name of the app we want to create (here, we'll create an application called `angular-reddit`):

```
1 ng new angular-reddit
```



We've provided a completed version of our `angular-reddit` in the example code download. If you ever need more context, be sure to check it out to see how everything fits together.

Adding CSS

First thing we want to do is add some CSS styling so that our app isn't completely unstyled.



If you're building your app from scratch, you'll want to copy over a few files from our completed example in the `first_app/angular-reddit` folder.

Copy:

- `src/index.html`
- `src/styles.css`
- `src/app/vendor`
- `src/assets/images`

into your application's folder.

For this project we're going to be using [Semantic-UI²⁰](#) to help with the styling. Semantic-UI is a CSS framework, similar to [Zurb Foundation²¹](#) or [Twitter Bootstrap²²](#). We've included it in the sample code download so all you need to do is copy over the files specified above.

The Application Component

Let's now build a new component which will:

1. store our current list of articles
2. contain the form for submitting new articles.

We can find the main application component on the `src/app/app.component.ts` file. Let's open this file. Again, we'll see the same initial contents we saw previously.

²⁰<http://semantic-ui.com/>

²¹<http://foundation.zurb.com>

²²<http://getbootstrap.com>

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';
2
3 @Component({
4   selector: 'app-root',
5   templateUrl: './app.component.html',
6   styleUrls: ['./app.component.css']
7 })
8 export class AppComponent {
9   title = 'app works!';
10 }
```

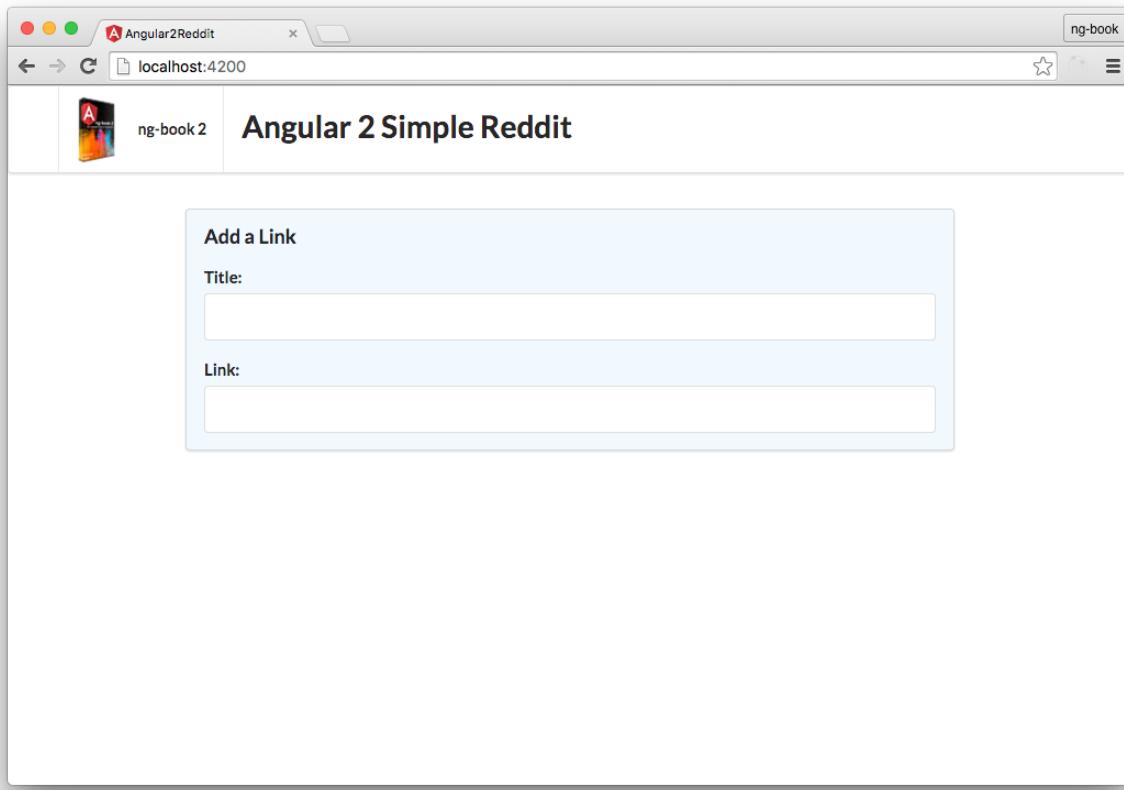
Let's change the template a bit to include a form for adding links. We'll use a bit of styling from the semantic-ui package to make the form look a bit nicer:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.html

```
1 <form class="ui large form segment">
2   <h3 class="ui header">Add a Link</h3>
3
4   <div class="field">
5     <label for="title">Title:</label>
6     <input name="title">
7   </div>
8   <div class="field">
9     <label for="link">Link:</label>
10    <input name="link">
11  </div>
12 </form>
```

We're creating a template that defines two input tags: one for the title of the article and the other for the link URL.

When we load the browser you should see the rendered form:

**Form**

Adding Interaction

Now we have the form with input tags but we don't have any way to submit the data. Let's add some interaction by adding a submit button to our form.

When the form is submitted, we'll want to call a function to create and add a link. We can do this by adding an interaction event on the `<button />` element.

We tell Angular we want to respond to an event by surrounding the event name in parenthesis `()`. For instance, to add a function call to the `<button />` `onClick` event, we can pass it through like so:

```
1 <button (click)="addArticle()"  
2     class="ui positive right floated button">  
3     Submit link  
4 </button>
```

Now, when the button is clicked, it will call a function called `addArticle()`, which we need to define on the `AppComponent` class. Let's do that now:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```

8  export class AppComponent {
9    addArticle(title: HTMLInputElement, link: HTMLInputElement): boolean {
10      console.log(`Adding article title: ${title.value} and link: ${link.value}`);
11      return false;
12    }
13  }

```

With the `addArticle()` function added to the `AppComponent` and the `(click)` event added to the `<button />` element, this function will be called when the button is clicked. Notice that the `addArticle()` function can accept two arguments: the `title` and the `link` arguments. We need to change our template button to pass those into the call to the `addArticle()`.

We do this by populating a *template variable* by adding a special syntax to the `input` elements on our form. Here's what our template will look like:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.html

```

1  <form class="ui large form segment">
2    <h3 class="ui header">Add a Link</h3>
3
4    <div class="field">
5      <label for="title">Title:</label>
6      <input name="title" #newtitle> <!-- changed -->
7    </div>
8    <div class="field">
9      <label for="link">Link:</label>
10     <input name="link" #newlink> <!-- changed -->
11   </div>
12
13   <!-- added this button -->
14   <button (click)="addArticle(newtitle, newlink)"
15     class="ui positive right floated button">
16     Submit link
17   </button>
18
19 </form>

```

Notice that in the `input` tags we used the `#` (hash) to tell Angular to assign those tags to a *local variable*. By adding the `#title` and `#link` to the appropriate `<input />` elements, we can **pass them as variables** into the `addArticle()` function on the button!

To recap what we've done, we've made **four** changes:

1. Created a button tag in our markup that shows the user where to click
2. We created a function named `addArticle` that defines what we want to do when the button is clicked
3. We added a `(click)` attribute on the button that says “call the function `addArticle` when this button is pressed”.
4. We added the attribute `#newtitle` and `#newlink` to the `<input>` tags

Let's cover each one of these steps in reverse order:

Binding inputs to values

Notice in our first input tag we have the following:

```
1 <input name="title" #newtitle>
```

This markup tells Angular to *bind* this `<input>` to the variable `newtitle`. The `#newtitle` syntax is called a *resolve*. The effect is that this makes the variable `newtitle` available to the expressions within this view.

`newtitle` is now an **object** that represents this `input` DOM element (specifically, the type is `HTMLInputElement`). Because `newtitle` is an object, that means we get the value of the `input` tag using `newtitle.value`.

Similarly we add `#newlink` to the other `<input>` tag, so that we'll be able to extract the value from it as well.

Binding actions to events

On our button tag we add the attribute `(click)` to define what should happen when the button is clicked on. When the `(click)` event happens we call `addArticle` with two arguments: `newtitle` and `newlink`. Where did this function and two arguments come from?

1. `addArticle` is a function on our component definition class `AppComponent`
2. `newtitle` comes from the resolve (`#newtitle`) on our `<input>` tag named `title`
3. `newlink` comes from the resolve (`#newlink`) on our `<input>` tag named `link`

All together:

```
1 <button (click)="addArticle(newtitle, newlink)"  
2     class="ui positive right floated button">  
3     Submit link  
4 </button>
```



The markup `class="ui positive right floated button"` comes from Semantic UI and it gives the button the pleasant green color.

Defining the Action Logic

On our class `AppComponent` we define a new function called `addArticle`. It takes two arguments: `title` and `link`. Again, it's important to realize that `title` and `link` are both `objects` of type `HTMLInputElement` and *not the input values directly*. To get the value from the `input` we have to call `title.value`. For now, we're just going to `console.log` out those arguments.

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```
9   addArticle(title: HTMLInputElement, link: HTMLInputElement): boolean {  
10     console.log(`Adding article title: ${title.value} and link: ${link.value}`);  
11     return false;  
12 }
```

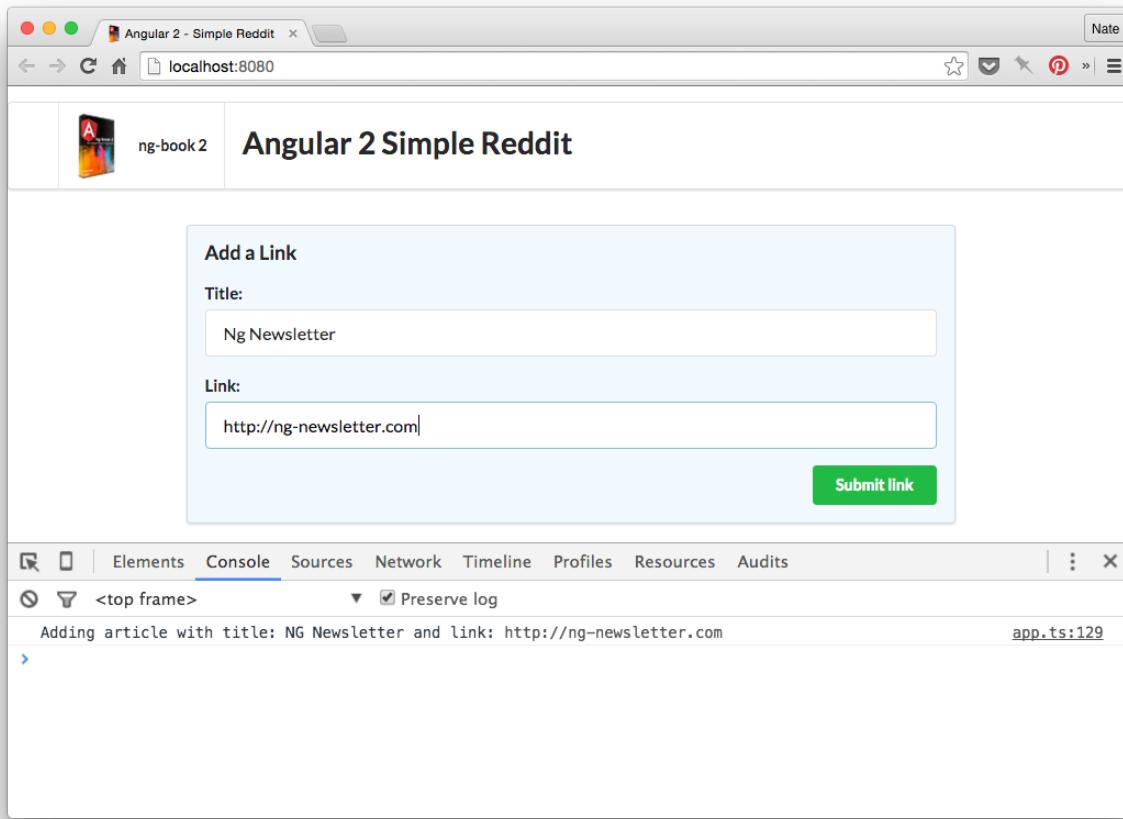


Notice that we're using backtick strings again. This is a really handy feature of ES6: backtick strings will expand template variables!

Here we're putting `${title.value}` in the string and this will be replaced with the value of `title.value` in the string.

Try it out!

Now when you click the submit button, you can see that the message is printed on the console:



Clicking the Button

Adding the Article Component

Now we have a form to submit new articles, but we aren't showing the new articles anywhere. Because every article submitted is going to be displayed as a list on the page, this is the perfect candidate for a new component.

Let's create a new component to represent the individual submitted articles.



A reddit-article

For that, let's use the `ng` tool to generate a new component:

```
1 ng generate component article
```

We have three parts to defining this new component:

1. Define the ArticleComponent view in the template
2. Define the ArticleComponent properties by annotating the class with @Component
3. Define a component-definition class (ArticleComponent) which houses our component logic

Let's talk through each part in detail:

Creating the ArticleComponent template

We define the template using the file `article.component.html`:

`code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.html`

```
1 <div class="four wide column center aligned votes">
2   <div class="ui statistic">
3     <div class="value">
4       {{ votes }}
5     </div>
6     <div class="label">
7       Points
8     </div>
9   </div>
10  </div>
11  <div class="twelve wide column">
12    <a class="ui large header" href="{{ link }}>
13      {{ title }}
14    </a>
15    <ul class="ui big horizontal list voters">
16      <li class="item">
17        <a href (click)="voteUp()">
18          <i class="arrow up icon"></i>
19          upvote
20        </a>
21      </li>
22      <li class="item">
23        <a href (click)="voteDown()">
24          <i class="arrow down icon"></i>
25          downvote
26        </a>
```

```
27    </li>
28    </ul>
29  </div>
```

There's a lot of markup here, so let's break it down :



A Single reddit-article Row

We have two columns:

1. the number of votes on the left and
2. the article information on the right.

We specify these columns with the CSS classes `four wide column` and `twelve wide column` respectively (remember that these come from SemanticUI's CSS).

We're showing votes and the title with the template expansion strings `{{ votes }}` and `{{ title }}`. The values come from the value of `votes` and `title` property of the `ArticleComponent` class, which we'll define in a minute.

Notice that we can use template strings in **attribute values**, as in the `href` of the `a` tag: `href="{{ link }}"`. In this case, the value of the `href` will be dynamically populated with the value of `link` from the component class.

On our upvote/downvote links we have an action. We use `(click)` to bind `voteUp()`/`voteDown()` to their respective buttons. When the upvote button is pressed, the `voteUp()` function will be called on the `ArticleComponent` class (similarly with downvote and `voteDown()`).

Creating the ArticleComponent

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```

3  @Component({
4    selector: 'app-article',
5    templateUrl: './article.component.html',
6    styleUrls: ['./article.component.css'],
7    host: {
8      class: 'row'
9    }
10 })

```

First, we define a new Component with `@Component`. The `selector` says that this component is placed on the page by using the tag `<app-article>` (i.e. the selector is a tag name).

So the most essential way to use this component would be to place the following tag in our markup:

```

1 <app-article>
2 </app-article>

```

These tags will remain in our view when the page is rendered.

We want each `app-article` to be on its own row. We're using Semantic UI, and Semantic provides a [CSS class for rows²³](#) called `row`.

In Angular, a component `host` is **the element this component is attached to**. You'll notice on our `@Component` we're passing the option: `host: { class: 'row' }`. This tells Angular that on the **host element** (the `app-article` tag) we want to set the `class` attribute to have "`row`".



Using the `host` option is nice because it means we can encapsulate the `app-article` markup *within* our component. That is, we don't have to both use a `app-article` tag **and** require a `class="row"` in the markup of the parent view. By using the `host` option, we're able to configure our host element from *within* the component.

Creating the ArticleComponent Definition Class

Finally, we create the `ArticleComponent` definition class:

²³<http://semantic-ui.com/collections/grid.html>

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
11 export class ArticleComponent implements OnInit {  
12   votes: number;  
13   title: string;  
14   link: string;  
15  
16   constructor() {  
17     this.title = 'Angular 2';  
18     this.link = 'http://angular.io';  
19     this.votes = 10;  
20   }  
21  
22   voteUp() {  
23     this.votes += 1;  
24   }  
25  
26   voteDown() {  
27     this.votes -= 1;  
28   }  
29  
30   ngOnInit() {  
31   }  
32  
33 }
```

Here we create three properties on ArticleComponent:

1. votes - a number representing the sum of all upvotes, minus the downvotes
2. title - a string holding the title of the article
3. link - a string holding the URL of the article

In the constructor() we set some default attributes:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
16  constructor() {
17      this.title = 'Angular 2';
18      this.link = 'http://angular.io';
19      this.votes = 10;
20  }
```

And we define two functions for voting, one for voting up `voteUp` and one for voting down `voteDown`:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
22  voteUp() {
23      this.votes += 1;
24  }
25
26  voteDown() {
27      this.votes -= 1;
28  }
```

In `voteUp` we increment `this.votes` by one. Similarly we decrement for `voteDown`.

Using the app-article Component

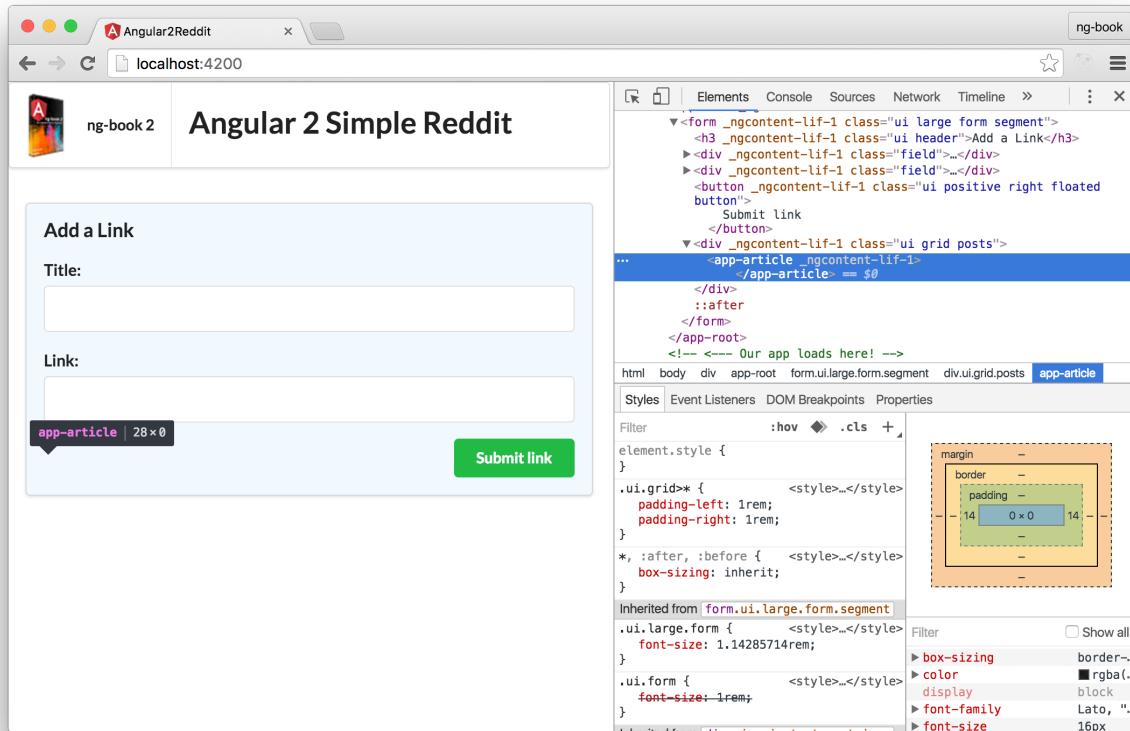
In order to use this component and make the data visible, we have to add a `<app-article></app-article>` tag somewhere in our markup.

In this case, we want the `AppComponent` to render this new component, so let's update the code in that component. Add the `<app-article>` tag to the `AppComponent`'s template right after the closing `</form>` tag:

```
1  <button (click)="addArticle(newtitle, newlink)"
2          class="ui positive right floated button">
3      Submit link
4  </button>
5  </form>
6
7  <div class="ui grid posts">
8      <app-article>
9      </app-article>
10 </div>
```

If we reload the browser now, we will see that the `<app-article>` tag wasn't compiled. Oh no!

Whenever hitting a problem like this, the first thing to do is open up your browser's developer console. If we inspect our markup (see screenshot below), we can see that the `app-article` tag is on our page, but it hasn't been compiled into markup. Why not?



Unexpanded tag when inspecting the DOM

This happens because the `AppComponent` component **doesn't know about the `ArticleComponent` component yet.**



Angular 1 Note: If you've used Angular 1 it might be surprising that our app doesn't know about our new `app-article` component. This is because in Angular 1, directives match globally. However, in Angular you need to explicitly specify which components (and therefore, which selectors) you want to use.

On the one hand, this requires a little more configuration. On the other hand, it's great for building scalable apps because it means we don't have to share our directive selectors in a global namespace.

In order to tell our `AppComponent` about our new `ArticleComponent` component, we need to **add the `ArticleComponent` to the list of declarations in this `NgModule`.**



We add ArticleComponent to our declarations because ArticleComponent is part of this module (RedditAppModule). However, if ArticleComponent were part of a *different* module, then we might import it with imports.

We'll discuss more about NgModules later on, but for now, know that when you create a new component, you have to put in a declarations in NgModules.

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.module.ts

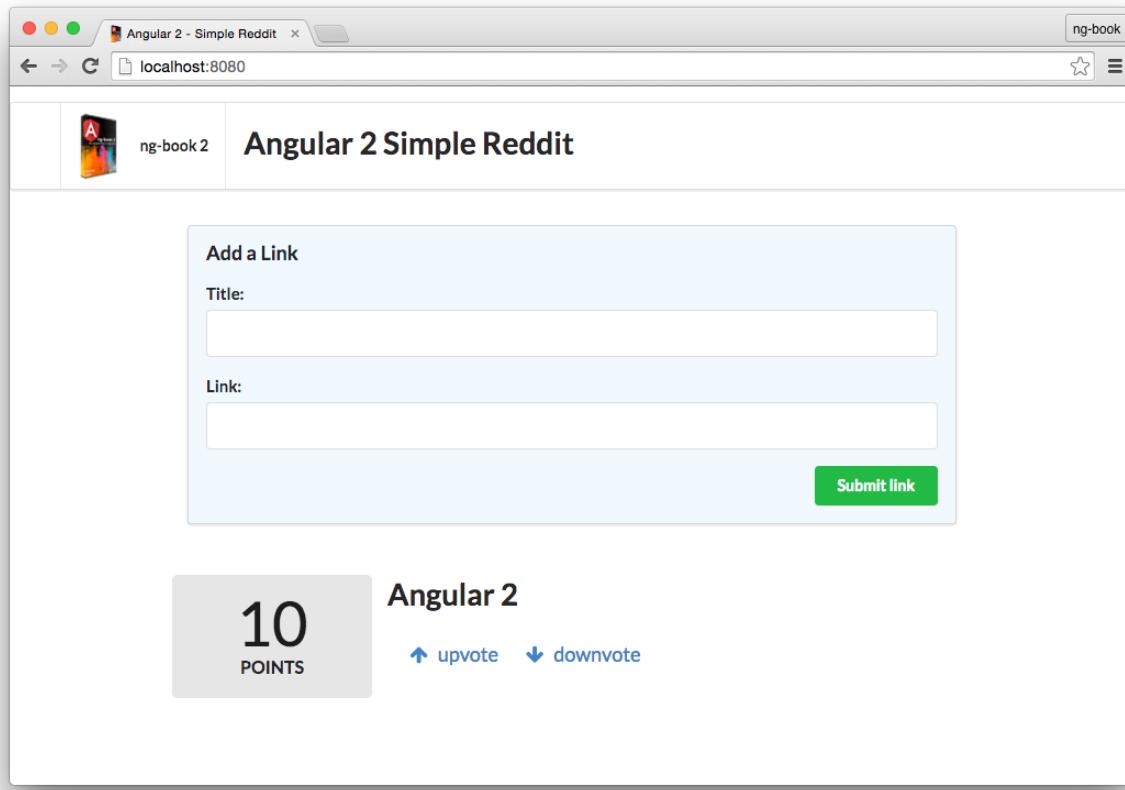
```
6 import { AppComponent } from './app.component';
7 import { ArticleComponent } from './article/article.component';
8
9 @NgModule({
10   declarations: [
11     AppComponent,
12     ArticleComponent // <-- added this
13   ],

```

See here that we are:

1. importing ArticleComponent and then
2. Adding ArticleComponent to the list of declarations

After you've added ArticleComponent to declarations in the NgModule, if we reload the browser we should see the article properly rendered:



Rendered ArticleComponent component

However, clicking on the **vote up** or **vote down** links will cause the page to reload instead of updating the article list.

JavaScript, by default, propagates the `click` event to all the parent components. Because the `click` event is propagated to parents, our browser is trying to follow the empty link, which tells the browser to reload.

To fix that, we need to make the click event handler to return `false`. This will ensure the browser won't try to refresh the page. Let's update our code so that each of the functions `voteUp()` and `voteDown()` return a boolean value of `false` (tells the browser *not* to propagate the event upwards):

```
1 voteDown(): boolean {  
2     this.votes -= 1;  
3     return false;  
4 }  
5 // and similarly with `voteUp()`
```

Now when we click the links we'll see that the votes increase and decrease properly without a page refresh.

Rendering Multiple Rows

Right now we only have one article on the page and there's no way to render more, unless we paste another `<app-article>` tag. And even if we did that all the articles would have the same content, so it wouldn't be very interesting.

Creating an Article class

A good practice when writing Angular code is to try to isolate the data structures we are using from the component code. To do this, let's create a data structure that represents a single article. Let's add a new file `article.model.ts` to define an `Article` class that we can use.

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.model.ts

```
1 export class Article {  
2     title: string;  
3     link: string;  
4     votes: number;  
5  
6     constructor(title: string, link: string, votes?: number) {  
7         this.title = title;  
8         this.link = link;  
9         this.votes = votes || 0;  
10    }  
11 }
```

Here we are creating a new class that represents an `Article`. Note that this is a **plain class and not an Angular component**. In the Model-View-Controller pattern this would be the **Model**.

Each article has a `title`, a `link`, and a total for the `votes`. When creating a new article we need the `title` and the `link`. The `votes` parameter is optional (denoted by the `?` at the end of the name) and defaults to zero.

Now let's update the `ArticleComponent` code to use our new `Article` class. Instead of storing the properties directly on the `ArticleComponent` component let's **store the properties on an instance of the Article class**.

First let's import the class:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
2 import { Article } from './article.model';
```

Then let's use it:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
12 export class ArticleComponent implements OnInit {  
13   article: Article;  
14  
15   constructor() {  
16     this.article = new Article(  
17       'Angular 2',  
18       'http://angular.io',  
19       10);  
20   }  
21  
22   voteUp(): boolean {  
23     this.article.votes += 1;  
24     return false;  
25   }  
26  
27   voteDown(): boolean {  
28     this.article.votes -= 1;  
29     return false;  
30   }  
31  
32   ngOnInit() {  
33   }  
34  
35 }
```

Notice what we've changed: instead of storing the `title`, `link`, and `votes` properties directly on the component, we're storing a reference to an `article`. What's neat is that we've defined the type of `article` to be our new `Article` class.

When it comes to `voteUp` (and `voteDown`), we don't increment `votes` on the component, but rather, we need to increment the `votes` on the `article`.

However, this refactoring introduces another change: we need to update our view to get the template variables from the right location. To do that, we need to change our template tags to read from `article`. That is, where before we had `{{ votes }}`, we need to change it to `{{ article.votes }}`, and same with `title` and `link`:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.html

```

1 <div class="four wide column center aligned votes">
2   <div class="ui statistic">
3     <div class="value">
4       {{ article.votes }}
5     </div>
6     <div class="label">
7       Points
8     </div>
9   </div>
10 </div>
11 <div class="twelve wide column">
12   <a class="ui large header" href="{{ article.link }}>
13     {{ article.title }}
14   </a>
15   <ul class="ui big horizontal list voters">
16     <li class="item">
17       <a href (click)="voteUp()">
18         <i class="arrow up icon"></i>
19         upvote
20       </a>
21     </li>
22     <li class="item">
23       <a href (click)="voteDown()">
24         <i class="arrow down icon"></i>
25         downvote
26       </a>
27     </li>
28   </ul>
29 </div>

```

Reload the browser and everything still works.

This situation is better but something in our code is still off: our `voteUp` and `voteDown` methods break the encapsulation of the `Article` class by changing the article's internal properties directly.



`voteUp` and `voteDown` currently break the [Law of Demeter²⁴](#) which says that a given object should assume as little as possible about the structure or properties of other objects.

The problem is that our `ArticleComponent` component knows too much about the `Article` class internals. To fix that, let's add `voteUp` and `voteDown` methods on the `Article` class.

²⁴http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law_of_Demeter

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.model.ts

```
1 export class Article {
2     title: string;
3     link: string;
4     votes: number;
5
6     constructor(title: string, link: string, votes?: number) {
7         this.title = title;
8         this.link = link;
9         this.votes = votes || 0;
10    }
11
12    voteUp(): void {
13        this.votes += 1;
14    }
15
16    voteDown(): void {
17        this.votes -= 1;
18    }
19
20    domain(): string {
21        try {
22            const link: string = this.link.split('///')[1];
23            return link.split('/')[0];
24        } catch (err) {
25            return null;
26        }
27    }
28 }
```

We can then change ArticleComponent to call these methods:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
12 export class ArticleComponent implements OnInit {
13     article: Article;
14
15     constructor() {
16         this.article = new Article(
17             'Angular 2',
18             'http://angular.io',
19             10);
```

```

20      }
21
22      voteUp(): boolean {
23          this.article.voteUp();
24          return false;
25      }
26
27      voteDown(): boolean {
28          this.article.voteDown();
29          return false;
30      }
31
32      ngOnInit() {
33      }
34
35  }

```



Why do we have a `voteUp` function in both the model and the component?

The reason we have a `voteUp()` and a `voteDown()` on both classes is because each function does a slightly different thing. The idea is that the `voteUp()` on the `ArticleComponent` relates to the **component view**, whereas the `Article` model `voteUp()` defines what *mutations happen in the model*.

That is, it allows the `Article` class to encapsulate what functionality should happen to a **model** when voting happens. In a “real” app, the internals of the `Article` model would probably be more complicated, e.g. make an API request to a webserver, and you wouldn’t want to have that sort of model-specific code in your component controller.

Similarly, in the `ArticleComponent` we `return false;` as a way to say “don’t propagate the event” - this is a view-specific piece of logic and we shouldn’t allow the `Article` model’s `voteUp()` function to have to know about that sort of view-specific API. That is, the `Article` model should allow voting apart from the specific view.

After reloading our browser, we’ll notice everything works the same way, but we now have clearer, simpler code.



Checkout our `ArticleComponent` component definition now: it’s so short! We’ve moved a lot of logic **out** of our component and into our models. The corresponding MVC guideline here might be [Fat Models, Skinny Controllers²⁵](#). The idea is that we want to move most of our logic to our models so that our components do the minimum work possible.

²⁵<http://weblog.jamisbuck.org/2006/10/18/skinny-controller-fat-model>

Storing Multiple Articles

Let's write the code that allows us to have a list of multiple Articles.

Let's start by changing AppComponent to have a collection of articles:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```
9  export class AppComponent {
10    articles: Article[];
11
12    constructor() {
13      this.articles = [
14        new Article('Angular 2', 'http://angular.io', 3),
15        new Article('Fullstack', 'http://fullstack.io', 2),
16        new Article('Angular Homepage', 'http://angular.io', 1),
17      ];
18    }
19
20    addArticle(title: HTMLInputElement, link: HTMLInputElement): boolean {
21      console.log(`Adding article title: ${title.value} and link: ${link.value}`);
22      this.articles.push(new Article(title.value, link.value, 0));
23      title.value = '';
24      link.value = '';
25      return false;
26    }
27 }
```

Notice that our AppComponent has the line:

```
1  articles: Article[];
```

The Article[] might look a little unfamiliar. We're saying here that articles is an Array of Articles. Another way this could be written is `Array<Article>`. The word for this pattern is *generics*. It's a concept seen in Java, C#, and other languages. The idea is that our collection (the Array) is typed. That is, the Array is a collection that will only hold objects of type Article.

We populate this Array by setting `this.articles` in the constructor:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```

12  constructor() {
13    this.articles = [
14      new Article('Angular 2', 'http://angular.io', 3),
15      new Article('Fullstack', 'http://fullstack.io', 2),
16      new Article('Angular Homepage', 'http://angular.io', 1),
17    ];
18  }

```

Configuring the ArticleComponent with inputs

Now that we have a list of Article *models*, how can we pass them to our ArticleComponent component?

Here again we use Inputs. Previously we had our ArticleComponent class defined like this:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```

12 export class ArticleComponent implements OnInit {
13   article: Article;
14
15   constructor() {
16     this.article = new Article(
17       'Angular 2',
18       'http://angular.io',
19       10);
20   }

```

The problem here is that we've hard coded a particular Article in the constructor. The point of making components is not only encapsulation, but also reusability.

What we would really like to do is to configure the Article we want to display. If, for instance, we had two articles, article1 and article2, we would like to be able to reuse the app-article component by passing an Article as a "parameter" to the component like this:

```

1 <app-article [article]="article1"></app-article>
2 <app-article [article]="article2"></app-article>

```

Angular allows us to do this by using the Input annotation on a property of a Component:

```
1 class ArticleComponent {  
2   @Input() article: Article;  
3   // ...
```

Now if we have an Article in a variable `myArticle` we could pass it to our ArticleComponent in our view. Remember, we can pass a variable in an element by surrounding it in square brackets `[variableName]`, like so:

```
1 <app-article [article]="myArticle"></app-article>
```

Notice the syntax here: we put the name of the input in brackets as in: `[article]` and the value of the attribute is what we want to pass in to that input.

Then, and this is important, the `this.article` on the ArticleComponent instance will be set to `myArticle`. We can think about the variable `myArticle` as being passed as a *parameter* (i.e. input) to our components.

Here's what our ArticleComponent component now looks like using `@Input`:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.component.ts

```
16 export class ArticleComponent implements OnInit {  
17   @Input() article: Article;  
18  
19   voteUp(): boolean {  
20     this.article.voteUp();  
21     return false;  
22   }  
23  
24   voteDown(): boolean {  
25     this.article.voteDown();  
26     return false;  
27   }  
28  
29   ngOnInit() {  
30   }  
31  
32 }
```

Rendering a List of Articles

Earlier we configured our AppComponent to store an array of `articles`. Now let's configure AppComponent to *render* all the `articles`. To do so, instead of having the `<app-article>` tag alone,

we are going to use the `NgFor` directive to iterate over the list of `articles` and render a `app-article` for each one:

Let's add this in the template of the `AppComponent` @Component, just below the closing `<form>` tag:

```

1   Submit link
2   </button>
3 </form>
4
5 <!-- start adding here -->
6 <div class="ui grid posts">
7   <app-article
8     *ngFor="let article of articles"
9     [article]="article">
10    </app-article>
11 </div>
12 <!-- end adding here -->
```

Remember when we rendered a list of names as a bullet list using the `NgFor` directive earlier in the chapter? This syntax also works for rendering multiple components.

The `*ngFor="let article of articles"` syntax will iterate through the list of `articles` and create the local variable `article` (for each item in the list).

To specify the `article` input on a component, we are using the `[inputName]="inputValue"` expression. In this case, we're saying that we want to set the `article` input to the value of the local variable `article` set by `ngFor`.



We are using the variable `article` many times in that previous code snippet, it's (potentially) clearer if we rename the temporary variable created by `NgFor` to `foobar`:

```

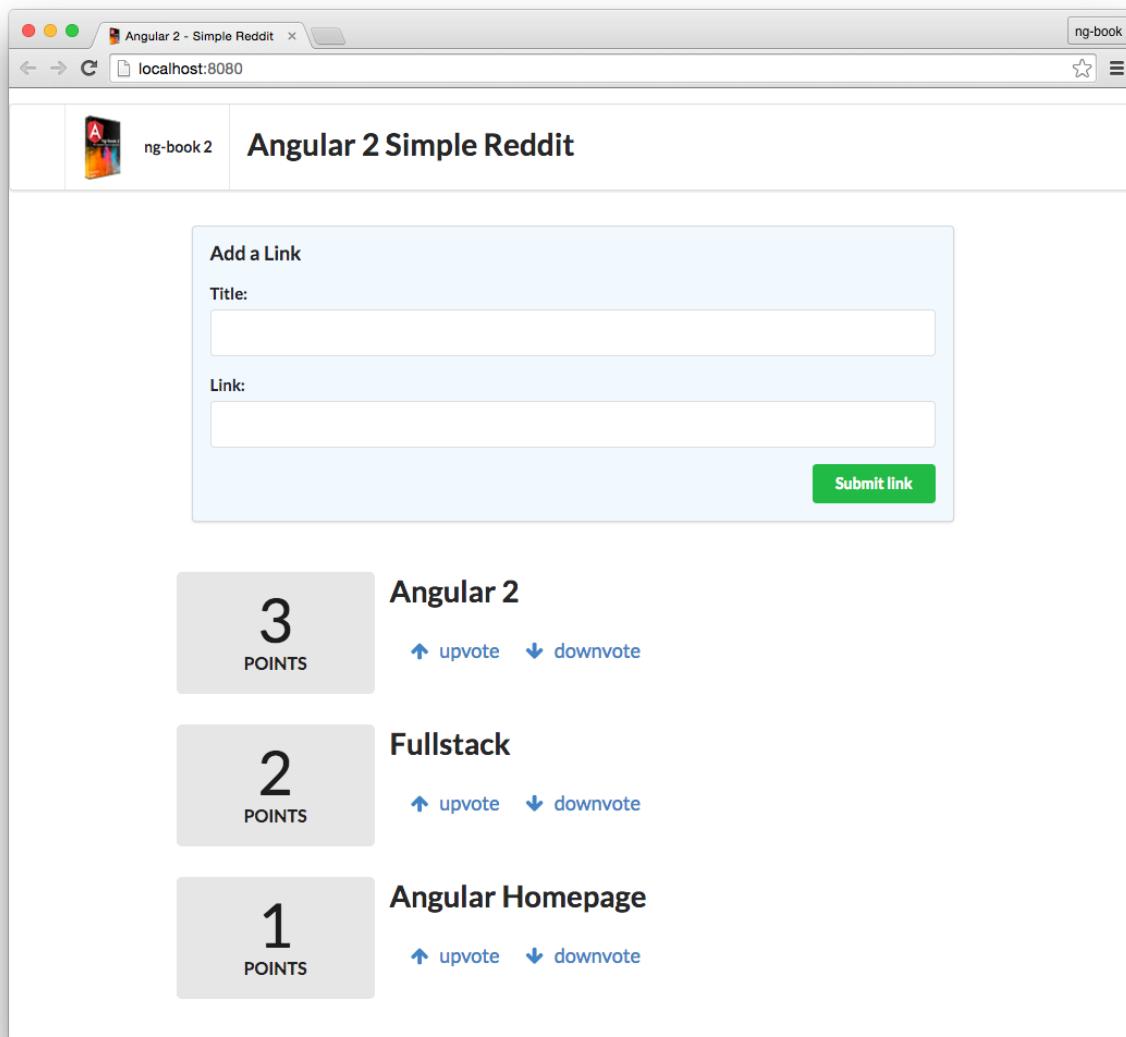
1   <app-article
2     *ngFor="let foobar of articles"
3     [article]="foobar">
4   </app-article>
```

So here we have three variables:

1. `articles` which is an `Array` of `Articles`, defined on the `RedditApp` component
2. `foobar` which is a single element of `articles` (an `Article`), defined by `NgFor`
3. `article` which is the name of the field defined on `inputs` of the `ArticleComponent`

Basically, `NgFor` generates a temporary variable `foobar` and then we're passing it in to `app-article`

Reloading our browser now, we will see all articles will be rendered:



Multiple articles being rendered

Adding New Articles

Now we need to change `addArticle` to actually add new articles when the button is pressed. Change the `addArticle` method to match the following:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```
20  addArticle(title: HTMLInputElement, link: HTMLInputElement): boolean {
21    console.log(`Adding article title: ${title.value} and link: ${link.value}`);
22    this.articles.push(new Article(title.value, link.value, 0));
23    title.value = '';
24    link.value = '';
25    return false;
26 }
```

This will:

1. create a new Article instance with the submitted title and URL
2. add it to the array of Articles and
3. clear the input field values



How are we clearing the input field values? Well, if you recall, `title` and `link` are `HTMLInputElement` objects. That means we can set their properties. When we change the `value` property, the `input` tag on our page changes.

After adding a new article in our input fields and clicking the **Submit Link** we will see the new article added!

Finishing Touches

Displaying the Article Domain

As a nice touch, let's add a hint next to the link that shows the domain where the user will be redirected to when the link is clicked.

Let's add a `domain` method to the `Article` class:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/article/article.model.ts

```

20   domain(): string {
21     try {
22       const link: string = this.link.split('///')[1];
23       return link.split('/')[0];
24     } catch (err) {
25       return null;
26     }
27   }

```

Let's add a call to this function on the ArticleComponent's template:

```

1 <div class="twelve wide column">
2   <a class="ui large header" href="{{ article.link }}>
3     {{ article.title }}
4   </a>
5   <!-- right here -->
6   <div class="meta">{{ article.domain() }}</div>
7   <ul class="ui big horizontal list voters">
8     <li class="item">
9       <a href (click)="voteUp()">

```

And now when we reload the browser, we will see the domain name of each URL (note: URL must include *http://*).

Re-sorting Based on Score

Clicking and voting on articles, we'll see that something doesn't feel quite right: our articles don't sort based on score! We definitely want to see the highest-rated items on top and the lower ranking ones sink to the bottom.

We're storing the articles in an Array in our AppComponent class, but that Array is unsorted. An easy way to handle this is to create a new method sortedArticles on AppComponent:

code/first_app/angular-reddit/src/app/app.component.ts

```

28   sortedArticles(): Article[] {
29     return this.articles.sort((a: Article, b: Article) => b.votes - a.votes);
30   }

```

In our ngFor we can iterate over sortedArticles() (instead of articles directly):

```
1 <div class="ui grid posts">
2   <app-article
3     *ngFor="let article of sortedArticles()"
4       [article]="article">
5   </app-article>
6 </div>
```

Deployment

Now that we have an app that runs, let's get it live on the internet, so that we can share it with our friends!



Deployment and performance in production-ready apps is an intermediate topic that we'll cover in a future chapter. For now, we're going to gloss over the details and just show how easy a basic deployment can be.

Deploying our app is the act of pushing our code to a server, where it can be accessed by others. Broadly speaking, the idea is that we're going to:

- *compile* all of our TypeScript code into JavaScript (which the browser can read)
- *bundle* all of our JavaScript code files into one or two files
- and then *upload* our JavaScript, HTML, CSS, and images to a server

Ultimately, this Angular app is an HTML file that *loads JavaScript code*. So we need to upload our code to a computer somewhere on the internet.

But first, let's **build** our Angular app.

Building Our App for Production

The `angular-cli` tool we used to generate this app can be used to build our app for production. In fact, we just type a single command.

In `first_app/angular-reddit`, type the following:

```
1 ng build --target=production --base-href '/'
```

This command tells the `ng` tool to **build** our application for a production environment. We also set the `--base-href` to a single slash `/`.

The `base-href` describes what the 'root' URL of our application will be. So, for instance, if you wanted to deploy your app to a subfolder on your server under `/ng-book-demo/`, you could base `--base-href` `'/ng-book-demo/'`

This command will run for a little while and when it finishes you should have a `dist` folder on your disk.

```
1 $ ls dist/
2 136B assets/
3 5.3K favicon.ico
4 27K flags.9c74e172f87984c48ddf.png
5 306K icons.2980083682e94d33a66e.svg
6 119K icons.706450d7bba6374ca02f.ttf
7 55K icons.97493d3f11c0a3bd5cbd.woff2
8 70K icons.d9ee23d59d0e0e727b51.woff
9 59K icons.f7c2b4b747b1a225eb8d.eot
10 1.1K index.html
11 1.4K inline.44deb5fed75ee6385e18.bundle.js
12 17K main.c683e6eda100e8873d71.bundle.js
13 82K polyfills.b81504c68200c7bfeb16.bundle.js
14 503K styles.7f23e351d688b00e8a5b.bundle.css
15 440K vendor.cc4297c08c0803bddc87.bundle.js
```

These files are the full compiled result of your app. Notice that there is a long string of characters in the middle of each file such as:

```
1 main.c683e6eda100e8873d71.bundle.js
```

Those characters are a hash of the content (and may not match on your computer). If you look at each file, you can see that we have some icons, the `index.html`, a `main.js`, a `polyfills.js`, a `vendor.js`, and some `styles.css`. Now all the need to do is upload these to our server.

Uploading to a Server

There are lots of ways to host your HTML and JavaScript. For this demo, we're going to use the easiest way possible: [now²⁶](#).



If you don't want to use now, you're free to use whatever method you want. For instance, you can host sites on Heroku, AWS S3, upload files to your own server via FTP, etc.

The important thing is that the server exposes all of the files in our `dist` folder onto the internet.

Installing now

We can install now using npm:

²⁶<https://zeit.co/now>

```
1 npm install -g now
```

To deploy a site with now is very easy:

```
1 cd dist # change into the dist folder
2 now
```

The now command should ask you a couple of questions (such as your email address) and you'll need to check your email and click the link inside.

After you've confirmed your account (or if you had one already), now will **upload your code** and then **give you a URL** to view to see your application.

Visit that URL and view your app. If it works, try sending the URL to a friend!

Congratulations! You've built and deployed your first Angular app!

Full Code Listing

We've been exploring many small pieces of code for this chapter. You can find all of the files and the complete TypeScript code for our app in the example code download included with this book.

Wrapping Up

We did it! We've created our first Angular App. That wasn't so bad, was it? There's lots more to learn: understanding data flow, making AJAX requests, built-in directives, routing, manipulating the DOM etc.

But for now, bask in our success! Much of writing Angular apps is just as we did above:

1. Split your app into components
2. Create the views
3. Define your models
4. Display your models
5. Add interaction

In the future chapters of this book we'll cover everything you need to write sophisticated apps with Angular.

Getting Help

Did you have any trouble with this chapter? Did you find a bug or have trouble getting the code running? We'd love to hear from you!

- Come join our (free!) community and [chat with us on Gitter²⁷](#)
- Email us directly at us@fullstack.io²⁸

Onward!

²⁷<https://gitter.im/ng-book/ng-book>

²⁸<mailto:us@fullstack.io>

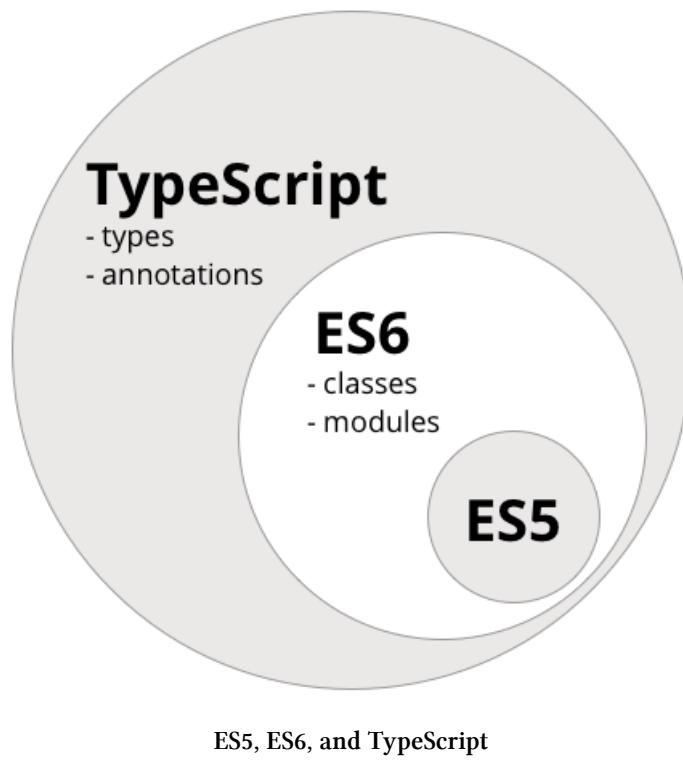
TypeScript

Angular 2 is built in TypeScript

Angular 2 is built in a Javascript-like language called [TypeScript²⁹](#).

You might be skeptical of using a new language just for Angular, but it turns out, there are a lot of great reasons to use TypeScript instead of plain Javascript.

TypeScript isn't a completely new language, it's a superset of ES6. If we write ES6 code, it's perfectly valid and compilable TypeScript code. Here's a diagram that shows the relationship between the languages:



What is ES5? What is ES6? ES5 is short for “ECMAScript 5”, otherwise known as “regular Javascript”. ES5 is the normal Javascript we all know and love. It runs in more-or-less every browser. ES6 is the next version of Javascript, which we talk more about below.

²⁹<http://www.typescriptlang.org/>

At the publishing of this book, very few browsers will run ES6 out of the box, much less TypeScript. To solve this issue we have *transpilers* (or sometimes called *transcompiler*). The TypeScript transpiler takes our TypeScript code as input and outputs ES5 code that nearly all browsers understand.



For converting TypeScript to ES5 there is a single transpiler written by the core TypeScript team. However if we wanted to convert *ES6* code (not TypeScript) to *ES5* there are two major ES6-to-ES5 transpilers: [traceur³⁰](#) by Google and [babel³¹](#) created by the JavaScript community. We're not going to be using either directly for this book, but they're both great projects that are worth knowing about.

We installed TypeScript in the last chapter, but in case you're just starting out in this chapter, you can install it like so:

```
npm install -g typescript
```

TypeScript is an official collaboration between Microsoft and Google. That's great news because with two tech heavyweights behind it we know that it will be supported for a long time. Both groups are committed to moving the web forward and as developers we win because of it.

One of the great things about transpilers is that they allow relatively small teams to make improvements to a language without requiring everyone on the internet upgrade their browser.

One thing to point out: we don't *have* to use TypeScript with Angular2. If you want to use ES5 (i.e. "regular" JavaScript), you definitely can. There is an ES5 API that provides access to all functionality of Angular2. Then why should we use TypeScript at all? Because there are some great features in TypeScript that make development a lot better.

What do we get with TypeScript?

There are five big improvements that TypeScript bring over ES5:

- types
- classes
- annotations
- imports
- language utilities (e.g. destructuring)

Let's deal with these one at a time.

³⁰<https://github.com/google/traceur-compiler>

³¹<https://babeljs.io/>

Types

The major improvement of TypeScript over ES6, that gives the language its name, is the typing system.

For some people the lack of type checking is considered one of the benefits of using a language like JavaScript. You might be a little skeptical of type checking but I'd encourage you to give it a chance. One of the great things about type checking is that

1. it helps when *writing* code because it can prevent bugs at compile time and
2. it helps when *reading* code because it clarifies your intentions

It's also worth noting that types are optional in TypeScript. If we want to write some quick code or prototype a feature, we can omit types and gradually add them as the code becomes more mature.

TypeScript's basic types are the same ones we've been using implicitly when we write "normal" JavaScript code: strings, numbers, booleans, etc.

Up until ES5, we would define variables with the `var` keyword, like `var name;`.

The new TypeScript syntax is a natural evolution from ES5, we still use `var` but now we can optionally provide the variable type along with its name:

```
1 var name: string;
```

When declaring functions we can use types for arguments and return values:

```
1 function greetText(name: string): string {
2     return "Hello " + name;
3 }
```

In the example above we are defining a new function called `greetText` which takes one argument: `name`. The syntax `name: string` says that this function expects `name` to be a `string`. Our code won't compile if we call this function with anything other than a `string` and that's a good thing because otherwise we'd introduce a bug.

Notice that the `greetText` function also has a new syntax after the parentheses: `: string {`. The colon indicates that we will specify the return type for this function, which in this case is a `string`. This is helpful because 1. if we accidentally return anything other than a `string` in our code, the compiler will tell us that we made a mistake and 2. any other developers who want to use this function know precisely what type of object they'll be getting.

Let's see what happens if we try to write code that doesn't conform to our declared typing:

```
1 function hello(name: string): string {  
2     return 12;  
3 }
```

If we try to compile it, we'll see the following error:

```
1 $ tsc compile-error.ts  
2 compile-error.ts(2,12): error TS2322: Type 'number' is not assignable to type 'string'.  
3 
```

What happened here? We tried to return 12 which is a number, but we stated that `hello` would return a string (by putting the `: string {` after the argument declaration).

In order to correct this, we need to update the function declaration to return a number:

```
1 function hello(name: string): number {  
2     return 12;  
3 }
```

This is one small example, but already we can see that by using types it can save us from a lot of bugs down the road.

So now that we know how to use types, how can we know what types are available to use? Let's look at the list of built-in types, and then we'll figure out how to create our own.

Trying it out with a REPL

To play with the examples on this chapter, let's install a nice little utility called **TSUN**³² (TypeScript Upgraded Node):

```
1 $ npm install -g tsun
```

Now start tsun:

³²<https://github.com/HerringtonDarkholme/typescript-repl>

```
1 $ tsun
2 TSUN : TypeScript Upgraded Node
3 type in TypeScript expression to evaluate
4 type :help for commands in repl
5
6 >
```

That little > is the prompt indicating that TSUN is ready to take in commands.

In most of the examples below, you can copy and paste into this terminal and follow along.

Built-in types

String

A string holds text and is declared using the `string` type:

```
1 var name: string = 'Felipe';
```

Number

A number is any type of numeric value. In TypeScript, all numbers are represented as floating point. The type for numbers is `number`:

```
1 var age: number = 36;
```

Boolean

The `boolean` holds either `true` or `false` as the value.

```
1 var married: boolean = true;
```

Array

Arrays are declared with the `Array` type. However, because an `Array` is a collection, we also need to specify the type of the objects *in* the `Array`.

We specify the type of the items in the array with either the `Array<type>` or `type[]` notations:

```
1 var jobs: Array<string> = ['IBM', 'Microsoft', 'Google'];
2 var jobs: string[] = ['Apple', 'Dell', 'HP'];
```

Or similarly with a number:

```
1 var jobs: Array<number> = [1, 2, 3];
2 var jobs: number[] = [4, 5, 6];
```

Enums

Enums work by naming numeric values. For instance, if we wanted to have a fixed list of roles a person may have we could write this:

```
1 enum Role {Employee, Manager, Admin};
2 var role: Role = Role.Employee;
```

The default initial value for an enum is 0. You can tweak either the start of the range:

```
1 enum Role {Employee = 3, Manager, Admin};
2 var role: Role = Role.Employee;
```

In the code above, instead of Employee being 0, Employee is 3. The value of the enum increments from there, which means Manager is 4 and Admin is 5, and we can even set individual values:

```
1 enum Role {Employee = 3, Manager = 5, Admin = 7};
2 var role: Role = Role.Employee;
```

You can also look up the name of a given enum by using its value:

```
1 enum Role {Employee, Manager, Admin};
2 console.log('Roles: ', Role[0], ',', Role[1], 'and', Role[2]);
```

Any

any is the default type if we omit typing for a given variable. Having a variable of type any allows it to receive any kind of value:

```
1 var something: any = 'as string';
2 something = 1;
3 something = [1, 2, 3];
```

Void

Using `void` means there's no type expected. This is usually in functions with no return value:

```
1 function setName(name: string): void {
2   this.name = name;
3 }
```

Classes

In Javascript ES5 object oriented programming was accomplished by using prototype-based objects. This model doesn't use classes, but instead relies on *prototypes*.

A number of good practices have been adopted by the JavaScript community to compensate the lack of classes. A good summary of those good practices can be found in [Mozilla Developer Network's JavaScript Guide³³](#), and you can find a good overview on the [Introduction to Object-Oriented Javascript³⁴](#) page.

However, in ES6 we finally have built-in classes in Javascript.

To define a class we use the new `class` keyword and give our class a name and a body:

```
1 class Vehicle {
2 }
```

Classes may have *properties*, *methods*, and *constructors*.

Properties

Properties define data attached to an instance of a class. For example, a class named `Person` might have properties like `first_name`, `last_name` and `age`.

Each property in a class can optionally have a type. For example, we could say that the `first_name` and `last_name` properties are `strings` and the `age` property is a `number`.

The declaration for a `Person` class that looks like this:

³³<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide>

³⁴https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Introduction_to_Object-Oriented_JavaScript

```
1 class Person {  
2     first_name: string;  
3     last_name: string;  
4     age: number;  
5 }
```

Methods

Methods are functions that run in context of an object. To call a method on an object, we first have to have an instance of that object.



To instantiate a class, we use the `new` keyword. Use `new Person()` to create a new instance of the `Person` class, for example.

If we wanted to add a way to greet a `Person` using the class above, we would write something like:

```
1 class Person {  
2     first_name: string;  
3     last_name: string;  
4     age: number;  
5  
6     greet() {  
7         console.log("Hello", this.first_name);  
8     }  
9 }
```

Notice that we're able to access the `first_name` for this `Person` by using the `this` keyword and calling `this.first_name`.

When methods don't declare an explicit returning type and return a value, it's assumed they can return anything (any type). However, in this case we are returning `void`, since there's no explicit return statement.



Note that a `void` value is also a valid `any` value.

In order to invoke the `greet` method, you would need to first have an instance of the `Person` class. Here's how we do that:

```
1 // declare a variable of type Person
2 var p: Person;
3
4 // instantiate a new Person instance
5 p = new Person();
6
7 // give it a first_name
8 p.first_name = 'Felipe';
9
10 // call the greet method
11 p.greet();
```



You can declare a variable and instantiate a class on the same line if you want:

```
1 var p: Person = new Person();
```

Say we want to have a method on the Person class that returns a value. For instance, to know the age of a Person in a number of years from now, we could write:

```
1 class Person {
2     first_name: string;
3     last_name: string;
4     age: number;
5
6     greet() {
7         console.log("Hello", this.first_name);
8     }
9
10    ageInYears(years: number): number {
11        return this.age + years;
12    }
13}
```

```
1 // instantiate a new Person instance
2 var p: Person = new Person();
3
4 // set initial age
5 p.age = 6;
6
7 // how old will he be in 12 years?
8 p.ageInYears(12);
9
10 // -> 18
```

Constructors

A *constructor* is a special method that is executed when a new instance of the class is being created. Usually, the constructor is where you perform any initial setup for new objects.

Constructor methods must be named `constructor`. They can optionally take parameters but they can't return any values, since they are called when the class is being instantiated (i.e. an instance of the class is being created, no other value can be returned).



In order to instantiate a class we call the class constructor method by using the class name:
`new ClassName()`.

When a class has no constructor defined explicitly one will be created automatically:

```
1 class Vehicle {
2 }
3 var v = new Vehicle();
```

Is the same as:

```
1 class Vehicle {
2   constructor() {
3   }
4 }
5 var v = new Vehicle();
```



In TypeScript you can have only **one constructor per class**.

That is a departure from ES6 which allows one class to have more than one constructor as long as they have a different number of parameters.

Constructors can take parameters when we want to parameterize our new instance creation.

For example, we can change `Person` to have a constructor that initializes our data:

```
1  class Person {
2      first_name: string;
3      last_name: string;
4      age: number;
5
6      constructor(first_name: string, last_name: string, age: number) {
7          this.first_name = first_name;
8          this.last_name = last_name;
9          this.age = age;
10     }
11
12     greet() {
13         console.log("Hello", this.first_name);
14     }
15
16     ageInYears(years: number): number {
17         return this.age + years;
18     }
19 }
```

It makes our previous example a little easier to write:

```
1 var p: Person = new Person('Felipe', 'Coury', 36);
2 p.greet();
```

This way the person's names and age are set for us when the object is created.

Inheritance

Another important aspect of object oriented programming is inheritance. Inheritance is a way to indicate that a class receives behavior from a parent class. Then we can override, modify or augment those behaviors on the new class.



If you want to have a deeper understanding of how inheritance used to work in ES5, take a look at the Mozilla Developer Network article about it: [Inheritance and the prototype chain³⁵](#).

TypeScript fully supports inheritance and, unlike ES5, it's built into the core language. Inheritance is achieved through the `extends` keyword.

To illustrate, let's say we've created a `Report` class:

³⁵https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Inheritance_and_the_prototype_chain

```
1  class Report {
2      data: Array<string>;
3
4      constructor(data: Array<string>) {
5          this.data = data;
6      }
7
8      run() {
9          this.data.forEach(function(line) { console.log(line); });
10     }
11 }
```

This report has a property `data` which is an `Array` of `strings`. When we call `run` we loop over each element of `data` and print them out using `console.log`



`.forEach` is a method on `Array` that accepts a function as an argument and calls that function for each element in the `Array`.

This Report works by adding lines and then calling `run` to print out the lines:

```
1 var r: Report = new Report(['First line', 'Second line']);
2 r.run();
```

Running this should show:

```
1 First line
2 Second line
```

Now let's say we want to have a second report that takes some headers and some data but we still want to reuse how the `Report` class presents the data to the user.

To reuse that behavior from the `Report` class we can use inheritance with the `extends` keyword:

```
1  class TabbedReport extends Report {
2      headers: Array<string>;
3
4      constructor(headers: string[], values: string[]) {
5          super(values)
6          this.headers = headers;
7      }
8
9      run() {
10         console.log(this.headers);
11         super.run();
12     }
13 }
```



```
1 var headers: string[] = ['Name'];
2 var data: string[] = ['Alice Green', 'Paul Pfifer', 'Louis Blakenship'];
3 var r: TabbedReport = new TabbedReport(headers, data)
4 r.run();
```

Utilities

ES6, and by extension TypeScript provides a number of syntax features that make programming really enjoyable. Two important ones are:

- fat arrow function syntax
- template strings

Fat Arrow Functions

Fat arrow => functions are a shorthand notation for writing functions.

In ES5, whenever we want to use a function as an argument we have to use the `function` keyword along with {} braces like so:

```
1 // ES5-like example
2 var data = ['Alice Green', 'Paul Pfifer', 'Louis Blakenship'];
3 data.forEach(function(line) { console.log(line); });
```

However with the => syntax we can instead rewrite it like so:

```
1 // Typescript example
2 var data: string[] = ['Alice Green', 'Paul Pfifer', 'Louis Blakenship'];
3 data.forEach( (line) => console.log(line) );
```

Parentheses are optional when there's only one parameter. The `=>` syntax can be used both as an expression:

```
1 var evens = [2,4,6,8];
2 var odds = evens.map(v => v + 1);
```

Or as a statement:

```
1 data.forEach( line => {
2   console.log(line.toUpperCase())
3 });
```

One important feature of the `=>` syntax is that it shares the same `this` as the surrounding code. This is **important** and different than what happens when you normally create a function in Javascript. Generally when you write a function in Javascript that function is given its own `this`. Sometimes in Javascript we see code like this:

```
1 var nate = {
2   name: "Nate",
3   guitars: ["Gibson", "Martin", "Taylor"],
4   printGuitars: function() {
5     var self = this;
6     this.guitars.forEach(function(g) {
7       // this.name is undefined so we have to use self.name
8       console.log(self.name + " plays a " + g);
9     });
10  }
11};
```

Because the fat arrow shares `this` with its surrounding code, we can instead write this:

```
1 var nate = {  
2   name: "Nate",  
3   guitars: ["Gibson", "Martin", "Taylor"],  
4   printGuitars: function() {  
5     this.guitars.forEach( (g) => {  
6       console.log(this.name + " plays a " + g);  
7     });  
8   }  
9 };
```

Arrows are a great way to cleanup your inline functions. It makes it even easier to use higher-order functions in Javascript.

Template Strings

In ES6 new template strings were introduced. The two great features of template strings are

1. Variables within strings (without being forced to concatenate with +) and
2. Multi-line strings

Variables in strings

This feature is also called “string interpolation.” The idea is that you can put variables right in your strings. Here’s how:

```
1 var firstName = "Nate";  
2 var lastName = "Murray";  
3  
4 // interpolate a string  
5 var greeting = `Hello ${firstName} ${lastName}`;  
6  
7 console.log(greeting);
```

Note that to use string interpolation you must enclose your string in **backticks** not single or double quotes.

Multiline strings

Another great feature of backtick strings is multi-line strings:

```
1 var template = ` 
2 <div>
3   <h1>Hello</h1>
4   <p>This is a great website</p>
5 </div>
6 `
7
8 // do something with `template`
```

Multiline strings are a huge help when we want to put strings in our code that are a little long, like templates.

Wrapping up

There are a variety of other features in TypeScript/ES6 such as:

- Interfaces
- Generics
- Importing and Exporting Modules
- Annotations
- Destructuring

We'll be touching on these concepts as we use them throughout the book, but for now these basics should get you started.

Let's get back to Angular!

How Angular Works

In this chapter, we're going to talk about the high-level concepts of Angular. We're going to take a step back so that we can see how all the pieces fit together.



If you've used AngularJS 1.x, you'll notice that Angular has a new mental-model for building applications. Don't panic! As AngularJS 1.x users ourselves we've found Angular to be both straightforward and familiar. A little later in this book we're going to talk specifically about how to convert your AngularJS 1.x apps to Angular.

In the chapters that follow, we'll be taking a deep dive into each concept, but here we're just going to give an overview and explain the foundational ideas.

The first big idea is that an Angular application is made up of *Components*. One way to think of Components is a way to teach the browser new tags. If you have an Angular 1 background, Components are analogous to *directives* in AngularJS 1.x (it turns out, Angular has directives too, but we'll talk more about this distinction later on).

However, Angular Components have some significant advantages over AngularJS 1.x directives and we'll talk about that below. First, let's start at the top: the Application.

Application

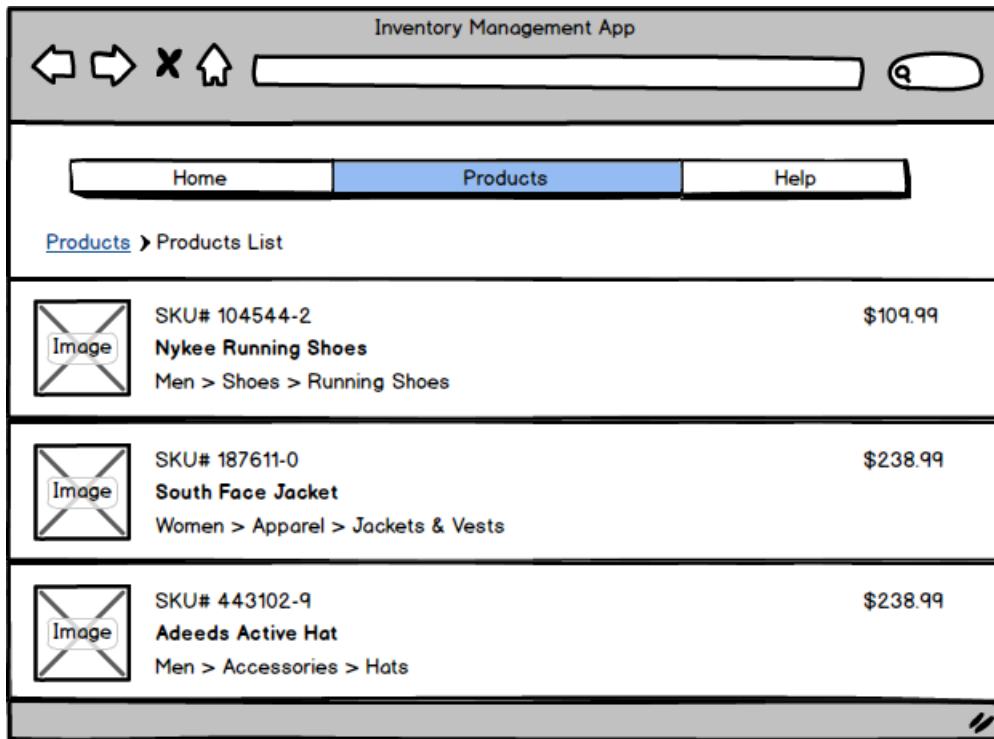
An Angular Application is nothing more than a tree of Components.

At the root of that tree, the top level Component is the application itself. And that's what the browser will render when "booting" (a.k.a *bootstrapping*) the app.

One of the great things about Components is that they're **composable**. This means that we can build up larger Components from smaller ones. The Application is simply a Component that renders other Components.

Because Components are structured in a parent/child tree, when each Component renders, it recursively renders its children Components.

For example, let's create a simple inventory management application that is represented by the following page mockup:



Inventory Management App

Given this mockup, to write this application the first thing we want to do is split it into components. In this example, we could group the page into three high level components

1. The Navigation Component
2. The Breadcrumbs Component
3. The Product Info Component

The Navigation Component

This component would render the navigation section. This would allow the user to visit other areas of the application.



Navigation Component

The Breadcrumbs Component

This would render a hierarchical representation of where in the application the user currently is.

[Products](#) › Products List

Breadcrumbs Component

The Product List Component

The Products List component would be a representation of a collection of products.

	SKU# 104544-2 Nykee Running Shoes Men > Shoes > Running Shoes	\$109.99
	SKU# 187611-0 South Face Jacket Women > Apparel > Jackets & Vests	\$238.99
	SKU# 443102-9 Adeeds Active Hat Men > Accessories > Hats	\$238.99

Product List Component

Breaking this component down into the next level of smaller components, we could say that the Product List is composed of multiple Product Rows.

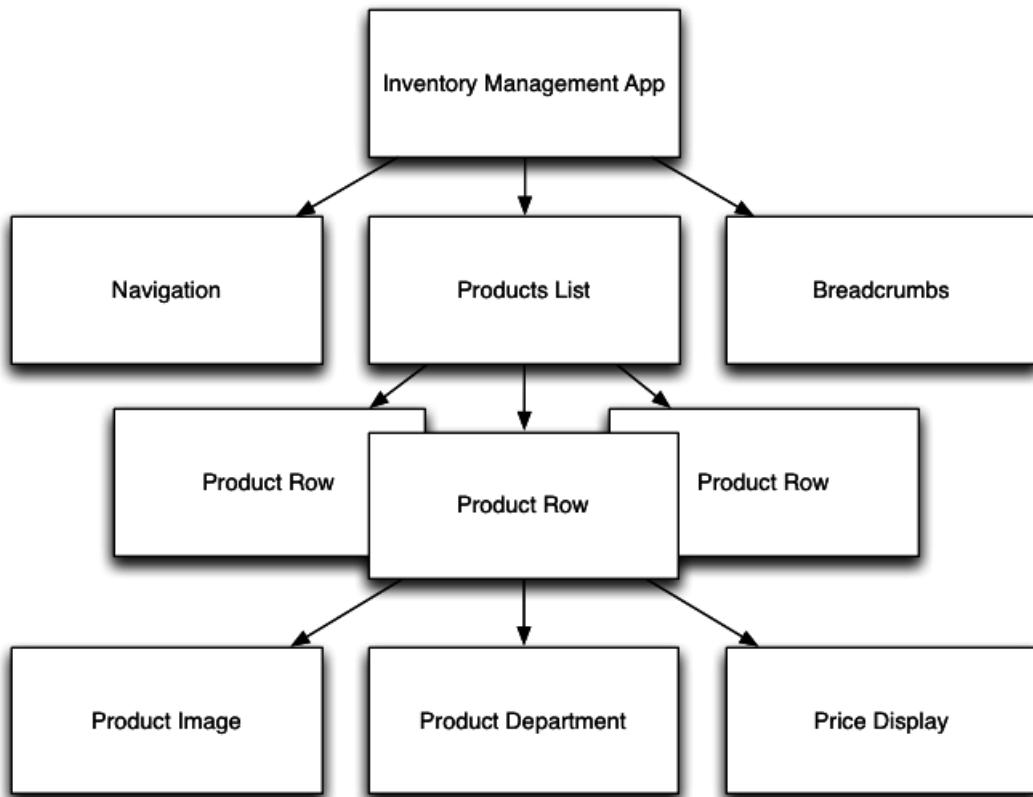
	SKU# 104544-2 Nykee Running Shoes Men > Shoes > Running Shoes	\$109.99
---	--	----------

Product Row Component

And of course, we could continue one step further, breaking each Product Row into smaller pieces:

- the **Product Image** component would be responsible for rendering a product image, given its image name
- the **Product Department** component would render the department tree, like *Men > Shoes > Running Shoes*
- the **Price Display** component would render the price. Imagine that our implementation customizes the pricing if the user is logged in to include system-wide tier discounts or include shipping for instance. We could implement all this behavior into this component.

Finally, putting it all together into a tree representation, we end up with the following diagram:



App Tree Diagram

At the top we see **Inventory Management App**: that's our application.

Under the application we have the Navigation, the Breadcrumb and the Products List components.

The Products List component has Product Rows, one for each product.

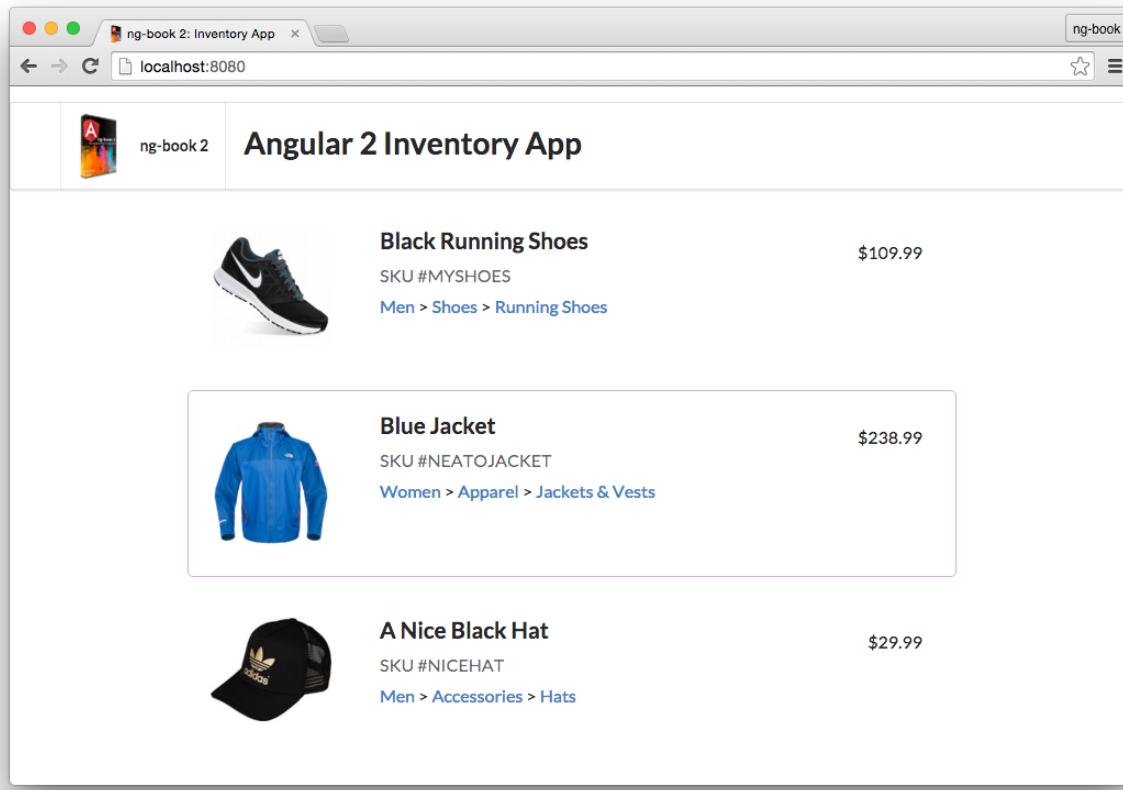
And the Product Row uses three components itself: one for the image, the department, and the price.

Let's work together to build this application.



You can find the full code listing for this chapter in the downloads under `how_angular_-works/inventory-app`.

Here's a screenshot of what our app will look like when we're done:



Completed Inventory App

How to Use This Chapter

In this chapter we're going to explain the fundamental concepts required when building Angular apps by walking through an app that we've built. We'll explain:

- How to break your app into components
- How to make reusable components using *inputs*
- How to handle user interactions, such as *clicking* on a component

In this chapter, we've used `angular-cli`, just as we did before. This means you can use all of the normal `ng` commands such as:

```
1 ng serve # runs the app
```

Also, in this chapter, we're not going to give step-by-step instructions on how to create each file in the app. If you'd like to follow along at home, when we introduce a new component you can run:

```
1 ng generate NameOfNewComponentHere
```

This will generate the files you need, and you're free to type in your code there or copy and paste code from the book or from our example code.

We've provided the entire, completed application in the code download folder under `how.angular_-works/inventory-app`. If you ever feel lost or need more context, take some time to look at the completed example code.

Let's get started building!

Product Model

One of the key things to realize about Angular is that it **doesn't prescribe a particular model library**.

Angular is flexible enough to support many different kinds of models (and data architectures). However, this means the choice is left to you as the user to determine how to implement these things.

We'll have a **lot** to say about data architectures in [future chapters](#). For now, though, we're going to have our models be plain JavaScript objects.

`code/how.angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/product.model.ts`

```
1 /**
2  * Provides a `Product` object
3 */
4 export class Product {
5   constructor(
6     public sku: string,
7     public name: string,
8     public imageUrl: string,
9     public department: string[],
10    public price: number) {
11  }
12 }
```

If you're new to ES6/TypeScript this syntax might be a bit unfamiliar.

We're creating a new `Product` class and the constructor takes 5 arguments. When we write `public sku: string`, we're saying two things:

- there is a `public` variable on instances of this class called `sku`
- `sku` is of type `string`.



If you're already familiar with JavaScript, you can quickly catch up on some of the differences, including the `public` constructor shorthand, [here at learnxinyminutes³⁶](#)

This `Product` class doesn't have any dependencies on Angular, it's just a model that we'll use in our app.

Components

As we mentioned before, Components are the fundamental building block of Angular applications. The "application" itself is just the top-level Component. Then we break our application into smaller child Components.



When building new Angular applications, we often follow this process: we mockup the design in wireframes (or on paper) and then we break down the parts into Components.

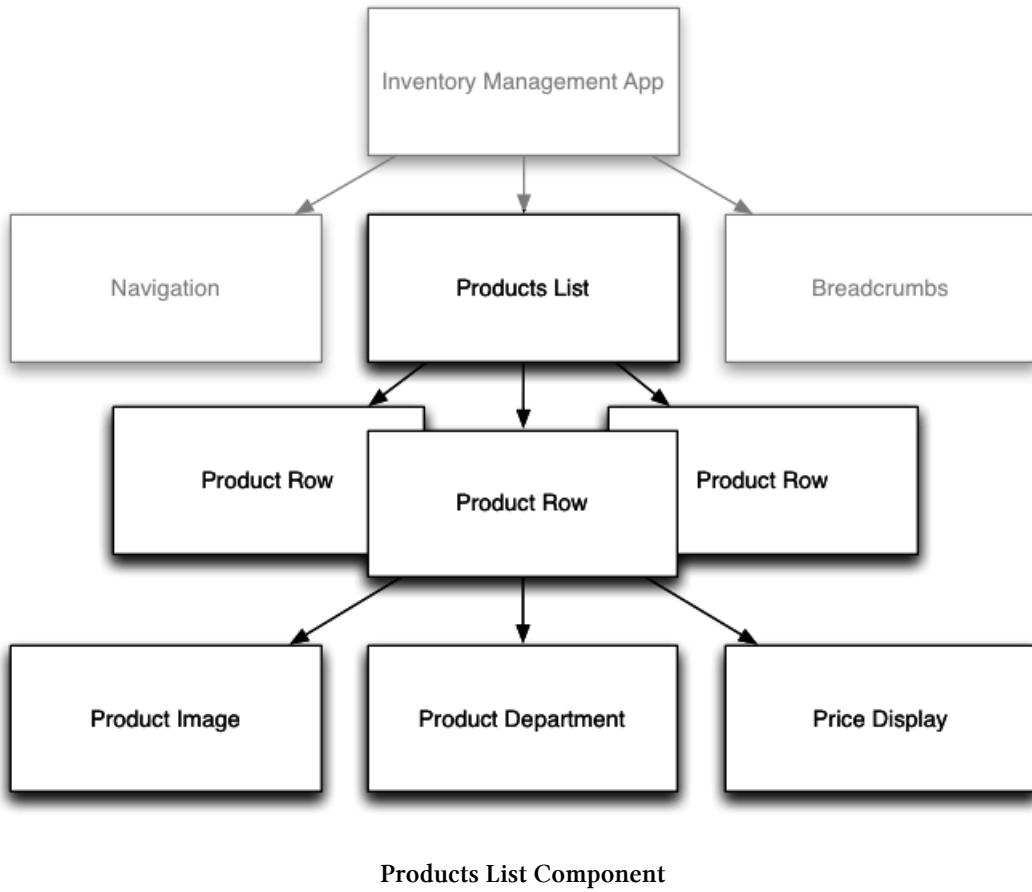
We'll be using Components a lot, so it's worth looking at them more closely.

Each components is composed of three parts:

- Component *Annotation*
- A View
- A Controller

To illustrate the key concepts we need to understand about components, we'll start with the top level Inventory App and then focus on the **Products List** and child components:

³⁶<https://learnxinyminutes.com/docs/typescript/>



Here's what a basic, top-level `InventoryAppComponent` looks like:

```

1  @Component({
2    selector: 'inventory-app-root',
3    template: `
4      <div class="inventory-app">
5        (Products will go here soon)
6      </div>
7    `
8  })
9  export class InventoryAppComponent {
10    // Inventory logic here
11 }
  
```



If you've been using Angular 1 the syntax might look pretty foreign! But the ideas are pretty similar, so let's take them step by step.

The `@Component` is called a **annotation**. It adds metadata to the class that follows it (`InventoryAppComponent`). The `@Component` annotation specifies:

- a **selector**, which tells Angular what element to match
- a **template**, which defines the view

The Component **controller** is defined by a `class`, the `InventoryAppComponent` class, in this case.

Let's take a look into each part now in more detail.

Component Annotation

The `@Component` annotation is where you configure your component. One of the primary roles of the `@Component` annotation is to configure how the outside world will interact with your component.



There are lots of options available to configure a component (many of which we cover in the [Advanced Components Chapter](#)). In this chapter we're just going to touch on the basics.

Component selector

With the `selector` key, you indicate how your component will be recognized when used in a template. The idea is similar to CSS or XPath selectors. The `selector` is a way to define what elements in the HTML will match this component. In this case, by saying `selector: 'inventory-app-root'`, we're saying that in our HTML we want to match the `inventory-app-root` tag, that is, we're defining a new tag that has new functionality whenever we use it. E.g. when we put this in our HTML:

```
1 <inventory-app-root></inventory-app-root>
```

Angular will use the `InventoryAppComponent` component to implement the functionality.

Alternatively, with this selector, we can also use a regular `div` and specify the component as an attribute:

```
1 <div inventory-app-root></div>
```

Component template

The view is the visual part of the component. By using the `template` option on `@Component`, we declare the HTML template that the component will use:

```

1  @Component({
2    selector: 'inventory-app-root',
3    template: `
4      <div class="inventory-app">
5        (Products will go here soon)
6      </div>
7    `
8  })

```

For this template, notice that we're using TypeScript's backtick multi-line string syntax. Our template so far is pretty sparse: just a `div` with some placeholder text.



If we want to put the template in a separate file, we can use the `templateUrl` option instead of `template`.

Adding A Product

Our app isn't very interesting without Products to view. Let's add some now.

We can create a new Product like this:

```

1 // first, we have to import `Product` so that we can use it
2 import { Product } from './product.model';
3
4 // now we can create a new `Product`
5 let newProduct = new Product(
6   'NICEHAT',                                // sku
7   'A Nice Black Hat',                        // name
8   '/assets/images/products/black-hat.jpg', // imageUrl
9   ['Men', 'Accessories', 'Hats'],           // department
10  29.99);                                    // price

```

Our constructor for `Product` takes 5 arguments. We can create a new `Product` by using the `new` keyword.



Normally, I probably wouldn't pass more than a few arguments to a function. Another option here is to configure the `Product` class to take an Object in the constructor, then we wouldn't have to remember the order of the arguments. That is, `Product` could be changed to do something like this:

```
1  new Product({sku: "MYHAT", name: "A green hat"})
```

But for now, this 5 argument constructor is easy to use.

We want to be able to show this Product in the view. In order to make properties accessible to our template **we add them as instance variables to the Component**.

For example, if we want to access newProduct in our view we could write:

```
1 class InventoryAppComponent {
2   product: Product;
3
4   constructor() {
5     let newProduct = new Product(
6       'NICEHAT',
7       'A Nice Black Hat',
8       '/resources/images/products/black-hat.jpg',
9       ['Men', 'Accessories', 'Hats'],
10      29.99);
11
12   this.product = newProduct;
13 }
14 }
```

or more concisely:

```
1 class InventoryAppComponent {
2   product: Product;
3
4   constructor() {
5     this.product = new Product(
6       'NICEHAT',
7       'A Nice Black Hat',
8       '/resources/images/products/black-hat.jpg',
9       ['Men', 'Accessories', 'Hats'],
10      29.99);
11   }
12 }
```

Notice that we did three things here:

1. **We added a constructor** - When Angular creates a new instance of this Component, it calls the constructor function. This is where we can put setup for this Component.
2. **We described an instance variable** - On InventoryAppComponent, when we write: product: Product, we're specifying that the InventoryAppComponent instances have a property product which is a Product object.
3. **We assigned a Product to product** - In the constructor we create an instance of Product and assigned it to the instance variable

Viewing the Product with Template Binding

Now that we have product assigned to the `InventoryAppComponent` instance, we can use that variable in our view:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'inventory-app-root',
3   template: `
4     <div class="inventory-app">
5       <h1>{{ product.name }}</h1>
6       <span>{{ product.sku }}</span>
7     </div>
8   `
9 })
```

Using the `{{ ... }}` syntax is called *template binding*. It tells the view we want to use the value of the expression inside the brackets at this location in our template.

So in this case, we have two bindings:

- `{{ product.name }}`
- `{{ product.sku }}`

The `product` variable comes from the instance variable `product` on our Component instance of `InventoryAppComponent`.

What's neat about template binding is that the code inside the brackets is *an expression*. That means you can do things like this:

- `{{ count + 1 }}`
- `{{ myFunction(myArguments) }}`

In the first case, we're using an operator to change the displayed value of `count`. In the second case, we're able to replace the tags with the value of the function `myFunction(myArguments)`. Using template binding tags is the main way that you'll show data in your Angular applications.

Adding More Products

In the code above, we're only able to show a single product in our app, but we want to be able to show a list of products. Let's change our `InventoryAppComponent` to store an array of `Products` rather than a single `Product`:

```
1 class InventoryAppComponent {  
2   products: Product[];  
3  
4   constructor() {  
5     this.products = [];  
6   }  
7 }
```

Notice that we've renamed the variable product to products, and we've changed the type to Product[]. The [] characters at the end mean we want products to be an Array of Products. We also could have written this as: Array<Product>.

Now that our InventoryAppComponent holds an array of Products. Let's create some Products in the constructor:

code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/app.component.ts

```
22 export class InventoryAppComponent {  
23   products: Product[];  
24  
25   constructor() {  
26     this.products = [  
27       new Product(  
28         'MYSHOES',  
29         'Black Running Shoes',  
30         '/assets/images/products/black-shoes.jpg',  
31         ['Men', 'Shoes', 'Running Shoes'],  
32         109.99),  
33       new Product(  
34         'NEATOJACKET',  
35         'Blue Jacket',  
36         '/assets/images/products/blue-jacket.jpg',  
37         ['Women', 'Apparel', 'Jackets & Vests'],  
38         238.99),  
39       new Product(  
40         'NICEHAT',  
41         'A Nice Black Hat',  
42         '/assets/images/products/black-hat.jpg',  
43         ['Men', 'Accessories', 'Hats'],  
44         29.99)  
45     ];  
46   }
```

This code will give us some Products to work with in our app.

Selecting a Product

We (eventually) want to support user interaction in our app. For instance, the user might *select* a particular product to view more information about the product, add it to the cart, etc.

Let's add some functionality here in our `InventoryAppComponent` to handle what happens when a new Product is selected. To do that, let's define a new function, `productWasSelected`:

code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/app.component.ts

```
48  productWasSelected(product: Product): void {
49    console.log('Product clicked: ', product);
50 }
```

This function accepts a single argument `product` and then it will log out that the product was passed in. We'll use this function in a bit.

Listing products using `<products-list>`

Now that we have our top-level `InventoryAppComponent` component, we need to add a new component for rendering a list of products. In the next section we'll create the implementation of a `ProductsList` component that matches the selector `products-list`. Before we dive into the implementation details, here's how we will *use* this new component:

code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/app.component.ts

```
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'inventory-app-root',
13   template: `
14     <div class="inventory-app">
15       <products-list
16         [productList]="products"
17         (onProductSelected)="productWasSelected($event)"
18       </products-list>
19     </div>
20   `
21 })
22 export class InventoryAppComponent {
```

There is some new syntax here, so let's talk about each part:

Inputs and Outputs

When we use `products-list` we're using a key feature of Angular components: inputs and outputs:

```
1  <products-list
2    [productList]="products"          <!-- input -->
3    (onProductSelected)="productWasSelected($event)"> <!-- output -->
4  </products-list>
```

The [squareBrackets] pass inputs and the (parenthesis) handle outputs.

Data flows *in* to your component via *input bindings* and events flow *out* of your component through *output bindings*.

Think of the set of input + output bindings as defining the **public API** of your component.

[squareBrackets] pass inputs

In Angular, you pass data into child components via *inputs*.

In our code where we show:

```
1  <products-list
2    [productList]="products"
```

We're using an *input* of the ProductList component.

It can be tricky to understand where products/productList are coming from. There are two sides to this attribute:

- [productList] (the left-hand side) and
- "products" (the right-hand side)

The left-hand side [productList] says we want to use the productList *input* of the products-list component (we'll show how to define that in a moment).

The right-hand side "products" says that we want to send the *value of the expression* products. That is, the array this.products in the InventoryAppComponent class.



You might ask, “how would I know that productList is a valid input to the products-list component? The answer is: you’d read the docs for that component. The inputs (and outputs) are part of the “public API” of a component.

You’d know the inputs for a component that you’re using in the same way that you’d know what the arguments are for a function that you’re using.

That said, we’ll define the products-list component in a moment, and we’ll see exactly how the productList input is defined.

(parens) handle outputs

In Angular, you send data out of components via *outputs*.

In our code where we show:

```
1  <products-list
2    ...
3    (onProductSelected)="productWasSelected($event)">
```

We're saying that we want to listen to the `onProductSelected` *output* from the `ProductsList` component.

That is:

- `(onProductSelected)`, the left-hand side is the name of the output we want to “listen” on
- “`productWasSelected`”, the right-hand side is the **function we want to call** when something new is sent to this output
- `$event` is a *special variable* here that represents **the thing emitted on** (i.e. sent to) the output.

Now, we haven’t talked about **how to define inputs or outputs** on our own components yet, but we will shortly when we define the `ProductsList` component. For now, know that we can pass data to child components through *inputs* (like “arguments” to a function) and we can receive data out of a child component through *outputs* (sort of like “return values” from a function).

Full `InventoryAppComponent` Listing

Here’s the full code listing of our `InventoryAppComponent`:

`code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/app.component.ts`

```
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'inventory-app-root',
13   template: `
14     <div class="inventory-app">
15       <products-list
16         [productList]="products"
17         (onProductSelected)="productWasSelected($event)">
18       </products-list>
19     </div>
20   `
21 })
22 export class InventoryAppComponent {
23   products: Product[];
24
25   constructor() {
26     this.products = [
27       new Product(
28         'MYSHOES',
```

```
29     'Black Running Shoes',
30     '/assets/images/products/black-shoes.jpg',
31     ['Men', 'Shoes', 'Running Shoes'],
32     109.99),
33     new Product(
34       'NEATOJACKET',
35       'Blue Jacket',
36       '/assets/images/products/blue-jacket.jpg',
37       ['Women', 'Apparel', 'Jackets & Vests'],
38       238.99),
39     new Product(
40       'NICEHAT',
41       'A Nice Black Hat',
42       '/assets/images/products/black-hat.jpg',
43       ['Men', 'Accessories', 'Hats'],
44       29.99)
45   ];
46 }
47
48 productWasSelected(product: Product): void {
49   console.log('Product clicked: ', product);
50 }
51 }
```

The ProductsListComponent

Now that we have our top-level application component, let's write the `ProductsListComponent`, which will render a list of product rows.

We want to allow the user to select **one** Product and we want to keep track of which Product is the currently selected one. The `ProductsListComponent` is a great place to do this because it “knows” all of the Products at the same time.

Let's write the `ProductsListComponent` in three steps:

- Configuring the `ProductsListComponent` `@Component` options
- Writing the `ProductsListComponent` controller class
- Writing the `ProductsListComponent` view template

Configuring the `ProductsListComponent` `@Component` Options

Let's take a look at the `@Component` configuration for `ProductsListComponent`:

code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts

```
7  /**
8   * @ProductsList: A component for rendering all ProductRows and
9   * storing the currently selected Product
10  */
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'products-list',
13   inputs: ['productList'],
14   outputs: ['onProductSelected'],
15   template: `
```

We start our ProductsListComponent with a familiar option: `selector`. This selector means we can place our ProductsListComponent with the tag `<products-list>`.

There are two new options: `inputs` and `outputs`.

Component inputs

With the `inputs` option, we're specifying the parameters we expect our component to receive. `inputs` takes an array of strings which specify the input keys.

When we specify that a Component takes an input, it is expected that the definition class will have an instance variable that will receive the value. For example, say we have the following code:

```
1  @Component({
2    selector: 'my-component',
3    inputs: ['name', 'age']
4  })
5  class MyComponent {
6    name: string;
7    age: number;
8  }
```

The `name` and `age` inputs map to the `name` and `age` properties on instances of the `MyComponent` class.

Another way we can specify that a Component takes an input is to use the `@Input` annotation. You would first import `Input` and then add `@Input()` to the property declaration like below:

```
1 import { Component, Input } from '@angular/core';
2
3 @Component({
4   selector: 'my-component'
5 })
6 class MyComponent {
7   @Input() name: string;
8   @Input() age: number;
9 }
```



If we need to use two different names for the attribute and the property, we could for example write `@Input('firstname') name: String;`. But the [Angular Style Guide³⁷](#) suggests to avoid this.



You can choose either style for your *inputs*, they will, generally, give you the same result. That said, one benefit of using `@Input` is that you're able to specify the type of the property on the same line.

In this chapter we will use the `inputs: []` style because it's easy to use. However, in other chapters we'll use the `@Input()` style because we're able to specify the input on the same line as the type declaration.

If we want to use `MyComponent` from another template, we write something like: `<my-component [name]="myName" [age]="myAge"></my-component>`.

Notice that the attribute `name` matches the input `name`, which in turn matches the `MyComponent` property `name`. However, these don't always have to match.

For instance, say we wanted our attribute key and instance property to differ. That is, we want to use our component like this:

```
1 <my-component [shortName]="myName" [oldAge]="myAge"></my-component>
```

To do this, we would change the format of the string in the `inputs` option:

³⁷<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/style-guide.html>

```

1  @Component({
2    selector: 'my-component',
3    inputs: ['name: shortName', 'age: oldAge']
4  })
5  class MyComponent {
6    name: string;
7    age: number;
8  }

```

More generally, `inputs` strings can have the format '`componentProperty: exposedProperty`'.

For instance we could have a different component that looks like this:

```

1  @Component({
2    //...
3    inputs: ['name', 'age', 'enabled']
4    //...
5  })
6  class MyComponent {
7    name: string;
8    age: number;
9    enabled: boolean;
10 }

```

However, if we wanted to represent the exposed property `enabled` in my component as `isEnabled`, we could use the alternative notation, like this:

```

1  @Component({
2    //...
3    inputs: [
4      'name: name',
5      'age: age',
6      'isEnabled: enabled'
7    ]
8    //...
9  })
10 class MyComponent {
11   name: string;
12   age: number;
13   isEnabled: boolean;
14 }

```

And going a little further, since the only property that requires an explicit mapping is `enabled` to `isEnabled`, we could even simplify and write it like this:

```

1  @Component({
2    //...
3    inputs: ['name', 'age', 'isEnabled: enabled']
4    //...
5  })
6  class MyComponent {
7    name: string;
8    age: number;
9    isEnabled: boolean;
10 }

```

In the `inputs` array, when the strings are in the `key: value` format, each have a specific meaning:

- The **key** (`name`, `age` and `isEnabled`) represent how that incoming property will be **visible (“bound” in the controller)**.
- The **value** (`name`, `age` and `enabled`) configures how the property is **visible to the “outside world”**.

Passing products through via the `inputs`

If you recall, in our `InventoryAppComponent`, we passed products to our `products-list` via the `[productList]` input:

[code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/app.component.ts](#)

```

8 /**
9  * @InventoryApp: the top-level component for our application
10 */
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'inventory-app-root',
13   template: `
14     <div class="inventory-app">
15       <products-list
16         [productList]="products"
17         (onProductSelected)="productWasSelected($event)"
18       </products-list>
19     </div>
20   `
21 })
22 export class InventoryAppComponent {
23   products: Product[];
24
25   constructor() {
26     this.products = [

```

Hopefully this syntax makes more sense now: we're passing `this.products` in via an input on `ProductsListComponent`.

Component outputs

When you want to send data from your component to the outside world, you use *output bindings*.

Let's say a component we're writing has a button and we need to do something when that button is clicked.

The way to do this is by binding the `click` output of the button to a method declared on our component's controller. You do that using the `(output)="action"` notation.

Here's an example where we keep a counter and increment (or decrement) based on which button is pressed:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'counter',
3   template: `
4     {{ value }}
5     <button (click)="increase()">Increase</button>
6     <button (click)="decrease()">Decrease</button>
7   `
8 })
9 class Counter {
10   value: number;
11
12   constructor() {
13     this.value = 1;
14   }
15
16   increase() {
17     this.value = this.value + 1;
18     return false;
19   }
20
21   decrease() {
22     this.value = this.value - 1;
23     return false;
24   }
25 }
```

In this example we're saying that every time the first button is clicked, we want the `increase()` method on our controller to be invoked. And, similarly, when the second button is clicked, we want to call the `decrease()` method.

The parentheses attribute syntax looks like this: `(output)="action"`. In this case, the output we're listening for is the `click` event on this button. There are many other built-in events we can listen to such as: `mousedown`, `mousemove`, `dbl-click`, etc.

In this example, the event is *internal* to the component. That is, calling `increase()` increments `this.value`, but there's no effect that leaves this component. When creating our own components we can also expose "public events" (component outputs) that allow the component to talk to the outside world.

The key thing to understand here is that in a view, we can listen to an event by using the `(output)="action"` syntax.

Emitting Custom Events

Let's say we want to create a component that emits a custom event, like `click` or `mousedown` above. To create a custom output event we do three things:

1. Specify outputs in the `@Component` configuration
2. Attach an `EventEmitter` to the `output` property
3. Emit an event from the `EventEmitter`, at the right time



Perhaps `EventEmitter` is unfamiliar to you. Don't panic! It's not too hard.

An `EventEmitter` is an object that helps you implement the [Observer Pattern³⁸](#). That is, it's an object that will:

1. maintain a list of subscribers and
2. publish events to them.

That's it.

Here's a short and sweet example of how you can use `EventEmitter`

```
1 let ee = new EventEmitter();
2 ee.subscribe((name: string) => console.log(`Hello ${name}`));
3 ee.emit("Nate");
4
5 // -> "Hello Nate"
```

When we assign an `EventEmitter` to an output *Angular automatically subscribes* for us. You don't need to do the subscription yourself (though in a special situation you could add your own subscriptions, if you want to).

³⁸https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Observer_pattern

Here's an example of how we write a component that has outputs:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'single-component',
3   outputs: ['putRingOnIt'],
4   template: `
5     <button (click)="liked()">Like it?</button>
6   `
7 })
8 class SingleComponent {
9   putRingOnIt: EventEmitter<string>;
10
11  constructor() {
12    this.putRingOnIt = new EventEmitter();
13  }
14
15  liked(): void {
16    this.putRingOnIt.emit("oh oh oh");
17  }
18 }
```

Notice that we did all three steps: 1. specified outputs, 2. created an `EventEmitter` that we attached to the output property `putRingOnIt` and 3. Emitted an event when `liked` is called.

If we wanted to use this output in a parent component we could do something like this:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'club',
3   template: `
4     <div>
5       <single-component
6         (putRingOnIt)="ringWasPlaced($event)"
7       ></single-component>
8     </div>
9   `
10 })
11 class ClubComponent {
12   ringWasPlaced(message: string) {
13     console.log(`Put your hands up: ${message}`);
14   }
15 }
16
17 // logged -> "Put your hands up: oh oh oh"
```

Again, notice that:

- `putRingOnIt` comes from the outputs of `SingleComponent`
- `ringWasPlaced` is a function on the `ClubComponent`
- `$event` contains the thing that was emitted, in this case a string

Writing the `ProductsListComponent` Controller Class

Back to our store example, our `ProductsListComponent` controller class needs three instance variables:

- One to hold the list of Products (that come from the `productList` input)
- One to output events (that emit from the `onProductSelected` output)
- One to hold a reference to the currently selected product

Here's how we define those in code:

[code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts](#)

```
26 export class ProductsListComponent {  
27   /**  
28   * @input productList - the Product[] passed to us  
29   */  
30   productList: Product[];  
31  
32   /**  
33   * @output onProductSelected - outputs the current  
34   *          Product whenever a new Product is selected  
35   */  
36   onProductSelected: EventEmitter<Product>;  
37  
38   /**  
39   * @property currentProduct - local state containing  
40   *          the currently selected `Product`  
41   */  
42   private currentProduct: Product;  
43  
44   constructor() {  
45     this.onProductSelected = new EventEmitter();  
46   }
```

Notice that our `productList` is an Array of Products - this comes in from the `inputs`.

`onProductSelected` is our `output`.

`currentProduct` is a property internal to `ProductsListComponent`. You might also hear this being referred to as “local component state”. It’s only used here within the component.

Writing the `ProductsListComponent` View Template

Here’s the template for our `products-list` component:

`code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts`

```
15 template: ``
16 <div class="ui items">
17   <product-row
18     *ngFor="let myProduct of productList"
19     [product]="myProduct"
20     (click)='clicked(myProduct)'
21     [class.selected]="isSelected(myProduct)">
22   </product-row>
23 </div>
24 ``
```

Here we’re using the `product-row` tag, which comes from the `ProductRow` component, which we’ll define in a minute.

We’re using `ngFor` to iterate over each `Product` in `productList`. We’ve talked about `ngFor` before in this book, but just as a reminder the `let thing` of `things` syntax says, “iterate over `things` and create a copy of this element for each item, and assign each item to the variable `thing`”.

So in this case, we’re iterating over the `Products` in `productList` and generating a local variable `myProduct` for each one.



Style-wise, I probably wouldn’t call this variable `myProduct` in a real app. Instead, I’d probably call it `product`, or even `p`. But here I want to be explicit about what we’re passing, and `myProduct` is slightly clearer because it lets us distinguish the ‘local template variable’ from the input `product`.

The interesting thing to note about this `myProduct` variable is that we can now use it *even on the same tag*. As you can see, we do this on the following three lines.

The line that reads `[product] = "myProduct"` says that we want to pass `myProduct` (the local variable) to the input `product` of the `product-row`. (We’ll define this input when we define the `ProductRow` component below.)

The `(click)='clicked(myProduct)'` line describes what we want to do when this element is clicked. `click` is a built-in event that is triggered when the host element is clicked on. In this case, we want to call the component function `clicked` on `ProductsListComponent` whenever this element is clicked on.

The line `[class.selected]="isSelected(myProduct)"` is a fun one: Angular allows us to set classes conditionally on an element using this syntax. This syntax says “add the CSS class `selected` if `isSelected(myProduct)` returns `true`.¹” This is a really handy way for us to mark the currently selected product.

You may have noticed that we didn’t define `clicked` nor `isSelected` yet, so let’s do that now (in `ProductsListComponent`):

clicked

[code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts](#)

```
48  clicked(product: Product): void {
49    this.currentProduct = product;
50    this.onProductSelected.emit(product);
51 }
```

This function does two things:

1. Set `this.currentProduct` to the `Product` that was passed in.
2. Emit the `Product` that was clicked on our output

isSelected

[code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts](#)

```
53  isSelected(product: Product): boolean {
54    if (!product || !this.currentProduct) {
55      return false;
56    }
57    return product.sku === this.currentProduct.sku;
58 }
```

This function accepts a `Product` and returns `true` if `product`’s `sku` matches the `currentProduct`’s `sku`. It returns `false` otherwise.

The Full `ProductsListComponent` Component

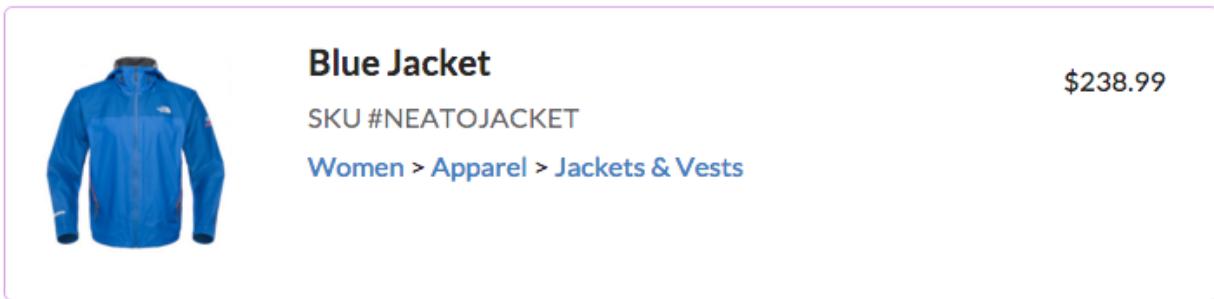
Here’s the full code listing so we can see everything in context:

code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/products-list/products-list.component.ts

```
7  /**
8   * @ProductsList: A component for rendering all ProductRows and
9   * storing the currently selected Product
10  */
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'products-list',
13   inputs: ['productList'],
14   outputs: ['onProductSelected'],
15   template: `
16     <div class="ui items">
17       <product-row
18         *ngFor="let myProduct of productList"
19         [product]="myProduct"
20         (click)="clicked(myProduct)"
21         [class.selected]="isSelected(myProduct)">
22       </product-row>
23     </div>
24   `
25 })
26 export class ProductsListComponent {
27   /**
28    * @input productList - the Product[] passed to us
29    */
30   productList: Product[];
31
32   /**
33    * @output onProductSelected - outputs the current
34    *          Product whenever a new Product is selected
35    */
36   onProductSelected: EventEmitter<Product>;
37
38   /**
39    * @property currentProduct - local state containing
40    *          the currently selected `Product`
41   */
42   private currentProduct: Product;
43
44   constructor() {
45     this.onProductSelected = new EventEmitter();
46   }
47 }
```

```
48     clicked(product: Product): void {
49         this.currentProduct = product;
50         this.onProductSelected.emit(product);
51     }
52
53     isSelected(product: Product): boolean {
54         if (!product || !this.currentProduct) {
55             return false;
56         }
57         return product.sku === this.currentProduct.sku;
58     }
59
60 }
```

The ProductRowComponent Component

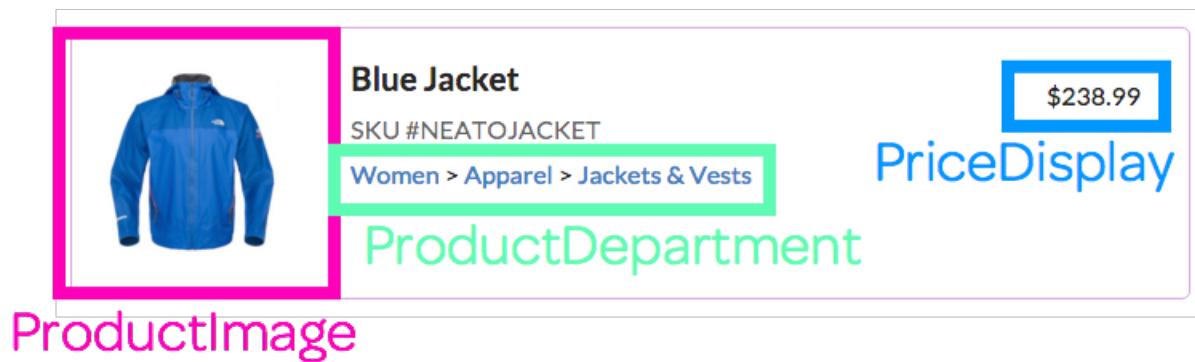


A Selected Product Row Component

Our ProductRowComponent displays our Product. ProductRowComponent will have its own template, but will also be split up into three smaller Components:

- ProductImageComponent - for the image
- ProductDepartmentComponent - for the department “breadcrumbs”
- PriceDisplayComponent - for showing the product’s price

Here’s a visual of the three Components that will be used within the ProductRowComponent:



ProductRowComponent's Sub-components

Let's take a look at the `ProductRowComponent`'s Component configuration, definition class, and template:

ProductRowComponent Component Configuration

`code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/product-row/product-row.component.ts`

```

4  /**
5   * @ProductRow: A component for the view of single Product
6   */
7  @Component({
8    selector: 'product-row',
9    inputs: ['product'],
10   host: { 'class': 'item' },
11   templateUrl: './product-row.component.html',
12 })
13 export class ProductRowComponent {
14   product: Product;
15 }
```

We start by defining the `selector` of `product-row`. We've seen this several times now - this defines that this component will match the tag `product-row`.

Next we define that this row takes an input of `product`. This will be the `Product` that was passed in from our parent Component.

The `host` option lets us set attributes on the host element. In this case, we're using the [Semantic UI item class³⁹](#). Here when we say `host: { 'class': 'item' }` we're saying that we want to attach the CSS class "item" to the host element.

³⁹<http://semantic-ui.com/views/item.html>



Using host is nice because it means we can configure our host element from *within* the component. This is great because otherwise we'd require the host element to specify the CSS tag and that is bad because we would then make assigning a CSS class part of the requirement to using the Component.

For this component, the template is slightly longer than other component templates we've used in the chapter. Instead of putting a long template string in our TypeScript file, instead we're going to move the template to a separate HTML file and use a templateUrl to load it. We'll talk about the template in a minute.

ProductRowComponent Component Definition Class

Given what we've seen so far, the ProductRowComponent Component definition class is straightforward:

code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/product-row/product-row.component.ts

```
13 export class ProductRowComponent {  
14   product: Product;  
15 }
```

Here we're specifying that the ProductRowComponent will have an instance variable product. Because we specified an input of product, when Angular creates an instance of this Component, it will automatically assign the product for us. We don't need to do it manually, and we don't need a constructor.

ProductRowComponent template

Now let's take a look at the template:

code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/product-row/product-row.component.html

```
1 <product-image [product]="product"></product-image>  
2 <div class="content">  
3   <div class="header">{{ product.name }}</div>  
4   <div class="meta">  
5     <div class="product-sku">SKU #{{ product.sku }}</div>  
6   </div>  
7   <div class="description">  
8     <product-department [product]="product"></product-department>  
9   </div>  
10 </div>  
11 <price-display [price]="product.price"></price-display>
```

Our template doesn't have anything conceptually new.

In the first line we use our `product-image` directive and we pass our `product` to the `product` input of the `ProductImageComponent` component. We use the `product-department` directive in the same way.

We use the `price-display` directive slightly differently in that we pass the `product.price`, instead of the `product` directly.

The rest of the template is standard HTML elements with custom CSS classes and some template bindings.

ProductRowComponent Full Listing

Here's the `ProductRowComponent` component all together:

[code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/product-row/product-row.component.ts](#)

```
4  /**
5   * @ProductRow: A component for the view of single Product
6  */
7  @Component({
8    selector: 'product-row',
9    inputs: ['product'],
10   host: { 'class': 'item' },
11   templateUrl: './product-row.component.html',
12 })
13 export class ProductRowComponent {
14   product: Product;
15 }
```

Now let's talk about the three components we used. They're pretty short.

The `ProductImageComponent` Component

code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/product-image/product-image.component.ts

```
4  /**
5   * @ProductImage: A component to show a single Product's image
6   */
7  @Component({
8    selector: 'product-image',
9    host: {class: 'ui small image'},
10   inputs: ['product'],
11   template: `
12     <img class="product-image" [src]="product.imageUrl">
13   `
14 })
15 export class ProductImageComponent {
16   product: Product;
17 }
```

The one thing to note here is in the `img` tag, notice how we use the `[src]` input to `img`.

By using the `[src]` attribute, we're telling Angular that we want to use the `[src]` *input* on this `img` tag. Angular will then replace the value of the `src` attribute once the expression is resolved.

We could also have written this tag this way:

```
1  \${{ price }}</div>
```

```

12   ` 
13 })
14 export class PriceDisplayComponent {
15   price: number;
16 }

```

It's pretty straightforward, but one thing to note is that we're escaping the dollar sign \$ because this is a backtick string and the dollar sign is used for template variables.

The ProductDepartmentComponent Component

[code/how_angular_works/inventory-app/src/app/product-department/product-department.component.ts](#)

```

4 /**
5  * @ProductDepartment: A component to show the breadcrumbs to a
6  * Product's department
7 */
8 @Component({
9   selector: 'product-department',
10  inputs: [ 'product' ],
11  template: `
12    <div class="product-department">
13      <span *ngFor="let name of product.department; let i=index">
14        <a href="#">{{ name }}</a>
15        <span>{{i < (product.department.length-1) ? '>' : ''}}</span>
16      </span>
17    </div>
18  `
19 })
20 export class ProductDepartmentComponent {
21   product: Product;
22 }

```

The thing to note about the ProductDepartmentComponent Component is the ngFor and the span tag.

Our ngFor loops over product.department and assigns each department string to name. The new part is the second expression that says: let i=index. This is how you get the iteration number out of ngFor.

In the span tag, we use the i variable to determine if we should show the greater-than > symbol.

The idea is that given a department, we want to show the department string like:

1 Women > Apparel > Jackets & Vests

The expression `{{ i < (product.department.length-1) ? '>' : '' }}` says that we only want to use the '`>`' character if we're not the last department. On the last department just show an empty string ''.



This format: `test ? valueIfTrue : valueIfFalse` is called the *ternary operator*.

NgModule and Booting the App

The final thing we have to do is ensure we have a `NgModule` for this app and boot it up:

`code/how.angular.works/inventory-app/src/app/app.module.ts`

```
13 @NgModule({
14   declarations: [
15     InventoryAppComponent,
16     ProductImageComponent,
17     ProductDepartmentComponent,
18     PriceDisplayComponent,
19     ProductRowComponent,
20     ProductsListComponent
21   ],
22   imports: [
23     BrowserModule,
24     FormsModule,
25     HttpClientModule
26   ],
27   providers: [],
28   bootstrap: [InventoryAppComponent]
29 })
30 export class AppModule { }
```

Angular provides a *module* system that helps organize our code. Unlike AngularJS 1.x, where all directives are essentially globals, in Angular you must specify exactly *which components* you're going to be using in your app.

While it is a bit more configuration to do it this way, it's a lifesaver for larger apps.

When you create new components in Angular, in order to use them they must be *accessible* from the current module. That is, if we want to use the `ProductsListComponent` component with the

products-list selector in the InventoryAppComponent template, then we need to make sure that the InventoryAppComponent's module either:

1. is in the same module as the ProductsListComponent component or
2. The InventoryAppComponent's module imports the module that contains ProductsListComponent



Remember **every** component you write must be declared in one NgModule before it can be used in a template.

In this case, we're putting InventoryAppComponent, ProductsListComponent, and **all** the other components for this app in one module. This is easy and it means they can all "see" each other.

Notice that we tell NgModule that we want to bootstrap with InventoryAppComponent. This says that InventoryAppComponent will be the top-level component.

Because we are writing a browser app, we also put BrowserModule in the imports of the NgModule.



To learn more about NgModule [checkout the section on NgModule later in the book](#)

Booting the app

To bootstrap this app we write this in our main.ts:

code/how-angular_works/inventory-app/src/main.ts

```
1 import { enableProdMode } from '@angular/core';
2 import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
3
4 import { AppModule } from './app/app.module';
5 import { environment } from './environments/environment';
6
7 if (environment.production) {
8   enableProdMode();
9 }
10
11 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(AppModule);
```

The last line in this file is what boots our `AppModule` and subsequently boots our Angular app.

Because this app was written with `angular-cli`, we can use the `ng` tool to run the app by running `ng serve`.

That said, it can be tricky to understand what's going on there. When we run our app with `ng serve` this is what happens:

- `ng serve` looks at `.angular-cli.json` which specifies `main.ts` as our entry point (and `index.html` as our index file)
- `main.ts` bootstraps `AppModule`
- `AppModule` specifies that `AppComponent` is the top level component
- ... and then `AppComponent` renders the rest of our app!

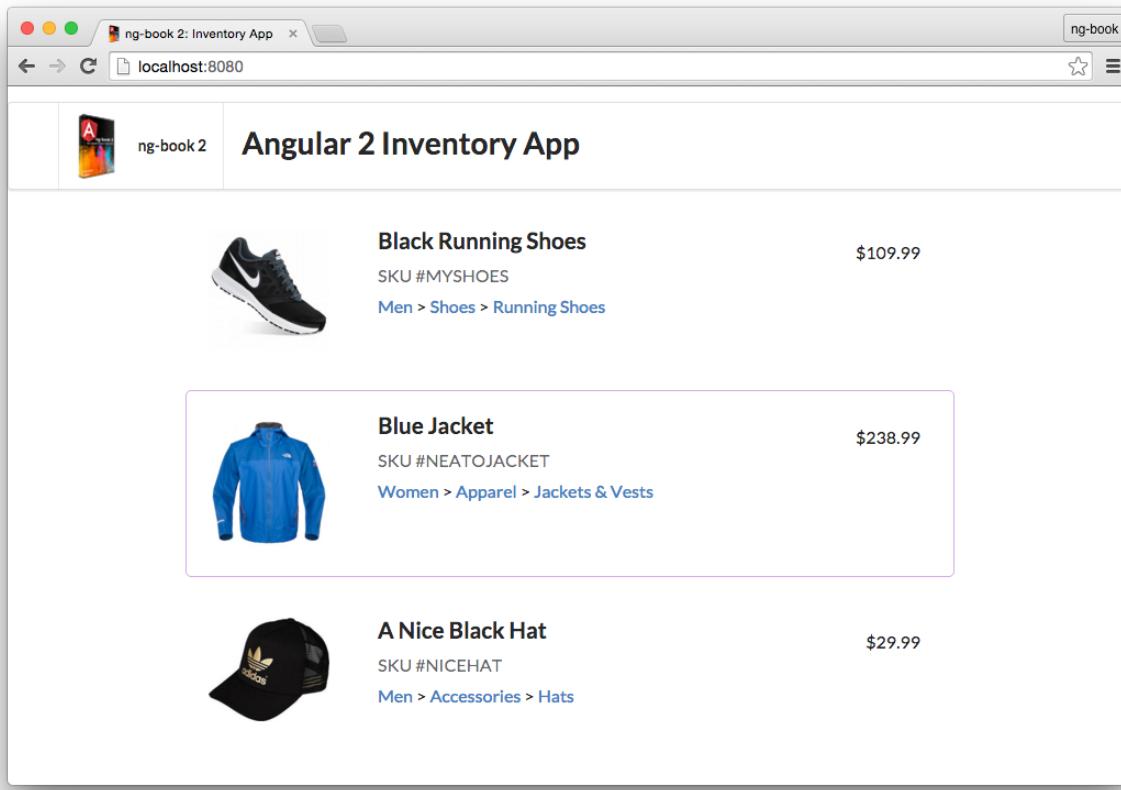
The Completed Project

To try it out, change into the project directory and type:

```
1 npm install
2 ng serve
```

Now we have all the pieces we need for the working project!

Here's what it will look like when we're done:



Completed Inventory App

Now you can click to select a particular product and have it render a nice purple outline when selected. If you add new Products in your code, you'll see them rendered.

Deploying the App

We can deploy this app in the same way [we deployed the app in the first chapter](#):

```
1 ng build --target=production --base-href '/'
```

And then push the files in `dist` to our server!

A Word on Data Architecture

You might be wondering at this point how we would manage the data flow if we started adding more functionality to this app.

For instance, say we wanted to add a shopping cart view and then we would add items to our cart. How could we implement this?

The only tools we've talked about are emitting output events. When we click add-to-cart do we simply bubble up an `addedToCart` event and handle at the root component? That feels a bit awkward.

Data architecture is a large topic with many opinions. Thankfully, Angular is flexible enough to handle a wide variety of data architectures, but that means that you have to decide for yourself which to use.

In Angular 1, the default option was two-way data binding. Two-way data binding is super easy to get started: your controllers have data, your forms manipulate that data directly, and your views show the data.

The problem with two-way data binding is that it often causes cascading effects throughout your application and makes it really difficult to trace data flow as your project grows.

Another problem with two-way data binding is that because you're passing data down through components it often forces your "data layout tree" to match your "dom view tree". In practice, these two things should really be separate.

One way you might handle this scenario would be to create a `ShoppingCartService`, which would be a singleton that would hold the list of the current items in the cart. This service could notify any interested objects when an item in the cart changes.

The idea is easy enough, but in practice there are a lot of details to be worked out.

The recommended way in Angular, and in many modern web frameworks (such as React), is to adopt a pattern of **one-way data binding**. That is, your data flows only **down** through components. If you need to make changes, you emit events that cause changes to happen "at the top" which then trickle down.

One-way data binding can seem like it adds some overhead in the beginning but it saves *a lot* of complication around change detection and it makes your systems easier to reason about.

Thankfully there are two major contenders for managing your data architecture:

1. Use an Observables-based architecture like RxJS
2. Use a Flux-based architecture

Later in this book we'll talk about how to implement a scalable data architecture for your app. For now, bask in the joy of your new Component-based application!

Built-in Directives

Introduction

Angular 2 provides a number of built-in directives. In this chapter, we're going to cover each built-in directive and show you examples of how to use them.



The built-in directives are imported and made available to your components automatically, so you don't need to inject them as a directive like you would do with your own components.



How To Use This Chapter

Instead of building an app step-by-step, this chapter describes some of the built-in directives in Angular.

If you'd like to run the examples in this chapter then see the folder `code/built_in_directives` and run:

```
1  npm install
2  npm run go
```

And then open <http://localhost:8080> in your browser.

NgIf

The `ngIf` directive is used when you want to display or hide an element based on a condition. The condition is determined by the result of the *expression* that you pass into the directive.

If the result of the expression returns a false value, the element will be removed from the DOM.

Some examples are:

```

1 <div *ngIf="false"></div>           <!-- never displayed -->
2 <div *ngIf="a > b"></div>           <!-- displayed if a is more than b -->
3 <div *ngIf="str == 'yes'"></div>   <!-- displayed if str holds the string "yes" -->
4 ->
5 <div *ngIf="myFunc()"></div>       <!-- displayed if myFunc returns a true value -->
6 -->
```



If you have experience with Angular 1, you probably used `ngIf` directive before. You can think of the Angular 2 version as a direct substitute. On the other hand, Angular 2 offers no built-in alternative for `ng-show`. So, if your goal is to just change the CSS visibility of an element, you should look into either the `ng_style` or the `class` directives, described later in this chapter.

NgSwitch

Sometimes you need to render different elements depending on a given condition.

When you run into this situation, you could use `ngIf` several times like this:

```

1 <div class="container">
2   <div *ngIf="myVar == 'A'">Var is A</div>
3   <div *ngIf="myVar == 'B'">Var is B</div>
4   <div *ngIf="myVar != 'A' && myVar != 'B'">Var is something else</div>
5 </div>
```

But as you can see, the scenario where `myVar` is neither A nor B is pretty verbose, all we're really trying to express is an `else`. And as we add more values the last `ngIf` condition will become more complex.

To illustrate this growth in complexity, let's say we wanted to handle a new hypothetical C value.

In order to do that, we'd have to not only add the new element with `ngIf`, but also change the last case:

```

1 <div class="container">
2   <div *ngIf="myVar == 'A'">Var is A</div>
3   <div *ngIf="myVar == 'B'">Var is B</div>
4   <div *ngIf="myVar == 'C'">Var is C</div>
5   <div *ngIf="myVar != 'A' && myVar != 'B' && myVar != 'C'">Var is something els\
6 e</div>
7 </div>
```

For cases like this, Angular 2 introduces the `ngSwitch` directive.

If you're familiar with the `switch` statement then you'll feel very at home.

The idea behind this directive is the same: allow a single evaluation of an expression, and then display nested elements based on the value that resulted from that evaluation.

Once we have the result then we can:

- Describe the known results, using the `ngSwitchCase` directive
- Handle all the other unknown cases with `ngSwitchDefault`

Let's rewrite our example using this new set of directives:

```

1 <div class="container" [ngSwitch]="myVar">
2   <div *ngSwitchCase="'A'">Var is A</div>
3   <div *ngSwitchCase="'B'">Var is B</div>
4   <div *ngSwitchDefault>Var is something else</div>
5 </div>
```

Then if we want to handle the new value C we insert a single line:

```

1 <div class="container" [ngSwitch]="myVar">
2   <div *ngSwitchCase="'A'">Var is A</div>
3   <div *ngSwitchCase="'B'">Var is B</div>
4   <div *ngSwitchCase="'C'">Var is C</div>
5   <div *ngSwitchDefault>Var is something else</div>
6 </div>
```

And we don't have to touch the default (i.e. *fallback*) condition.

Having the `ngSwitchDefault` element is optional. If we leave it out, nothing will be rendered when `myVar` fails to match any of the expected values.

You can also declare the same `*ngSwitchCase` value for different elements, so you're not limited to matching only a single time. Here's an example:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_switch/ng_switch.ts

```

7   template: `
8     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
9       Current choice is {{ choice }}
10      </h4>
11
12      <div class="ui raised segment">
13        <ul [ngSwitch]="choice">
14          <li *ngSwitchCase="1">First choice</li>
15          <li *ngSwitchCase="2">Second choice</li>
16          <li *ngSwitchCase="3">Third choice</li>
17          <li *ngSwitchCase="4">Fourth choice</li>
18          <li *ngSwitchCase="2">Second choice, again</li>
19          <li *ngSwitchDefault>Default choice</li>
20        </ul>
21      </div>
22
23      <div style="margin-top: 20px;">
24        <button class="ui primary button" (click)="nextChoice()">
25          Next choice
26        </button>
27      </div>
28    `
```

In the example above when the choice is 2, both the second and fifth lis will be rendered.

NgStyle

With the `NgStyle` directive, you can set a given DOM element CSS properties from Angular expressions.

The simplest way to use this directive is by doing `[style.<cssproperty>]="value"`. For example:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```

12      <div [style.backgroundColor]="'yellow'">
13        Uses fixed yellow background
14      </div>
```

This snippet is using the `NgStyle` directive to set the `background-color` CSS property to the literal string '`yellow`'.

Another way to set fixed values is by using the `NgStyle` attribute and using key value pairs for each property you want to set, like this:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```
20  <div [ngStyle]="{color: 'white', 'background-color': 'blue'}">
21      Uses fixed white text on blue background
22  </div>
```



Notice that in the `ng-style` specification we have single quotes around `background-color` but not around `color`. Why is that? Well, the argument to `ng-style` is a Javascript object and `color` is a valid key, without quotes. With `background-color`, however, the dash character isn't allowed in an object key, unless it's a string so we have to quote it.

Generally I'd leave out quoting as much as possible in object keys and only quote keys when we have to.

Here we are setting both the `color` and the `background-color` properties.

But the real power of the `NgStyle` directive comes with using dynamic values.

In our example, we are defining two input boxes with an apply settings button:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```
63  <div class="ui input">
64      <input type="text" name="color" value="{{color}}" #colorinput>
65  </div>
66
67  <div class="ui input">
68      <input type="text" name="fontSize" value="{{fontSize}}" #fontinput>
69  </div>
70
71  <button class="ui primary button" (click)="apply(colorinput.value, fontinput\
72 .value)">
73      Apply settings
74  </button>
```

And then using their values to set the CSS properties for three elements.

On the first one, we're setting the font size based on the input value:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```
28 <div>
29     <span [ngStyle]="{{color: 'red'}}" [style.fontSize.px]="fontSize">
30         red text
31     </span>
32 </div>
```

It's important to note that we have to specify units where appropriate. For instance, it isn't valid CSS to set a font-size of 12 - we have to specify a unit such as 12px or 1.2em. Angular provides a handy syntax for specifying units: here we used the notation [style.fontSize.px].

The .px suffix indicates that we're setting the font-size property value in pixels. You could easily replace that by [style.fontSize.em] to express the font size in ems or even in percentage using [style.fontSize.%].

The other two elements use the #colorinput to set the text and background colors:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```
40 <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
41     ngStyle with object property from variable
42 </h4>
43
44 <div>
45     <span [ngStyle]="{{color: color}}">
46         {{ color }} text
47     </span>
48 </div>
49
50 <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
51     style from variable
52 </h4>
53
54 <div [style.backgroundColor]="color"
55     style="color: white;">
56     {{ color }} background
57 </div>
```

This way, when we click the **Apply settings** button, we call a method that sets the new values:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_style/ng_style.ts

```
98  apply(color: string, fontSize: number): void {
99    this.color = color;
100   this.fontSize = fontSize;
101 }
```

And with that, both the color and the font size will be applied to the elements using the `NgStyle` directive.

NgClass

The `NgClass` directive, represented by a `ngClass` attribute in your HTML template, allows you to dynamically set and change the CSS classes for a given DOM element.

 If you're coming from Angular 1, the `NgClass` directive will feel very similar to what `ngClass` used to do in Angular 1.

The first way to use this directive is by passing in an object literal. The object is expected to have the keys as the class names and the values should be a truthy/falsy value to indicate whether the class should be applied or not.

Let's assume we have a CSS class called `bordered` that adds a dashed black border to an element:

code/built_in_directives/app/css/styles.scss

```
11 .bordered {
12   border: 1px dashed black;
13   background-color: #eee;
14 }
```

Let's add two `div` elements: one always having the `bordered` class (and therefore always having the border) and another one never having it:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
9  <div [ngClass]="{bordered: false}">This is never bordered</div>
10 <div [ngClass]="{bordered: true}">This is always bordered</div>
```

As expected, this is how those two divs would be rendered :

This is never bordered

This is always bordered

Simple class directive usage

Of course, it's a lot more useful to use the `NgClass` directive to make class assignments dynamic.

To make it dynamic we add a variable as the value for the object value, like this:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
12 <div [ngClass]="{bordered: isBordered}">
13   Using object literal. Border {{ isBordered ? "ON" : "OFF" }}
14 </div>
```

Alternatively, we can define the object in our component:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
50 export class NgClassSampleApp {
51   isBordered: boolean;
52   classesObj: Object;
53   classList: string[];
```

And use the object directly:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
16 <div [ngClass]="classesObj">
17   Using object var. Border {{ classesObj.bordered ? "ON" : "OFF" }}
18 </div>
```



Again, be careful when you have class names that contains dashes, like `bordered-box`. JavaScript objects don't allow literal keys to have dashes. If you need to use them, you must make the key a string like this:

```
1 <div [ngClass]="{{ 'bordered-box' : false }}>...</div>
```

We can also use a list of class names to specify which class names should be added to the element. For that, we can either pass in an array literal:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
37 <div class="base" [ngClass]="['blue', 'round']">
38   This will always have a blue background and
39   round corners
40 </div>
```

Or declare an array variable in our component:

```
1 this.classList = ['blue', 'round'];
```

And passing it in:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
42 <div class="base" [ngClass]="classList">
43   This is {{ classList.indexOf('blue') > -1 ? "" : "NOT" }} blue
44   and {{ classList.indexOf('round') > -1 ? "" : "NOT" }} round
45 </div>
```

In this last example, the [ngClass] assignment works alongside existing values assigned by the HTML class attribute.

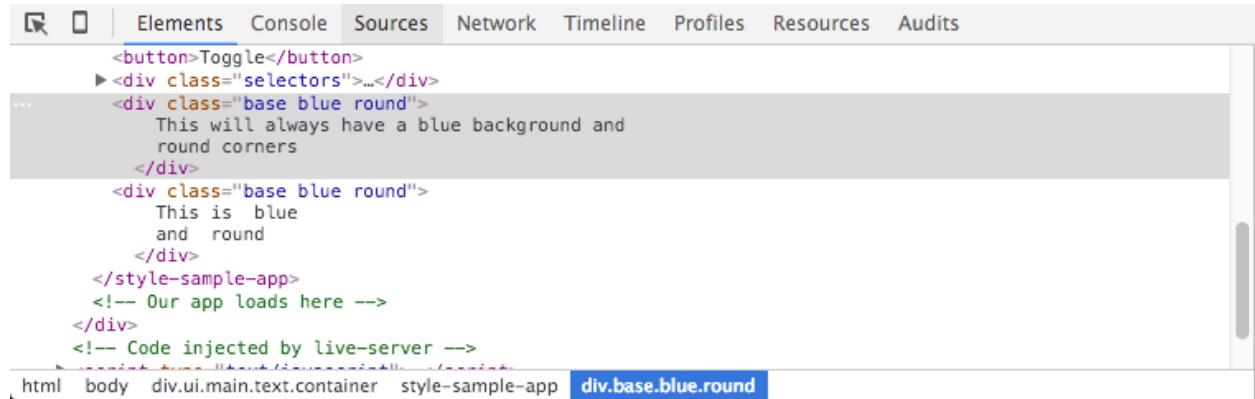
The resulting classes added to the element will always be the set of the classes provided by usual class HTML attribute and the result of the evaluation of the [class] directive.

In this example:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_class/ng_class.ts

```
37 <div class="base" [ngClass]="['blue', 'round']">
38   This will always have a blue background and
39   round corners
40 </div>
```

The element will have all three classes: base from the class HTML attribute and also blue and round from the [class] assignment:



```
<button>Toggle</button>
<div class="selectors">...</div>
...
<div class="base blue round">
  This will always have a blue background and
  round corners
</div>
<div class="base blue round">
  This is blue
  and round
</div>
</style-sample-app>
<!-- Our app loads here -->
</div>
<!-- Code injected by live-server -->
```

Classes from both the attribute and directive

NgFor

The role of this directive is to **repeat a given DOM element** (or a collection of DOM elements), each time passing it a different value from an array.



This directive is the successor of ng1's ng-repeat.

The syntax is *ngFor="let item of items".

- The `let item` syntax specifies a (template) variable that's receiving each element of the `items` array;
- The `items` is the collection of items from your controller.

To illustrate, we can take a look at the code example. We declare an array of cities on our component controller:

```
1 this.cities = ['Miami', 'Sao Paulo', 'New York'];
```

And then, in our template we can have the following HTML snippet:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```

8  <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
9    Simple list of strings
10   </h4>
11
12   <div class="ui list" *ngFor="let c of cities">
13     <div class="item">{{ c }}</div>
14   </div>

```

And it will render each city inside the div as you would expect:

Simple list of strings

Miami

Sao Paulo

New York

Result of the ng_for directive usage

We can also iterate through an array of objects like these:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```

72   this.people = [
73     { name: 'Anderson', age: 35, city: 'Sao Paulo' },
74     { name: 'John', age: 12, city: 'Miami' },
75     { name: 'Peter', age: 22, city: 'New York' }
76   ];

```

And then render a table based on each row of data:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```

16  <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
17    List of objects
18   </h4>
19
20   <table class="ui celled table">
21     <thead>
22       <tr>
23         <th>Name</th>
24         <th>Age</th>

```

```

25      <th>City</th>
26      </tr>
27  </thead>
28  <tr *ngFor="let p of people">
29      <td>{{ p.name }}</td>
30      <td>{{ p.age }}</td>
31      <td>{{ p.city }}</td>
32  </tr>
33 </table>
```

Getting the following result:

List of objects		
Name	Age	City
Anderson	35	Sao Paulo
John	12	Miami
Peter	22	New York

Rendering array of objects

We can also work with nested arrays. If we wanted to have the same table as above, broken down by city, we could easily declare a new array of objects:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```

77  this.peopleByCity = [
78  {
79    city: 'Miami',
80    people: [
81      { name: 'John', age: 12 },
82      { name: 'Angel', age: 22 }
83    ]
84  },
85  {
86    city: 'Sao Paulo',
87    people: [
88      { name: 'Anderson', age: 35 },
89      { name: 'Felipe', age: 36 }
```

```
90      ]
91    }
92  ];
93 };
```

And then we could use NgFor to render one h2 for each city :

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```
39 <div *ngFor="let item of peopleByCity">
40   <h2 class="ui header">{{ item.city }}</h2>
```

And use a nested directive to iterate through the people for a given city :

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```
42 <table class="ui celled table">
43   <thead>
44     <tr>
45       <th>Name</th>
46       <th>Age</th>
47     </tr>
48   </thead>
49   <tr *ngFor="let p of item.people">
50     <td>{{ p.name }}</td>
51     <td>{{ p.age }}</td>
52   </tr>
53 </table>
```

Resulting in the following template code:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```
35 <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
36   Nested data
37 </h4>
38
39 <div *ngFor="let item of peopleByCity">
40   <h2 class="ui header">{{ item.city }}</h2>
41
42   <table class="ui celled table">
43     <thead>
44       <tr>
```

```

45      <th>Name</th>
46      <th>Age</th>
47      </tr>
48  </thead>
49  <tr *ngFor="let p of item.people">
50      <td>{{ p.name }}</td>
51      <td>{{ p.age }}</td>
52  </tr>
53 </table>
54 </div>

```

And it would render one table for each city:

Nested data

Miami

Name	Age
John	12
Angel	22

Sao Paulo

Name	Age
Anderson	35
Felipe	36

Rendering nested arrays

Getting an index

There are times that we need the index of each item when we're iterating an array.

We can get the index by appending the syntax `let idx = index` to the value of our `ngFor` directive, separated by a semi-colon. When we do this, ng2 will assign the current index into the variable we provide (in this case, the variable `idx`).



Note that, like JavaScript, the index is always zero based. So the index for first element is 0, 1 for the second and so on...

Making some changes to our first example, adding the `let num = index` snippet like below:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_for/ng_for.ts

```
60 <div class="ui list" *ngFor="let c of cities; let num = index">
61   <div class="item">{{ num+1 }} - {{ c }}</div>
62 </div>
```

It will add the position of the city before the name, like this:

List with index

1 - Miami
2 - Sao Paulo
3 - New York

Using an index

NgNonBindable

We use `ngNonBindable` when we want tell Angular **not** to compile or bind a particular section of our page.

Let's say we want to render the literal text `{{ content }}` in our template. Normally that text will be *bound* to the value of the `content` variable because we're using the `{{ }}` template syntax.

So how can we render the exact text `{{ content }}`? We use the `ngNonBindable` directive.

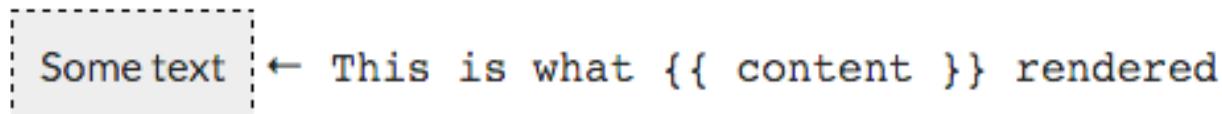
Let's say we want to have a `div` that renders the contents of that `content` variable and right after we want to point that out by outputting `<- this is what {{ content }} rendered` next to the actual value of the variable.

To do that, here's the template we'd have to use:

code/built_in_directives/app/ts/ng_non_bindable/ng_non_bindable.ts

```
7 template: ``
8 <div class='ngNonBindableDemo'>
9   <span class="bordered">{{ content }}</span>
10  <span class="pre" ngNonBindable>
11    &larr; This is what {{ content }} rendered
12  </span>
13 </div>
14 ``
```

And with that `ngNonBindable` attribute, ng2 will not compile within that second `span`'s context, leaving it intact:



Some text ← This is what {{ content }} rendered

Result of using `ngNonBindable`

Conclusion

Angular 2 has only a few core directives, but we can combine these simple pieces to create dynamic apps.

Forms in Angular 2

Forms are Crucial, Forms are Complex

Forms are probably the most crucial aspect of your web application. While we often get events from clicking on links or moving the mouse, it's through *forms* where we get the majority of our rich data input from users.

On the surface, forms seem straightforward: you make an `input` tag, the user fills it out, and hits submit. How hard could it be?

It turns out, forms can end up being really complex. Here's a few reasons why:

- Form inputs are meant to modify data, both on the page and the server
- Changes often need to be reflected elsewhere on the page
- Users have a lot of leeway in what they enter, so you need to validate values
- The UI needs to clearly state expectations and errors, if any
- Dependent fields can have complex logic
- We want to be able to test our forms, without relying on DOM selectors

Thankfully, Angular 2 has tools to help with all of these things.

- `FormControls` encapsulate the inputs in our forms and give us objects to work with them
- `Validators` give us the ability to validate inputs, any way we'd like
- `Observers` let us watch our form for changes and respond accordingly

In this chapter we're going to walk through building forms, step by step. We'll start with some simple forms and build up to more complicated logic.

FormControlS and FormGroupS

The two fundamental objects in Angular 2 forms are `FormControl` and `FormGroup`.

FormControl

A `FormControl` represents a single input field - it is the smallest unit of an Angular form.

`FormControls` encapsulate the field's value, and states such as being valid, dirty (changed), or has errors.

For instance, here's how we might use a `FormControl` in TypeScript:

```

1 // create a new FormControl with the value "Nate"
2 let nameControl = new FormControl("Nate");
3
4 let name = nameControl.value; // -> Nate
5
6 // now we can query this control for certain values:
7 nameControl.errors // -> StringMap<string, any> of errors
8 nameControl.dirty // -> false
9 nameControl.valid // -> true
10 // etc.

```

To build up forms we create `FormControl`s (and groups of `FormControl`s) and then attach metadata and logic to them.

Like many things in Angular, we have a class (`FormControl`, in this case) that we attach to the DOM with an attribute (`formControl`, in this case). For instance, we might have the following in our form:

```

1 <!-- part of some bigger form -->
2 <input type="text" [formControl]="name" />

```

This will create a new `FormControl` object within the context of our `form`. We'll talk more about how that works below.

FormGroup

Most forms have more than one field, so we need a way to manage multiple `FormControl`s. If we wanted to check the validity of our form, it's cumbersome to iterate over an array of `FormControl`s and check each `FormControl` for validity. `FormGroup`s solve this issue by providing a wrapper interface around a collection of `FormControl`s.

Here's how you create a `FormGroup`:

```

1 let personInfo = new FormGroup({
2   firstName: new FormControl("Nate"),
3   lastName: new FormControl("Murray"),
4   zip: new FormControl("90210")
5 })

```

`FormGroup` and `FormControl` have a common ancestor (`AbstractControl`⁴⁰). That means we can check the status or value of `personInfo` just as easily as a single `FormControl`:

⁴⁰<https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/master/modules/@angular/forms/src/model.ts>

```
1 personInfo.value; // -> {  
2   //   firstName: "Nate",  
3   //   lastName: "Murray",  
4   //   zip: "90210"  
5 }  
6  
7 // now we can query this control group for certain values, which have sensible  
8 // values depending on the children FormControl's values:  
9 personInfo.errors // -> StringMap<string, any> of errors  
10 personInfo.dirty // -> false  
11 personInfo.valid // -> true  
12 // etc.
```

Notice that when we tried to get the value from the `FormGroup` we received an `object` with key-value pairs. This is a really handy way to get the full set of values from our form without having to iterate over each `FormControl` individually.

Our First Form

There are lots of moving pieces to create a form, and several important ones we haven't touched on. Let's jump in to a full example and I'll explain each piece as we go along.



You can find the full code listing for this section in the code download under `forms/`

Here's a screenshot of the very first form we're going to build:

The screenshot shows a simple web form titled "Demo Form: Sku". At the top, it says "SKU". Below that is a text input field containing the text "SKU". At the bottom is a "Submit" button.

Demo Form with Sku: Simple Version

In our imaginary application we're creating an e-commerce-type site where we're listing products for sale. In this app we need to store the product's SKU, so let's create a simple form that takes the SKU as the only input field.



SKU is an abbreviation for “stockkeeping unit”. It’s a term for a unique id for a product that is going to be tracked in inventory. When we talk about a SKU, we’re talking about a human-readable item ID.

Our form is super simple: we have a single input for `sku` (with a label) and a submit button.

Let’s turn this form into a Component. If you recall, there are three parts to defining a component:

- Configure the `@Component()` annotation
- Create the template
- Implement custom functionality in the component definition class

Let’s take these in turn:

Loading the `FormsModule`

In order to use the new forms library we need to first make sure we import the forms library in our `NgModule`.

There are two ways of using forms in Angular and we’ll talk about them both in this chapter: using `FormsModule` or using `ReactiveFormsModule`. Since we’ll use both, we’ll import them both into our module. To do this we do the following in our `app.ts` where we bootstrap the app:

```
1 import {  
2   FormsModule,  
3   ReactiveFormsModule  
4 } from '@angular/forms';  
5  
6 // further down...  
7  
8 @NgModule({  
9   declarations: [  
10     FormsDemoApp,  
11     DemoFormSku,  
12     // ... our declarations here  
13   ],  
14   imports: [  
15     BrowserModule,  
16     FormsModule,           // <-- add this  
17     ReactiveFormsModule // <-- and this  
18   ],  
19   bootstrap: [ FormsDemoApp ]  
20 })  
21 class FormsModuleModule {}
```

This ensures that we're able to use the form directives in our views. At the risk of jumping ahead, the `FormsModule` gives us *template driven* directives such as:

- `ngModel` and
- `NgForm`

Whereas `ReactiveFormsModule` gives us directives like

- `FormControl` and
- `FormGroup`

... and several more. We haven't talked about how to use these directives or what they do, but we will shortly. For now, just know that by importing `FormsModule` and `ReactiveFormsModule` into our `NgModule` means we can *use any of the directives in that list* in our view template or *inject any of their respective providers* into our components.

Simple SKU Form: `@Component` Annotation

Now we can start creating our component:

`code/forms/app/forms/demo_form_sku.ts`

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';
2
3 @Component({
4   selector: 'demo-form-sku',
```

Here we define a `selector` of `demo-form-sku`. If you recall, `selector` tells Angular what elements this component will bind to. In this case we can use this component by having a `demo-form-sku` tag like so:

```
1 <demo-form-sku></demo-form-sku>
```

Simple SKU Form: template

Let's look at our template:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku.ts

```
6  template: ``
7  <div class="ui raised segment">
8    <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: Sku</h2>
9    <form #f="ngForm"
10      (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"
11      class="ui form">
12
13      <div class="field">
14        <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
15        <input type="text"
16          id="skuInput"
17          placeholder="SKU"
18          name="sku" ngModel>
19      </div>
20
21      <button type="submit" class="ui button">Submit</button>
22    </form>
23  </div>
24`
```

form & NgForm

Now things get interesting: because we imported `FormsModule`, that makes `NgForm` available to our view. Remember that whenever we make directives available to our view, they will **get attached to any element that matches their selector**.

`NgForm` does something handy but **non-obvious**: it includes the `form` tag in its selector (instead of requiring you to explicitly add `ngForm` as an attribute). What this means is that if you import `FormsModule`, `NgForm` will get *automatically* attached to any `<form>` tags you have in your view. This is really useful but potentially confusing because it happens behind the scenes.

There are two important pieces of functionality that `NgForm` gives us:

1. A `FormGroup` named `ngForm`
2. A `(ngSubmit)` output

You can see that we use both of these in the `<form>` tag in our view:

`code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku.ts`

```
9   <form #f="ngForm"
10    (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"
```

First we have `#f="ngForm"`. The `#v=thing` syntax says that we want to create a local variable for this view.

Here we're creating an alias to `ngForm`, for this view, bound to the variable `#f`. Where did `ngForm` come from in the first place? It came from the `NgForm` directive.

And what type of object is `ngForm`? It is a `FormGroup`. That means we can use `f` as a `FormGroup` in our view. And that's exactly what we do in the `(ngSubmit)` output.



Astute readers might notice that I just said above that `NgForm` is automatically attached to `<form>` tags (because of the default `NgForm` selector), which means we don't have to add an `ngForm` attribute to use `NgForm`. But here we're putting `ngForm` in an attribute (value) tag. Is this a typo?

No, it's not a typo. If `ngForm` were the *key* of the attribute then we would be telling Angular that we want to use `NgForm` on this attribute. In this case, we're using `ngForm` as the *attribute* when we're assigning a *_reference_*. That is, we're saying the value of the evaluated expression `ngForm` should be assigned to a local template variable `f`.

`ngForm` is already on this element and you can think of it as if we are "exporting" this `FormGroup` so that we can reference it elsewhere in our view.

We bind to the `ngSubmit` action of our form by using the syntax: `(ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"`.

- `(ngSubmit)` - comes from `NgForm`
- `onSubmit()` - will be implemented in our component definition class (below)
- `f.value` - `f` is the `FormGroup` that we specified above. And `.value` will return the key/value pairs of this `FormGroup`

Put it all together and that line says "when I submit the form, call `onSubmit` on my component instance, passing the value of the form as the arguments".

input & NgModel

Our `input` tag has a few things we should touch on before we talk about `NgModel`:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku.ts

```

9   <form #f="ngForm"
10    (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"
11    class="ui form">
12
13   <div class="field">
14     <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
15     <input type="text"
16       id="skuInput"
17       placeholder="SKU"
18       name="sku" ngModel>
19   </div>

```

- `class="ui form"` and `class="field"` - these two classes are totally optional. They come from the [CSS framework Semantic UI⁴¹](#). I've added them in some of our examples just to give them a nice coat of CSS but they're not part of Angular.
- The `label "for"` attribute and the `input "id"` attribute are to match, as [per W3C standard⁴²](#)
- We set a `placeholder` of "SKU", which is just a hint to the user for what this `input` should say when it is blank

The `NgModel` directive specifies a selector of `ngModel`. This means we can attach it to our `input` tag by adding this sort of attribute: `ngModel="whatever"`. In this case, we specify `ngModel` with no attribute value.

There are a couple of different ways to specify `ngModel` in your templates and this is the first. When we use `ngModel` with no attribute value we are specifying:

1. a *one-way* data binding
2. we want to create a `FormControl` on this form with the name `sku` (because of the `name` attribute on the `input` tag)

`NgModel` creates a new `FormControl` that is automatically added to the parent `FormGroup` (in this case, on the `form`) and then binds a DOM element to that new `FormControl`. That is, it sets up an association between the `input` tag in our view and the `FormControl` and the association is matched by a name, in this case "`sku`".

⁴¹<http://semantic-ui.com/>

⁴²<http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG20-TECHS/H44.html>



NgModel vs. ngModel: what's the difference? Generally, when we use PascalCase, like NgModel, we're specifying the *class* and referring to the object as it's defined in code. The lower case (CamelCase), as in ngModel, comes from the *selector* of the directive and it's only used in the DOM / template.

It's also worth pointing out that NgModel and FormControl are separate objects. NgModel is the *directive* that you use in your view, whereas FormControl is the object used for representing the data and validations in your form.



Sometimes we want to do *two-way* binding with ngModel like we used to do in Angular 1. We'll look at how to do that towards the end of this chapter.

Simple SKU Form: Component Definition Class

Now let's look at our class definition:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku.ts

```
26 export class DemoFormSku {  
27   onSubmit(form: any): void {  
28     console.log('you submitted value:', form);  
29   }  
30 }
```

Here our class defines one function: onSubmit. This is the function that is called when the form is submitted. For now, we'll just console.log out the value that is passed in.

Try it out!

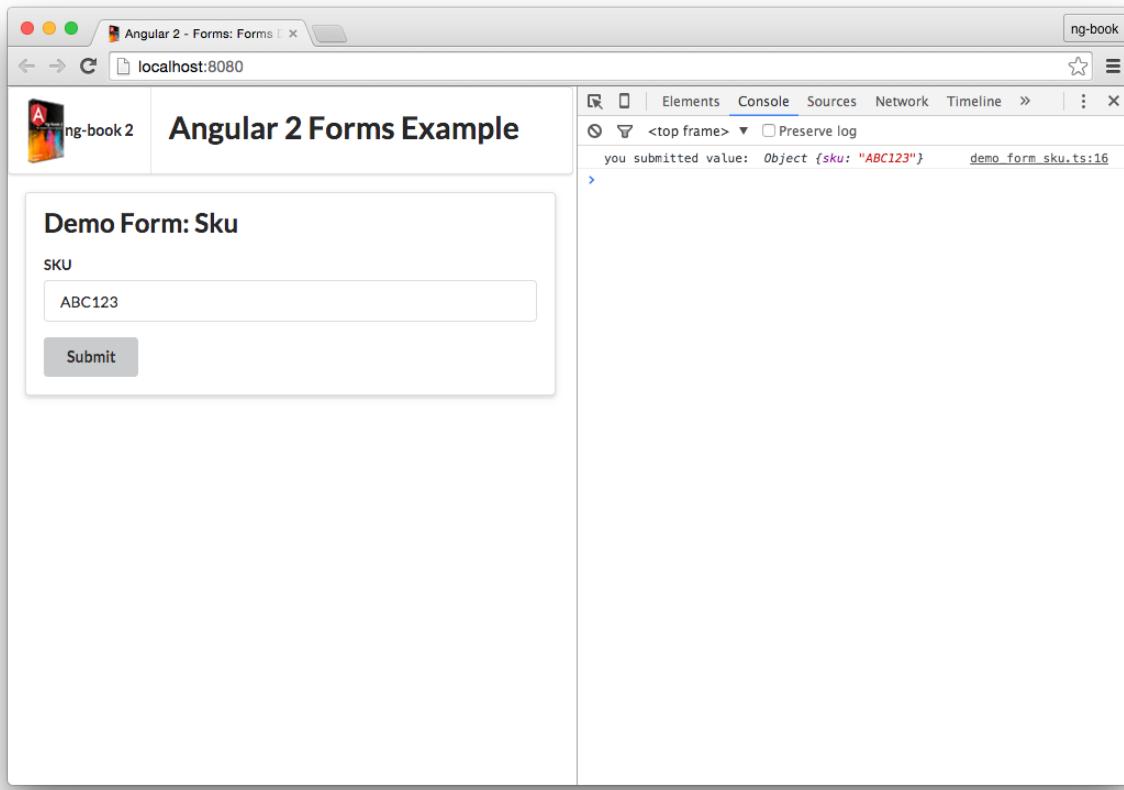
Putting it all together, here's what our code listing looks like:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku.ts

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';  
2  
3 @Component({  
4   selector: 'demo-form-sku',  
5  
6   template: `  
7     <div class="ui raised segment">  
8       <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: Sku</h2>
```

```
9   <form #f="ngForm"
10     (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(f.value)"
11     class="ui form">
12
13   <div class="field">
14     <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
15     <input type="text"
16       id="skuInput"
17       placeholder="SKU"
18       name="sku" ngModel>
19   </div>
20
21   <button type="submit" class="ui button">Submit</button>
22 </form>
23 </div>
24 ^
25 })
26 export class DemoFormSku {
27   onSubmit(form: any): void {
28     console.log('you submitted value:', form);
29   }
30 }
```

If we try this out in our browser, here's what it looks like:



Demo Form with Sku: Simple Version, Submitted

Using FormBuilder

Building our `FormControls` and `FormGroup`s implicitly using `ngForm` and `ngControl` is convenient, but doesn't give us a lot of customization options. A more flexible and common way to configure forms is to use a `FormBuilder`.

`FormBuilder` is an aptly-named helper class that helps us build forms. As you recall, forms are made up of `FormControls` and `FormGroup`s and the `FormBuilder` helps us make them (you can think of it as a "factory" object).

Let's add a `FormBuilder` to our previous example. Let's look at:

- how to use the `FormBuilder` in our component definition class
- how to use our custom `FormGroup` on a form in the view

Reactive Forms with FormBuilder

For this component we're going to be using the `formGroup` and `FormControl` directives which means we need to import the appropriate classes. We start by importing them like so:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku_with_builder.ts

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';
2 import {
3   FormBuilder,
4   FormGroup
5 } from '@angular/forms';
6
7 @Component({
8   selector: 'demo-form-sku-builder',
```

Using FormBuilder

We inject `FormBuilder` by creating an argument in the constructor of our component class:



What does `inject` mean? We haven't talked much about dependency injection (DI) or how DI relates to the hierarchy tree, so that last sentence may not make a lot of sense. We talk a lot more about dependency injection in the [Dependency Injection chapter](#), so go there if you'd like to learn more about it in depth.

At a high level, Dependency Injection is a way to tell Angular what dependencies this component needs to function properly.

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku_with_builder.ts

```
29 export class DemoFormSkuBuilder {
30   myForm: FormGroup;
31
32   constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
33     this.myForm = fb.group({
34       'sku': ['ABC123']
35     });
36   }
37
38   onSubmit(value: string): void {
39     console.log('you submitted value: ', value);
40   }
41 }
```

During injection an instance of `FormBuilder` will be created and we assign it to the `fb` variable (in the constructor).

There are two main functions we'll use on `FormBuilder`:

- `control` - creates a new `FormControl`
- `group` - creates a new `FormGroup`

Notice that we've setup a new *instance variable* called `myForm` on this class. (We could have just as easily called it `form`, but I want to differentiate between our `FormGroup` and the `form` we had before.)

`myForm` is typed to be a `FormGroup`. We create a `FormGroup` by calling `fb.group()`. `group` takes an object of key-value pairs that specify the `FormControl`s in this group.

In this case, we're setting up one control `sku`, and the value is `["ABC123"]` - this says that the default value of this control is `"ABC123"`. (You'll notice that is an array. That's because we'll be adding more configuration options there later.)

Now that we have `myForm` we need to use that in the view (i.e. we need to *bind* it to our `form` element).

Using `myForm` in the view

We want to change our `<form>` to use `myForm`. If you recall, in the last section we said that `ngForm` is applied for us automatically when we use `FormsModule`. We also mentioned that `ngForm` creates its own `FormGroup`. Well, in this case, we **don't** want to use an outside `FormGroup`. Instead we want to use our instance variable `myForm`, which we created with our `FormBuilder`. How can we do that?

Angular provides another directive that we use **when we have an existing `FormGroup`**: it's called `formGroup` and we use it like this:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku_with_builder.ts

```
11  <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: Sku with Builder</h2>
12  <form [formGroup]="myForm"
```

Here we're telling Angular that we want to use `myForm` as the `FormGroup` for this form.



Remember how earlier we said that when using `FormsModule` that `NgForm` will be automatically applied to a `<form>` element? There is an exception: `NgForm` won't be applied to a `<form>` that has `formGroup`.

If you're curious, the selector for `NgForm` is:

```
1  form:not([ngNoForm]):not([formGroup]),ngForm,[ngForm]
```

This means you *could* have a form that doesn't get `NgForm` applied by using the `ngNoForm` attribute.

We also need to change `onSubmit` to use `myForm` instead of `f`, because now it is `myForm` that has our configuration and values.

There's one last thing we need to do to make this work: bind our `FormControl` to the `input` tag. Remember that `ngControl` creates a new `FormControl` object, and attaches it to the parent `FormGroup`. But in this case, we used `FormBuilder` to create our own `FormControls`.

When we want to bind an **existing FormControl** to an input we use `formControl`:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku_with_builder.ts

```
17      <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
18      <input type="text"
19          id="skuInput"
20          placeholder="SKU"
21          [formControl]="myForm.controls['sku']">
```

Here we are instructing the `formControl` directive to look at `myForm.controls` and use the existing `sku` `FormControl` for this input.

Try it out!

Here's what it looks like all together:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_sku_with_builder.ts

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';
2 import {
3   FormBuilder,
4   FormGroup
5 } from '@angular/forms';
6
7 @Component({
8   selector: 'demo-form-sku-builder',
9   template: `
10   <div class="ui raised segment">
11     <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: Sku with Builder</h2>
12     <form [formGroup]="myForm"
13       (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(myForm.value)"
14       class="ui form">
15
16       <div class="field">
17         <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
18         <input type="text"
```

```
19          id="skuInput"
20          placeholder="SKU"
21          [FormControl]="myForm.controls['sku']">
22      </div>
23
24      <button type="submit" class="ui button">Submit</button>
25  </form>
26 </div>
27 `

28 })
29 export class DemoFormSkuBuilder {
30     myForm: FormGroup;
31
32     constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
33         this.myForm = fb.group({
34             'sku': ['ABC123']
35         });
36     }
37
38     onSubmit(value: string): void {
39         console.log('you submitted value: ', value);
40     }
41 }
```

Remember:

To create a new FormGroup and FormControl implicitly use:

- ngForm and
- ngModel

But to bind to an existing FormGroup and FormControl use:

- formGroup and
- formControl

Adding Validations

Our users aren't always going to enter data in exactly the right format. If someone enters data in the wrong format, we want to give them feedback and not allow the form to be submitted. For this we use *validators*.

Validators are provided by the `Validators` module and the simplest validator is `Validators.required` which simply says that the designated field is required or else the `FormControl` will be considered invalid.

To use validators we need to do two things:

1. Assign a validator to the `FormControl` object
2. Check the status of the validator in the view and take action accordingly

To assign a validator to a `FormControl` object we simply pass it as the second argument to our `FormControl` constructor:

```
1 let control = new FormControl('sku', Validators.required);
```

Or in our case, because we're using `FormBuilder` we will use the following syntax:

`code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts`

```
44 constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
45   this.myForm = fb.group({
46     'sku': ['', Validators.required]
47   });
48
49   this.sku = this.myForm.controls['sku'];
50 }
```

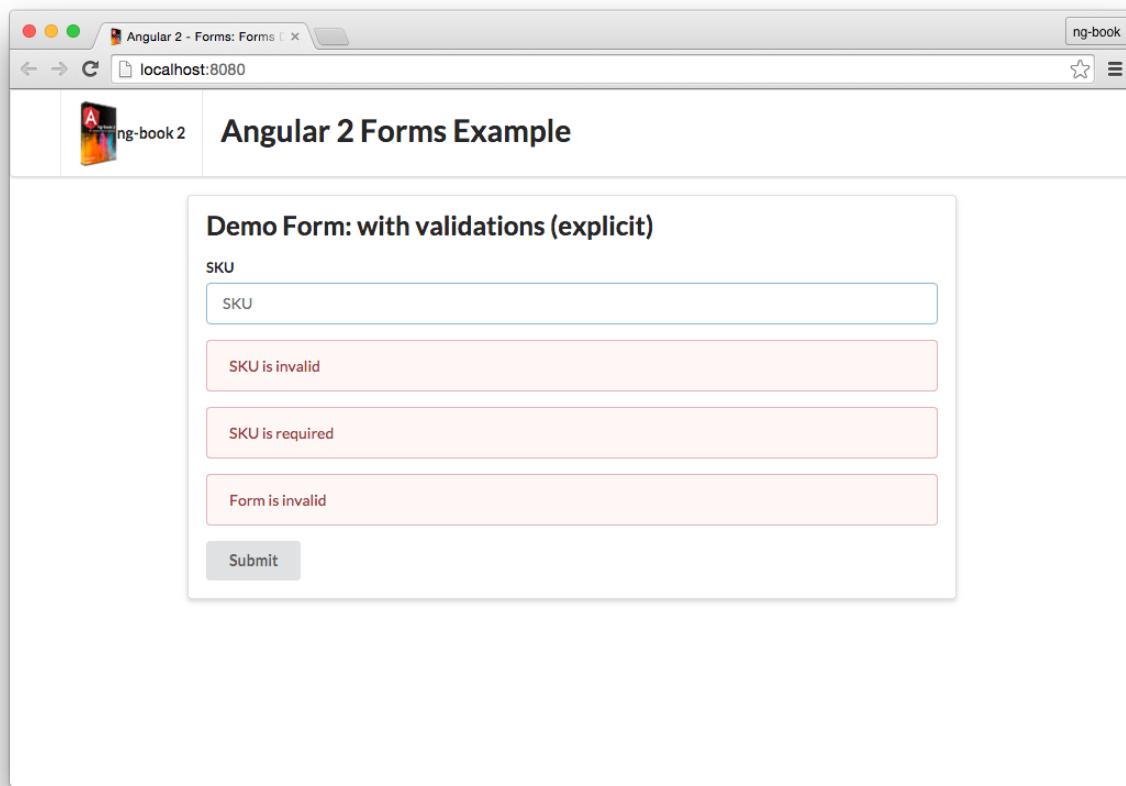
Now we need to use our validation in the view. There are two ways we can access the validation value in the view:

1. We can explicitly assign the `FormControl` `sku` to an instance variable of the class - which is more verbose, but gives us easy access to the `FormControl` in the view.
2. We can lookup the `FormControl` `sku` from `myForm` in the view. This requires less work in the component definition class, but is slightly more verbose in the view.

To make this difference clearer, let's look at this example both ways:

Explicitly setting the sku FormControl as an instance variable

Here's a screenshot of what our form is going to look like with validations:



Demo Form with Validations

The most flexible way to deal with individual `FormControl`s in your view is to set each `FormControl` up as an instance variable in your component definition class. Here's how we could setup `sku` in our class:

`code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts`

```
40 export class DemoFormWithValidationsExplicit {
41   myForm: FormGroup;
42   sku: AbstractControl;
43
44   constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
45     this.myForm = fb.group({
46       'sku': ['', Validators.required]
47   });
}
```

```

48      this.sku = this.myForm.controls['sku'];
49  }
50
51  onSubmit(value: string): void {
52    console.log('you submitted value: ', value);
53  }
54}
55

```

Notice that:

1. We setup `sku: AbstractControl` at the top of the class and
2. We assign `this.sku` after we've created `myForm` with the `FormBuilder`

This is great because it means we can reference `sku` anywhere in our component view. The downside is that by doing it this way, we'd have to setup an instance variable **for every field in our form**. For large forms, this can get pretty verbose.

Now that we have our `sku` being validated, I want to look at four different ways we can use it in our view:

1. Checking the validity of our whole form and displaying a message
2. Checking the validity of our individual field and displaying a message
3. Checking the validity of our individual field and coloring the field red if it's invalid
4. Checking the validity of our individual field on a particular requirement and displaying a message

Form message

We can check the validity of our whole form by looking at `myForm.valid`:

[code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts](#)

```

26  <div *ngIf="!sku.valid"
27    class="ui error message">SKU is invalid</div>

```

Remember, `myForm` is a `FormGroup` and a `FormGroup` is valid if all of the children `FormControls` are also valid.

Field message

We can also display a message for the specific field if that field's `FormControl` is invalid:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts

```
26   <div *ngIf="!sku.valid"
27     class="ui error message">SKU is invalid</div>
28   <div *ngIf="sku.hasError('required')"
29     class="ui error message">SKU is required</div>
```

Field coloring

I'm using the Semantic UI CSS Framework's CSS class `.error`, which means if I add the class `error` to the `<div class= "field">` it will show the input tag with a red border.

To do this, we can use the property syntax to set conditional classes:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts

```
19   <div class="field"
20     [class.error]="!sku.valid && sku.touched">
```

Notice here that we have two conditions for setting the `.error` class: We're checking for `!sku.valid` and `sku.touched`. The idea here is that we only want to show the error state if the user has tried editing the form ("touched" it) and it's now invalid.

To try this out, enter some data into the `input` tag and then delete the contents of the field.

Specific validation

A form field can be invalid for many reasons. We often want to show a different message depending on the reason for a failed validation.

To look up a specific validation failure we use the `hasError` method:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts

```
28   <div *ngIf="sku.hasError('required')"
29     class="ui error message">SKU is required</div>
```

Note that `hasError` is defined on both `FormControl` and `FormGroup`. This means you can pass a second argument of `path` to lookup a specific field from `FormGroup`. For example, we could have written the previous example as:

```
1   <div *ngIf="myForm.hasError('required', 'sku')"  
2     class="error">SKU is required</div>
```

Putting it together

Here's the full code listing of our form with validations with the FormControl set as an instance variable:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_explicit.ts

```
1 /* tslint:disable:no-string-literal */  
2 import { Component } from '@angular/core';  
3 import {  
4   FormBuilder,  
5   FormGroup,  
6   Validators,  
7   AbstractControl  
8 } from '@angular/forms';  
9  
10 @Component({  
11   selector: 'demo-form-with-validations-explicit',  
12   template: `  
13     <div class="ui raised segment">  
14       <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: with validations (explicit)</h2>  
15       <form [formGroup]="myForm"  
16         (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(myForm.value)"  
17         class="ui form">  
18  
19         <div class="field"  
20           [class.error]="!sku.valid && sku.touched">  
21           <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>  
22           <input type="text"  
23             id="skuInput"  
24             placeholder="SKU"  
25             [FormControl]="sku">  
26           <div *ngIf="!sku.valid"  
27             class="ui error message">SKU is invalid</div>  
28           <div *ngIf="sku.hasError('required')"  
29             class="ui error message">SKU is required</div>  
30           </div>  
31  
32         <div *ngIf="!myForm.valid"  
33           class="ui error message">Form is invalid</div>
```

```

34      <button type="submit" class="ui button">Submit</button>
35    </form>
36  </div>
37  ` 
38 })
39
40 export class DemoFormWithValidationsExplicit {
41   myForm: FormGroup;
42   sku: AbstractControl;
43
44   constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
45     this.myForm = fb.group({
46       'sku': ['', Validators.required]
47     });
48
49     this.sku = this.myForm.controls['sku'];
50   }
51
52   onSubmit(value: string): void {
53     console.log('you submitted value: ', value);
54   }
55 }
```

Removing the `sku` instance variable

In the example above we set `sku: AbstractControl` as an instance variable. We often wont want to create an instance variable for each `AbstractControl`, so how would we reference this `FormControl` in our view without an instance variable?

Instead we can use the `myForm.controls` property as in:

[code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_validations_shorthand.ts](#)

```

20   <input type="text"
21     id="skuInput"
22     placeholder="SKU"
23     [formControl]="myForm.controls['sku']">
24   <div *ngIf="!myForm.controls['sku'].valid"
25     class="ui error message">SKU is invalid</div>
26   <div *ngIf="myForm.controls['sku'].hasError('required')"
27     class="ui error message">SKU is required</div>
```

In this way we can access the `sku` control without being forced to explicitly add it as an instance variable on the component class.

Custom Validations

We often are going to want to write our own custom validations. Let's take a look at how to do that.

To see how validators are implemented, let's look at `Validators.required` from the Angular core source:

```
1  export class Validators {
2    static required(c: FormControl): StringMap<string, boolean> {
3      return isBlank(c.value) || c.value == "" ? {"required": true} : null;
4    }
}
```

A validator: - Takes a `FormControl` as its input and - Returns a `StringMap<string, boolean>` where the key is “error code” and the value is `true` if it fails

Writing the Validator

Let's say we have specific requirements for our `sku`. For example, say our `sku` needs to begin with `123`. We could write a validator like so:

`code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_custom_validations.ts`

```
19 function skuValidator(control: FormControl): { [s: string]: boolean } {
20   if (!control.value.match(/^123/)) {
21     return {invalidSku: true};
22   }
23 }
```

This validator will return an error code `invalidSku` if the input (the `control.value`) does not begin with `123`.

Assigning the Validator to the `FormControl`

Now we need to add the validator to our `FormControl`. However, there's one small problem: we already have a validator on `sku`. How can we add multiple validators to a single field?

For that, we use `Validators.compose`:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_custom_validations.ts

```
60  constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
61    this.myForm = fb.group({
62      'sku': ['', Validators.compose([
63        Validators.required, skuValidator])]
64    });

```

Validators.compose wraps our two validators and lets us assign them both to the FormControl. The FormControl is not valid unless both validations are valid.

Now we can use our new validator in the view:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_custom_validations.ts

```
45  <div *ngIf="sku.hasError('invalidSku')"
46    class="ui error message">SKU must begin with <span>123</span></div>
```



Note that in this section, I'm using "explicit" notation of adding an instance variable for each FormControl. That means that in the view in this section, sku refers to a FormControl.

If you run the sample code, one neat thing you'll notice is that if you type something in to the field, the required validation will be fulfilled, but the invalidSku validation may not. This is great - it means we can partially-validate our fields and show the appropriate messages.

Watching For Changes

So far we've only extracted the value from our form by calling `onSubmit` when the form is submitted. But often we want to watch for any value changes on a control.

Both FormGroup and FormControl have an `EventEmitter` that we can use to observe changes.



`EventEmitter` is an *Observable*, which means it conforms to a defined specification for watching for changes. If you're interested in the Observable spec, [you can find it here⁴³](#)

To watch for changes on a control we:

1. get access to the `EventEmitter` by calling `control.valueChanges`. Then we
2. add an *observer* using the `.subscribe` method

Here's an example:

⁴³<https://github.com/jhusain/observable-spec>

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_with_events.ts

```
44  constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
45      this.myForm = fb.group({
46          'sku': ['', Validators.required]
47      });
48
49      this.sku = this.myForm.controls['sku'];
50
51      this.sku.valueChanges.subscribe(
52          (value: string) => {
53              console.log('sku changed to:', value);
54          }
55      );
56
57      this.myForm.valueChanges.subscribe(
58          (form: any) => {
59              console.log('form changed to:', form);
60          }
61      );
62
63  }
```

Here we're observing two separate events: changes on the sku field and changes on the form as a whole.

The observable that we pass in is an object with a single key: next (there are other keys you can pass in, but we're not going to worry about those now). next is the function we want to call with the new value whenever the value changes.

If we type 'kj' into the text box we will see in our console:

```
1  sku changed to: k
2  form changed to: Object {sku: "k"}
3  sku changed to: kj
4  form changed to: Object {sku: "kj"}
```

As you can see each keystroke causes the control to change, so our observable is triggered. When we observe the individual FormControl we receive a value (e.g. kj), but when we observe the whole form, we get an object of key-value pairs (e.g. {sku: "kj"}).

ngModel

NgModel is a special directive: it binds a model to a form. ngModel is special in that it **implements two-way data binding**. Two-way data binding is almost always more complicated and difficult to reason about vs. one-way data binding. Angular 2 is built to generally have data flow one-way: top-down. However, when it comes to forms, there are times where it is easier to opt-in to a two-way bind.



Just because you've used `ng-model` in Angular 1 in the past, don't rush to use `ngModel` right away. There are good reasons to avoid two-way data binding. Of course, `ngModel` can be really handy, but know that we don't necessarily rely on two-way data binding it as much as we did in Angular 1.

Let's change our form a little bit and say we want to input `productName`. We're going to use `ngModel` to keep the component instance variable in sync with the view.

First, here's our component definition class:

`code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_ng_model.ts`

```
39 export class DemoFormNgModel {
40     myForm: FormGroup;
41     productName: string;
42
43     constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
44         this.myForm = fb.group({
45             'productName': [ '', Validators.required]
46         });
47     }
48
49     onSubmit(value: string): void {
50         console.log('you submitted value: ', value);
51     }
52 }
```

Notice that we're simply storing `productName: string` as an instance variable.

Next, let's use `ngModel` on our `input` tag:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_ng_model.ts

```
23      <label for="productNameInput">Product Name</label>
24      <input type="text"
25          id="productNameInput"
26          placeholder="Product Name"
27          [FormControl]="myForm.get('productName')"
28          [(ngModel)]="productName">
```

Now notice something - the syntax for ngModel is funny: we are using both brackets and parenthesis around the ngModel attribute! The idea this is intended to invoke is that we're using both the *input* [] brackets and the *output* () parenthesis. It's an indication of the two-way bind.

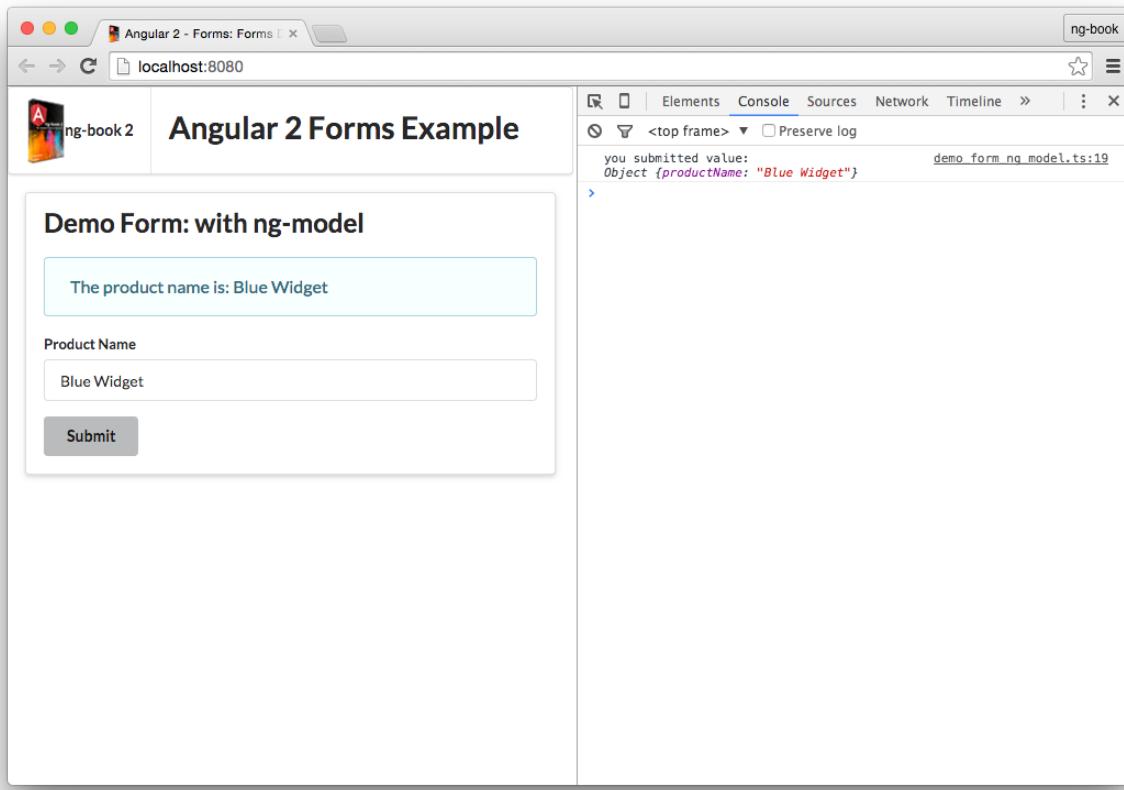
Notice something else here: we're still using FormControl to specify that this input should be bound to the FormControl on our form. We do this because ngModel is only binding the input to the instance variable - the FormControl is completely separate. But because we still want to validate this value and submit it as part of the form, we keep the FormControl directive.

Last, let's display our productName value in the view:

code/forms/app/ts/forms/demo_form_ng_model.ts

```
14      <div class="ui info message">
15          The product name is: {{productName}}
16      </div>
```

Here's what it looks like:



Demo Form with ngModel

Easy!

Wrapping Up

Forms have a lot of moving pieces, but Angular 2 makes it fairly straightforward. Once you get a handle on how to use `FormGroup`, `FormControl`s, and `Validations`, it's pretty easy going from there!

HTTP

Introduction

Angular comes with its own HTTP library which we can use to call out to external APIs.

When we make calls to an external server, we want our user to continue to be able to interact with the page. That is, we don't want our page to freeze until the HTTP request returns from the external server. To achieve this effect, our HTTP requests are *asynchronous*.

Dealing with *asynchronous* code is, historically, more tricky than dealing with synchronous code. In Javascript, there are generally three approaches to dealing with async code:

1. Callbacks
2. Promises
3. Observables

In Angular 2, the preferred method of dealing with async code is using Observables, and so that's what we'll cover in this chapter.



There's a whole chapter on RxJS and Observables: In this chapter we're going to be using Observables and not explaining them much. If you're just starting to read this book at this chapter, you should know that there's [a whole chapter on Observables](#) that goes into RxJS in more detail.

In this chapter we're going to:

1. show a basic example of `Http`
2. create a YouTube search-as-you-type component
3. discuss API details about the `Http` library



Sample Code The complete code for the examples in this chapter can be found in the `http` folder of the sample code. That folder contains a `README.md` which gives instructions for building and running the project.

Try running the code while reading the chapter and feel free play around to get a deeper insight about how it all works.

Using @angular/http

HTTP has been split into a separate module in Angular 2. This means that to use it you need to import constants from `@angular/http`. For instance, we might import constants from `@angular/http` like this:

```
1 import { Http, Response, RequestOptions, Headers } from '@angular/http';
```

```
import from @angular/http
```

In our `app.ts` we're going to import `HttpModule` which is a convenience collection of modules.

code/http/app/ts/app.ts

```
1 /*
2  * Angular
3  */
4 import {
5   Component
6 } from '@angular/core';
7 import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';
8 import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
9 import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
10 import { HttpModule } from '@angular/http';
```

In our `NgModule` we will add `HttpModule` to the list of imports. The effect is that we will be able to inject `Http` (and a few other modules) into our components.

code/http/app/ts/app.ts

```
48 @NgModule({
49   declarations: [
50     HttpApp,
51     SimpleHTTPComponent,
52     MoreHTTPRequests,
53     YouTubeSearchComponent,
54     SearchBox,
55     SearchResultComponent
56   ],
57   imports: [
58     BrowserModule,
59     HttpModule // <--- right here
```

```
60  ],
61  bootstrap: [ HttpApp ],
62  providers: [
63    youTubeServiceInjectables
64  ]
65 })
66 class Http AppModule {}
```

Now we can inject the `Http` service into our components (or anywhere we use DI, actually).

```
1 class MyFooComponent {
2   constructor(public http: Http) {
3   }
4
5   makeRequest(): void {
6     // do something with this.http ...
7   }
8 }
```

A Basic Request

The first thing we're going to do is make a simple GET request to the [jsonplaceholder API⁴⁴](#).

What we're going to do is:

1. Have a button that calls `makeRequest`
2. `makeRequest` will call the `http` library to perform a GET request on our API
3. When the request returns, we'll update `this.data` with the results of the data, which will be rendered in the view.

Here's a screenshot of our example:

⁴⁴<http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com>

Basic Request

Make Request

```
{  
  "userId": 1,  
  "id": 1,  
  "title": "sunt aut facere repellat provident occaecati excepturi optio reprehenderit",  
  "body": "quia et suscipit\\nsuscipit recusandae consequuntur expedita et cum\\nreprehende  
rit molestiae ut ut quas totam\\nnostrum rerum est autem sunt rem eveniet architecto"  
}
```

Basic Request

Building the SimpleHTTPComponent @Component

The first thing we're going to do is import a few modules and then specify a selector for our @Component:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
1  /*  
2   * Angular  
3   */  
4  import {Component} from '@angular/core';  
5  import {Http, Response} from '@angular/http';  
6  
7  @Component({  
8    selector: 'simple-http',
```

Building the SimpleHTTPComponent template

Next we build our view:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
9 template: ``
10 <h2>Basic Request</h2>
11 <button type="button" (click)="makeRequest()">Make Request</button>
12 <div *ngIf="loading">loading...</div>
13 <pre>{{data | json}}</pre>
14 `
```

Our template has three interesting parts:

1. The button
2. The loading indicator
3. The data

On the button we bind to `(click)` to call the `makeRequest` function in our controller, which we'll define in a minute.

We want to indicate to the user that our request is loading, so to do that we will show `loading...` if the instance variable `loading` is true, using `ngIf`.

The data is an Object. A great way to debug objects is to use the `json` pipe as we do here. We've put this in a `pre` tag to give us nice, easy to read formatting.

Building the SimpleHTTPComponent Controller

We start by defining a new class for our `SimpleHTTPComponent`:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
16 export class SimpleHTTPComponent {
17   data: Object;
18   loading: boolean;
```

We have two instance variables: `data` and `loading`. This will be used for our API return value and loading indicator respectively.

Next we define our constructor:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
20  constructor(private http: Http) {  
21  }
```

The constructor body is empty, but we inject one key module: Http.



Remember that when we use the `public` keyword in `public http: Http` TypeScript will assign `http` to `this.http`. It's a shorthand for:

```
1  // other instance variables here  
2  http: Http;  
3  
4  constructor(http: Http) {  
5    this.http = http;  
6  }
```

Now let's make our first HTTP request by implementing the `makeRequest` function:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
23  makeRequest(): void {  
24    this.loading = true;  
25    this.http.request('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1')  
26      .subscribe((res: Response) => {  
27        this.data = res.json();  
28        this.loading = false;  
29      });  
30  }
```

When we call `makeRequest`, the first thing we do is set `this.loading = true`. This will turn on the loading indicator in our view.

To make an HTTP request is straightforward: we call `this.http.request` and pass the URL to which we want to make a GET request.

`http.request` returns an Observable. We can subscribe to changes (akin to using `then` from a Promise) using `subscribe`.

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
25  this.http.request('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1')
26    .subscribe((res: Response) => {
```

When our `http.request` returns (from the server) the stream will emit a `Response` object. We extract the body of the response as an `Object` by using `json` and then we set `this.data` to that `Object`.

Since we have a response, we're not loading anymore so we set `this.loading = false`



`.subscribe` can also handle failures and stream completion by passing a function to the second and third arguments respectively. In a production app it would be a good idea to handle those cases, too. That is, `this.loading` should also be set to `false` if the request fails (i.e. the stream emits an error).

Full SimpleHTTPComponent

Here's what our `SimpleHTTPComponent` looks like altogether:

code/http/app/ts/components/SimpleHTTPComponent.ts

```
1  /*
2   * Angular
3   */
4  import {Component} from '@angular/core';
5  import {Http, Response} from '@angular/http';
6
7  @Component({
8    selector: 'simple-http',
9    template: `
10      <h2>Basic Request</h2>
11      <button type="button" (click)="makeRequest()">Make Request</button>
12      <div *ngIf="loading">loading...</div>
13      <pre>{{data | json}}</pre>
14    `
15  })
16  export class SimpleHTTPComponent {
17    data: Object;
18    loading: boolean;
19
20    constructor(private http: Http) {
21    }
```

```
22
23     makeRequest(): void {
24         this.loading = true;
25         this.http.request('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1')
26             .subscribe((res: Response) => {
27                 this.data = res.json();
28                 this.loading = false;
29             });
30     }
31 }
```

Writing a YouTubeSearchComponent

The last example was a minimal way to get the data from an API server into your code. Now let's try to build a more involved example.

In this section, we're going to build a way to search YouTube as you type. When the search returns we'll show a list of video thumbnail results, along with a description and link to each video.

Here's a screenshot of what happens when I search for "cats playing ipads":

YouTube Search

cats playing ipads|

Funny Cats Playing On iPads Compilation - Funny Videos 2015 You may or may not be surprised, but there are many animals playing on tablet computer. New video funny 2015 Thanks for watching, rating the video and ... Watch	Animals Playing On iPads Compilation You may or may not be surprised, but there are many animals playing on tablet computer. Join Us On Facebook http://www.facebook.com/Compilariz No ... Watch	Cute cats try to catch a mouse from an iPad Cute cats try to catch a mouse from an iPad. Watch	Charlie The Cat - Kitten Playing iPad 2 !!! Game For Cats Cute Funny Clever Pets Bloopers HELLO REDDIT, Thanks for the support! More Charlie The Cat Videos - http://youtu.be/xZhwYNrfWd0 Check My Other Videos Kitten Harlem Shake ... Watch
Cats playing "Game for Cats" with Apple iPad Two Siberian cats like to play "Game for Cats" with Apple iPad :) Note that the iPad has Invisible Shield screen protector. Siperlankissat leikkivät Watch	White Tiger Plays iPad - Game for Cats Gone Wild! Lions, servals, and more! http://www.ipadgameforcats.com and http://www.conservatorscenter.org/ Watch	Cat Plays with iPad - Friskies Games for Cats Mr. Kitty playing Cat Fishing on my girlfriends 1st gen iPad, via Friskies Games for Cats http://www.gamesforcats.com . Watch	Cute Cat plays on iPad Cute Cat plays on iPad. Watch

Can I get my cat to write Angular 2?

For this example we're going to write several things:

1. A SearchResult object that will hold the data we want from each result
2. A YouTubeService which will manage the API request to YouTube and convert the results to a stream of SearchResult[]
3. A SearchBox component which will call out to the YouTube service as the user types
4. A SearchResultComponent which will render a specific SearchResult
5. A YouTubeSearchComponent which will encapsulate our whole YouTube searching app and render the list of results

Let's handle each part one at a time.



Patrick Stapleton has an excellent repository named [angular2-webpack-starter](#)⁴⁵. This repo has an RxJS example which autocompletes Github repositories. Some of the ideas in this section are inspired from that example. It's a fantastic project with lots of examples and you should check it out.

Writing a SearchResult

First let's start with writing a basic SearchResult class. This class is just a convenient way to store the specific fields we're interested in from our search results.

[code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts](#)

```

30  class SearchResult {
31    id: string;
32    title: string;
33    description: string;
34    thumbnailUrl: string;
35    videoUrl: string;
36
37    constructor(obj?: any) {
38      this.id          = obj && obj.id           || null;
39      this.title       = obj && obj.title        || null;
40      this.description = obj && obj.description || null;
41      this.thumbnailUrl = obj && obj.thumbnailUrl || null;
42      this.videoUrl   = obj && obj.videoUrl    || '';
43
44    }
45 }
```

This pattern of taking an `obj?: any` lets us simulate keyword arguments. The idea is that we can create a new SearchResult and just pass in an object containing the keys we want to specify.

The only thing to point out here is that we're constructing the `videoUrl` using a hard-coded URL format. You're welcome to change this to a function which takes more arguments, or use the video id directly in your view to build this URL if you need to.

Writing the YouTubeService

The API

For this example we're going to be using [the YouTube v3 search API](#)⁴⁶.

⁴⁵<https://github.com/angular-class/angular2-webpack-starter>

⁴⁶<https://developers.google.com/youtube/v3/docs/search/list>



In order to use this API you need to have an API key. I've included an API key in the sample code which you can use. However, by the time you read this, you may find it's over the rate limits. If that happens, you'll need to issue your own key.

To issue your own key [see this documentation⁴⁷](#). For the sake of simplicity, I've registered a server key, but you should probably use a browser key if you're going to put your javascript code online.

We're going to setup two constants for our YouTubeService mapping to our API key and the API URL:

```
1 let YOUTUBE_API_KEY: string = "XXX_YOUR_KEY_HERE_XXX";
2 let YOUTUBE_API_URL: string = "https://www.googleapis.com/youtube/v3/search";
```

Eventually we're going to want to test our app. One of the things we find when testing is that we don't always want to test against production - we often want to test against staging or a development API.

To help with this environment configuration, one of the things we can do is **make these constants injectable**.

Why should we inject these constants instead of just using them in the normal way? Because if we make them injectable we can

1. have code that injects the right constants for a given environment at deploy time and
2. replace the injected value easily at test-time

By injecting these values, we have a lot more flexibility about their values down the line.

In order to make these values injectable, we use the `{ provide: ... , useValue: ... }` syntax like this:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```
82 export var youtubeServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
83   {provide: YouTubeService, useClass: YouTubeService},
84   {provide: YOUTUBE_API_KEY, useValue: YOUTUBE_API_KEY},
85   {provide: YOUTUBE_API_URL, useValue: YOUTUBE_API_URL}
86 ];
```

Here we're specifying that we want to bind `YOUTUBE_API_KEY` "injectably" to the value of `YOUTUBE_API_KEY`. (Same for `YOUTUBE_API_URL`, and we'll define `YouTubeService` in a minute.)

If you recall, to make something available to be injected throughout our application, we need to put it in providers for our NgModule. Since we're exporting `youtubeServiceInjectables` here we can use it in our `app.ts`

⁴⁷https://developers.google.com/youtube/registering_an_application#create_API_Keys

```

1 // http/app.ts
2 import { HttpClientModule } from '@angular/http';
3 import { youTubeServiceInjectables } from "components/YouTubeSearchComponent";
4
5 // ...
6 // further down
7 // ...
8
9 @NgModule({
10   declarations: [
11     HttpApp,
12     // others ....
13   ],
14   imports: [ BrowserModule, HttpClientModule ],
15   bootstrap: [ HttpApp ],
16   providers: [
17     youTubeServiceInjectables // <--- right here
18   ]
19 })
20 class Http AppModule {}

```

Now we can inject YOUTUBE_API_KEY (from the youTubeServiceInjectables) instead of using the variable directly.

YouTubeService constructor

We create our YouTubeService by making a class and annotating it as @Injectable:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```

47 /**
48  * YouTubeService connects to the YouTube API
49  * See: * https://developers.google.com/youtube/v3/docs/search/list
50 */
51 @Injectable()
52 export class YouTubeService {
53   constructor(private http: Http,
54             @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_KEY) private apiKey: string,
55             @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_URL) private apiUrl: string) {
56 }

```

In the constructor we inject three things:

1. Http
2. YOUTUBE_API_KEY
3. YOUTUBE_API_URL

Notice that we make instance variables from all three arguments, meaning we can access them as `this.http`, `this apiKey`, and `this.apiUrl` respectively.

Notice that we explicitly inject using the `@Inject(YOUTUBE_API_KEY)` notation.

YouTubeService search

Next let's implement the `search` function. `search` takes a query string and returns an `Observable` which will emit a stream of `SearchResult[]`. That is, each item emitted is an *array* of `SearchResults`.

[code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts](#)

```

58   search(query: string): Observable<SearchResult[]> {
59     let params: string = [
60       `q=${query}`,
61       `key=${this.apiKey}`,
62       `part=snippet`,
63       `type=video`,
64       `maxResults=10`
65     ].join('&');
66     let queryUrl: string = `${this.apiUrl}?${params}`;

```

We're building the `queryUrl` in a manual way here. We start by simply putting the query params in the `params` variable. (You can find the meaning of each of those values by [reading the search API docs](#)⁴⁸.)

Then we build the `queryUrl` by concatenating the `apiUrl` and the `params`.

Now that we have a `queryUrl` we can make our request:

⁴⁸<https://developers.google.com/youtube/v3/docs/search/list>

[code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts](#)

```

58  search(query: string): Observable<SearchResult[]> {
59    let params: string = [
60      `q=${query}`,
61      `key=${this.apiKey}`,
62      `part=snippet`,
63      `type=video`,
64      `maxResults=10`
65    ].join('&');
66    let queryUrl: string = `${this.apiUrl}?${params}`;
67    return this.http.get(queryUrl)
68      .map((response: Response) => {
69        return (<any>response.json()).items.map(item => {
70          // console.log("raw item", item); // uncomment if you want to debug
71          return new SearchResult({
72            id: item.id.videoId,
73            title: item.snippet.title,
74            description: item.snippet.description,
75            thumbnailUrl: item.snippetthumbnails.high.url
76          });
77        });
78      });
79  }

```

Here we take the return value of `http.get` and use `map` to get the `Response` from the request. From that `response` we extract the body as an object using `.json()` and then we iterate over each item and convert it to a `SearchResult`.



If you'd like to see what the raw `item` looks like, just uncomment the `console.log` and inspect it in your browsers developer console.



Notice that we're calling `(<any>response.json()).items`. What's going on here? We're telling TypeScript that we're not interested in doing strict type checking.

When working with a JSON API, we don't generally have typing definitions for the API responses, and so TypeScript won't know that the Object returned even has an `items` key, so the compiler will complain.

We could call `response.json()["items"]` and then cast that to an `Array` etc., but in this case (and in creating the `SearchResult`, it's just cleaner to use an `any` type, at the expense of strict type checking

YouTubeService Full Listing

Here's the full listing of our YouTubeService:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```
1  /*
2   * YouTubeSearchComponent is a tiny app that will autocomplete search YouTube.
3   */
4
5  import {
6    Component,
7    Injectable,
8    OnInit,
9    ElementRef,
10   EventEmitter,
11   Inject
12 } from '@angular/core';
13 import { Http, Response } from '@angular/http';
14 import { Observable } from 'rxjs';
15
16 /*
17   This API key may or may not work for you. Your best bet is to issue your own
18   API key by following these instructions:
19   https://developers.google.com/youtube/registering_an_application#Create_API_Ke\
20 ys
21
22   Here I've used a **server key** and make sure you enable YouTube.
23
24   Note that if you do use this API key, it will only work if the URL in
25   your browser is "localhost"
26 */
27 export var YOUTUBE_API_KEY: string = 'AIzaSyD0fT_B081aEZScosfTYMruJobmpjqNeEk';
28 export var YOUTUBE_API_URL: string = 'https://www.googleapis.com/youtube/v3/sear\
29 ch';
30 let loadingGif: string = ((<any>window).__karma__) ? '' : require('images/loadin\
31 g.gif');
32
33 class SearchResult {
34   id: string;
35   title: string;
36   description: string;
37   thumbnailUrl: string;
38   videoUrl: string;
```

```
39
40     constructor(obj?: any) {
41         this.id          = obj && obj.id           || null;
42         this.title       = obj && obj.title        || null;
43         this.description = obj && obj.description || null;
44         this.thumbnailUrl = obj && obj.thumbnailUrl || null;
45         this.videoUrl    = obj && obj.videoUrl     || null;
46         `https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=${this.id}`;
47     }
48 }
49
50 /**
51 * YouTubeService connects to the YouTube API
52 * See: * https://developers.google.com/youtube/v3/docs/search/list
53 */
54 @Injectable()
55 export class YouTubeService {
56     constructor(private http: Http,
57                 @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_KEY) private apiKey: string,
58                 @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_URL) private apiUrl: string) {
59     }
60
61     search(query: string): Observable<SearchResult[]> {
62         let params: string = [
63             `q=${query}`,
64             `key=${this.apiKey}`,
65             `part=snippet`,
66             `type=video`,
67             `maxResults=10`
68         ].join('&');
69         let queryUrl: string = `${this.apiUrl}?${params}`;
70         return this.http.get(queryUrl)
71             .map((response: Response) => {
72                 return (<any>response.json()).items.map(item => {
73                     // console.log("raw item", item); // uncomment if you want to debug
74                     return new SearchResult({
75                         id: item.id.videoId,
76                         title: item.snippet.title,
77                         description: item.snippet.description,
78                         thumbnailUrl: item.snippet.thumbnails.high.url
79                     });
80                 });
81             });
82     }
83 }
```

```
81      });
82  }
83 }
84
85 export var youtubeServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
86   {provide: YouTubeService, useClass: YouTubeService},
87   {provide: YOUTUBE_API_KEY, useValue: YOUTUBE_API_KEY},
88   {provide: YOUTUBE_API_URL, useValue: YOUTUBE_API_URL}
89 ];
90
91 /**
92 * SearchBox displays the search box and emits events based on the results
93 */
94
95 @Component({
96   outputs: ['loading', 'results'],
97   selector: 'search-box',
98   template: `
99     <input type="text" class="form-control" placeholder="Search" autofocus>
100    `
101 })
102 export class SearchBox implements OnInit {
103   loading: EventEmitter<boolean> = new EventEmitter<boolean>();
104   results: EventEmitter<SearchResult[]> = new EventEmitter<SearchResult[]>();
105
106   constructor(private youtube: YouTubeService,
107             private el: ElementRef) {
108   }
109
110   ngOnInit(): void {
111     // convert the `keyup` event into an observable stream
112     Observable.fromEvent(this.el.nativeElement, 'keyup')
113       .map((e: any) => e.target.value) // extract the value of the input
114       .filter((text: string) => text.length > 1) // filter out if empty
115       .debounceTime(250) // only once every 250ms
116       .do(() => this.loading.next(true)) // enable loading
117     // search, discarding old events if new input comes in
118     .map((query: string) => this.youtube.search(query))
119     .switch()
120     // act on the return of the search
121     .subscribe(
122       (results: SearchResult[]) => { // on sucesss
```

```
123     this.loading.next(false);
124     this.results.next(results);
125   },
126   (err: any) => { // on error
127     console.log(err);
128     this.loading.next(false);
129   },
130   () => { // on completion
131     this.loading.next(false);
132   }
133 );
134
135 }
136 }
137
138 @Component({
139   inputs: ['result'],
140   selector: 'search-result',
141   template: `
142     <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-3">
143       <div class="thumbnail">
144         
145         <div class="caption">
146           <h3>{{result.title}}</h3>
147           <p>{{result.description}}</p>
148           <p><a href="{{result.videoUrl}}" class="btn btn-default" role="button">
149             Watch</a></p>
150           </div>
151         </div>
152       </div>
153     </div>
154   `
155 })
156 export class SearchResultComponent {
157   result: SearchResult;
158 }
159
160 @Component({
161   selector: 'youtube-search',
162   template: `
163   <div class='container'>
164     <div class="page-header">
```

```
165      <h1>YouTube Search
166      <img
167          style="float: right;"
168          *ngIf="loading"
169          src='${loadingGif}' />
170      </h1>
171  </div>
172
173  <div class="row">
174      <div class="input-group input-group-lg col-md-12">
175          <search-box
176              (loading)="loading = $event"
177              (results)="updateResults($event)"
178          ></search-box>
179      </div>
180  </div>
181
182  <div class="row">
183      <search-result
184          *ngFor="let result of results"
185          [result]="result">
186      </search-result>
187  </div>
188 </div>
189 ^
190 })
191 export class YouTubeSearchComponent {
192     results: SearchResult[];
193
194     updateResults(results: SearchResult[]): void {
195         this.results = results;
196         // console.log("results:", this.results); // uncomment to take a look
197     }
198 }
```

Writing the SearchBox

The `SearchBox` component plays a key role in our app: it is the mediator between our UI and the `YouTubeService`.

The `SearchBox` will:

1. Watch for `keyup` on an `input` and submit a search to the `YouTubeService`

2. Emit a loading event when we're loading (or not)
3. Emit a results event when we have new results

SearchBox @Component Definition

Let's define our SearchBox @Component:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```
88  /**
89   * SearchBox displays the search box and emits events based on the results
90  */
91
92  @Component({
93    outputs: [ 'loading', 'results' ],
94    selector: 'search-box',
```

The selector we've seen many times before: this allows us to create a <search-box> tag.

The outputs key specifies events that will be emitted from this component. That is, we can use the (output)="callback()" syntax in our view to listen to events on this component. For example, here's how we will use the search-box tag in our view later on:

```
1  <search-box
2    (loading)="loading = $event"
3    (results)="updateResults($event)"
4  ></search-box>
```

In this example, when the SearchBox component emits a loading event, we will set the variable loading in the parent context. Likewise, when the SearchBox emits a results event, we will call the updateResults() function, with the value, in the parent's context.

In the @Component configuration we're simply specifying the names of the events with the strings "loading" and "results". In this example, each event will have a corresponding EventEmitter as an *instance variable of the controller class*. We'll implement that in a few minutes.

For now, remember that @Component is like the public API for our component, so here we're just specifying the name of the events, and we'll worry about implementing the EventEmitters later.

SearchBox template Definition

Our template is straightforward. We have one input tag:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```

88  /**
89   * SearchBox displays the search box and emits events based on the results
90  */
91
92 @Component({
93   outputs: ['loading', 'results'],
94   selector: 'search-box',
95   template: `
96     <input type="text" class="form-control" placeholder="Search" autofocus>
97   `
98 })

```

SearchBox Controller Definition

Our SearchBox controller is a new class:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```

99 export class SearchBox implements OnInit {
100   loading: Event Emitter<boolean> = new Event Emitter<boolean>();
101   results: Event Emitter< SearchResult[]> = new Event Emitter< SearchResult[]>();

```

We say that this class implements `OnInit` because we want to use the `ngOnInit` lifecycle callback. If a class implements `OnInit` then the `ngOnInit` function will be called after the first change detection check.

`ngOnInit` is a good place to do initialization (vs. the constructor) because inputs set on a component are not available in the constructor.

SearchBox Controller Definition constructor

Let's talk about the SearchBox constructor:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```

103   constructor(private youtube: YouTubeService,
104             private e1: ElementRef) {
105 }

```

In our constructor we inject:

1. Our `YouTubeService` and
2. The element `e1` that this component is attached to. `e1` is an object of type `ElementRef`, which is an Angular wrapper around a native element.

We set both injections as instance variables.

SearchBox Controller Definition `ngOnInit`

On this input box we want to watch for keyup events. The thing is, if we simply did a search after every keyup that wouldn't work very well. There are three things we can do to improve the user experience:

1. Filter out any empty or short queries
2. “debounce” the input, that is, don’t search on every character but only after the user has stopped typing after a short amount of time
3. discard any old searches, if the user has made a new search

We could manually bind to keyup and call a function on each keyup event and then implement filtering and debouncing from there. However, there is a better way: turn the keyup events into an observable stream.

RxJS provides a way to listen to events on an element using `Rx.Observable.fromEvent`. We can use it like so:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```
107  ngOnInit(): void {
108    // convert the `keyup` event into an observable stream
109    Observable.fromEvent(this.el.nativeElement, 'keyup')
```

Notice that in `fromEvent`:

- the first argument is `this.el.nativeElement` (the native DOM element this component is attached to)
- the second argument is the string '`keyup`', which is the name of the event we want to turn into a stream

We can now perform some RxJS magic over this stream to turn it into `SearchResults`. Let’s walk through step by step.

Given the stream of keyup events we can chain on more methods. In the next few paragraphs we’re going to chain several functions on to our stream which will transform the stream. Then at the end we’ll show the whole example together.

First, let’s extract the value of the input tag:

```
1 .map((e: any) => e.target.value) // extract the value of the input
```

Above says, map over each keyup event, then find the event target (`e.target`, that is, our input element) and extract the `value` of that element. This means our stream is now a stream of strings.

Next:

```
1 .filter((text: string) => text.length > 1)
```

This filter means the stream will not emit any search strings for which the length is less than one. You could set this to a higher number if you want to ignore short searches.

```
1 .debounceTime(250)
```

debounceTime means we will throttle requests that come in faster than 250ms. That is, we won't search on every keystroke, but rather after the user has paused a small amount.

```
1 .do(() => this.loading.next(true))           // enable loading
```

Using do on a stream is a way to perform a function mid-stream for each event, but it does not change anything in the stream. The idea here is that we've got our search, it has enough characters, and we've debounced, so now we're about to search, so we turn on loading.

`this.loading` is an `EventEmitter`. We "turn on" loading by emitting `true` as the next event. We emit something on an `EventEmitter` by calling `next`. Writing `this.loading.next(true)` means, emit a true event on the loading `EventEmitter`. When we listen to the loading event on this component, the `$event` value will now be `true` (we'll look more closely at using `$event` below).

```
1 .map((query: string) => this.youtube.search(query))
2 .switch()
```

We use `.map` to call perform a search for each query that is emitted. By using `switch` we're, essentially, saying "ignore all search events but the most recent". That is, if a new search comes in, we want to use the most recent and discard the rest.

Reactive experts will note that I'm handwaving here. `switch` has a more specific technical definition which you can [read about in the RxJS docs here⁴⁹](#).

For each query that comes in, we're going to perform a search on our `YouTubeService`.

Putting the chain together we have this:

⁴⁹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/switch.md>

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```

107  ngOnInit(): void {
108    // convert the `keyup` event into an observable stream
109    Observable.fromEvent(this.el.nativeElement, 'keyup')
110      .map((e: any) => e.target.value) // extract the value of the input
111      .filter((text: string) => text.length > 1) // filter out if empty
112      .debounceTime(250) // only once every 250ms
113      .do(() => this.loading.next(true)) // enable loading
114    // search, discarding old events if new input comes in
115    .map((query: string) => this.youtube.search(query))
116    .switch()
117    // act on the return of the search
118    .subscribe(

```

The API of RxJS can be a little intimidating because the API surface area is large. That said, we've implemented a sophisticated event-handling stream in very few lines of code!

Because we are calling out to our YouTubeService our stream is now a stream of SearchResult[]. We can subscribe to this stream and perform actions accordingly.

subscribe takes three arguments: onSuccess, onError, onCompletion.

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```

118  .subscribe(
119    (results: SearchResult[]) => { // on sucesss
120      this.loading.next(false);
121      this.results.next(results);
122    },
123    (err: any) => { // on error
124      console.log(err);
125      this.loading.next(false);
126    },
127    () => { // on completion
128      this.loading.next(false);
129    }
130  );
131
132 }

```

The first argument specifies what we want to do when the stream emits a regular event. Here we emit an event on both of our EventEmitters:

1. We call `this.loading.next(false)`, indicating we've stopped loading
2. We call `this.results.next(results)`, which will emit an event containing the list of results

The second argument specifies what should happen when the stream has an error. Here we set `this.loading.next(false)` and log out the error.

The third argument specifies what should happen when the stream completes. Here we also emit that we're done loading.

SearchBox Component: Full Listing

All together, here's the full listing of our SearchBox Component:

[code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts](#)

```

88 /**
89 * SearchBox displays the search box and emits events based on the results
90 */
91
92 @Component({
93   outputs: ['loading', 'results'],
94   selector: 'search-box',
95   template: `
96     <input type="text" class="form-control" placeholder="Search" autofocus>
97   `
98 })
99 export class SearchBox implements OnInit {
100   loading: EventEmitter<boolean> = new EventEmitter<boolean>();
101   results: EventEmitter<SearchResult[]> = new EventEmitter<SearchResult[]>();
102
103   constructor(private youtube: YouTubeService,
104               private el: ElementRef) {
105   }
106
107   ngOnInit(): void {
108     // convert the `keyup` event into an observable stream
109     Observable.fromEvent(this.el.nativeElement, 'keyup')
110       .map((e: any) => e.target.value) // extract the value of the input
111       .filter((text: string) => text.length > 1) // filter out if empty
112       .debounceTime(250) // only once every 250ms
113       .do(() => this.loading.next(true)) // enable loading
114     // search, discarding old events if new input comes in
115     .map((query: string) => this.youtube.search(query))
116     .switch()

```

```

117     // act on the return of the search
118     .subscribe(
119       (results: SearchResult[]) => { // on success
120         this.loading.next(false);
121         this.results.next(results);
122       },
123       (err: any) => { // on error
124         console.log(err);
125         this.loading.next(false);
126       },
127       () => { // on completion
128         this.loading.next(false);
129       }
130     );
131   }
132 }
133 }
```

Writing SearchResultComponent

The SearchBox was pretty complicated. Let's handle a **much** easier component now: the SearchResultComponent. The SearchResultComponent's job is to render a single SearchResult.

There's not really any new ideas here, so let's take it all at once:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```

135 @Component({
136   inputs: ['result'],
137   selector: 'search-result',
138   template: `
139     <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-3">
140       <div class="thumbnail">
141         
142       <div class="caption">
143         <h3>{{result.title}}</h3>
144         <p>{{result.description}}</p>
145         <p><a href="{{result.videoUrl}}" class="btn btn-default" role="button">
146           Watch</a></p>
147         </div>
148       </div>
149     </div>
```



Charlie The Cat - Kitten Playing iPad 2 !!! Game For Cats Cute Funny Clever Pets Bloopers

HELLO REDDIT, Thanks for the support! More Charlie the Cat Videos - <http://youtu.be/xZhwYNrfWdo> Check My Other Videos Kitten Harlem Shake ...

[Watch](#)

Single Search Result Component

```
150     </div>
151   ^
152 })
153 export class SearchResultComponent {
154   result: SearchResult;
155 }
```

A few things:

The `@Component` takes a single input `result`, on which we will put the `SearchResult` assigned to this component.

The template shows the title, description, and thumbnail of the video and then links to the video via a button.

The `SearchResultComponent` simply stores the `SearchResult` in the instance variable `result`.

Writing YouTubeSearchComponent

The last component we have to implement is the `YouTubeSearchComponent`. This is the component that ties everything together.

YouTubeSearchComponent `@Component`

[code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts](#)

```
157 @Component({
158   selector: 'youtube-search',
```

Our `@Component` annotation is straightforward: use the selector `youtube-search`.

YouTubeSearchComponent **Controller**

Before we look at the template, let's take a look at the `YouTubeSearchComponent` controller:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```
188 export class YouTubeSearchComponent {  
189   results: SearchResult[];  
190  
191   updateResults(results: SearchResult[]): void {  
192     this.results = results;  
193     // console.log("results:", this.results); // uncomment to take a look  
194   }  
195 }
```

This component holds one instance variable: `results` which is an array of `SearchResults`.

We also define one function: `updateResults`. `updateResults` simply takes whatever new `SearchResult[]` it's given and sets `this.results` to the new value.

We'll use both `results` and `updateResults` in our template.

YouTubeSearchComponent template

Our view needs to do three things:

1. Show the loading indicator, if we're loading
2. Listen to events on the search-box
3. Show the search results

Next lets look at our template. Let's build some basic structure and show the loading gif next to the header:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```
159 template: `  
160   <div class='container'>  
161     <div class="page-header">  
162       <h1>YouTube Search  
163       <img  
164         style="float: right;"  
165         *ngIf="loading"  
166         src='${loadingGif}' />  
167       </h1>  
168     </div>
```



Notice that our `img` has a `src` of `${loadingGif}` - that `loadingGif` variable came from a `require` statement earlier in the program. Here we're taking advantage of webpack's image loading feature. If you want to learn more about how this works, take a look at the webpack config in the sample code for this chapter or checkout [image-webpack-loader](#)⁵⁰.

We only want to show this loading image if `loading` is true, so we use `ngIf` to implement that functionality.

Next, let's look at the markup where we use our `search-box`:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```

169   <div class="row">
170     <div class="input-group input-group-lg col-md-12">
171       <search-box
172         (loading)="loading = $event"
173         (results)="updateResults($event)"
174       ></search-box>
175   </div>

```

The interesting part here is how we bind to the `loading` and `results` outputs. Notice, that we use the `(output)="action()"` syntax here.

For the `loading` output, we run the expression `loading = $event`. `$event` will be substituted with the value of the event that is emitted from the `EventEmitter`. That is, in our `SearchBox` component, when we call `this.loading.next(true)` then `$event` will be `true`.

Similarly, for the `results` output, we call the `updateResults()` function whenever a new set of results are emitted. This has the effect of updating our components `results` instance variable.

Lastly, we want to take the list of `results` in this component and render a `search-result` for each one:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```

178   <div class="row">
179     <search-result
180       *ngFor="let result of results"
181       [result]="result">
182       </search-result>
183     </div>
184   </div>

```

YouTubeSearchComponent Full Listing

Here's the full listing for the `YouTubeSearchComponent`:

⁵⁰<https://github.com/tcoopman/image-webpack-loader>

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```
157 @Component({
158   selector: 'youtube-search',
159   template: `
160     <div class='container'>
161       <div class="page-header">
162         <h1>YouTube Search
163         <img
164           style="float: right;"
165           *ngIf="loading"
166           src='${loadingGif}' />
167         </h1>
168       </div>
169
170     <div class="row">
171       <div class="input-group input-group-lg col-md-12">
172         <search-box
173           (loading)="loading = $event"
174           (results)="updateResults($event)"
175         ></search-box>
176       </div>
177     </div>
178
179     <div class="row">
180       <search-result
181         *ngFor="let result of results"
182         [result]="result">
183       </search-result>
184     </div>
185   </div>
186   `
187 })
188 export class YouTubeSearchComponent {
189   results: SearchResult[];
190
191   updateResults(results: SearchResult[]): void {
192     this.results = results;
193     // console.log("results:", this.results); // uncomment to take a look
194   }
195 }
```

There we have it! A functional search-as-you-type implemented for YouTube videos! Try running it

from the code examples if you haven't already.

@angular/http API

Of course, all of the HTTP requests we've made so far have simply been GET requests. It's important that we know how we can make other requests too.

Making a POST request

Making POST request with @angular/http is very much like making a GET request except that we have one additional parameter: a body.

jsonplaceholder API⁵¹ also provides a convenient URL for testing our POST requests, so let's use it for a POST:

code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts

```
30  makePost(): void {
31    this.loading = true;
32    this.http.post(
33      'http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts',
34      JSON.stringify({
35        body: 'bar',
36        title: 'foo',
37        userId: 1
38      }))
39      .subscribe((res: Response) => {
40        this.data = res.json();
41        this.loading = false;
42      });
43  }
```

Notice in the second argument we're taking an Object and converting it to a JSON string using `JSON.stringify`.

PUT / PATCH / DELETE / HEAD

There are a few other fairly common HTTP requests and we call them in much the same way.

- `http.put` and `http.patch` map to PUT and PATCH respectively and both take a URL and a body
- `http.delete` and `http.head` map to DELETE and HEAD respectively and both take a URL (no body)

Here's how we might make a DELETE request:

⁵¹<http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com>

code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts

```
45  makeDelete(): void {
46    this.loading = true;
47    this.http.delete('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1')
48      .subscribe((res: Response) => {
49        this.data = res.json();
50        this.loading = false;
51      });
52 }
```

RequestOptions

All of the http methods we've covered so far also take an optional last argument: RequestOptions. The RequestOptions object encapsulates:

- method
- headers
- body
- mode
- credentials
- cache
- url
- search

Let's say we want to craft a GET request that uses a special X-API-TOKEN header. We can create a request with this header like so:

code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts

```
54  makeHeaders(): void {
55    let headers: Headers = new Headers();
56    headers.append('X-API-TOKEN', 'ng-book');
57
58    let opts: RequestOptions = new RequestOptions();
59    opts.headers = headers;
60
61    this.http.get('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1', opts)
62      .subscribe((res: Response) => {
63        this.data = res.json();
64      });
65 }
```

Summary

@angular/http is flexible and suitable for a wide variety of APIs.

One of the great things about @angular/http is that it has support for mocking the backend which is very useful in testing. To learn about testing HTTP, flip on over to [the testing chapter](#).

Routing

In web development, *routing* means splitting the application into different areas usually based on rules that are derived from the current URL in the browser.

For instance, if we visit the / path of a website, we may be visiting the **home route** of that website. Or if we visit /about we want to render the “about page”, and so on.

Why Do We Need Routing?

Defining routes in our application is useful because we can:

- separate different areas of the app;
- maintain the state in the app;
- protect areas of the app based on certain rules;

For example, imagine we are writing an inventory application similar to the one we described in previous chapters.

When we first visit the application, we might see a search form where we can enter a search term and get a list of products that match that term.

After that, we might click a given product to visit that product’s details page.

Because our app is client-side, it’s not technically required that we change the URL when we change “pages”. But it’s worth thinking about for a minute: what would be the consequences of using the same URL for all pages?

- You wouldn’t be able to refresh the page and keep your location within the app
- You wouldn’t be able to bookmark a page and come back to it later
- You wouldn’t be able to share the URL of that page with others

Or put in a positive light, routing lets us define a URL string that specifies where within our app a user should be.

In our inventory example we could determine a series of different routes for each activity, for instance:

The initial root URL could be represented by `http://our-app/`. When we visit this page, we could be redirected to our “home” route at `http://our-app/home`.

When accessing the ‘About Us’ area, the URL could become `http://our-app/about`. This way if we sent the URL `http://our-app/about` to another user they would see same page.

How client-side routing works

Perhaps you've written server-side routing code before (though, it isn't necessary to complete this chapter). Generally with server-side routing, the HTTP request comes in and the server will render a different controller depending on the incoming URL.

For instance, with [Express.js⁵²](#) you might write something like this:

```
1 var express = require('express');
2 var router = express.Router();
3
4 // define the about route
5 router.get('/about', function(req, res) {
6   res.send('About us');
7 });


```

Or with [Ruby on Rails⁵³](#) you might have:

```
1 # routes.rb
2 get '/about', to: 'pages#about'
3
4 # PagesController.rb
5 class PagesController < ApplicationController::Base
6   def about
7     render
8   end
9 end


```

The pattern varies per framework, but in both of these cases you have a **server** that accepts a request and *routes* to a **controller** and the controller runs a specific **action**, depending on the path and parameters.

Client-side routing is very similar in concept but different in implementation. With client-side routing **we're not necessarily making a request to the server** on every URL change. With our Angular apps, we refer to them as "Single Page Apps" (SPA) because our server only gives us a single page and it's our JavaScript that renders the different pages.

So how can we have different routes in our JavaScript code?

⁵²<http://expressjs.com/guide/routing.html>

⁵³<http://rubyonrails.org/>

The beginning: using anchor tags

Client-side routing started out with a clever hack: Instead of using the page page, instead use the *anchor tag* as the client-side URL.

As you may already know, anchor tags were traditionally used to link directly to a place *within* the webpage and make the browser scroll all the way to where that anchor was defined. For instance, if we define an anchor tag in an HTML page:

```
1 <!-- ... lots of page content here ... -->
2 <a name="about"><h1>About</h1></a>
```

And we visited the URL `http://something/#about`, the browser would jump straight to that H1 tag that identified by the about anchor.

The clever move for client-side frameworks used for SPAs was to take the anchor tags and use them represent the routes within the app by formatting them as paths.

For example, the about route for an SPA would be something like `http://something/#/about`. This is what is known as **hash-based routing**.

What's neat about this trick is that it looks like a "normal" URL because we're starting our anchor with a slash (`/about`).

The evolution: HTML5 client-side routing

With the introduction of HTML5, browsers acquired the ability to programmatically create new browser history entries that change the displayed URL *without the need for a new request*.

This is achieved using the `history.pushState` method that exposes the browser's navigational history to JavaScript.

So now, instead of relying on the anchor hack to navigate routes, modern frameworks can rely on `pushState` to perform history manipulation without reloads.



Angular 1 Note: This way of routing already works in Angular 1, but it needs to be explicitly enabled using `$locationProvider.html5Mode(true)`.

In Angular 2, however, the HTML5 is the default mode. Later in this chapter we show how to change from HTML5 mode to the old anchor tag mode.



There's two things you need to be aware of when using HTML5 mode routing, though

1. Not all browsers support HTML5 mode routing, so if you need to support older browsers you might be stuck with hash-based routing for a while.
2. **The server has to support HTML5 based routing.**

It may not be immediately clear why the server has to support HTML5 based-routing, we'll talk more about why later in this chapter.

Writing our first routes



The Angular docs recommends using [HTML5 mode routing⁵⁴](#). But due to the challenges mentioned in the previous section we will for simplicity be using hash based routing in our examples.

In Angular we configure routes by mapping *paths* to the component that will handle them.

Let's create a small app that has multiple routes. On this sample application we will have 3 routes:

- A main page route, using the `/#/home` path;
- An about page, using the `/#/about` path;
- A contact us page, using the `/#/contact` path;

And when the user visits the root path (`/#/`), it will redirect to the home path.

Components of Angular 2 routing

There are three main components that we use to configure routing in Angular:

- Routes describes the routes our application supports
- RouterOutlet is a “placeholder” component that shows Angular where to put the content of each route
- RouterLink directive is used to link to routes

Let's look at each one more closely.

Imports

In order to use the router in Angular, we import constants from the `@angular/router` package:

⁵⁴<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/router.html#!#browser-url-styles>

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
10 import {  
11   RouterModule,  
12   Routes  
13 } from '@angular/router';
```

Now we can define our router configuration.

Routes

To define routes for our application, create a `Routes` configuration and then use `RouterModule.forRoot(routes)` to provide our application with the dependencies necessary to use the router:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
48 const routes: Routes = [  
49   { path: '', redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full' },  
50   { path: 'home', component: HomeComponent },  
51   { path: 'about', component: AboutComponent },  
52   { path: 'contact', component: ContactComponent },  
53   { path: 'contactus', redirectTo: 'contact' },  
54 ];
```

Notice a few things about the routes:

- `path` specifies the URL this route will handle
- `component` is what ties a given route path to a component that will handle the route
- the optional `redirectTo` is used to redirect a given path to an existing route

As a summary, the goal of routes is to specify which component will handle a given path.

Redirections

When we use `redirectTo` on a route definition, it will tell the router that when we visit the path of the route, we want the browser to be redirected to another route.

In our sample code above, if we visit the root path at <http://localhost:8080/#/>⁵⁵, we'll be redirected to the route `home`.

Another example is the `contactus` route:

⁵⁵<http://localhost:8080/#/>

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
53 { path: 'contactus', redirectTo: 'contact' },
```

In this case, if we visit the URL <http://localhost:8080/#/contactus>⁵⁶, we'll see that the browser redirects to /contact.



Sample Code The complete code for the examples in this section can be found in the routes/basic folder of the sample code. That folder contains a README.md, which gives instructions for building and running the project.

There are many different imports required for routing and we don't list every single one in every code example below. However we do list the filename and line number from which almost every example is taken from. If you're having trouble figuring out how to import a particular class, open up the code using your editor to see the entire code listing.

Try running the code while reading this section and feel free play around to get a deeper insight about how it all works.

Installing our Routes

Now that we have our Routes routes, we need to install it. To use the routes in our app we do two things to our NgModule:

1. Import the RouterModule
2. Install the routes using RouterModule.forRoot(routes) in the imports of our NgModule

Here's our routes configured into our NgModule for this app:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
48 const routes: Routes = [
49   { path: '', redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full' },
50   { path: 'home', component: HomeComponent },
51   { path: 'about', component: AboutComponent },
52   { path: 'contact', component: ContactComponent },
53   { path: 'contactus', redirectTo: 'contact' },
54 ];
55
56 @NgModule({
57   declarations: [
```

⁵⁶<http://localhost:8080/#/contactus>

```
58     RoutesDemoApp,
59     HomeComponent,
60     AboutComponent,
61     ContactComponent
62 ],
63 imports: [
64   BrowserModule,
65   RouterModule.forRoot(routes) // <-- routes
66 ],
67 bootstrap: [ RoutesDemoApp ],
68 providers: [
69   { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy }
70 ]
71 })
72 class RoutesDemo AppModule {}
73
74 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(RoutesDemo AppModule)
75 .catch((err: any) => console.error(err));
```

RouterOutlet using <router-outlet>

When we change routes, we want to keep our outer “layout” template and only substitute the “inner section” of the page with the route’s component.

In order to describe to Angular where in our page we want to render the contents for each route, we use the RouterOutlet directive.

Our component @Component has a template which specifies some div structure, a section for Navigation, and a directive called router-outlet.

The router-outlet element indicates where the contents of each route component will be rendered.



We are able to use the router-outlet directive in our template because we imported the RouterModule in our NgModule.

Here’s the component and template for the navigation wrapper of our app:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
28 @Component({
29   selector: 'router-app',
30   template: `
31     <div>
32       <nav>
33         <a>Navigation:</a>
34         <ul>
35           <li><a [routerLink]="'home'">Home</a></li>
36           <li><a [routerLink]="'about'">About</a></li>
37           <li><a [routerLink]="'contact'">Contact Us</a></li>
38         </ul>
39       </nav>
40
41       <router-outlet></router-outlet>
42     </div>
43   `
44 })
45 class RoutesDemoApp {
46 }
```

If we look at the template contents above, you will note the `router-outlet` element right below the navigation menu. When we visit `/home`, that's where `HomeComponent` template will be rendered. The same happens for the other components.

RouterLink using [routerLink]

Now that we know where route templates will be rendered, how do we tell Angular 2 to navigate to a given route?

We might try linking to the routes directly using pure HTML:

```
1 <a href="/#/home">Home</a>
```

But if we do this, we'll notice that clicking the link triggers a page reload and that's definitely not what we want when programming single page apps.

To solve this problem, Angular 2 provides a solution that can be used to link to routes **with no page reload**: the `RouterLink` directive.

This directive allows you to write links using a special syntax:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
33     <a>Navigation:</a>
34     <ul>
35         <li><a [routerLink]=["['home']">Home</a></li>
36         <li><a [routerLink]=["['about']">About</a></li>
37         <li><a [routerLink]=["['contact']">Contact Us</a></li>
38     </ul>
```

We can see on the left-hand side the [routerLink] that applies the directive to the current element (in our case a tags).

Now, on the right-hand side we have an array with the route path as the first element, like "['home']" or "['about']" that will indicate which route to navigate to when we click the element.

It might seem a little odd that the value of routerLink is a string with an array containing a string ("['home']", for example). This is because there are more things you can provide when linking to routes, but we'll look at this into more detail when we talk about child routes and route parameters.

For now, we're only using routes names from the root app component.

Putting it all together

So now that we have all the basic pieces, let's make them work together to transition from one route to the other.

The first thing we need to write for our application is the index.html file.

Here's the full code for that:

code/routes/basic/app/index.html

```
1  <!doctype html>
2  <html>
3      <head>
4          <base href="/">
5          <title>ng-book 2: Angular 2 Router</title>
6
7          {% for (var css in o.htmlWebpackPlugin.files.css) { %}
8              <link href="{%=o.htmlWebpackPlugin.files.css[css] %}" rel="stylesheet">
9          {% } %}
10     </head>
11     <body>
12         <router-app></router-app>
13         <script src="/core.js"></script>
```

```
14    <script src="/vendor.js"></script>
15    <script src="/bundle.js"></script>
16  </body>
17 </html>
```



The section describing `htmlWebpackPlugin` comes from the [webpack module bundler](#)⁵⁷. We're using webpack in this chapter because it's a tool for bundling your assets

The code should be familiar by now, with the exception of this line:

```
1 <base href="/">
```

This line declares the `base` HTML tag. This tag is traditionally used to tell the browser where to look for images and other resources declared using relative paths.

It turns out Angular Router also relies on this tag to determine how to construct its routing information.

For instance, if we have a route with a path of `/hello` and our `base` element declares `href="/app"`, the application will use `/app/#` as the concrete path.

Sometimes though, coders of an Angular application don't have access to the `head` section of the application HTML. This is true for instance, when reusing headers and footers of a larger, pre-existing application.

Fortunately there is a workaround for this case. You can declare the application base path programmatically, when configuring our `NgModule` by using the `APP_BASE_HREF` provider:

```
1 @NgModule({
2   declarations: [ RoutesDemoApp ],
3   imports: [
4     BrowserModule,
5     RouterModule.forRoot(routes) // <-- routes
6   ],
7   bootstrap: [ RoutesDemoApp ],
8   providers: [
9     { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy },
10    { provide: APP_BASE_HREF, useValue: '/' } // <--- this right here
11  ]
12 })
```

Putting `{ provide: APP_BASE_HREF, useValue: '/' }` in the `providers` is the equivalent of using `<base href="/">` on our application HTML header.

⁵⁷<https://webpack.github.io/>

Creating the Components

Before we get to the main app component, let's create 3 simple components, one for each of the routes.

HomeComponent

The HomeComponent will just have an h1 tag that says "Welcome!". Here's the full code for our HomeComponent:

[code/routes/basic/app/ts/components/HomeComponent.ts](#)

```
1 /*  
2  * Angular  
3  */  
4 import {Component} from '@angular/core';  
5  
6 @Component({  
7   selector: 'home',  
8   template: `<h1>Welcome!</h1>`  
9 })  
10 export class HomeComponent {  
11 }
```

AboutComponent

Similarly, the AboutComponent will just have a basic h1:

[code/routes/basic/app/ts/components/AboutComponent.ts](#)

```
1 /*  
2  * Angular  
3  */  
4 import {Component} from '@angular/core';  
5  
6 @Component({  
7   selector: 'about',  
8   template: `<h1>About</h1>`  
9 })  
10 export class AboutComponent {  
11 }
```

ContactComponent

And, likewise with AboutComponent:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/components/ContactComponent.ts

```
1  /*
2   * Angular
3   */
4  import {Component} from '@angular/core';
5
6  @Component({
7    selector: 'contact',
8    template: `<h1>Contact Us</h1>`
9  })
10 export class ContactComponent {
11 }
```

Nothing really very interesting about those components, so let's move on to the main app.ts file.

Application Component

Now we need to create the root-level “application” component that will tie everything together.

We start with the imports we'll need, both from the core and router bundles:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
1  /*
2   * Angular Imports
3   */
4  import {
5    NgModule,
6    Component
7  } from '@angular/core';
8  import {BrowserModule} from '@angular/platform-browser';
9  import {platformBrowserDynamic} from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
10 import {
11   RouterModule,
12   Routes
13 } from '@angular/router';
14 import {LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy} from '@angular/common';
```

Next step is to import the three components we created above:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
19 import { HomeComponent } from 'components/HomeComponent';
20 import { AboutComponent } from 'components/AboutComponent';
21 import { ContactComponent } from 'components/ContactComponent';
```

Now let's get to the real component code. We start with the declaration of the component selector and template:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
28 @Component({
29   selector: 'router-app',
30   template: `
31     <div>
32       <nav>
33         <a>Navigation:</a>
34         <ul>
35           <li><a [routerLink]="'[ 'home' ]'">Home</a></li>
36           <li><a [routerLink]="'[ 'about' ]'">About</a></li>
37           <li><a [routerLink]="'[ 'contact' ]'">Contact Us</a></li>
38         </ul>
39       </nav>
40
41       <router-outlet></router-outlet>
42     </div>
43   `
44 })
45 class RoutesDemoApp {
```

For this component, we're going to use two router directives: RouterOutlet and the RouterLink. Those directives, along with all other common router directives are imported when we put RouterModule in the imports section of our NgModule.

As a recap, the RouterOutlet directive is then used to indicate where in our template the route contents should be rendered. That's represented by the `<router-outlet></router-outlet>` snippet in our template code.

The RouterLink directive is used to create navigation links to our routes:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
33     <a>Navigation:</a>
34     <ul>
35         <li><a [routerLink]="'home'">Home</a></li>
36         <li><a [routerLink]="'about'">About</a></li>
37         <li><a [routerLink]="'contact'">Contact Us</a></li>
38     </ul>
```

Using [routerLink] will instruct Angular to take ownership of the click event and then initiate a route switch to the right place, based on the route definition.

Configuring the Routes

Next, we declare the routes creating an array of objects that conform to the Routes type:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
48 const routes: Routes = [
49     { path: '', redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full' },
50     { path: 'home', component: HomeComponent },
51     { path: 'about', component: AboutComponent },
52     { path: 'contact', component: ContactComponent },
53     { path: 'contactus', redirectTo: 'contact' },
54 ];
```

In the last section of the app.ts file, we bootstrap the application:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
56 @NgModule({
57     declarations: [
58         RoutesDemoApp,
59         HomeComponent,
60         AboutComponent,
61         ContactComponent
62     ],
63     imports: [
64         BrowserModule,
65         RouterModule.forRoot(routes) // <-- routes
66     ],
67     bootstrap: [ RoutesDemoApp ],
68     providers: [
```

```
69      { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy }  
70  ]  
71 })  
72 class RoutesDemoAppModule {}  
73  
74 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(RoutesDemoAppModule)  
75 .catch((err: any) => console.error(err));
```

Just like we have been doing so far, we are now bootstrapping the app and telling that `RoutesDemoApp` is the root component.

Notice that we put all necessary components in our declarations. If we're going to route to a component, then it needs to be declared in *some* NgModule (either this module or imported).

In our imports we have `RouterModule.forRoot(routes)`. `RouterModule.forRoot(routes)` is a function that will take our routes, configure the router, and return a list of dependencies like `RouteRegistry`, `Location`, and several other classes that are necessary to make routing work.

In our providers we have this:

```
1 { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy }
```

Let's take an in depth look of what we want to achieve with this line.

Routing Strategies

The way the Angular application parses and creates paths from and to route definitions is called *location strategy*.



In Angular 1 this is called *routing modes* instead

The default strategy is `PathLocationStrategy`, which is what we call HTML5 routing. While using this strategy, routes are represented by regular paths, like `/home` or `/contact`.

We can change the location strategy used for our application by binding the `LocationStrategy` class to a new, concrete strategy class.

Instead of using the default `PathLocationStrategy` we can also use the `HashLocationStrategy`.

The reason we're using the hash strategy as a default is because if we were using HTML5 routing, our URLs would end up being regular paths (that is, not using hash/anchor tags).

This way, the routes would work when you click a link and navigate on the client side, let's say from /about to /contact.

If we were to refresh the page, instead of asking the server for the root URL, which is what is being served, instead we'd be asking for /about or /contact. Because there's no known page at /about the server would return a 404.

This default strategy works with hash based paths, like /#/home or /#/contact that the server understands as being the / path. (This is also the default mode in Angular 1.)



Let's say you want to use HTML5 mode in production, what can you do?

In order to use HTML5 mode routing, you have to configure your server to redirect every "missing" route to the root URL.

In the routes/basic project we've included a script you can use to develop with webpack-dev-server and use HTML5 paths at the same time.

To use it cd routes/basic and run node html5-dev-server.js.

Finally, in order to make our example application work with this new strategy, first we have to import LocationStrategy and HashLocationStrategy:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
14 import {LocationStrategy, HashLocationStrategy} from '@angular/common';
```

and then just add that location strategy to the providers of our NgModule:

code/routes/basic/app/ts/app.ts

```
68 providers: [
69   { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy }
70 ]
```



You could write your own strategy if you wanted to. All you need to do is extend the LocationStrategy class and implement the methods. A good way to start is reading the Angular 2 source for the HashLocationStrategy or PathLocationStrategy classes.

Path location strategy

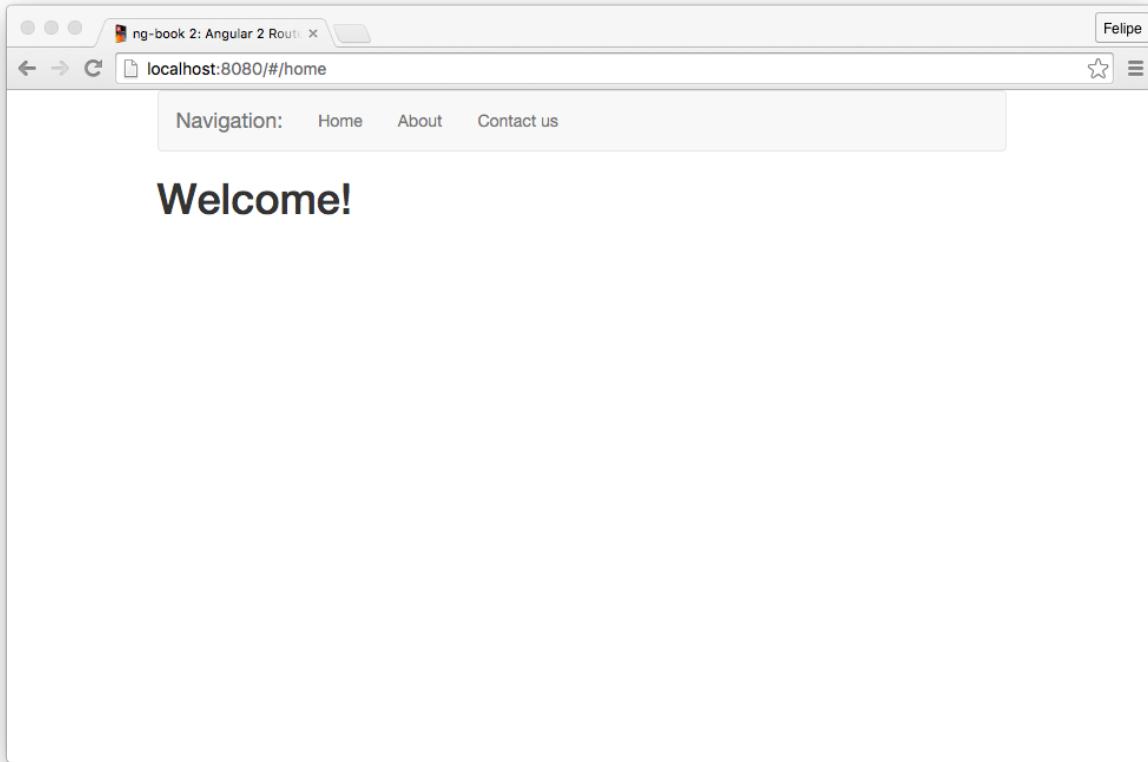
In our sample application folder, you'll find a file called app/ts/app.html5.ts.

If we want to play with the default PathLocationStrategy, we just need to copy the contents of that file to app/ts/app.ts, then reload the application.

Running the application

You can now go into the application root folder (code/routes) and run `npm run server` to boot the application.

When you type <http://localhost:8080>⁵⁸ into your browser you should see the home route rendered:



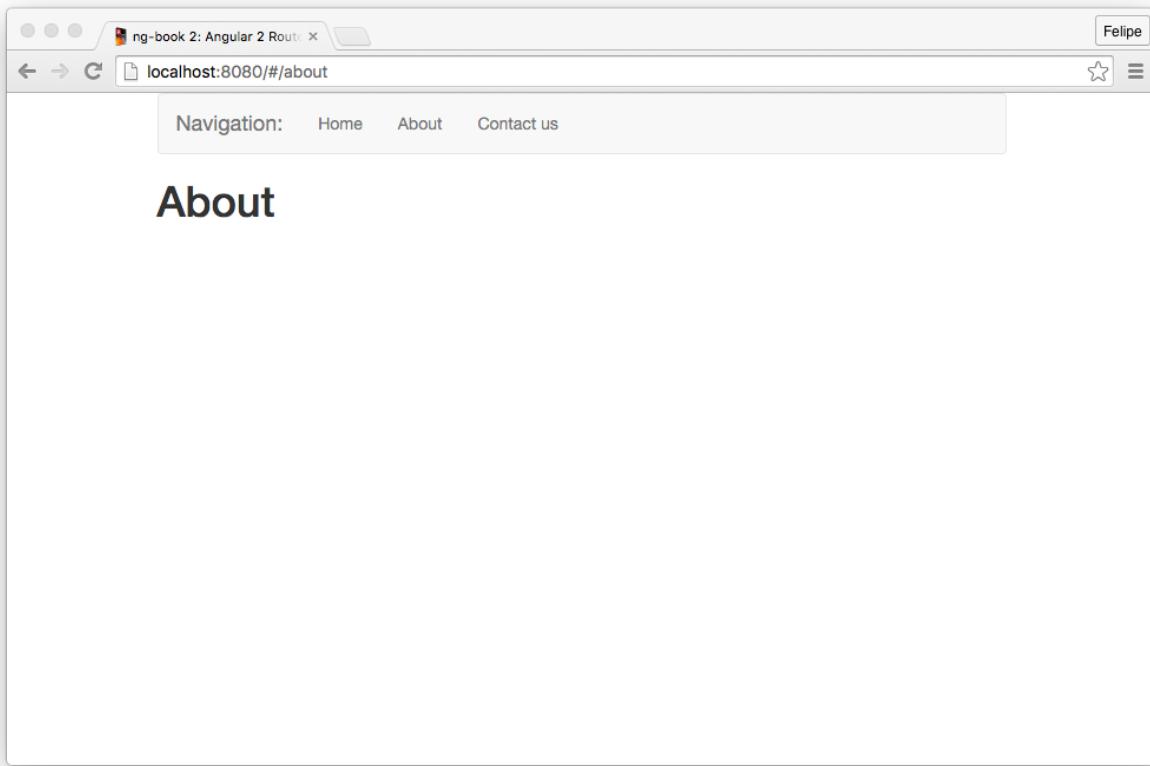
Home Route

Notice that the URL in the browser got redirected to <http://localhost:8080/#/home>⁵⁹.

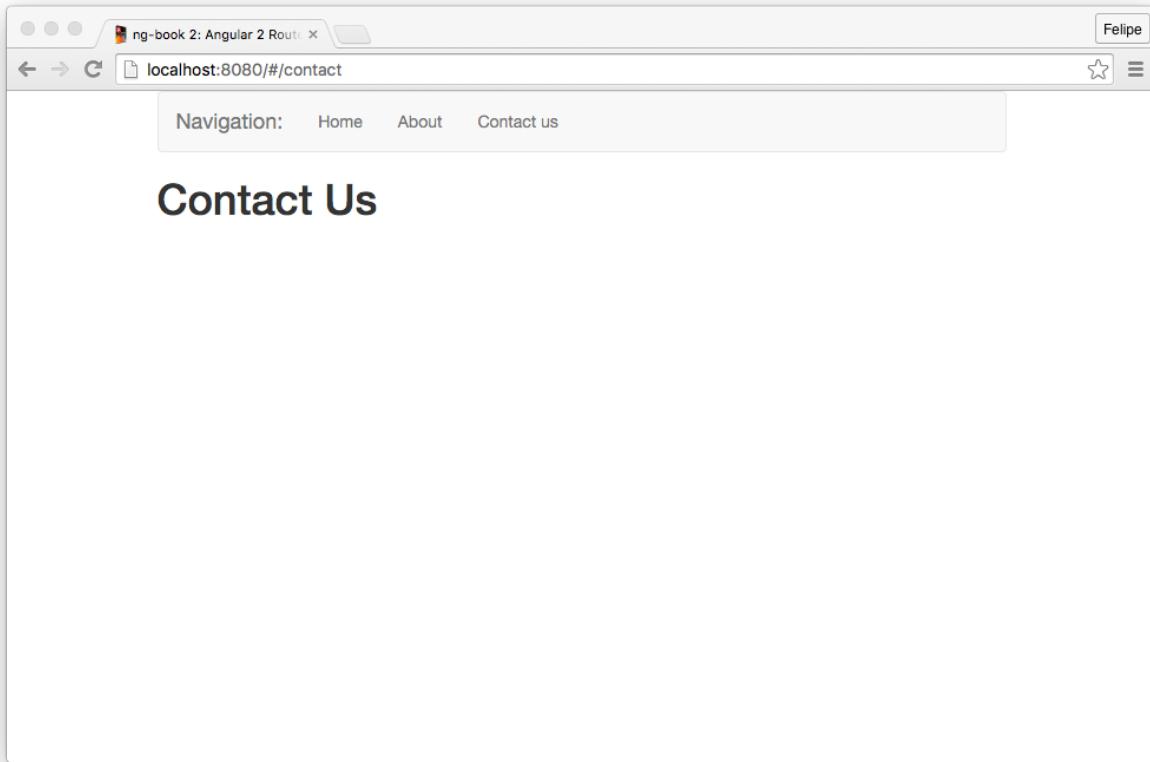
Now clicking each link will render the appropriate routes:

⁵⁸<http://localhost:8080/>

⁵⁹<http://localhost:8080/#/home>



About Route



Contact Us Route

Route Parameters

In our apps we often want to navigate to a specific resource. For instance, say we had a news website and we had many articles. Each article may have an ID, and if we had an article with ID 3 then we might navigate to that article by visiting the URL:

`/articles/3`

And if we had an article with an ID of 4 we would access it at

`/articles/4`

and so on.

Obviously we're not going to want to write a route for each article, but instead we want to use a variable, or *route parameter*. We can specify that a route takes a parameter by putting a colon : in front of the path segment like this:

`/route/:param`

So in our example news site, we might specify our route as:

```
/articles/:id
```

To add a parameter to our router configuration, we specify the route path like this:

code/routes/music/app/ts/app.ts

```
50 const routes: Routes = [
51   { path: '', redirectTo: 'search', pathMatch: 'full' },
52   { path: 'search', component: SearchComponent },
53   { path: 'artists/:id', component: ArtistComponent },
54   { path: 'tracks/:id', component: TrackComponent },
55   { path: 'albums/:id', component: AlbumComponent },
56 ];
```

When we visit the route /artist/123, the 123 part will be passed as the id route parameter to our route.

But how can we retrieve the parameter for a given route? That's where we use route parameters.

ActivatedRoute

In order to use route parameters, we need to first import ActivatedRoute:

```
1 import { ActivatedRoute } from '@angular/router';
```

Next, we inject the ActivatedRoute into the constructor of our component. For example, let's say we have a Routes that specifies the following:

```
1 const routes: Routes = [
2   { path: 'articles/:id', component: ArticlesComponent }
3 ];
```

Then when we write the ArticleComponent, we add the ActivatedRoute as one of the constructor arguments:

```
1 export class ArticleComponent {  
2   id: string;  
3  
4   constructor(private route: ActivatedRoute) {  
5     route.params.subscribe(params => { this.id = params['id']; });  
6   }  
7 }
```

Notice that `route.params` is an *observable*. We can extract the value of the param into a hard value by using `.subscribe`. In this case, we assign the value of `params['id']` to the `id` instance variable on the component.

Now when we visit `/articles/230`, our component's `id` attribute should receive 230.

Music Search App

Let's now work on a more complex application. We will build a music search application that has the following features:

1. **Search for tracks** that match a given term
2. Show **matching tracks** in a grid
3. Show **singer details** when the singer name is clicked
4. Show **album details** and show a list of tracks when the album name is clicked
5. Show **song details** allow the user to **play a preview** when the song name is clicked

Sportify music for active people

Search

Results



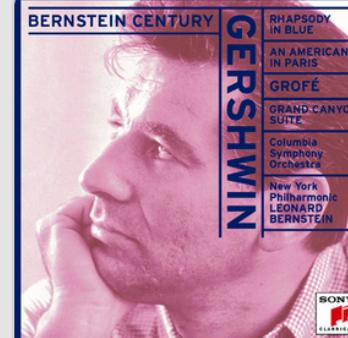
George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin: Rhapsody in Blue/An American in Paris



George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin Plays Gershwin: The Piano Rolls



George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin: Rhapsody in Blue / An American in Paris



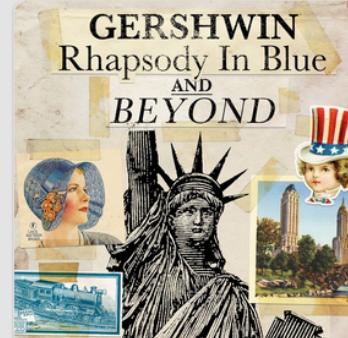
George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin: Piano Concerto in F, Rhapsody in



George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin: Rhapsody in Blue; Piano Concerto in



George Gershwin
Rhapsody in Blue

Gershwin - Rhapsody in Blue and Beyond

The Search View of our Music App

The routes we will need for this application will be:

- /search - search form and results
- /artists/:id - artist info, represented by a Spotify ID

- /albums/:id - album info, with a list of tracks using the Spotify ID
- /tracks/:id - track info and preview, also using the Spotify ID



Sample Code The complete code for the examples in this section can be found in the routes/music folder of the sample code. That folder contains a README.md, which gives instructions for building and running the project.

We will use the [Spotify API⁶⁰](#) to get information about tracks, artists and albums.

First Steps

The first file we need work on is app.ts. Let's start by importing classes we'll use from Angular:

code/routes/music/app/ts/app.ts

```
1  /*
2   * Angular Imports
3   */
4  import {
5    Component
6  } from '@angular/core';
7  import { NgModule } from '@angular/core';
8  import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
9  import { platformBrowserDynamic } from '@angular/platform-browser-dynamic';
10 import { HttpModule } from '@angular/http';
11 import { FormsModule } from '@angular/forms';
12 import {
13   RouterModule,
14   Routes
15 } from '@angular/router';
16 import {
17   LocationStrategy,
18   HashLocationStrategy,
19   APP_BASE_HREF
20 } from '@angular/common';
21
22 /*
23  * Components
24 */
```

⁶⁰<https://developer.spotify.com/web-api>

Now that we have the imports there, let's think about the components we'll use for each route.

- For the Search route, we'll create a `SearchComponent`. This component will talk to the Spotify API to perform the search and then display the results on a grid.
- For the Artists route, we'll create an `ArtistComponent` which will show the artist's information
- For the Albums route, we'll create an `AlbumComponent` which will show the list of tracks in the album
- For the Tracks route, we'll create a `TrackComponent` which will show the track and let us play a preview of the song

Since this new component will need to interact with the Spotify API, it seems like we need to build a service that uses the `http` module to call out to the API server.

Everything in our app depends on the data, so let's build the `SpotifyService` first.

The SpotifyService



You can find the full code for the `SpotifyService` in the `routes/music/app/ts/services` folder of the sample code.

The first method we'll implement is `searchByTrack` which will search for track, given a search term. One of the endpoints documented on Spotify API docs is [the Search endpoint⁶¹](#).

This endpoint does exactly what we want: it takes a query (using the `q` parameter) and a type parameter.

Query in this case is the search term. And since we're searching for songs, we should use `type=track`.

Here's what a first version of the service could look like:

```
1 class SpotifyService {  
2   constructor(public http: Http) {  
3   }  
4  
5   searchByTrack(query: string) {  
6     let params: string = [  
7       `q=${query}`,  
8       `type=track`  
9     ].join("&");  
10    return this.http.get(`https://api.spotify.com/v1/search?q=${query}&type=track`);  
11  }  
12}  
13
```

⁶¹<https://developer.spotify.com/web-api/search-item/>

```

10    let queryURL: string = `https://api.spotify.com/v1/search?${params}`;
11    return this.http.request(queryURL).map(res => res.json());
12  }
13 }

```

This code performs an HTTP GET request to the URL <https://api.spotify.com/v1/search>⁶², passing our query as the search term and type hardcoded to track.

This http call returns an Observable. We are going one step further and using the RxJS function map to transform the result we would get (which is an http module's Response object) and parsing it as JSON, resulting on an object.

Any function that calls searchByQuery then will have to use the Observable API to subscribe to the response like this:

```

1 service
2   .searchTrack('query')
3   .subscribe((res: any) => console.log('Got object', res))

```

The SearchComponent

Now that we have a service that will perform track searches, we can start coding the SearchComponent.

Again, we start with an import section:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```

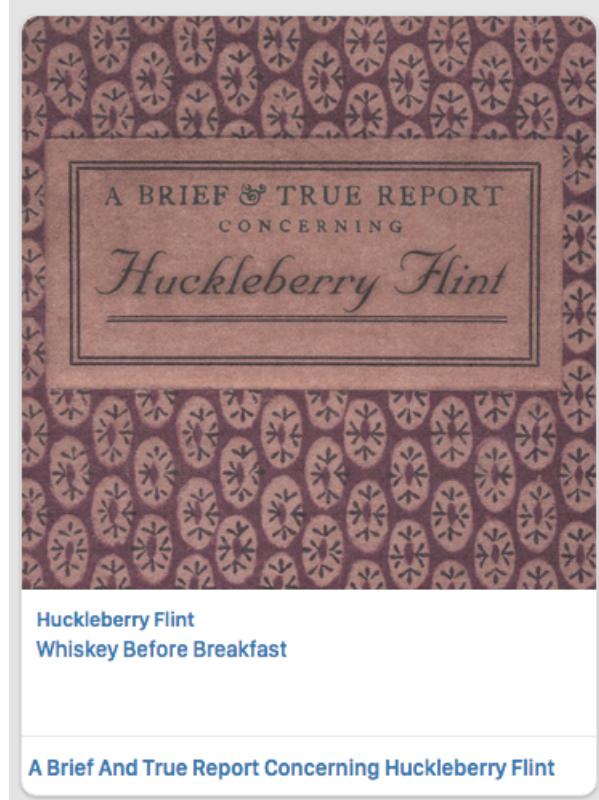
1 /*
2  * Angular
3 */
4
5 import {Component, OnInit} from '@angular/core';
6 import {
7   Router,
8   ActivatedRoute,
9 } from '@angular/router';
10
11 /*
12  * Services
13 */
14 import {SpotifyService} from 'services/SpotifyService';

```

⁶²<https://api.spotify.com/v1/search>

Here we're importing, among other things, the SpotifyService class we just created.

The goal here is to render each resulting track side by side on a card like below:



Music App Card

We then start coding the component. We're using `search` as the selector, making a few imports and using the following template. The template is a bit long because we're putting some reasonable styles on it, but it isn't particularly complicated, relative to what we've done so far:

`code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts`

```
16 @Component({
17   selector: 'search',
18   template: `
19     <h1>Search</h1>
20
21     <p>
22       <input type="text" #newquery
23         [value]="query"
24         (keydown.enter)="submit(newquery.value)">
25       <button (click)="submit(newquery.value)">Search</button>
26     </p>
```

```
27
28     <div *ngIf="results">
29         <div *ngIf="!results.length">
30             No tracks were found with the term '{{ query }}'
31         </div>
32
33     <div *ngIf="results.length">
34         <h1>Results</h1>
35
36         <div class="row">
37             <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4" *ngFor="let t of results">
38                 <div class="thumbnail">
39                     <div class="content">
40                         
41                         <div class="caption">
42                             <h3>
43                                 <a [routerLink]=["/artists", t.artists[0].id]">
44                                     {{ t.artists[0].name }}
45                                 </a>
46                             </h3>
47                             <br>
48                             <p>
49                                 <a [routerLink]=["/tracks", t.id]">
50                                     {{ t.name }}
51                                 </a>
52                             </p>
53                         </div>
54                         <div class="attribution">
55                             <h4>
56                                 <a [routerLink]=["/albums", t.album.id]">
57                                     {{ t.album.name }}
58                                 </a>
59                             </h4>
60                         </div>
61                     </div>
62                 </div>
63             </div>
64         </div>
65     </div>
66     </div>
67     ^
68 })
```

The Search Field

Let's break down the HTML template a bit.

This first section will have the search field:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
21  <p>
22    <input type="text" #newquery
23      [value]="query"
24      (keydown.enter)="submit(newquery.value)"
25    <button (click)="submit(newquery.value)">Search</button>
26  </p>
```

Here we have the input field and we're binding its DOM element `value` property the `query` property of our component.

We also give this element a template variable named `#newquery`. We can now access the value of this input within our template code by using `newquery.value`.

The button will trigger the `submit` method of the component, passing the value of the input field as a parameter.

We also want to trigger `submit` when the user hits “Enter” so we bind to the `keydown.enter` event on the input.

Search Results and Links

The next section displays the results. We're relying on the `NgFor` directive to iterate through each track from our `results` object:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
36  <div class="row">
37    <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4" *ngFor="let t of results">
38      <div class="thumbnail">
```

For each track, we display the artist name:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
42      <h3>
43          <a [routerLink]=[ '/artists', t.artists[0].id ]>
44              {{ t.artists[0].name }}
45          </a>
46      </h3>
```

Notice how we're using the RouterLink directive to redirect to ['/artists', t.artists[0].id].

This is how we set *route parameters* for a given route. Say we have an artist with an id abc123. When this link is clicked, the app would then navigate to /artist/abc123 (where abc123 is the :id parameter).

Further down we'll show how we can retrieve this value inside the component that handles this route.

Now we display the track:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
48      <p>
49          <a [routerLink]=[ '/tracks', t.id ]>
50              {{ t.name }}
51          </a>
52      </p>
```

And the album:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
55      <h4>
56          <a [routerLink]=[ '/albums', t.album.id ]>
57              {{ t.album.name }}
58          </a>
59      </h4>
```

SearchComponent Class

Let's take a look at the constructor first:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
69 export class SearchComponent implements OnInit {  
70   query: string;  
71   results: Object;  
72  
73   constructor(private spotify: SpotifyService,  
74             private router: Router,  
75             private route: ActivatedRoute) {  
76     this.route  
77       .queryParams  
78       .subscribe(params => { this.query = params['query'] || ''; });  
79 }
```

Here we're declaring two properties:

- query for current search term and
- results for the search results

On the constructor we're injecting the SpotifyService (that we created above), Router, and the ActivatedRoute and making them properties of our class.

In our constructor we subscribe to the queryParams property - this lets us access *query parameters*, such as the search term (params['query']).

In a URL like: `http://localhost/#/search?query=cats&order=ascending`, queryParams gives us the parameters in an object. This means we could access the order with params['order'] (in this case, ascending).

Also note that queryParams are different than route.params. Whereas route.params match parameters in the *route* queryParams match parameters in the query string.

In this case, if there is no query param, we set this.query to the empty string.

search

In our SearchComponent we will call out to the SpotifyService and render the results. There are two cases when we want to run a search:

We want to run a search when the user:

- enters a search query and submits the form
- navigates to this page with a given URL in the query parameters (e.g. someone shared a link or bookmarked the page)

To perform the actual search for both cases, we create the search method:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```

90  search(): void {
91    console.log('this.query', this.query);
92    if (!this.query) {
93      return;
94    }
95
96    this.spotify
97      .searchTrack(this.query)
98      .subscribe((res: any) => this.renderResults(res));
99  }

```

The search function uses the current value of `this.query` to know what to search for. Because we subscribed to the `queryParams` in the constructor, we can be sure that `this.query` will always have the most up-to-date value.

We then subscribe to the `searchTrack` Observable and whenever new results are emitted we call `renderResults`.

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```

101 renderResults(res: any): void {
102   this.results = null;
103   if (res && res.tracks && res.tracks.items) {
104     this.results = res.tracks.items;
105   }
106 }

```

We declared `results` as a component property. Whenever its value is changed, the view will be automatically updated by Angular.

Searching on Page Load

As we pointed out above, we want to be able to jump straight into the results if the URL includes a search query.

To do that, we are going to implement a hook Angular router provides for us to run whenever our component is initialized.



But isn't that what constructors are for? Well, yes and no. Yes, constructors are used to initialize values, but if you want to write good, testable code, you want to minimize the side effects of *constructing* an object. So keep in mind that you should put your component's initialization logic always on a hook like below.

Here's the implementation of the `ngOnInit` method:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
81  ngOnInit(): void {
82    this.search();
83 }
```

To use `ngOnInit` we imported the `OnInit` class and declared that our component implements `OnInit`.

As you can see, we're just performing the search here. Since the term we're searching for comes from the URL, we're good.

submit

Now let's see what we do when the user submits the form.

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
85  submit(query: string): void {
86    this.router.navigate(['search'], { queryParams: { query: query } })
87    .then(_ => this.search() );
88 }
```

We're manually telling the router to navigate to the search route, and providing a `query` parameter, then performing the actual search.

Doing things this way gives us a great benefit: if we reload the browser, we're going to see the same search result rendered. We can say that we're **persisting the search term on the URL**.

Putting it all together

Here's the full listing for the `SearchComponent` class:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/SearchComponent.ts

```
1  /*
2   * Angular
3   */
4
5  import {Component, OnInit} from '@angular/core';
6  import {
7    Router,
8    ActivatedRoute,
```

```
9 } from '@angular/router';
10
11 /*
12  * Services
13 */
14 import { SpotifyService } from 'services/SpotifyService';
15
16 @Component({
17   selector: 'search',
18   template: `
19     <h1>Search</h1>
20
21     <p>
22       <input type="text" #newquery
23         [value]="query"
24         (keydown.enter)="submit(newquery.value)">
25       <button (click)="submit(newquery.value)">Search</button>
26     </p>
27
28     <div *ngIf="results">
29       <div *ngIf="!results.length">
30         No tracks were found with the term '{{ query }}'
31       </div>
32
33       <div *ngIf="results.length">
34         <h1>Results</h1>
35
36         <div class="row">
37           <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4" *ngFor="let t of results">
38             <div class="thumbnail">
39               <div class="content">
40                 
41                 <div class="caption">
42                   <h3>
43                     <a [routerLink]=["'/artists', t.artists[0].id]">
44                       {{ t.artists[0].name }}
45                     </a>
46                   </h3>
47                   <br>
48                   <p>
49                     <a [routerLink]=["'/tracks', t.id]">
50                       {{ t.name }}
51                   </p>
52                 </div>
53               </div>
54             </div>
55           </div>
56         </div>
57       </div>
58     </div>
59   </template>
60 
```

```
51          </a>
52      </p>
53  </div>
54  <div class="attribution">
55      <h4>
56          <a [routerLink]=["/albums", t.album.id]">
57              {{ t.album.name }}
58          </a>
59      </h4>
60  </div>
61  </div>
62      </div>
63  </div>
64      </div>
65  </div>
66  </div>
67  `

68 })
69 export class SearchComponent implements OnInit {
70     query: string;
71     results: Object;
72
73     constructor(private spotify: SpotifyService,
74                 private router: Router,
75                 private route: ActivatedRoute) {
76         this.route
77             .queryParams
78             .subscribe(params => { this.query = params['query'] || ''; });
79     }
80
81     ngOnInit(): void {
82         this.search();
83     }
84
85     submit(query: string): void {
86         this.router.navigate(['search'], { queryParams: { query: query } })
87         .then(_ => this.search() );
88     }
89
90     search(): void {
91         console.log('this.query', this.query);
92         if (!this.query) {
```

```
93     return;
94   }
95
96   this.spotify
97     .searchTrack(this.query)
98     .subscribe((res: any) => this.renderResults(res));
99   }
100
101  renderResults(res: any): void {
102    this.results = null;
103    if (res && res.tracks && res.tracks.items) {
104      this.results = res.tracks.items;
105    }
106  }
107 }
```

Trying the search

Now that we have completed the code for the search, let's try it out:

Sportify music for active people

[Home](#) [Add](#)

Search

andre de sapato novo

Results



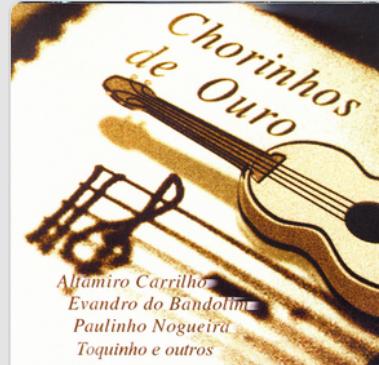
Bando De Macambira
André do Sapato Novo

Chorinho



Ordinarius
André de Sapato Novo / Tico Tico no Fubá

Rio de Choro



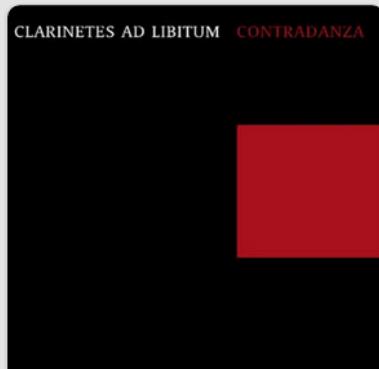
Evandro Do Bandolim
André De Sapato Novo

Chorinhos De Ouro



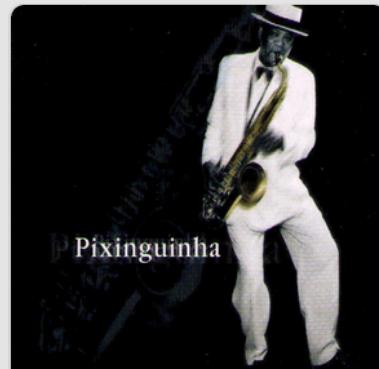
Pixinguinha
André de Sapato Novo

Benedito Lacerda E Pixinguinha



Clarinetes Ad Libitum
André de Sapato Novo

Contradanza



Pixinguinha
Andre De Sapato Novo

Latin Jazz Roots

Trying out Search

We can click the artist, track or album links to navigate to the proper route.

TrackComponent

For the track route, we use the TrackComponent. It basically displays the track name, the album cover image and allow the user to play a preview using an HTML5 audio tag:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/TrackComponent.ts

```

20   template: `
21     <div *ngIf="track">
22       <h1>{{ track.name }}</h1>
23
24       <p>
25         
26       </p>
27
28       <p>
29         <audio controls src="{{ track.preview_url }}"></audio>
30       </p>
31
32       <p><a href (click)="back()">Back</a></p>
33     </div>
34   `

```

Like we did for the search before, we're going to use the Spotify API. Let's refactor the method `searchTrack` and extract two other useful methods we can reuse:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```

13 export class SpotifyService {
14   static BASE_URL: string = 'https://api.spotify.com/v1';
15
16   constructor(private http: Http) {
17   }
18
19   query(URL: string, params?: Array<string>): Observable<any[]> {
20     let queryURL: string = `${SpotifyService.BASE_URL}${URL}`;
21     if (params) {
22       queryURL = `${queryURL}?${params.join('&')} `;
23     }
24
25     return this.http.request(queryURL).map((res: any) => res.json());
26   }
27
28   search(query: string, type: string): Observable<any[]> {

```

```
29     return this.query(`/search`, [
30       `q=${query}`,
31       `type=${type}`
32     ]);
33   }
```

Now that we've extracted those methods into the SpotifyService, notice how much simpler searchTrack becomes:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
35   searchTrack(query: string): Observable<any[]> {
36     return this.search(query, 'track');
37   }
```

Now let's create a method to allow the component we're building retrieve track information, based in the track ID:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
39   getTrack(id: string): Observable<any[]> {
40     return this.query(`/tracks/${id}`);
41   }
```

And now we can now use getTrack from a new ngOnInit method on the TrackComponent:

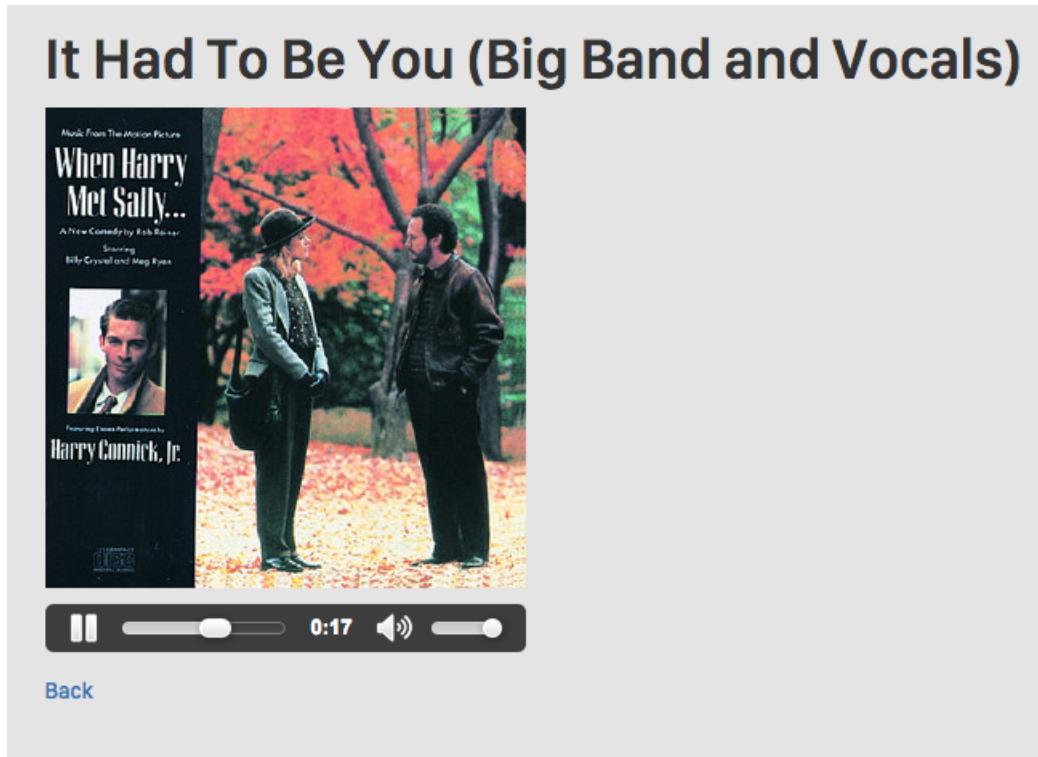
code/routes/music/app/ts/components/TrackComponent.ts

```
45   ngOnInit(): void {
46     this.spotify
47       .getTrack(this.id)
48       .subscribe((res: any) => this.renderTrack(res));
49   }
```

The other components work in a similar way and use get* methods from the SpotifyService to retrieve information about either an Artist or a Track based on their ID.

Wrapping up music search

Now we have a pretty functional music search and preview app. Try searching for a few of your favorite tunes and try it out!



It Had to Route You

Router Hooks

There are times that we may want to do some action when changing routes. A classical example of that is authentication. Let's say we have a **login** route and a **protected** route.

We want to only allow the app to go to the protected route if the correct username and password were provided on the login page.

In order to do that, we need to hook into the lifecycle of the router and ask to be notified when the protected route is being activated. We then can call an authentication service and ask whether or not the user provided the right credentials.

In order to check if a component can be activated we add a *guard class* to the key `canActivate` in our router configuration.

Let's revisit our initial application, adding login and password input fields and a new protected route that only works if we provide a certain username and password combination.



Sample Code The complete code for the examples in this section can be found in the routes/auth folder of the sample code. That folder contains a README.md, which gives instructions for building and running the project.

AuthService

Let's create a very simple and minimal implementation of a service, responsible for authentication and authorization of resources:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/services/AuthService.ts

```
1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2
3 @Injectable()
4 export class AuthService {
5   login(user: string, password: string): boolean {
6     if (user === 'user' && password === 'password') {
7       localStorage.setItem('username', user);
8       return true;
9     }
10
11   return false;
12 }
```

The login method will return true if the provided user/password pair equals 'user' and 'password', respectively. Also, when it is matched, it's going to use localStorage to save the username. This will also serve as a flag to indicate whether or not there is an active logged user.



If you're not familiar, localStorage is an HTML5 provided key/value pair that allows you to persist information on the browser. The API is very simple, and basically allows the setting, retrieval and deletion of items. For more information, see the [Storage interface documents on MDN](#)⁶³

The logout method just clears the username value:

⁶³<https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/API/Storage>

code/routes/auth/app/ts/services/AuthService.ts

```
14  logout(): any {
15    localStorage.removeItem('username');
16 }
```

And the final two methods:

- getUser returns the username or null
- isLoggedIn uses getUser() to return true if we have a user

Here's the code for those methods:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/services/AuthService.ts

```
18  getUser(): any {
19    return localStorage.getItem('username');
20  }
21
22  isLoggedIn(): boolean {
23    return this.getUser() !== null;
24 }
```

The last thing we do is export an AUTH_PROVIDERS, so it can be injected into our app:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/services/AuthService.ts

```
27 export var AUTH_PROVIDERS: Array<any> = [
28   { provide: AuthService, useClass: AuthService }
29 ];
```

Now that we have the AuthService we can inject it in our components to log the user in, check for the currently logged in user, log the user out, etc.

In a little bit, we'll also use it in our router to protect the ProtectedComponent. But first, let's create the component that we use to log in.

LoginComponent

This component will either show a login form, for the case when there is no logged user, or display a little banner with user information along with a logout link.

The relevant code here is the login and logout methods:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/components/LoginComponent.ts

```
40 export class LoginComponent {
41   message: string;
42
43   constructor(private authService: AuthService) {
44     this.message = '';
45   }
46
47   login(username: string, password: string): boolean {
48     this.message = '';
49     if (!this.authService.login(username, password)) {
50       this.message = 'Incorrect credentials.';
51       setTimeout(function() {
52         this.message = '';
53       }.bind(this), 2500);
54     }
55     return false;
56   }
57
58   logout(): boolean {
59     this.authService.logout();
60     return false;
61 }
```

Once our service validates the credentials, we log the user in.

The component template has two snippets that are displayed based on whether the user is logged in or not.

The first is a login form, protected by *ngIf="!authService.getUser()":

code/routes/auth/app/ts/components/LoginComponent.ts

```
18 <form class="form-inline" *ngIf="!authService.getUser()">
19   <div class="form-group">
20     <label for="username">User:</label>
21     <input class="form-control" name="username" #username>
22   </div>
23
24   <div class="form-group">
25     <label for="password">Password:</label>
26     <input class="form-control" type="password" name="password" #password>
27   </div>
```

```
28      <a class="btn btn-default" (click)="login(username.value, password.value)">
29          Submit
30      </a>
31  </form>
```

And the information banner, containing the logout link, protected by the inverse -

*ngIf="authService.getUser()":

code/routes/auth/app/ts/components/LoginComponent.ts

```
34  <div class="well" *ngIf="authService.getUser()">
35      Logged in as <b>{{ authService.getUser() }}</b>
36      <a href (click)="logout()">Log out</a>
37  </div>
```

There's another snippet of code that is displayed when we have an authentication error:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/components/LoginComponent.ts

```
14  <div class="alert alert-danger" role="alert" *ngIf="message">
15      {{ message }}
16  </div>
```

Now that we can handle the user login, let's create a resource that we are going to protect behind a user login.

ProtectedComponent and Route Guards

The ProtectedComponent

Before we can protect the component, it needs to exist. Our ProtectedComponent is straightforward:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/components/ProtectedComponent.ts

```

1  /*
2   * Angular
3   */
4  import { Component } from '@angular/core';
5
6  @Component({
7   selector: 'protected',
8   template: `<h1>Protected content</h1>`
9 })
10 export class ProtectedComponent {
11 }
```

We want this component to only be accessible to logged in users. But how can we do that?

The answer is to use the router hook canActivate with a *guard class* that implements CanActivate.

The LoggedInGuard

We create a new folder called guards and create loggedIn.guard.ts:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/guards/loggedIn.guard.ts

```

1  import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2  import { CanActivate } from '@angular/router';
3  import { AuthService } from 'services/AuthService';
4
5  @Injectable()
6  export class LoggedInGuard implements CanActivate {
7   constructor(private authService: AuthService) {}
8
9   canActivate(): boolean {
10    return this.authService.isLoggedIn();
11 }
12 }
```

Our guard states that it implements the CanActivate interface. This is satisfied by implementing a method canActivate.

We inject the AuthService into this class in the constructor and save it as a private variable authService.

In our canActivate function we check this.authService to see if the user isLoggedIn.

Configuring the Router

To configure the router to use this guard we need to do the following:

1. import the LoggedInGuard
2. Use the LoggedInGuard in a route configuration
3. Include LoggedInGuard in the list of providers (so that it can be injected)

We do all of these steps in our app.ts.

We import the LoggedInGuard:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/app.ts

```
28 import {AUTH_PROVIDERS} from 'services/AuthService';
29 import {LoggedInGuard} from 'guards/loggedIn.guard';
```

We add canActivate with our guard to the protected route:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/app.ts

```
68 const routes: Routes = [
69   { path: '',           redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full' },
70   { path: 'home',       component: HomeComponent },
71   { path: 'about',      component: AboutComponent },
72   { path: 'contact',    component: ContactComponent },
73   { path: 'protected',  component: ProtectedComponent,
74     canActivate: [LoggedInGuard]
75 };
```

We add LoggedInGuard to our list of providers:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/app.ts

```
92 providers: [
93   AUTH_PROVIDERS,
94   LoggedInGuard,
95   { provide: LocationStrategy, useClass: HashLocationStrategy },
96 ]
```

Logging in

We import the LoginComponent:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/app.ts

```
19 import { LoginComponent } from 'components/LoginComponent';
```

And then we have to add:

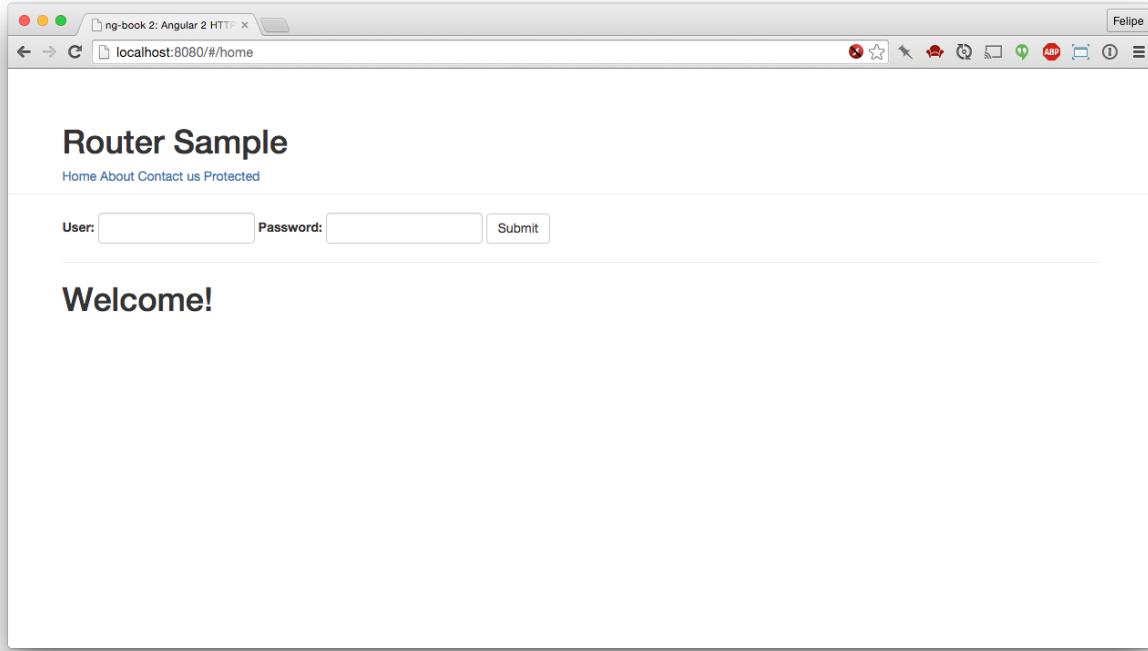
1. a new link to the protected route
2. a <login> tag to the template, to render the new component

Here's what it should look like:

code/routes/auth/app/ts/app.ts

```
36 @Component({
37   selector: 'router-app',
38   template: `
39     <div class="page-header">
40       <div class="container">
41         <h1>Router Sample</h1>
42         <div class="navLinks">
43           <a [routerLink]="['/home']">Home</a>
44           <a [routerLink]="['/about']">About</a>
45           <a [routerLink]="['/contact']">Contact Us</a>
46           <a [routerLink]="['/protected']">Protected</a>
47         </div>
48       </div>
49     </div>
50
51     <div id="content">
52       <div class="container">
53
54         <login></login>
55
56         <hr>
57
58         <router-outlet></router-outlet>
59       </div>
60     </div>
61   `
62 })
63 class RoutesDemoApp {
64   constructor(private router: Router) {
65   }
66 }
```

Now when we open the application on the browser, we can see the new login form and the new protected link:

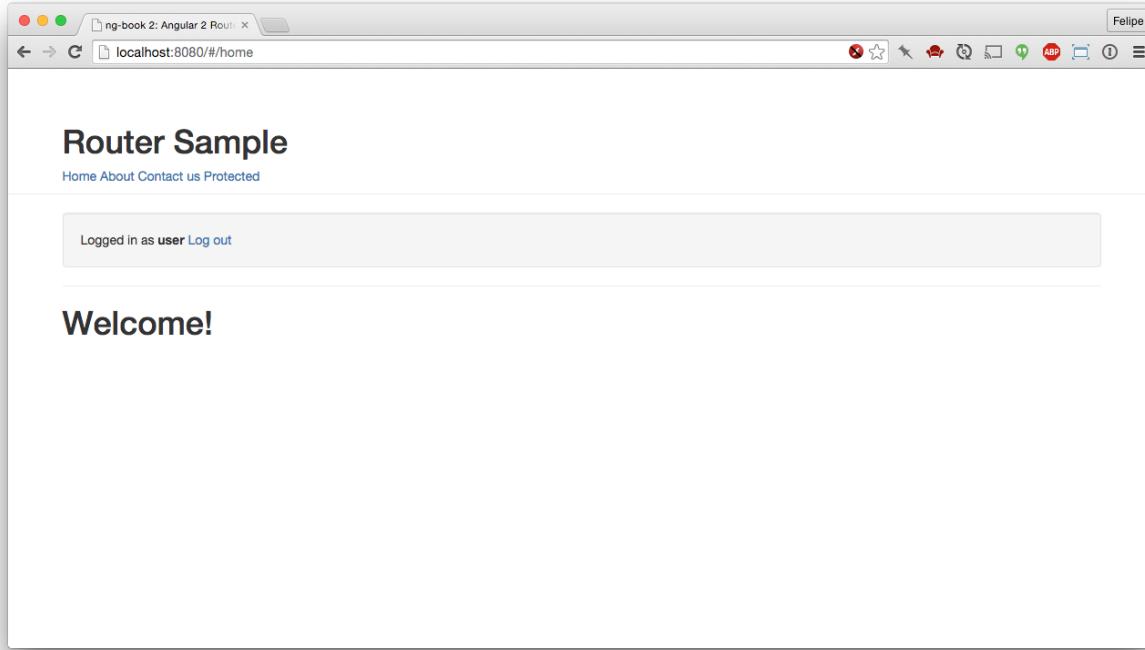


Auth App - Initial Page

If you click the Protected link, you'll see nothing happens. The same happens if you try to manually visit <http://localhost:8080/#/protected>⁶⁴.

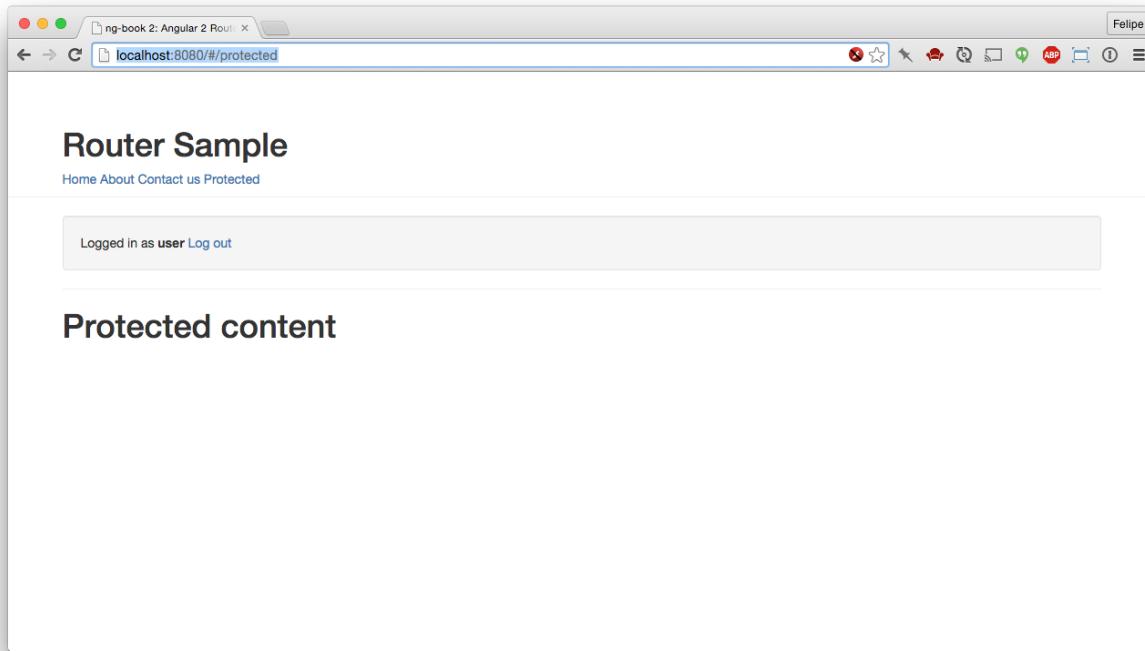
Now enter *user* and *password* on the form and click **Submit**. You'll see that we now get the current user displayed on a banner:

⁶⁴<http://localhost:8080/#/protected>



Auth App - Logged In

And, sure enough, if we click the Protected link, it gets redirected and the component is rendered:



Auth App - Protected Area



A Note on Security: It's important to know how client-side route protection is working before you rely too heavily on it for security. That is, you should consider client-side route protection a form of *user-experience* and not one of security.

Ultimately all of the javascript in your app that gets served to the client can be inspected, whether the user is logged in or not.

So if you have sensitive data that needs to be protected, you must protect it with **server-side authentication**. That is, require an API key (or auth token) from the user which is validated by the server on every request for data.

Writing a full-stack authentication system is beyond the scope of this book. The important thing to know is that protecting routes on the client-side don't necessarily keep anyone from viewing the javascript pages behind those routes.

Nested Routes

Nested routes is the concept of containing routes within other routes. With nested routes we're able to encapsulate the functionality of parent routes and have that functionality apply to the child routes.

Let's say we have a website with one area to allow users to know our team, called **Who we are?** and another one for our **Products**.

We could think that the perfect route for **Who we are?** would be `/about` and for products `/products`.

And we're happily displaying all our team and all our products when visiting this areas.

What happens when the website grows and we now need to display individual information about each person in our team and also for each product we sell?

In order to support scenarios like these, the router allows the user to define nested routes.

To do that, you can have multiple, nested `router-outlet`. So each area of our application can have their own child components, that also have their own `router-outlets`.

Let's work on an example to clear things up.

In this example, we'll have a products section where the user will be able to view two highlighted products by visiting a nice URL. For all the other products, the routes will use the product ID.



Sample Code The complete code for the examples in this section can be found in the `routes/nested` folder of the sample code. That folder contains a `README.md`, which gives instructions for building and running the project.

Configuring Routes

We will start by describing two top-level routes on the `app.ts` file:

`code/routes/nested/app/ts/app.ts`

```
58 const routes: Routes = [
59   { path: '', redirectTo: 'home', pathMatch: 'full' },
60   { path: 'home', component: HomeComponent },
61   { path: 'products', component: ProductsComponent, children: childRoutes }
62 ];
```

The `home` route looks very familiar, notice that `products` has a `children` parameter. Where does this come from? We've defined the `childRoutes` alongside the `ProductsComponent`. Let's take a look:

ProductsComponent

This component will have its own route configuration:

code/routes/nested/app/ts/components/ProductsComponent.ts

```

51 export const routes: Routes = [
52   { path: '', redirectTo: 'main', pathMatch: 'full' },
53   { path: 'main', component: MainComponent },
54   { path: ':id', component: ByIdComponent },
55   { path: 'interest', component: InterestComponent },
56   { path: 'sportify', component: SportifyComponent },
57 ];

```

Notice here that we have an empty path on the first object. We do this so that when we visit /products, we'll be redirected to the main route.

The other route we need to look at is :id. In this case, when the user visits something *that doesn't match any other route*, it will fallback to this route. Everything that is passed after / will be extracted to a parameter of the route, called id.

Now on the component template, we'll have a link to each of those static child routes:

code/routes/nested/app/ts/components/ProductsComponent.ts

```

29   <a [routerLink]="['./main']">Main</a> |
30   <a [routerLink]=" ['./interest']">Interest</a> |
31   <a [routerLink]=" ['./sportify']">Sportify</a> |

```

You can see that the route links are all in the format ['./main'], with a preceding ./. This indicates that you want to navigate the Main route *relative to the current route context*.

You could also declare the routes with the ['products', 'main'] notation. The downside is that by doing it this way, the child route is aware of the parent route and if you were to move this component around or reuse it, you would have to rewrite your route links.

After the links, we'll add an input where the user will be able to enter a product id, along with a button to navigate to it, and lastly add our router-outlet:

code/routes/nested/app/ts/components/ProductsComponent.ts

```

25   template: `
26     <h2>Products</h2>
27
28     <div class="navLinks">
29       <a [routerLink]=" ['./main']">Main</a> |
30       <a [routerLink]=" ['./interest']">Interest</a> |
31       <a [routerLink]=" ['./sportify']">Sportify</a> |
32       Enter id: <input #id size="6">

```

```
33      <button (click)="goToProduct(id.value)">Go</button>
34  </div>
35
36  <div class="products-area">
37    <router-outlet></router-outlet>
38  </div>
39  `
```

Let's look at the ProductsComponent definition:

code/routes/nested/app/ts/components/ProductsComponent.ts

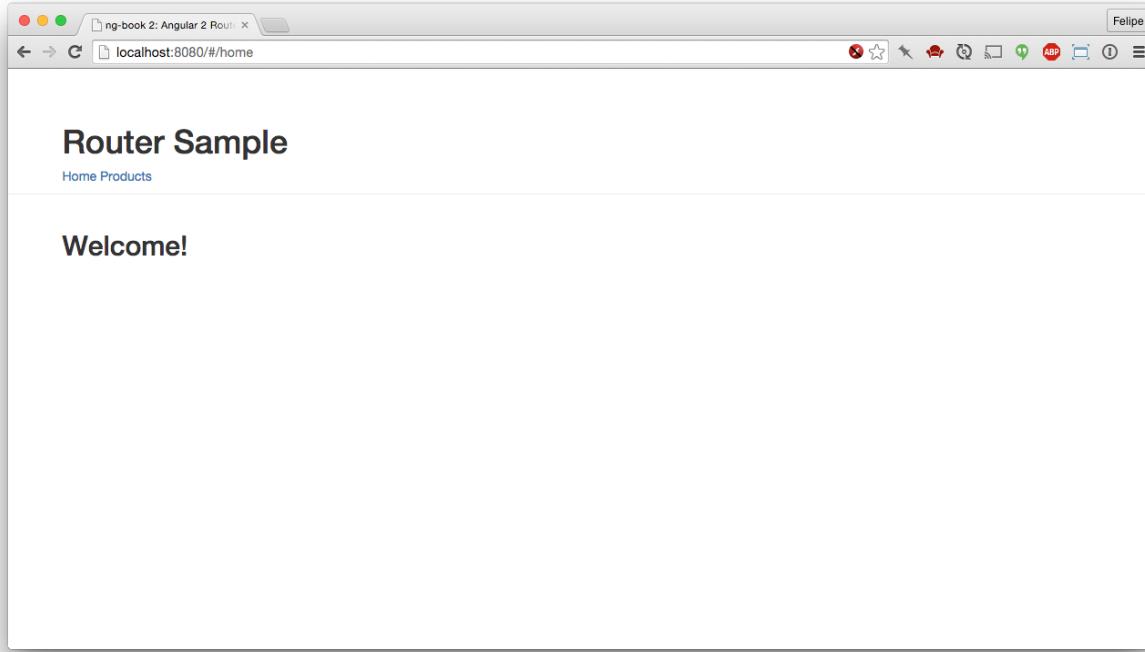
```
42 export class ProductsComponent {
43   constructor(private router: Router, private route: ActivatedRoute) {
44   }
45
46   goToProduct(id:string): void {
47     this.router.navigate(['./', id], {relativeTo: this.route});
48   }
49 }
```

First on the constructor we're declaring an instance variable for the Router, since we're going to use that instance to navigate to the product by id.

When we want to go to a particular product we use the goToProduct method. In goToProduct we call the router's navigate method and providing the route name and an object with route parameters. In our case we're just passing the id.

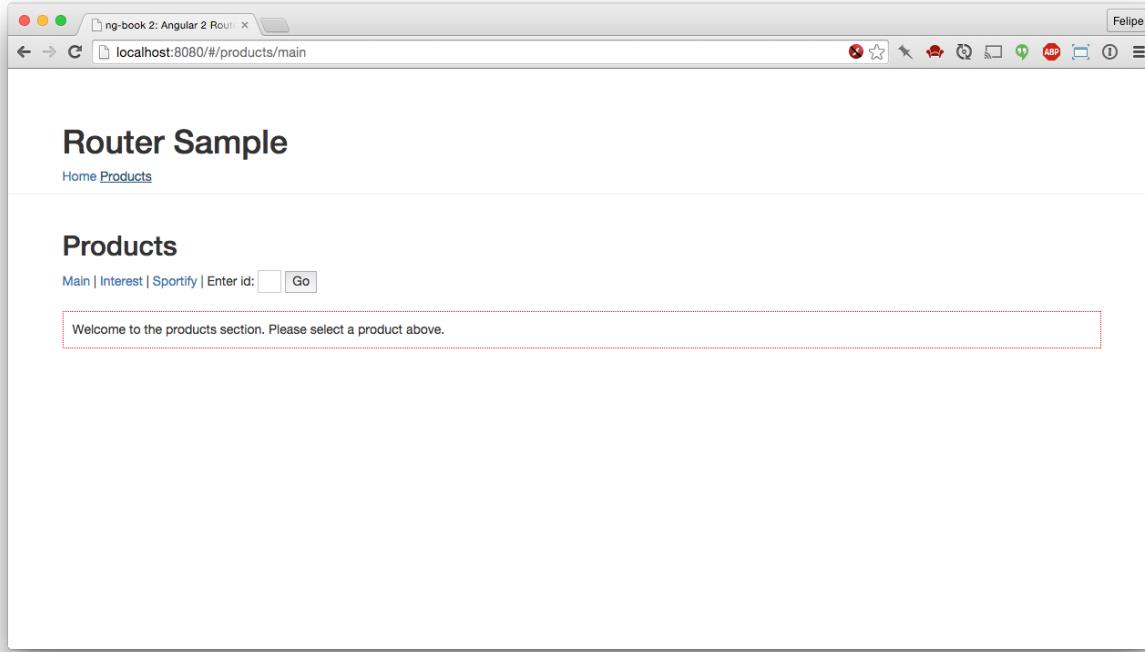
Notice that we use the relative ./ path in the navigate function. In order to use this we also pass the relativeTo object to the options, which tells the router what that route is relative to.

Now, if we run the application we will see the main page:



Nested Routes App

If you click on the Products link, you'll be redirected to /products/main that will render as follows:

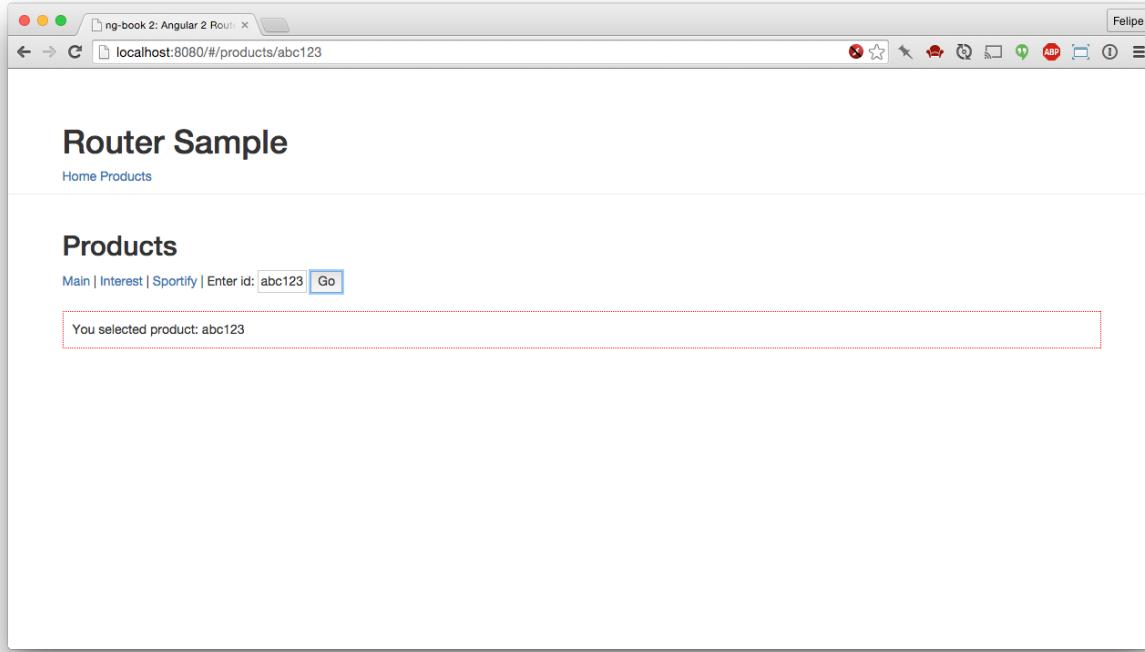


Nested Routes App - Products Section

Everything below that thin grey line is being rendered using the main application's router-outlet.

And the contents of the dotted red line is being rendered inside the ProductComponent's router-outlet. That's how you indicate how the parent and child routes will be rendered.

When we visit one of the product links, or if we enter an ID on the textbox and click Go, the new content is rendered inside the ProductComponent's outlet:



Nested Routes App - Product By Id

It's also worth noting that the Angular router is smart enough to prioritize concrete routes first (like `/products/spotify`) over the parameterized ones (like `/products/123`). This way `/products/spotify` will never be handled by the more generic, catch-all route `/products/:id`.

Redirecting and linking nested routes

Just to recap, if we want to go to a route named `MyRoute` on your top-level routing context, you use `['myRoute']`. This will only work if you're in that same top-level context.

If you are on a child component, and you try to link or redirect to `['myRoute']`, it will try to find a sibling route, and error out. In this case, you need to use `['/myRoute']` with a leading slash.

In a similar way, if we are on the top-level context and we want to link or redirect to a child route, we have to need to use multiple elements on the route definition array.

Let's say we want to visit the `Show` route, which is a child of the `Product` route. In this case, we use `['product', 'show']` as the route definition.

Summary

As we can see, the new Angular router is very powerful and flexible. Now go out and route your apps!

Dependency Injection

As our programs grow in size, we often find that different parts of the app need to communicate with other modules. When module A requires module B to run, we say that B is a *dependency* of A.

One of the most common ways to get access to dependencies is to simply `import` a file. For instance, in this hypothetical module we might do the following:

```
1 // in A.ts
2 import {B} from 'B'; // a dependency!
3
4 B.foo(); // using B
```

In many cases, simply importing other code is sufficient. However there are times where we need to provide dependencies in a more sophisticated way. For instance:

- What if we wanted to substitute out the implementation of B for MockB during testing?
- What if we wanted to share a *single instance* of the B class across our whole app (e.g. the *Singleton* pattern)
- What if we wanted to create a *new instance* of the B class every time it was used? (e.g. the *Factory* pattern)

Dependency Injection can solve these problems.

Dependency Injection (DI) is a system to make parts of our program accessible to other parts of the program - and we can configure how that happens.



One way to think about an injector is as a replacement for the `new` operator

The term Dependency Injection is used to describe both a design pattern (that used in many different frameworks) and also the specific implementation DI library that is built-in to Angular.

The major benefit of using dependency injection is that the client component doesn't have to be aware of how to create the dependencies, all the component needs to know is how to *interact* with those dependencies.

Injections Example: PriceService

Let's imagine we have a Product class. Each product has a base price. In order to calculate the full price for this product, we rely on a service that takes as input

- the **base price** of the product and
- the **state** we're selling it to.

Here's how this would look without dependency injection:

```
1 class Product {
2   constructor(basePrice: number) {
3     this.service = new PriceService();
4     this.basePrice = basePrice;
5   }
6
7   price(state: string) {
8     return this.service.calculate(this.basePrice, state);
9   }
10 }
```

Now let's imagine we need to write a test for this Product class. Let's assume the PriceService class above uses a database lookup to retrieve taxes for a given state. If we write a test like:

```
1 let product;
2
3 beforeEach(() => {
4   product = new Product(11);
5 });
6
7 describe('price', () => {
8   it('is calculated based on the basePrice and the state', () => {
9     expect(product.price('FL')).toBe(11.66);
10    });
11 })
```

Even though the test may work, there are a few shortcomings to this approach. In order for the test to success a few preconditions have to be met:

1. The database must be running;

2. The tax entry for Florida must be what we're expecting;

Basically we're making our tests more brittle by adding an unexpected dependency between the Product class and the PriceService that, in turn, depends on a database.

What if we could write the Product class a little differently:

```
1 class Product {
2     constructor(service: PriceService, basePrice: number) {
3         this.service = service;
4         this.basePrice = basePrice;
5     }
6
7     price(state: string) {
8         return this.service.calculate(this.basePrice, state);
9     }
10 }
```

Now, when creating a Product the client class becomes responsible for deciding which concrete implementation of the PriceService is going to be given to the new instance.

With that, we can make our tests a lot simpler by creating a *mock* version of the PriceService class:

```
1 class MockPriceService {
2     calculate(basePrice: number, state: string) {
3         if (state === 'FL') {
4             return basePrice * 1.06;
5         }
6
7         return basePrice;
8     }
9 }
```

And with this small change, we can tweak our test slightly and get rid of the database dependency:

```
1 let product;
2
3 beforeEach(() => {
4   const service = new MockPriceService();
5   product = new Product(service, 11);
6 });
7
8 describe('price', () => {
9   it('is calculated based on the basePrice and the state', () => {
10     expect(product.price('FL')).toBe(11.66);
11   });
12 })
```

We also get the bonus of having confidence that we're testing the `Product` class *in isolation*. That is, we're making sure that our class works with a predictable dependency.

“Don’t Call Us...”

This technique of injecting the dependencies relies on a principle called the inversion of control.



The inversion of control (or IoC) principle is also called informally the “Hollywood principle”, that is a reference to the Hollywood motto “don’t call us, we’ll call you”.

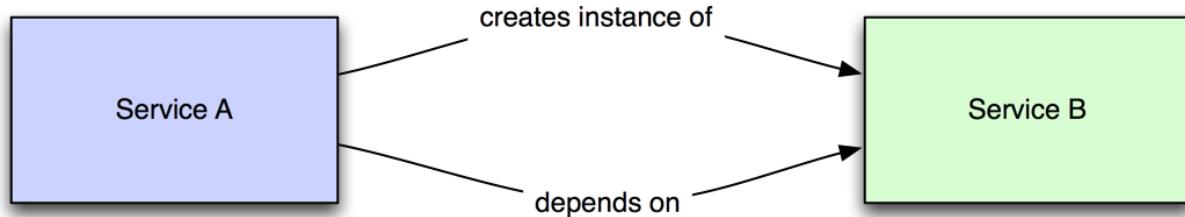
Over the years it was very common for every component to be aware of the complete application context and be responsible for creating and setting up the dependencies. This can be seen clearly on our example, where the `Product` class had to be aware of the `PriceService`.

The setback of doing things that way is that once a component becomes aware of the dependency, the component itself becomes more brittle and therefore harder to change. If we make change to a component on which many other components are dependent upon, we end up having to propagate the changes to a lot of different areas of our application and sometimes even outside the boundaries of it. In other words, we’re making our components *tightly coupled*.

When we use DI we are moving towards a more *loosely coupled* architecture where changing bits and pieces of a single component affects the other areas of the application less. And, as long as the interface between those components don’t change, we can even swap them altogether, without any other components even realizing.

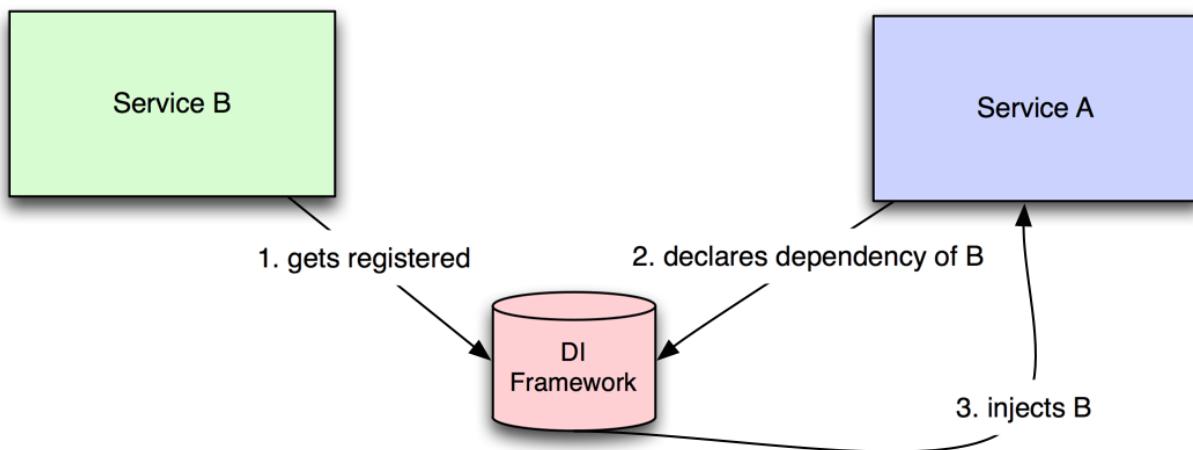
One of the great features that ng2 inherited from ng1 is that both frameworks uses this Inversion of Control pattern. Angular uses *dependency injection* to resolve dependencies out of the box.

Traditionally, if a component A depends on component B, what would happen is that an instance of B would be created inside A. This implies that now A depends on B.



Without a Dependency Injection Framework

Angular uses the Dependency Injection to change things around in a way that if we need component B inside component A, we expect that B will be *passed* to A.



With a Dependency Injection Framework

This brings many advantages over the traditional scenario. One example of an advantage is that, if we're testing A in isolation we can easily create a mocked version of B and inject it into A.

We have used services and therefore dependency injection a lot of times earlier in this book. For example, when we created the music application back on the Routing chapter. To interact with the Spotify API, we created the **SpotifyService** that was injected on a number of components as we can see on this snippet from the **AlbumComponent**:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/AlbumComponent.ts

```
37 export class AlbumComponent implements OnInit {  
38     id: string;  
39     album: Object;  
40  
41     constructor(private route: ActivatedRoute,  
42                 private spotify: SpotifyService, // <-- injected  
43                 private location: Location) {  
44         route.params.subscribe(params => { this.id = params['id']; });  
45     }  
}
```

Now let's learn how to create our own services and the different forms we can inject them.

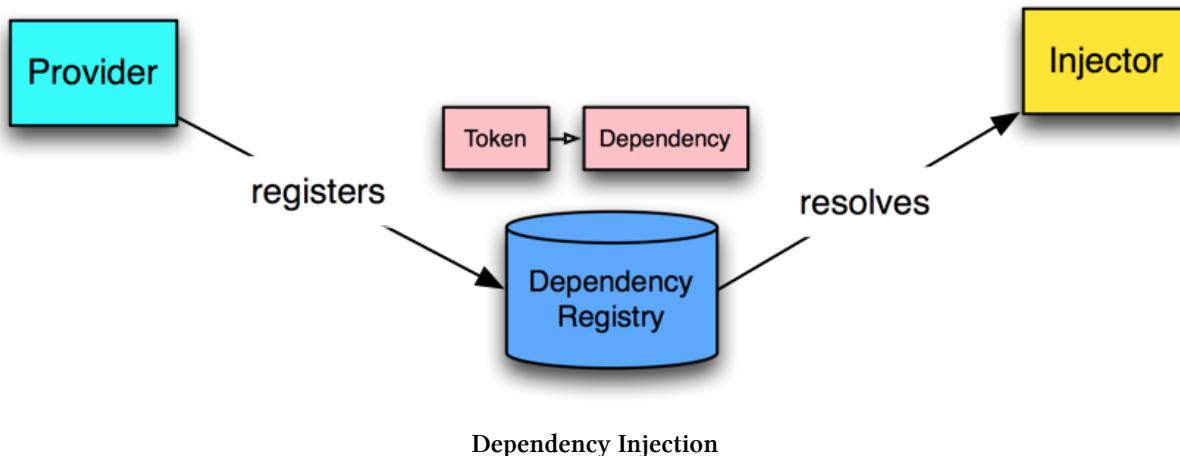
Dependency Injection Parts

To register a dependency we have to bind it to something that will identify that dependency. This identification is called the dependency **token**. For instance, if we want to register the URL of an API, we can use the string `API_URL` as the token. Similarly, if we're registering a class, we can use the class itself as its **token** as we'll see below.

Dependency injection in Angular has three pieces:

- the **Provider** (also often referred to as a binding) maps a *token* (that can be a string or a class) to a list of dependencies. It tells Angular how to create an object, given a token.
- the **Injector** that holds a set of bindings and is responsible for resolving dependencies and injecting them when creating objects
- the **Dependency** that is what's being injected

We can think of the role of each piece as illustrated below:



There are a lot of different options when dealing with DI, so let's see how each of them work.

One of the most common cases is providing a service or value that is the same across our whole application. This scenario would be what we would use 99% of the time in our apps.

If this is all we want to do, we'll cover how to write a basic service in the next section and that is going to be all we need for most of our apps most of the time.

Enough talk, let's code!

Playing with an Injector

As mentioned above, Angular is going to setup DI for us behind the scenes. But before we deal with annotations and the integrating injections into our components, let's first play with the injector by itself.

Let's create a sample service that only returns a string:

code/dependency_injection/injector/app/ts/app.ts

```

17  /*
18   * The injectable service
19   */
20  class MyService {
21      getValue(): string {
22          return 'a value';
23      }
24  }

```

Next, we want to create the app component:

code/dependency_injection/injector/app/ts/app.ts

```
26 @Component({
27   selector: 'di-sample-app',
28   template: `
29     <button (click)="invokeService()">Get Value</button>
30   `
31 })
32 class DiSampleApp {
33   myService: MyService;
34
35   constructor() {
36     let injector: any = ReflectiveInjector.resolveAndCreate([MyService]);
37     this.myService = injector.get(MyService);
38     console.log('Same instance?', this.myService === injector.get(MyService));
39   }
40
41   invokeService(): void {
42     console.log('MyService returned', this.myService.getValue());
43   }
44 }
```

Let's break things down a bit. We are declaring the `DiSampleApp` component that will render a button. When that button is clicked we call the `invokeService` method.

Focusing on the constructor of the component we can see that we are using a static method from `ReflectiveInjector` called `resolveAndCreate`. That method is responsible for creating a new injector. The parameter we pass in is an array with all the *injectable things* we want this new injector to *know*. In our case, we just wanted it to know about the `MyService` injectable.



The `ReflectiveInjector` is a concrete implementation of `Injector` that uses *reflection* to look up the proper parameter types. While there are other injectors that are possible `ReflectiveInjector` is the “normal” injector we'll be using in most apps.

One important thing to notice is that it will inject a **singleton** instance of the class.

This can be verified by the last two lines of our constructor. We are first asking our newly created injector to give us the instance for the `MyService` class. We then store that into our component's `myService` field. Right after that, we have a `console.log` that asks the injector to give us the instance of `MyService` again. When the result of the comparison of the next line executes:

```
1 console.log('Same instance?', this.myService === injector.get(MyService));
```

We get the confirmation that both instances are actually the exact same object on the console:

```
1 Same instance? true
```

Notice that, since we're using our own injector, we didn't have to add `MyService` to the `NgModule providers` list as we're used to during bootstrapping:

`code/dependency_injection/injector/app/ts/app.ts`

```
47 @NgModule({
48   declarations: [ DiSampleApp ],
49   imports: [ BrowserModule ],
50   bootstrap: [ DiSampleApp ]
51 })
52 class DiSample AppModule {}
53
54 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(DiSample AppModule);
```

Providing Dependencies with `NgModule`

However, *normally* we **do** need to tell our `NgModule` about the *providers* of things we will inject.

For instance, say we wanted to allow a singleton instance `MyService` to be injected across our app.

In order to be able to inject these things we must *add them to the providers key of a NgModule*. Here's an example:

```
1 @NgModule({
2   declarations: [
3     AppComponent,
4     // other components ...
5   ],
6   providers: [ MyService ] // <--- here
7 })
8 class MyAppModule {}
```

Now `AppComponent` could inject `MyService` in the constructor like so:

```
1 export class AppComponent {  
2  
3   constructor(private myService: MyService /* <- injected */) {  
4     // do something with myService here  
5   }  
6  
7   // ...  
8 }
```

When we put the class itself into the list of providers like this:

```
1 providers: [ MyService ]
```

That is telling Angular that we want to provide a singleton instance of MyService whenever MyService is injected. Because this pattern is so common, the class by itself is shorthand notation for the following, equivalent configuration:

```
1 providers: [  
2   { provide: MyComponent, useClass: MyComponent }  
3 ]
```

There are many different ways of injecting things beyond creating an instance of a class. let's take a look.

Providers

One of the neat things about Angular's DI system is that there are several ways we can configure the injection. For instance we can:

- Inject a (singleton) instance of a class
- Call any function and inject the return value of that function
- Inject a value
- Create an alias

For instance,

Let's look at how we could create each one:

Using a Class

Injecting a singleton instance of a class is probably the most common type of injection.

Here's how we configure it:

```
1 { provide: MyComponent, useClass: MyComponent }
```

What's interesting to note is that the `provide` configuration method takes **two** keys. The first `provide` is the *token* that we use to identify the injection and the second `useClass` is how and what to inject.

So here we're mapping the `MyComponent` class to the `MyComponent` token. In this case, the name of the class and the token match. This is the common case, but know that the token and the injected thing *don't have to have the same name*.

As we've seen above, in this case the injector will create a **singleton** behind the scenes and return the same instance every time we inject it.

Of course, the first time it is injected, it hasn't been instantiated yet, so when creating the `MyComponent` instance for the first time, the DI system will trigger the class **constructor** method.

Now what happens if a service's **constructor** requires some parameter? Let's say we have this service:

code/dependency_injection/misc/app/ts/app.ts

```
26 class ParamService {
27   constructor(private phrase: string) {
28     console.log('ParamService is being created with phrase', phrase);
29   }
30
31   getValue(): string {
32     return this.phrase;
33   }
34 }
```

Notice how its constructor method takes a `phrase` as a parameter? If we try to use the regular injection mechanism we would see an error on the browser:

```
Cannot resolve all parameters for 'ParamService'(?). Make sure that all the lang.js:375
parameters are decorated with Inject or have valid type annotations and that 'ParamService' is
decorated with Injectable.
```

Injection error

This happens because we didn't provide the injector with enough information about the class we're trying to build. In order to resolve this problem, we need to tell the injector which parameter we want it to use when creating the service's instance.

If we need to pass in parameters when creating a service, we would need to use a factory instead.

Using a Factory

When we use a factory injection, we write a function that can return **any object**.

```

1  {
2    provide: MyComponent,
3    useFactory: () => {
4      if (loggedIn) {
5        return new MyLoggedComponent();
6      }
7      return new MyComponent();
8    }
9  }

```

Notice in the case above, we inject on the token `MyComponent` but this will check the (out of scope) `loggedIn` variable. If `loggedIn` is truthy then the injection will give an instance of `MyLoggedComponent`, otherwise we will receive `MyComponent`.

Factories can also have dependencies:

```

1  {
2    provide: MyComponent,
3    useFactory: (user) => {
4      if (user.loggedIn()) {
5        return new MyLoggedComponent(user);
6      }
7      return new MyComponent();
8    },
9    deps: [ User ]
10 }

```

So if we wanted to use our `ParamService` from above, we can wrap it with `useFactory` like so:

`code/dependency_injection/misc/app/ts/app.ts`

```

52  @NgModule({
53    declarations: [ DiSampleApp ],
54    imports: [ BrowserModule ],
55    bootstrap: [ DiSampleApp ],
56    providers: [
57      SimpleService,
58      {
59        provide: ParamService,
60        useFactory: (): ParamService => new ParamService('YOLO')
61      }
62    ]
63  })

```

```
64 class DiSampleApp AppModule {}  
65  
66 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(DiSampleApp AppModule)  
67 .catch((err: any) => console.error(err));
```



In the providers value we can put SimpleService in the list of providers directly because SimpleService doesn't need any parameters. It will get translated to:

```
1 { provide: SimpleService, useClass: SimpleService }
```

Using a factory is the most powerful way to create injectables, because we can do whatever we want within the factory function.

Using a Value

This is useful when we want to register a constant that can be redefined by another part of the application or even by environment (e.g. test or production).

```
1 { provide: 'API_URL', useValue: 'http://my.api.com/v1' }
```

We're going to do a more thorough example that uses values further down on the [Substituting Values section](#).

Using an alias

We can also make an alias to reference a previously registered token, like so:

```
1 { provide: NewComponent, useClass: MyComponent }
```

Dependency Injection in Apps

When writing our apps there are three steps we need to take in order to perform an injection:

1. Create the service class
2. Declare the dependencies on the receiving component and
3. Configure the injection (i.e. register the injection with Angular in our NgModule)

The first thing we do is create the service class, that is, the class that exposes some behavior we want to use. This will be called the *injectable* because it is the *thing* that our components will receive via the injection.

Here is how we would create a service:

code/dependency_injection/simple/app/ts/services/ ApiService.ts

```
1 export class ApiService {
2   get(): void {
3     console.log('Getting resource...');
4   }
5 }
```

Now that we have the thing to be injected, we have to take the next step, which is declare the dependencies we want to receive when Angular creates our component.

Earlier we used the Injector class directly, but Angular provides two shortcuts for us we can use when writing our components.

The first and typical way of doing it, is by declaring the injectables we want in our component's constructor.

To do that, we require the service:

code/dependency_injection/simple/app/ts/app.ts

```
11 /*
12   * Services
13   */
14 import { ApiService } from 'services/ ApiService';
```

And then we declare it on the constructor:

code/dependency_injection/simple/app/ts/app.ts

```
27 class DiSampleApp {
28   constructor(private apiService: ApiService) {
29 }
```

When we declare the injection in our component constructor, Angular will do some *reflection* to figure out what class to inject. That is, Angular will see that we are looking for an object of type ApiService in the constructor and check the DI system for an appropriate injection.

Sometimes we need to give Angular more hints about what we're trying to inject. In that case we use the second method by using the @Inject annotation:

```
1 class DiSampleApp {  
2   private apiService: ApiService;  
3   constructor(@Inject(ApiService) apiService) {  
4     this.apiService = apiService;  
5   }  
6 }
```



If you want to play with the equivalent version, use the `app.long.ts` file provided alongside the `app.ts` file, just copy its contents over `app.ts`.

The final step for using dependency injection is to connect the things our components want injected with the injectables. In other words, we are telling Angular which *thing* to inject when a component declares its dependencies.

```
1 { provide: ApiService, useClass: ApiService }
```

In this case, we use the token `ApiService` to expose the singleton of the class `ApiService`.

Finally, we add this `ApiService` to the `providers` key of our `NgModule`:

`code/dependency_injection/simple/app/ts/app.ts`

```
36 @NgModule({  
37   declarations: [ DiSampleApp ],  
38   imports: [ BrowserModule ],  
39   bootstrap: [ DiSampleApp ],  
40   providers: [ ApiService ] // <-- here  
41 })  
42 class DiSampleApp AppModule {}  
43  
44 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(DiSampleApp AppModule)  
45 .catch((err: any) => console.error(err));
```

Working with Injectors

We've played a little bit with injectors already, so let's talk a little more about when we would need to use them explicitly.

One case would be when we need to control the moment where the singleton instance of our dependency gets created.

To illustrate a scenario where that could happen, let's build another app that uses the `ApiService` we created above, along with a new service.

This service will be used to instantiate two other services, based on the size of the browser viewport. If it's less than 800 pixels, it will return a new instance of a service called **SmallService**. Otherwise, it will return an instance of **LargeService**.

Here's how **SmallService** look like:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/services/SmallService.ts

```
1 export class SmallService {
2     run(): void {
3         console.log('Small service...');
4     }
5 }
```

And **LargeService**:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/services/LargeService.ts

```
1 export class LargeService {
2     run(): void {
3         console.log('Large service...');
4     }
5 }
```

Then we'll write the **ViewPortService** that choses between the two:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/services/ViewPortService.ts

```
1 import {LargeService} from './LargeService';
2 import {SmallService} from './SmallService';
3
4 export class ViewPortService {
5     determineService(): any {
6         let w: number = Math.max(document.documentElement.clientWidth,
7                               window.innerWidth || 0);
8
9         if (w < 800) {
10             return new SmallService();
11         }
12         return new LargeService();
13     }
14 }
```

Now let's create an app that uses our services:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/app.ts

```
31 class DiSampleApp {  
32   constructor(private apiService: ApiService,  
33               @Inject(' ApiServiceAlias ') private aliasService: ApiService,  
34               @Inject(' SizeService ') private sizeService: any) {  
35 }
```

Here we are getting an instance of `ApiService` the way we saw earlier. But alongside we're also getting an instance of the same service, aliased as '`ApiServiceAlias`'. Finally we're getting an instance of a '`SizeService`' that is not yet defined.

To understand what each service represents, let's look at the `NgModule`:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/app.ts

```
59 @NgModule({  
60   declarations: [ DiSampleApp ],  
61   imports: [ BrowserModule ],  
62   bootstrap: [ DiSampleApp ],  
63   providers: [  
64     ApiService,  
65     ViewPortService,  
66     { provide: ' ApiServiceAlias ', useExisting: ApiService },  
67     {  
68       provide: ' SizeService ',  
69       useFactory: (viewport: any) => {  
70         return viewport.determineService();  
71       },  
72       deps: [ViewPortService]  
73     }  
74   ]  
75 })  
76 class DiSampleApp AppModule {}
```

Here we are saying that we want the app injector to be aware of the `ApiService` and `ViewPortService` injectables as they are.

We are then declaring that we want to use the existing `ApiService` with another token: the string `ApiServiceAlias` .

Next, we're declaring another injectable defined by the string token `SizeService`. This factory will receive an instance of the `ViewPortService` that is listed on its `deps` array. Then it will

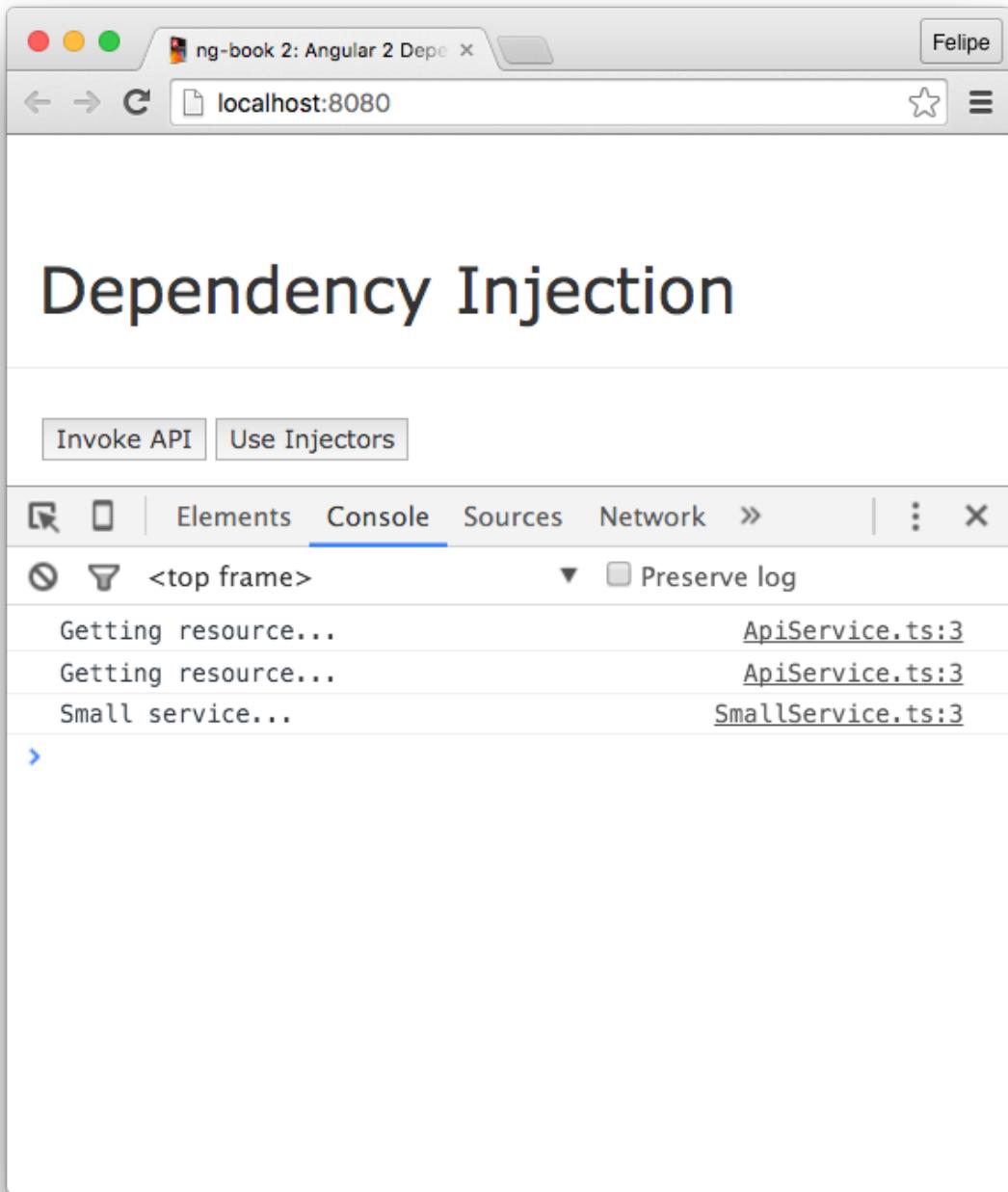
invoke the `determineService()` method on that class and that call will return either an instance of `SmallService` or `LargeService`, depending on our browser's width.

When we click a button in our template, we want to do three calls: one to the `ApiService`, one to its alias `ApiServiceAlias` and finally one to `SizeService`:

`code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/app.ts`

```
37  invokeApi(): void {
38    this.apiService.get();
39    this.aliasService.get();
40    this.sizeService.run();
41 }
```

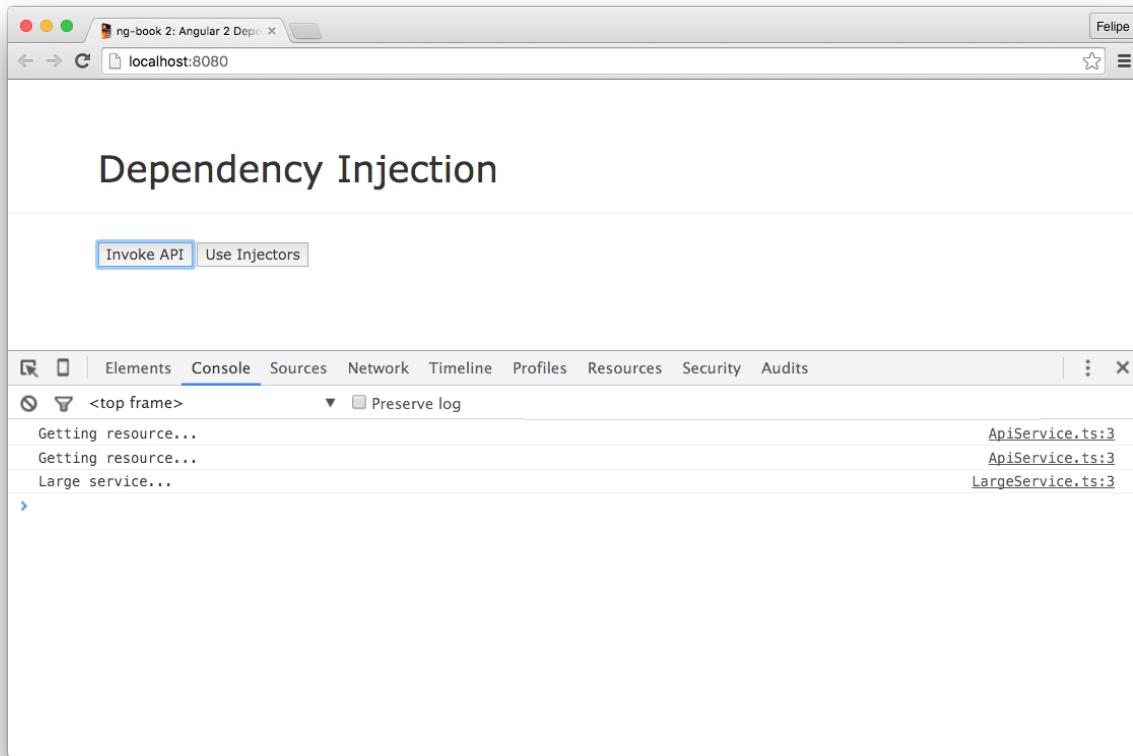
Now if we run the app and click the **Invoke API** button with a small browser window:



Small browser window

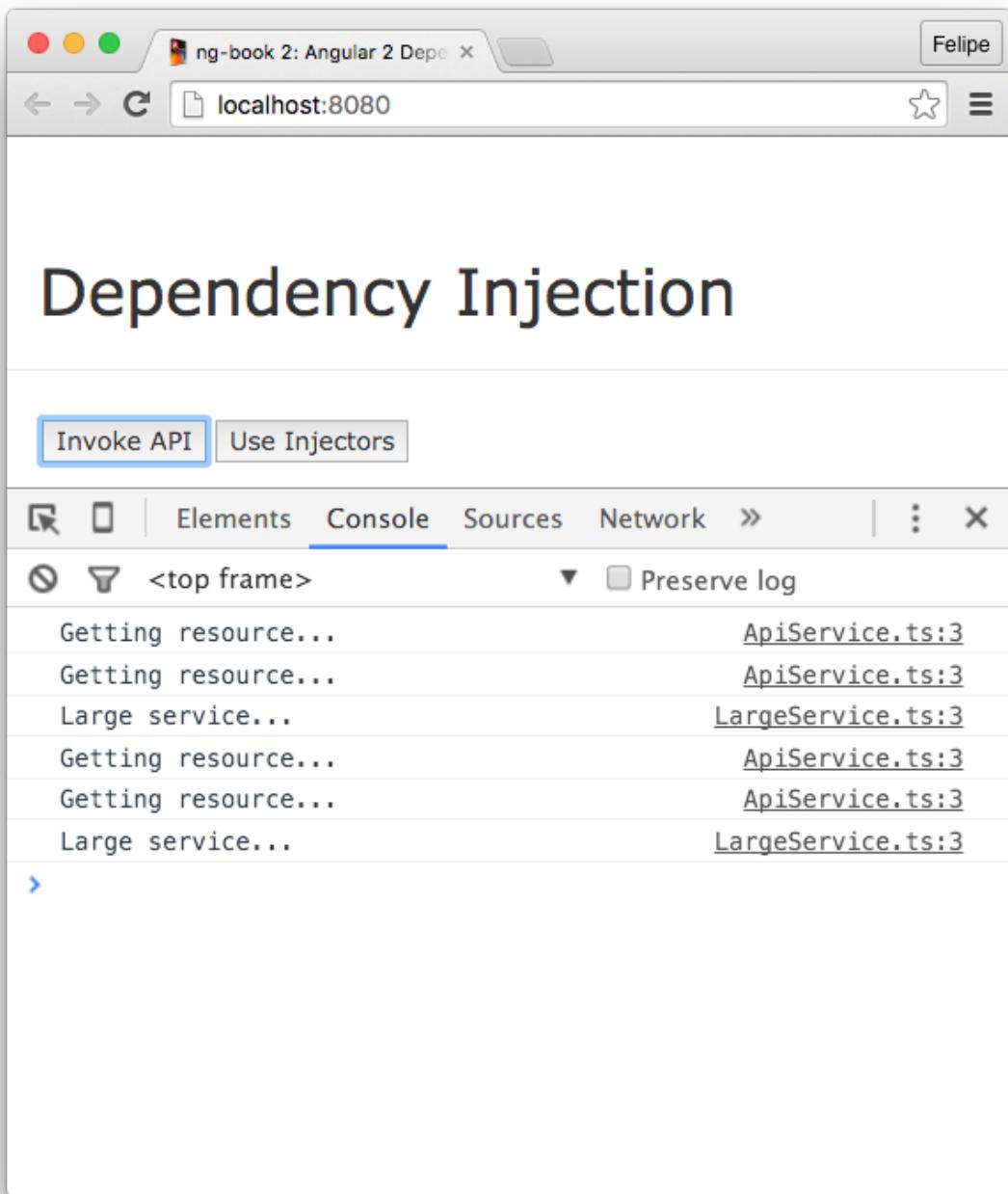
We get one log from the **ApiService**, another one from the aliased service and finally we get a log from the **SmallService**.

If we make our browser window larger, reload the page and click the button again:



Large browser window

We get the **LargeService** log instead. However, if we try to make the browser window smaller and click the button without reloading the page, we still get the **LargeService** log:



Small browser window - resized

That's because the factory was executed once: during the application bootstrap.

To overcome that, we can create our own injectors and get the instance of the proper service by doing the following:

code/dependency_injection/complex/app/ts/app.ts

```
43  useInjectors(): void {
44    let injector: any = ReflectiveInjector.resolveAndCreate([
45      ViewPortService,
46      {
47        provide: 'OtherSizeService',
48        useFactory: (viewport: any) => {
49          return viewport.determineService();
50        },
51        deps: [ViewPortService]
52      }
53    ]);
54    let sizeService: any = injector.get('OtherSizeService');
55    sizeService.run();
56 }
```

Here we are creating an injector that knows the `ViewPortService` and another injectable with the string `OtherSizeService` as its token. This injectable uses the same factory as the `SizeService` we used before.

Finally, it uses the injector we created to get an instance of the `OtherSizeService`.

Now if we run the app with a large browser window and click the **Use Injector** button, we get the large service log. However, if we resize it to a small width, even without reloading we now get the proper log. That's because the factory is being executed every time we click the button, since the injector is being created on demand. Neat!

Substituting values

Another reason to use DI is to change the hard value of the injection at runtime. That could happen if we have an API service that performs the HTTP requests to our application's API. On the context of our unit or integration tests, we don't want our code to hit the production database. In this case, we could write a Mock API service that seamlessly *replaces* our concrete implementation. Let's take a look at that now.

For instance, if we are running the app in development we might hit a different API server than if we were running the app in production.

This is even more true if we were publishing an open-source or reusable service. In that case we may want the client application define or override an API URL.

Let's write a simple example of an application that injects different values as the API URL depending on whether it's running on production or dev mode. We start with the `ApiService` class:

`code/dependency_injection/value/app/ts/services/ ApiService.ts`

```
1 import { Inject } from '@angular/core';
2
3 export const API_URL: string = 'API_URL';
4
5 export class ApiService {
6   constructor(@Inject(API_URL) private apiUrl: string) {
7   }
8
9   get(): void {
10     console.log(`Calling ${this.apiUrl}/endpoint...`);
11   }
12 }
```

We are declaring a constant that will be used as the *token* for our API URL dependency. In other words, Angular will use the string 'API_URL' to store the information about which URL to call. This way when we `@Inject(API_URL)` the proper value will be injected into the variable.

Notice we are exporting the `API_URL` constant so that client applications can use `API_URL` to inject the correct value from outside the service.

Now that we have the service, let's write the application component that will use the service and provide different values for the URL, depending on the environment the app will be running on.

`code/dependency_injection/value/app/ts/app.ts`

```
21 @Component({
22   selector: 'di-value-app',
23   template: `
24     <button (click)="invokeApi()">Invoke API</button>
25   `
26 })
27 class DiValueApp {
28   constructor(private apiService: ApiService) {
29   }
30
31   invokeApi(): void {
32     this.apiService.get();
33   }
34 }
```

This is the component code. On the constructor we can see that we are declaring a `ApiService` variable called `apiService`. Here Angular will infer that we need to get the `ApiService` dependency and inject it at runtime. If we wanted to be explicit about it we could have used:

```
1 constructor(@Inject(ApiService) private apiService: ApiService) {  
2 }
```

The idea behind this component is to have an **Invoke API** button. When we click this button, we'll call the `get()` method of the `ApiService`. This method will then log to the console the `API_URL` we're using.

The next step is to configure the application with the providers:

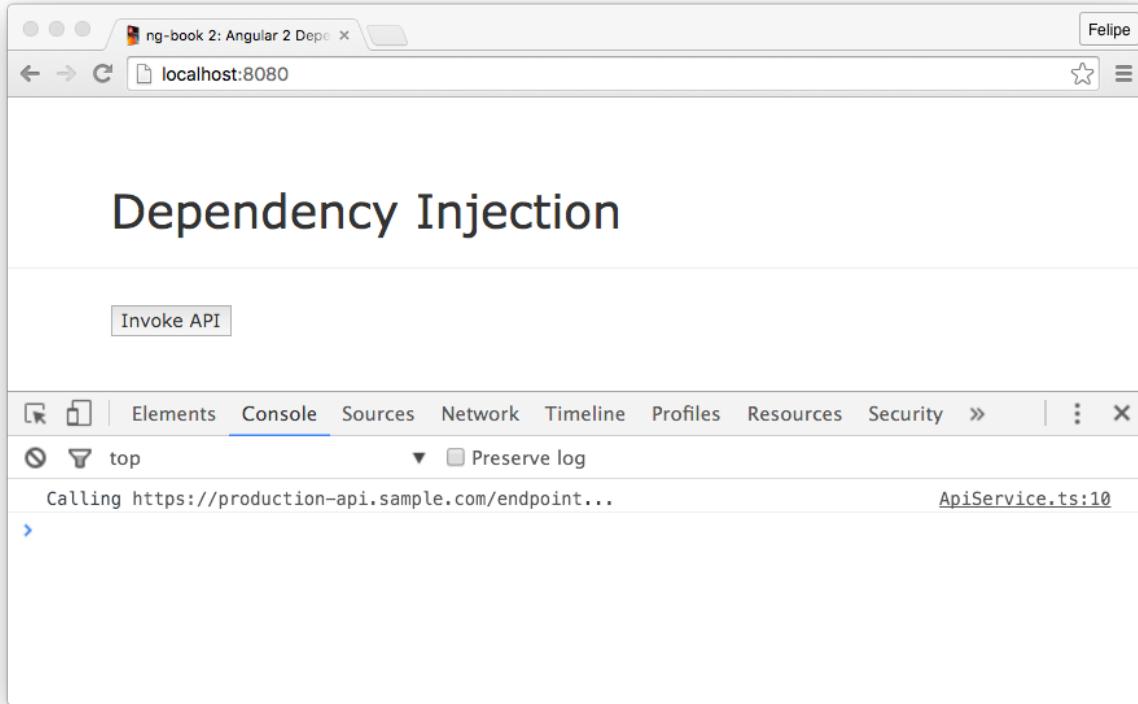
code/dependency_injection/value/app/ts/app.ts

```
36 const isProduction: boolean = false;  
37  
38 @NgModule({  
39   declarations: [ DiValueApp ],  
40   imports: [ BrowserModule ],  
41   bootstrap: [ DiValueApp ],  
42   providers: [  
43     { provide: ApiService, useClass: ApiService },  
44     {  
45       provide: API_URL,  
46       useValue: isProduction ?  
47         'https://production-api.sample.com' :  
48         'http://dev-api.sample.com'  
49     }  
50   ]  
51 })  
52 class DiValueApp AppModule {}  
53  
54 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(DiValueApp AppModule)
```

First we declare a constant called `isProduction` and set it to `false`. We can pretend that we're doing something here to determine whether or not we are in production mode. This setting could be hardcoded like we're doing, or it could be set using some technique like using WebPack and an `.env` file, for instance.

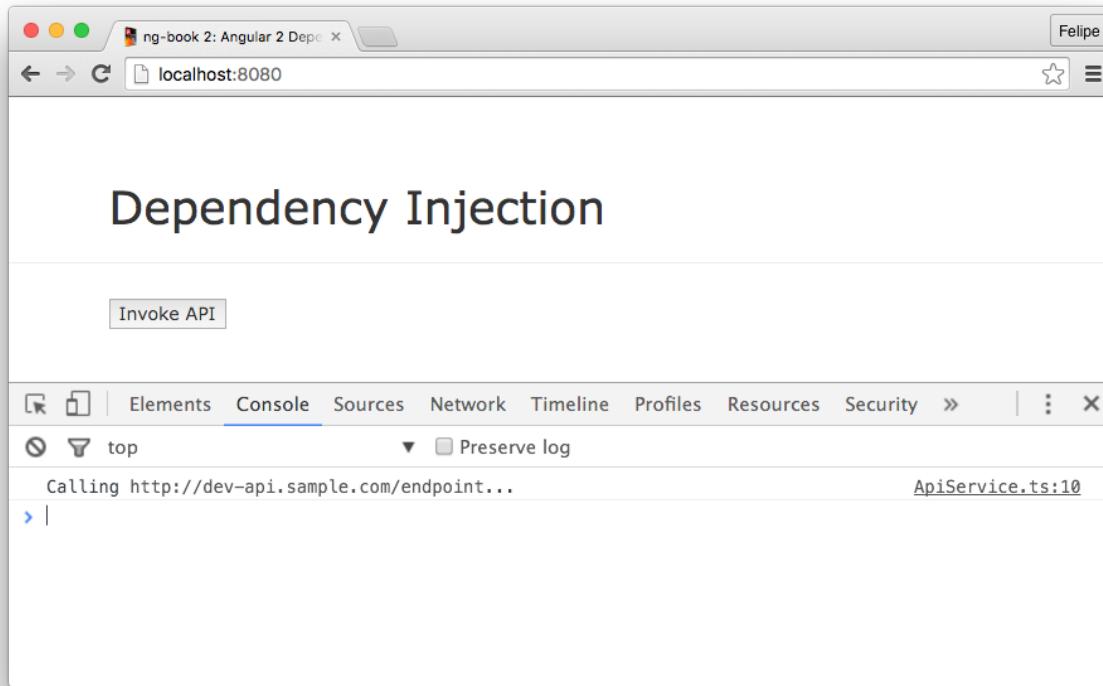
Finally we bootstrap the application and setup 2 providers: one for `ApiService` using the real class implementation and the other for `API_URL`. If we are in production we're using one value and if not, we're using another value.

To test this we can run the application with `isProduction = true` and when we click the button we'll see the production URL being logged:



Production environment

And if we change it to `isProduction = false`, we see the dev URL instead:



Dev environment

NgModule

NgModule is a way to organize your dependencies for 1. the *compiler* and 2. dependency injection. Here we'll explain why we need NgModules and how to work with them.

The context here is to think about the two roles of the compiler and dependency injection in Angular. Briefly, Angular needs to know **what components define valid tags** and **where dependencies are coming from**.

NgModule vs. JavaScript Modules

You might be asking, why do we need a new module system at all? Why can't we just use ES6/TypeScript modules?

The reason is, whereas using `import` will load code modules into JavaScript, the NgModule system is a way of organizing dependencies *within* the Angular framework. Specifically around **what tags are compiled** and **what dependencies should be injected**.

The Compiler and Components

For the compiler, when you have an Angular template that has custom tags you have to tell the compiler what tags are valid (and what functionality should be attached to them).

E.g. if we have this component:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'hello-world',
3   template: `<div>Hello world</div>`
4 })
5 class HelloWorld {
6 }
```

We want the compiler to know that the following HTML should use our `hello-world` component (and that `hello-world` isn't some random invalid tag):

```
1 <div>
2   <hello-world></hello-world>
3 </div>
```

In Angular 1, the `hello-world` selector would have been registered *globally* which is convenient until your app grows and you start having naming conflicts. For instance, it's not hard to imagine two open-source projects that might use the same selector.

If you've been using Angular 2 since the earlier versions, you may remember that previous versions required that you specify a `directives` option in your `@Component` annotation. This was good in that it was less "magic" and removed the surface area for conflicts. The problem was it's a bit onerous to specify all directives necessary for all components.

Instead, using `NgModules` we can tell Angular what components are dependencies at a "module" level. More on this in a second.

Dependency Injection and Providers

Recall that Dependency Injection (DI) is an organized way to make dependencies available across our app. It's an improvement over simply importing code because we have a standardized way to share singletons, create factories, and override dependencies at testing time.

In earlier versions of Angular 2 we had to specify all things-that-would-be-injected (with *providers*) as an argument to the `bootstrap` function.

Reminder on terminology: a *provider* provides (creates, instantiates, etc.) the *injectable* (the thing you want). In Angular when you want to access an *injectable* you *inject* a dependency into a function and Angular's dependency injection framework will locate it and provide it to you.

Now with NgModule each provider is specified as part of a module.

So now that we understand why we need NgModules how do we actually use it? Here's the simplest case:

```
1 // app.ts
2
3 @NgModule({
4   imports: [ BrowserModule ],
5   declarations: [ HelloWorld ],
6   bootstrap: [ HelloWorld ]
7 })
8 class HelloWorld AppModule {}
9
10 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(HelloWorldAppModule);
```

In this case we're defining a class `HelloWorldAppModule` - this is going to be the entry point of our application. Starting with RC5, instead of bootstrapping our app with a *component*, we bootstrap a module with `bootstrapModule`, as you see here.

NgModules can import other modules as dependencies. We're going to be running this app in our browser and so we import `BrowserModule`.

We want to use the `HelloWorld` component in this app. Here's a key thing to keep in mind: **Every component must be declared in *some* NgModule**. Here we put `HelloWorld` into the declarations of this NgModule.

We say the `HelloWorld` component *belongs to* the `HelloWorldAppModule` - every component can belong to **only one** NgModule.

You'll often group multiple components together into one NgModule, much like you might use a namespace in a language like Java.

If you want to bootstrap this module (that is, use this module as the entry point for an application), then you provide a `bootstrap` key which specifies the component that will be used as the entry-point component for this module.

So in this case we're going to bootstrap the `HelloWorld` component as the root component. However, the `bootstrap` key is optional if you're creating a module that doesn't need to be the entry-point of an application.

Component Visibility

In order to use any component, the current NgModule has to know about it. For instance, say we wanted to use a user-greeting component in our `hello-world` component like this:

```
1  <!-- hello-world template -->
2  <div>
3    <user-greeting></user-greeting>
4    world
5  </div>
```

For any component to use another component it must be accessible via the `NgModule` system. There are two ways to make this happen:

1. Either the `user-greeting` component is **part of the same `NgModule`** (e.g. `HelloWorldAppModule`) or
2. The `HelloWorldAppModule` imports the module that the `UserGreeting` component is in.

Let's say we want to go the second route. Here's the implementation of our `UserGreeting` component along with the `UserGreetingModule`:

```
1  @Component({
2    selector: 'user-greeting',
3    template: `<span>hello</span>`
4  })
5  class UserGreeting {
6  }
7
8  @NgModule({
9    declarations: [ UserGreeting ],
10   exports: [ UserGreeting ]
11 })
12 export class UserGreetingModule {}
```

Notice here that we added a new key: `exports`. Think of `exports` as the list of *public* components for this `NgModule`. The implication here is that you can easily have *private* components by simply not listing them in `exports`.

If you forget to put your component in both `declarations` and `exports` (and then try to use it in another module via `imports`) it **won't work**. In order to use a component in another module via `imports` you must put your component in both places.

Now we can use this in our `HelloWorld` component by importing it into the `HelloWorldAppModule` like so:

```
1 // updated HelloWorld AppModule
2
3 @NgModule({
4   declarations: [ HelloWorld ],
5   imports: [ BrowserModule, UserGreetingModule ], // <-- added
6   bootstrap: [ HelloWorld ],
7 })
8 class AppModule {}
```

Specifying Providers

Specifying providers of injectable things is done by adding them to the providers key of a NgModule.

For instance, say we have this simple service:

```
1 export class ApiService {
2   get(): void {
3     console.log('Getting resource...');
4   }
5 }
```

and we want to be able to inject it on a component like this:

```
1 class ApiDataComponent {
2   constructor(private apiService: ApiService) {
3   }
4
5   getData(): void {
6     this.apiService.get();
7   }
8 }
```

To do this with NgModule is easy: we pass ApiService to the providers key of the module:

```
1 @NgModule({
2   declarations: [ ApiDataComponent ],
3   providers: [ ApiService ] // <-- here
4 })
5 class ApiAppModule {}
```

Passing the constant ApiService here is the shorthand version of using provide like this:

```
1 @NgModule({
2   declarations: [ ApiDataComponent ],
3   providers: [
4     provide(ApiService, { useClass: ApiService })
5   ]
6 })
7 class Api AppModule {}
```

We're telling Angular that when the `ApiService` is to be injected, create and maintain a singleton instance of that class and pass it in the injection.

In order to *use* those providers from another module, you guessed it, you have to `import` that module.

Because the `ApiDataComponent` and `ApiService` are in the same `NgModule` the `ApiDataComponent` is able to inject the `ApiService`. If they were in different modules, then you would need to import the module containing `ApiService` into the `Api AppModule`.

Conclusion

As we can see, Dependency Injection and `NgModule` coordinate to provide a powerful way to manage dependencies within our app. Here are a few more resources where you can learn more about it:

- Official Angular DI Docs⁶⁵
- Victor Savkin Comparse DI in Angular 1 vs. Angular 2⁶⁶

⁶⁵<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/dependency-injection.html>

⁶⁶<http://victorsavkin.com/post/126514197956/dependency-injection-in-angular-1-and-angular-2>

Data Architecture in Angular 2

An Overview of Data Architecture

Managing data can be one of the trickiest aspects of writing a maintainable app. There are tons of ways to get data into your application:

- AJAX HTTP Requests
- Websockets
- Indexdb
- LocalStorage
- Service Workers
- etc.

The problem of data architecture addresses questions like:

- How can we aggregate all of these different sources into a coherent system?
- How can we avoid bugs caused by unintended side-effects?
- How can we structure the code sensibly so that it's easier to maintain and on-board new team members?
- How can we make the app run as fast as possible when data changes?

For many years MVC was a standard pattern for architecting data in applications: the Models contained the domain logic, the View displayed the data, and the Controller tied it all together. The problem is, we've learned that MVC doesn't translate directly into client-side web applications very well.

There has been a renaissance in the area of data architectures and many new ideas are being explored. For instance:

- **MVW / Two-way data binding:** *Model-View-Whatever* is a term used⁶⁷ to describe Angular 1's default architecture. The \$scope provides a two-way data-binding - the whole application shares the same data structures and a change in one area propagates to the rest of the app.
- **Flux**⁶⁸: uses a unidirectional data flow. In Flux, Stores hold data, Views render what's in the Store, and Actions change the data in the Store. There is a bit more ceremony to setup Flux, but the idea is that because data only flows in one direction, it's easier to reason about.
- **Observables:** Observables give us streams of data. We subscribe to the streams and then perform operations to react to changes. RxJs⁶⁹ is the most popular reactive streams library for

⁶⁷See: [Model View Whatever](#)

⁶⁸<https://facebook.github.io/flux/>

⁶⁹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS>

Javascript and it gives us powerful operators for composing operations on streams of data.



There are a lot of variations on these ideas. For instance:

- Flux is a pattern, and not an implementation. There are **many** different implementations of Flux (just like there are many implementations of MVC)
- Immutability is a common variant on all of the above data architectures.
- **Falcor⁷⁰** is a powerful framework that helps bind your client-side models to the server-side data. Falcor often used with an Observables-type data architecture.

Data Architecture in Angular 2

Angular 2 is extremely flexible in what it allows for data architecture. A data strategy that works for one project doesn't necessarily work for another. So Angular doesn't prescribe a particular stack, but instead tries to make it easy to use whatever architecture we choose (while still retaining fast performance).

The benefit of this is that you have flexibility to fit Angular into almost any situation. The downside is that you have to make your own decisions about what's right for your project.

Don't worry, we're not going to leave you to make this decision on your own! In the chapters that follow, we're going to cover how to build applications using some of these patterns.

⁷⁰<http://netflix.github.io/falcor/>

Data Architecture with Observables - Part 1: Services

Observables and RxJS

In Angular, we can structure our application to use Observables as the backbone of our data architecture. Using Observables to structure our data is called *Reactive Programming*.

But what are Observables, and Reactive Programming anyway? Reactive Programming is a way to work with asynchronous streams of data. Observables are the main data structure we use to implement Reactive Programming. But I'll admit, those terms may not be that clarifying. So we'll look at concrete examples through the rest of this chapter that should be more enlightening.

Note: Some RxJS Knowledge Required

I want to point out **this book is not primarily about Reactive Programming**. There are several other good resources that can teach you the basics of Reactive Programming and you should read them. We've listed a few below.

Consider this chapter a tutorial on how to work with RxJS and Angular rather than an exhaustive introduction to RxJS and Reactive Programming.

In this chapter, I'll explain in detail the RxJS concepts and APIs that we encounter. But know that you may need to supplement the content here with other resources if RxJS is still new to you.



Use of Underscore.js in this chapter

Underscore.js⁷¹ is a popular library that provides functional operators on Javascript data structures such as Array and Object. We use it a bunch in this chapter alongside RxJS. If you see the `_` in code, such as `_.map` or `_.sortBy` know that we're using the Underscore.js library. You can find [the docs for Underscore.js here⁷²](#).

Learning Reactive Programming and RxJS

If you're just learning RxJS I recommend that you read this article first:

⁷¹<http://underscorejs.org/>

⁷²<http://underscorejs.org/>

- The introduction to Reactive Programming you've been missing⁷³ by Andre Staltz

After you've become a bit more familiar with the concepts behind RxJS, here are a few more links that can help you along the way:

- Which static operators to use to create streams?⁷⁴
- Which instance operators to use on streams?⁷⁵
- RxMarbles⁷⁶ - Interactive diagrams of the various operations on streams

Throughout this chapter I'll provide links to the API documentation of RxJS. The RxJS docs have tons of great example code that shed light on how the different streams and operators work.



Do I have to use RxJS to use Angular 2? - No, you definitely don't. Observables are just one pattern out of many that you can use with Angular 2. We talk more about [other data patterns you can use here](#).

I want to give you fair warning: learning RxJS can be a bit mind-bending at first. But trust me, you'll get the hang of it and it's worth it. Here's a few big ideas about streams that you might find helpful:

1. **Promises emit a single value whereas streams emit many values.** - Streams fulfill the same role in your application as promises. If you've made the jump from callbacks to promises, you know that promises are a big improvement in readability and data maintenance vs. callbacks. In the same way, streams improve upon the promise pattern in that we can continuously respond to data changes on a stream (vs. a one-time resolve from a promise)
2. **Imperative code “pulls” data whereas reactive streams “push” data** - In Reactive Programming our code subscribes to be notified of changes and the streams “push” data to these subscribers
3. **RxJS is *functional*** - If you're a fan of functional operators like `map`, `reduce`, and `filter` then you'll feel right at home with RxJS because streams are, in some sense, lists and so the powerful functional operators all apply
4. **Streams are composable** - Think of streams like a pipeline of operations over your data. You can subscribe to any part of your stream and even combine them to create new streams

⁷³<https://gist.github.com/staltz/868e7e9bc2a7b8c1f754>

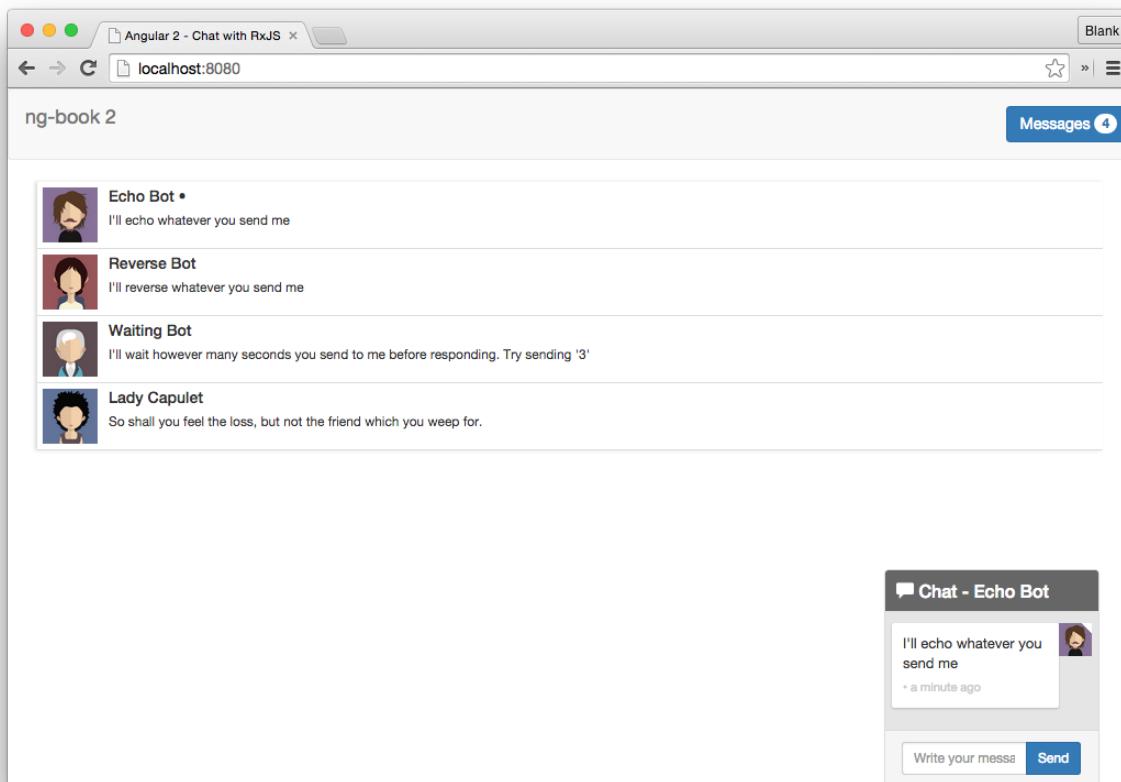
⁷⁴<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/gettingstarted/which-static.md>

⁷⁵<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/gettingstarted/which-instance.md>

⁷⁶<http://staltz.com/rxmarbles>

Chat App Overview

In this chapter, we're going to use RxJS to build a chat app. Here's a screenshot:



Completed Chat Application



Usually we try to show every line of code here in the book text. However, this chat application has a lot of moving parts, so in this chapter we're not going to have every single line of code in the text. You can find the sample code for this chapter in the folder `code/rxjs/chat`. We'll call out each filter where you can view the context, where appropriate.

In this application we've provided a few bots you can chat with. Open up the code and try it out:

```
1 cd code/rxjs/chat  
2 npm install  
3 npm run go
```

Now open your browser to `http://localhost:8080`.



If the above URL doesn't work, try this URL: `http://localhost:8080/webpack-dev-server/index.html`



Some Windows users may have trouble doing an `npm install` on this repo. If this causes problems for you, make sure you're running these commands inside [Cygwin](#)⁷⁷.

Notice a few things about this application:

- You can click on the threads to chat with another person
- The bots will send you messages back, depending on their personality
- The unread message count in the top corner stays in sync with the number of unread messages

Let's look at an overview of how this app is constructed. We have

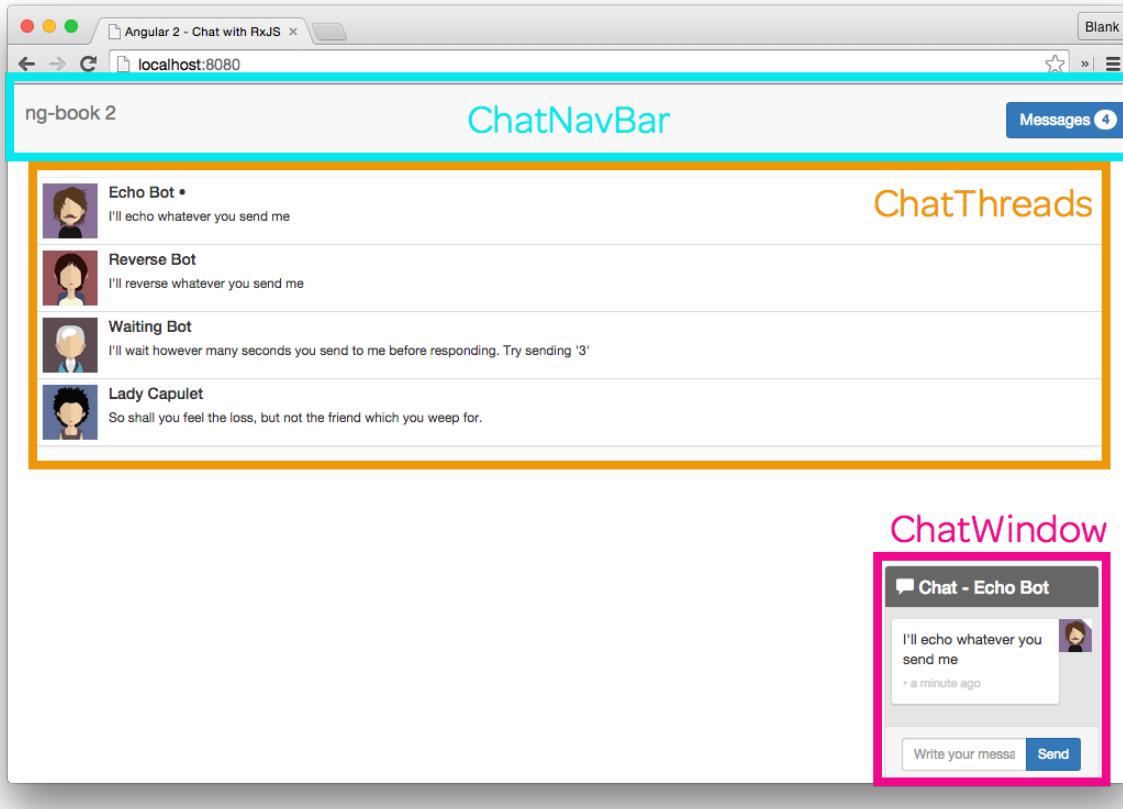
- 3 top-level Angular Components
- 3 models
- and 3 services

Let's look at them one at a time.

Components

The page is broken down into three top-level components:

⁷⁷<https://www.cygwin.com/>

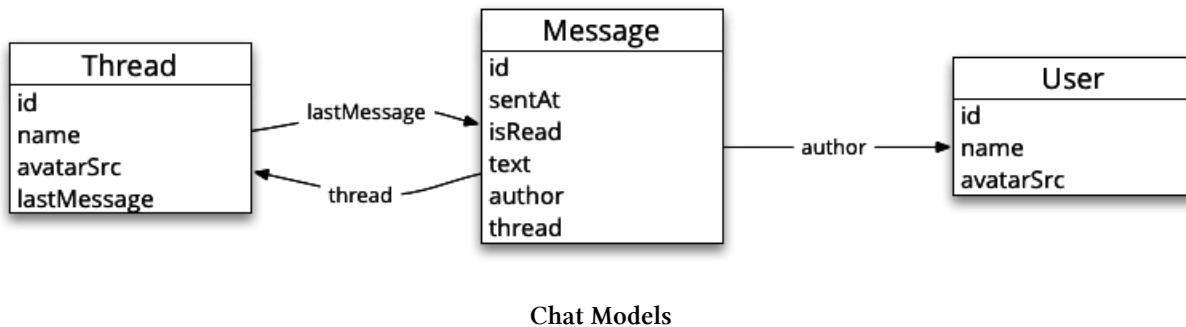


Chat Top-Level Components

- ChatNavBar - contains the unread messages count
- ChatThreads - shows a clickable list of threads, along with the most recent message and the conversation avatar
- ChatWindow - shows the messages in the current thread with an input box to send new messages

Models

This application also has three models:



- User - stores information about a chat participant
- Message - stores an individual message
- Thread - stores a collection of Messages as well as some data about the conversation

Services

In this app, each of our models has a corresponding *service*. The services are singleton objects that play two roles:

1. **Provide streams** of data that our application can subscribe to
2. **Provide operations** to add or modify data

For instance, the `UserService`:

- publishes a stream that emits the current user and
- offers a `setCurrentUser` function which will set the current user (that is, emit the current user from the `currentUser` stream)

Summary

At a high level, the application data architecture is straightforward:

- The **services** maintain streams which emit models (e.g. `Messages`)
- The **components** subscribe to those streams and render according to the most recent values

For instance, the `ChatThreads` component listens for the most recent list of threads from the `ThreadService` and the `ChatWindow` subscribes for the most recent list of messages.

In the rest of this chapter, we're going to go in-depth on how we implement this using Angular 2 and RxJS. We'll start by implementing our models, then look at how we create Services to manage our streams, and then finally implement the Components.

Implementing the Models

Let's start with the easy stuff and take a look at the models.

User

Our User class is straightforward. We have an id, name, and avatarSrc.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/models.ts

```
3  export class User {
4      id: string;
5
6      constructor(public name: string,
7                  public avatarSrc: string) {
8          this.id = uuid();
9      }
10 }
```



Notice above that we're using a TypeScript shorthand in the constructor. When we say `public name: string` we're telling TypeScript that 1. we want `name` to be a public property on this class and 2. assign the argument value to that property when a new instance is created.

Thread

Similarly, Thread is also a straightforward TypeScript class:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/models.ts

```
12 export class Thread {
13     id: string;
14     lastMessage: Message;
15     name: string;
16     avatarSrc: string;
17
18     constructor(id?: string,
19                 name?: string,
20                 avatarSrc?: string) {
21         this.id = id || uuid();
22         this.name = name;
```

```
23     this.avatarSrc = avatarSrc;
24 }
25 }
```

Note that we store a reference to the `lastMessage` in our `Thread`. This lets us show a preview of the most recent message in the threads list.

Message

`Message` is also a simple TypeScript class, however in this case we use a slightly different form of constructor:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/models.ts

```
14     lastMessage: Message;
```

The pattern you see here in the constructor allows us to simulate using keyword arguments in the constructor. Using this pattern, we can create a new `Message` using whatever data we have available and we don't have to worry about the order of the arguments. For instance we could do this:

```
1 let msg1 = new Message();
2
3 # or this
4
5 let msg2 = new Message({
6   text: "Hello Nate Murray!"
7 })
```

Now that we've looked at our models, let's take a look at our first service: the `UserService`.

Implementing UserService

The point of the `UserService` is to provide a place where our application can learn about the current user and also notify the rest of the application if the current user changes.

The first thing we need to do is create a TypeScript class and make it *injectable* by using the `@Injectable` annotation.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/UserService.ts

```

10 export class UserService {
11   // `currentUser` contains the current user
12   currentUser: Subject<User> = new BehaviorSubject<User>(null);
13
14   public setCurrentUser(newUser: User): void {
15     this.currentUser.next(newUser);
16   }
17 }
```



When we make something *injectable* that means we will be able to use it as a dependency to other components in our application. Briefly, two benefits of dependency-injection are:

1. we let Angular handle the lifecycle of the object and
2. it's easier to test injected components.

We talk more about `@Injectable` in the [chapter on dependency injection](#), but the result is that now we can inject it as a dependency to our components like so:

```

1  class MyComponent {
2    constructor(public userService: UserService) {
3      // do something with `userService` here
4    }
5  }
```

currentUser stream

Next we setup a stream which we will use to manage our current user:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/UserService.ts

```

12   currentUser: Subject<User> = new BehaviorSubject<User>(null);
```

There's a lot going on here, so let's break it down:

- We're defining an instance variable `currentUser` which is a `Subject` stream.
- Concretely, `currentUser` is a `BehaviorSubject` which will contain `User`.

- However, the first value of this stream is `null` (the constructor argument).

If you haven't worked with RxJS much, then you may not know what `Subject` or `BehaviorSubject` are. You can think of a `Subject` as a "read/write" stream.



Technically a `Subject`⁷⁸ inherits from both `Observable`⁷⁹ and `Observer`⁸⁰

One consequence of streams is that, because messages are published immediately, a new subscriber risks missing the latest value of the stream. `BehaviourSubject` compensates for this.

`BehaviourSubject`⁸¹ has a special property in that it **stores the last value**. Meaning that any subscriber to the stream will receive the latest value. This is great for us because it means that any part of our application can subscribe to the `UserService.currentUser` stream and immediately know who the current user is.

Setting a new user

We need a way to publish a new user to the stream whenever the current user changes (e.g. logging in).

There's two ways we can expose an API for doing this:

1. Add new users to the stream directly:

The most straightforward way to update the current user is to have clients of the `UserService` simply publish a new `User` directly to the stream like this:

```

1 userService.subscribe((newUser) => {
2   console.log('New User is: ', newUser.name);
3 }
4
5 // => New User is: originalUserName
6
7 let u = new User('Nate', 'anImgSrc');
8 userService.currentUser.next(u);
9
10 // => New User is: Nate

```

⁷⁸<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/subjects/subject.md>

⁷⁹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/observable.md>

⁸⁰<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/observer.md>

⁸¹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/subjects/behaviorsubject.md>



Note here that we use the `next` method on a `Subject` to push a new value to the stream

The pro here is that we're able to reuse the existing API from the stream, so we're not introducing any new code or APIs

2. Create a `setCurrentUser(newUser: User)` method

The other way we could update the current user is to create a helper method on the `UserService` like this:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/UserService.ts

```
14  public setCurrentUser(newUser: User): void {
15    this.currentUser.next(newUser);
16  }
```

You'll notice that we're still using the `next` method on the `currentUser` stream, so why bother doing this?

Because there is value in decoupling the implementation of the `currentUser` from the implementation of the stream. By wrapping the `next` in the `setCurrentUser` call we give ourselves room to change the implementation of the `UserService` without breaking our clients.

In this case, I wouldn't recommend one method very strongly over the other, but it can make a big difference on the maintainability of larger projects.



A third option could be to have the updates expose streams of their own (that is, a stream where we place the action of changing the current user). We explore this pattern in the `MessagesService` below.

UserService.ts

Putting it together, our `UserService` looks like this:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/UserService.ts

```
1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2 import { Subject, BehaviorSubject } from 'rxjs';
3 import { User } from '../models';
4
5
6 /**
7  * UserService manages our current user
8 */
9 @Injectable()
10 export class UserService {
11   // `currentUser` contains the current user
12   currentUser: Subject<User> = new BehaviorSubject<User>(null);
13
14   public setCurrentUser(newUser: User): void {
15     this.currentUser.next(newUser);
16   }
17 }
18
19 export var userServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
20   UserService
21 ];
```

The MessagesService

The MessagesService is the backbone of this application. In our app, all messages flow through the MessagesService.

Our MessagesService has much more sophisticated streams compared to our UserService. There are five streams that make up our MessagesService: 3 “data management” streams and 2 “action” streams.

The three data management streams are:

- newMessages - emits each new Message only once
- messages - emits an array of the current Messages
- updates - performs operations on messages

the newMessages stream

newMessages is a Subject that will publish each new Message only once.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

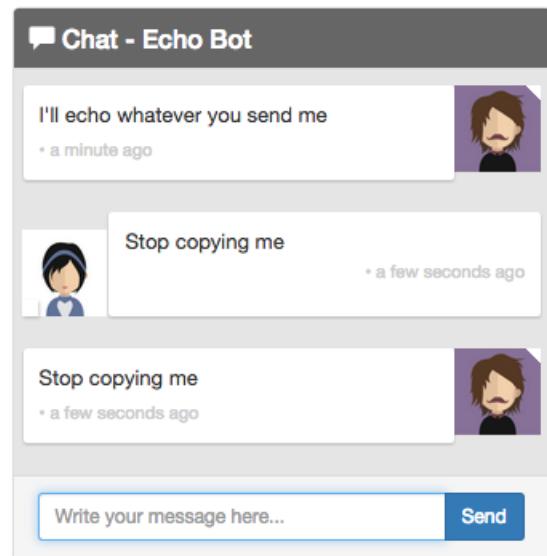
```
12 export class MessagesService {
13   // a stream that publishes new messages only once
14   newMessages: Subject<Message> = new Subject<Message>();
```

If we want, we can define a helper method to add Messages to this stream:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
88   addMessage(message: Message): void {
89     this.newMessages.next(message);
90 }
```

It would also be helpful to have a stream that will get all of the messages from a thread that are not from a particular user. For instance, consider the Echo Bot:



Real mature, Echo Bot

When we are implementing the Echo Bot, we don't want to enter an infinite loop and repeat back the bot's messages to itself.

To implement this we can subscribe to the newMessages stream and filter out all messages that are

1. part of this thread and
2. not written by the bot.

You can think of this as saying, for a given Thread I want a stream of the messages that are “for” this User.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```

92  messagesForThreadUser(thread: Thread, user: User): Observable<Message> {
93    return this.newMessages
94      .filter((message: Message) => {
95        // belongs to this thread
96        return (message.thread.id === thread.id) &&
97          // and isn't authored by this user
98          (message.author.id !== user.id);
99      });
100 }

```

`messagesForThreadUser` takes a `Thread` and a `User` and returns a new stream of `Messages` that are filtered on that `Thread` and not authored by the `User`. That is, it is a stream of “everyone else’s” messages in this `Thread`.

the messages stream

Whereas `newMessages` emits individual `Messages`, the `messages` stream emits an **Array of the most recent Messages**.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
17  messages: Observable<Message[]>;
```



The type `Message[]` is the same as `Array<Message>`. Another way of writing the same thing would be: `Observable<Array<Message>>`. When we define the type of `messages` to be `Observable<Message[]>` we mean that this stream emits an **Array** (of `Messages`), not individual `Messages`.

So how does `messages` get populated? For that we need to talk about the `updates` stream and a new pattern: the Operation stream.

The Operation Stream Pattern

Here's the idea:

- We'll maintain state in `messages` which will hold an **Array of the most current Messages**
- We use an `updates` stream which is a **stream of functions** to apply to `messages`

You can think of it this way: any function that is put on the `updates` stream will change the list of the current messages. A function that is put on the `updates` stream should accept a **list of Messages** and then **return a list of Messages**. Let's formalize this idea by creating an interface in code:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
7 interface IMessagesOperation extends Function {
8   (messages: Message[]): Message[];
9 }
```

Let's define our updates stream:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
19 // `updates` receives _operations_ to be applied to our `messages`
20 // it's a way we can perform changes on *all* messages (that are currently
21 // stored in `messages`)
22 updates: Subject<any> = new Subject<any>();
```

Remember, updates receives *operations* that will be applied to our list of messages. But how do we make that connection? We do (in the constructor of our MessagesService) like this:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
28 constructor() {
29   this.messages = this.updates
30   // watch the updates and accumulate operations on the messages
31   .scan((messages: Message[],
32         operation: IMessagesOperation) => {
33     return operation(messages);
34   },
35   initialMessages)
36   // make sure we can share the most recent list of messages across anyone
```

This code introduces a new stream function: `scan`⁸². If you're familiar with functional programming, `scan` is a lot like `reduce`: it runs the function for each element in the incoming stream and **accumulates a value**. What's special about `scan` is that it will **emit a value for each intermediate result**. That is, it doesn't wait for the stream to complete before emitting a result, which is exactly what we want.

When we call `this.updates.scan`, we are creating a new stream that is subscribed to the `updates` stream. On each pass, we're given:

1. the messages we're accumulating and
2. the new operation to apply.

and then we return the new `Message[]`.

⁸²<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/scan.md>

Sharing the Stream

One thing to know about streams is that they aren't shareable by default. That is, if one subscriber reads a value from a stream, it can be gone forever. In the case of our messages, we want to 1. share the same stream among many subscribers and 2. replay the last value for any subscribers who come "late".

To do that, we use two operators: `publishReplay` and `refCount`.

- `publishReplay` let's us share a subscription between multiple subscribers and replay n number of values to future subscribers. (see [publish⁸³](#) and [replay⁸⁴](#))
- `refCount85` - makes it easier to use the return value of `publish`, by managing when the observable will emit values



Wait, so what does `refCount` do?

`refCount` can be a little tricky to understand because it relates to how one manages "hot" and "cold" observables. We're not going to dive deep into explaining how this works and we direct the reader to:

- RxJS docs on `refCount86`
- Introduction to Rx: Hot and Cold observables⁸⁷
- RefCount Marble Diagram⁸⁸

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```

30   // watch the updates and accumulate operations on the messages
31   .scan((messages: Message[],
32         operation: IMessagesOperation) => {
33     return operation(messages);
34   },
35   initialMessages)
36   // make sure we can share the most recent list of messages across anyone
37   // who's interested in subscribing and cache the last known list of
38   // messages
39   .publishReplay(1)
40   .refCount();

```

⁸³<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/publish.md>

⁸⁴<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/replay.md>

⁸⁵<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/refcount.md>

⁸⁶<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/refcount.md>

⁸⁷http://www.introtorx.com/Content/v1.0.10621.0/14_HotAndColdObservables.html#RefCount

⁸⁸<http://reactivex.io/documentation/operators/refcount.html>

Adding Messages to the messages Stream

Now we could add a Message to the messages stream like so:

```

1 var myMessage = new Message(/* params here... */);
2
3 updates.next( (messages: Message[]): Message[] => {
4   return messages.concat(myMessage);
5 })

```

Above, we're adding an operation to the updates stream. messages is subscribe to that stream and so it will apply that operation which will concat our newMessage on to the accumulated list of messages.



It's okay if this takes a few minutes to mull over. It can feel a little foreign if you're not used to this style of programming.

One problem with the above approach is that it's a bit verbose to use. It would be nice to not have to write that inner function every time. We could do something like this:

```

1 addMessage(newMessage: Message) {
2   updates.next( (messages: Message[]): Message[] => {
3     return messages.concat(newMessage);
4   })
5 }
6
7 // somewhere else
8
9 var myMessage = new Message(/* params here... */);
10 MessagesService.addMessage(myMessage);

```

This is a little bit better, but it's not "the reactive way". In part, because this action of creating a message isn't composable with other streams. (Also this method is circumventing our newMessages stream. More on that later.)

A reactive way of creating a new message would be **to have a stream that accepts Messages to add to the list**. Again, this can be a bit new if you're not used to thinking this way. Here's how you'd implement it:

First we make an "action stream" called `create`. (The term "action stream" is only meant to describe its role in our service. The stream itself is still a regular Subject):

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
24 // action streams
25 create: Subject<Message> = new Subject<Message>();
```

Next, in our constructor we configure the `create` stream:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
56 this.create
57   .map( function(message: Message): IMessagesOperation {
58     return (messages: Message[]) => {
59       return messages.concat(message);
60     };
61   })
```

The `map`⁸⁹ operator is a lot like the built-in `Array.map` function in Javascript except that it works on streams. That is, it runs the function once for each item in the stream and emits the return value of the function.

In this case, we're saying “for each `Message` we receive as input, return an `IMessagesOperation` that adds this message to the list”. Put another way, this stream will emit a **function** which accepts the list of `Messages` and adds this `Message` to our list of messages.

Now that we have the `create` stream, we still have one thing left to do: we need to actually hook it up to the `updates` stream. We do that by using `subscribe`⁹⁰.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

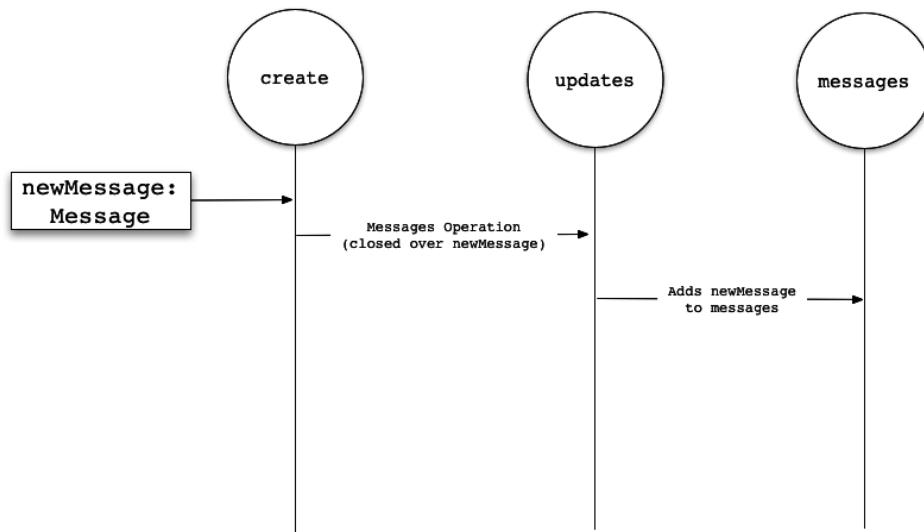
```
56 this.create
57   .map( function(message: Message): IMessagesOperation {
58     return (messages: Message[]) => {
59       return messages.concat(message);
60     };
61   })
62   .subscribe(this.updates);
```

What we're doing here is *subscribing* the `updates` stream to listen to the `create` stream. This means that if `create` receives a `Message` it will emit an `IMessagesOperation` that will be received by `updates` and then the `Message` will be added to `messages`.

Here's a diagram that shows our current situation:

⁸⁹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/select.md>

⁹⁰<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/subscribe.md>



Creating a new message, starting with the `create` stream

This is great because it means we get a few things:

1. The current list of messages from `messages`
2. A way to process operations on the current list of messages (via `updates`)
3. An easy-to-use stream to put `create` operations on our `updates` stream (via `create`)

Anywhere in our code, if we want to get the most current list of messages, we just have to go to the `messages` stream. But we have a problem, **we still haven't connected this flow to the `newMessages` stream.

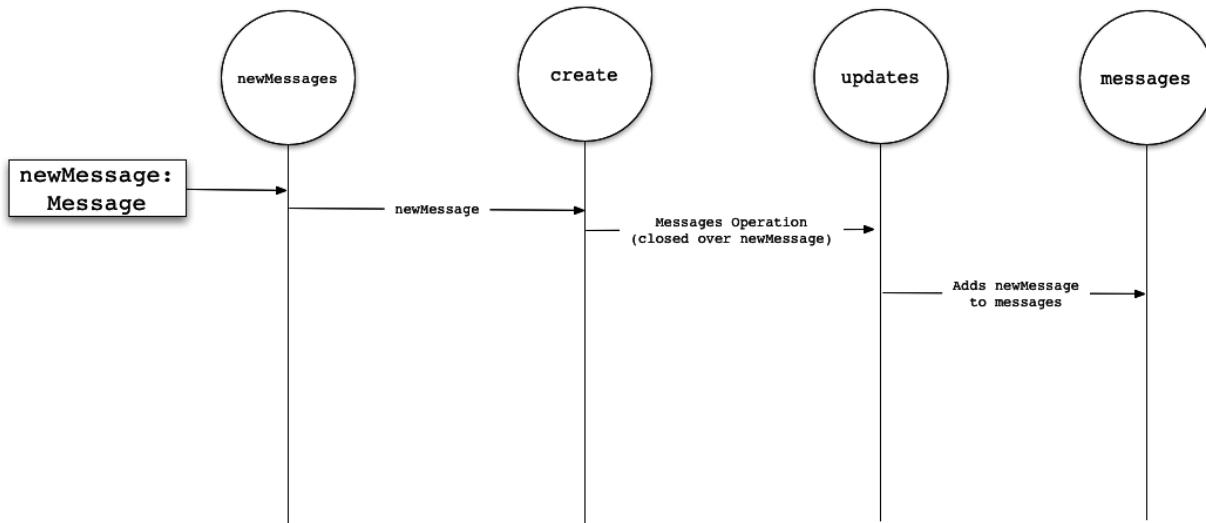
It would be great if we had a way to easily connect this stream with any `Message` that comes from `newMessages`. It turns out, it's really easy:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts`

```

64   this.newMessages
65     .subscribe(this.create);
  
```

Now our diagram looks like this:



Creating a new message, starting with the `newMessages` stream

Now our flow is complete! It's the best of both worlds: we're able to subscribe to the stream of individual messages through `newMessages`, but if we just want the most up-to-date list, we can subscribe to `messages`.



It's worth pointing out some implications of this design: if you subscribe to `newMessages` directly, you have to be careful about changes that may happen downstream. Here are three things to consider:

First, you obviously won't get any downstream updates that are applied to the `Messages`.

Second, in this case, we have **mutable** `Message` objects. So if you subscribe to `newMessages` and store a reference to a `Message`, that `Message`'s attributes may change.

Third, in the case where you want to take advantage of the mutability of our `Messages` you may not be able to. Consider the case where we could put an operation on the `updates` queue that makes a copy of each `Message` and then mutates the copy. (This is probably a better design than what we're doing here.) In this case, you couldn't rely on any `Message` emitted directly from `newMessages` being in its "final" state.

That said, as long as you keep these considerations in mind, you shouldn't have too much trouble.

Our completed `MessagesService`

Here's what the completed `MessagesService` looks like:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/MessagesService.ts

```
1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2 import { Subject, Observable } from 'rxjs';
3 import { User, Thread, Message } from '../models';
4
5 let initialMessages: Message[] = [];
6
7 interface IMessagesOperation extends Function {
8   (messages: Message[]): Message[];
9 }
10
11 @Injectable()
12 export class MessagesService {
13   // a stream that publishes new messages only once
14   newMessages: Subject<Message> = new Subject<Message>();
15
16   // `messages` is a stream that emits an array of the most up to date messages
17   messages: Observable<Message[]>;
18
19   // `updates` receives _operations_ to be applied to our `messages`
20   // it's a way we can perform changes on *all* messages (that are currently
21   // stored in `messages`)
22   updates: Subject<any> = new Subject<any>();
23
24   // action streams
25   create: Subject<Message> = new Subject<Message>();
26   markThreadAsRead: Subject<any> = new Subject<any>();
27
28   constructor() {
29     this.messages = this.updates
30       // watch the updates and accumulate operations on the messages
31       .scan((messages: Message[],
32             operation: IMessagesOperation) => {
33         return operation(messages);
34       },
35       initialMessages)
36       // make sure we can share the most recent list of messages across anyone
37       // who's interested in subscribing and cache the last known list of
38       // messages
39       .publishReplay(1)
40       .refCount();
41 }
```

```
42  // `create` takes a Message and then puts an operation (the inner function)
43  // on the `updates` stream to add the Message to the list of messages.
44  //
45  // That is, for each item that gets added to `create` (by using `next`)
46  // this stream emits a concat operation function.
47  //
48  // Next we subscribe `this.updates` to listen to this stream, which means
49  // that it will receive each operation that is created
50  //
51  // Note that it would be perfectly acceptable to simply modify the
52  // "addMessage" function below to simply add the inner operation function to
53  // the update stream directly and get rid of this extra action stream
54  // entirely. The pros are that it is potentially clearer. The cons are that
55  // the stream is no longer composable.
56  this.create
57  .map( function(message: Message): IMessagesOperation {
58      return (messages: Message[]) => {
59          return messages.concat(message);
60      };
61  })
62  .subscribe(this.updates);
63
64  this.newMessages
65  .subscribe(this.create);
66
67  // similarly, `markThreadAsRead` takes a Thread and then puts an operation
68  // on the `updates` stream to mark the Messages as read
69  this.markThreadAsRead
70  .map( (thread: Thread) => {
71      return (messages: Message[]) => {
72          return messages.map( (message: Message) => {
73              // note that we're manipulating `message` directly here. Mutability
74              // can be confusing and there are lots of reasons why you might want
75              // to, say, copy the Message object or some other 'immutable' here
76              if (message.thread.id === thread.id) {
77                  message.isRead = true;
78              }
79              return message;
80          });
81      };
82  })
83  .subscribe(this.updates);
```

```
84
85      }
86
87      // an imperative function call to this action stream
88      addMessage(message: Message): void {
89          this.newMessages.next(message);
90      }
91
92      messagesForThreadUser(thread: Thread, user: User): Observable<Message> {
93          return this.newMessages
94              .filter((message: Message) => {
95                  // belongs to this thread
96                  return (message.thread.id === thread.id) &&
97                      // and isn't authored by this user
98                      (message.author.id !== user.id);
99              });
100     }
101 }
102
103 export var messagesServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
104     MessagesService
105 ];
```

Trying out `MessagesService`

If you haven't already, this would be a good time to open up the code and play around with the `MessagesService` to get a feel for how it works. We've got an example you can start with in `test/services/MessagesService.spec.ts`.



To run the tests in this project, open up your terminal then:

```
1 cd /path/to/code/rxjs/chat // --- your path will vary
2 npm install
3 karma start
```

Let's start by creating a few instances of our models to use:

code/rxjs/chat/test/services/MessagesService.spec.ts

```
1 import {MessagesService} from '../../../../../app/ts/services/services';
2 import {Message, User, Thread} from '../../../../../app/ts/models';
3
4 describe('MessagesService', () => {
5   it('should test', () => {
6
7     let user: User = new User('Nate', '');
8     let thread: Thread = new Thread('t1', 'Nate', '');
9     let m1: Message = new Message({
10       author: user,
11       text: 'Hi!',
12       thread: thread
13     });
14
15     let m2: Message = new Message({
16       author: user,
17       text: 'Bye!',
18       thread: thread
19     });

```

Next let's subscribe to a couple of our streams:

code/rxjs/chat/test/services/MessagesService.spec.ts

```
21 let messagesService: MessagesService = new MessagesService();
22
23 // listen to each message individually as it comes in
24 messagesService.newMessages
25   .subscribe( (message: Message) => {
26     console.log('=> newMessages: ' + message.text);
27   });
28
29 // listen to the stream of most current messages
30 messagesService.messages
31   .subscribe( (messages: Message[]) => {
32     console.log('=> messages: ' + messages.length);
33   });
34
35 messagesService.addMessage(m1);
36 messagesService.addMessage(m2);
37
```

```
38    // => messages: 1
39    // => newMessages: Hi!
40    // => messages: 2
41    // => newMessages: Bye!
42  });
43
44
45});
```

Notice that even though we subscribed to `newMessages` first and `newMessages` is called directly by `addMessage`, our `messages` subscription is logged first. The reason for this is because `messages` subscribed to `newMessages` earlier than our subscription in this test (when `MessagesService` was instantiated). (You shouldn't be relying on the ordering of independent streams in your code, but why it works this way is worth thinking about.)

Play around with the `MessagesService` and get a feel for the streams there. We're going to be using them in the next section where we build the `ThreadsService`.

The ThreadsService

On our `ThreadsService` we're going to define four streams that emit respectively:

1. A map of the current set of Threads (in `threads`)
2. A chronological list of Threads, newest-first (in `orderedThreads`)
3. The currently selected Thread (in `currentThread`)
4. The list of Messages for the currently selected Thread (in `currentThreadMessages`)

Let's walk through how to build each of these streams, and we'll learn a little more about RxJS along the way.

A map of the current set of Threads (in threads)

Let's start by defining our `ThreadsService` class and the instance variable that will emit the `Threads`:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2 import { Subject, BehaviorSubject, Observable } from 'rxjs';
3 import { Thread, Message } from '../models';
4 import { MessagesService } from './MessagesService';
5 import * as _ from 'underscore';
6
7 @Injectable()
8 export class ThreadsService {
9
10   // `threads` is a observable that contains the most up to date list of threads
11   threads: Observable<{ [key: string]: Thread }>;

```

Notice that this stream will emit a map (an object) with the id of the Thread being the string key and the Thread itself will be the value.

To create a stream that maintains the current list of threads, we start by attaching to the messagesService.messages stream:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

11   threads: Observable<{ [key: string]: Thread }>;

```

Recall that each time a new Message is added to the stream, messages will emit an array of the current Messages. We're going to look at each Message and we want to return a unique list of the Threads.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

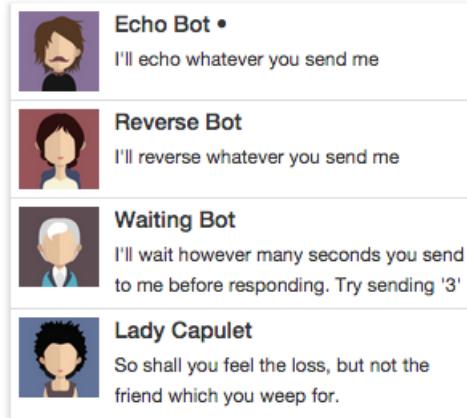
```

26   this.threads = messagesService.messages
27   .map( (messages: Message[]) => {
28     let threads: {[key: string]: Thread} = {};
29     // Store the message's thread in our accumulator `threads`
30     messages.map((message: Message) => {
31       threads[message.thread.id] = threads[message.thread.id] ||
32         message.thread;

```

Notice above that each time we will create a new list of threads. The reason for this is because we might delete some messages down the line (e.g. leave the conversation). Because we're recalculating the list of threads each time, we naturally will “delete” a thread if it has no messages.

In the threads list, we want to show a preview of the chat by using the text of the most recent Message in that Thread.



List of Threads with Chat Preview

In order to do that, we'll store the most recent Message for each Thread. We know which Message is newest by comparing the `sentAt` times:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

33     // Cache the most recent message for each thread
34     let messagesThread: Thread = threads[message.thread.id];
35     if (!messagesThread.lastMessage || 
36         messagesThread.lastMessage.sentAt < message.sentAt) {
37         messagesThread.lastMessage = message;
38     }
39   });
40   return threads;
41 );

```

Putting it all together, `threads` looks like this:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

26   this.threads = messagesService.messages
27   .map( (messages: Message[]) => {
28     let threads: {[key: string]: Thread} = {};
29     // Store the message's thread in our accumulator `threads`
30     messages.map((message: Message) => {
31       threads[message.thread.id] = threads[message.thread.id] ||
32         message.thread;
33
34     // Cache the most recent message for each thread

```

```

35     let messagesThread: Thread = threads[message.thread.id];
36     if (!messagesThread.lastMessage || 
37         messagesThread.lastMessage.sentAt < message.sentAt) {
38         messagesThread.lastMessage = message;
39     }
40   });
41   return threads;
42 });

```

Trying out the ThreadsService

Let's try out our ThreadsService. First we'll create a few models to work with:

code/rxjs/chat/test/services/ThreadsService.spec.ts

```

1 import {MessagesService, ThreadsService} from '../../../../../app/ts/services/services';
2 import {Message, User, Thread} from '../../../../../app/ts/models';
3 import * as _ from 'underscore';
4
5 describe('ThreadsService', () => {
6   it('should collect the Threads from Messages', () => {
7
8     let nate: User = new User('Nate Murray', '');
9     let felipe: User = new User('Felipe Coury', '');
10
11    let t1: Thread = new Thread('t1', 'Thread 1', '');
12    let t2: Thread = new Thread('t2', 'Thread 2', '');
13
14    let m1: Message = new Message({
15      author: nate,
16      text: 'Hi!',
17      thread: t1
18    });
19
20    let m2: Message = new Message({
21      author: felipe,
22      text: 'Where did you get that hat?',
23      thread: t1
24    });
25
26    let m3: Message = new Message({
27      author: nate,
28      text: 'Did you bring the briefcase?',

```

```
29     thread: t2
30 });
```

Now let's create an instance of our services:

code/rxjs/chat/test/services/ThreadsService.spec.ts

```
32 let messagesService: MessagesService = new MessagesService();
33 let threadsService: ThreadsService = new ThreadsService(messagesService);
```



Notice here that we're passing `messagesService` as an argument to the constructor of our `ThreadsService`. Normally we let the Dependency Injection system handle this for us. But in our test, we can provide the dependencies ourselves.

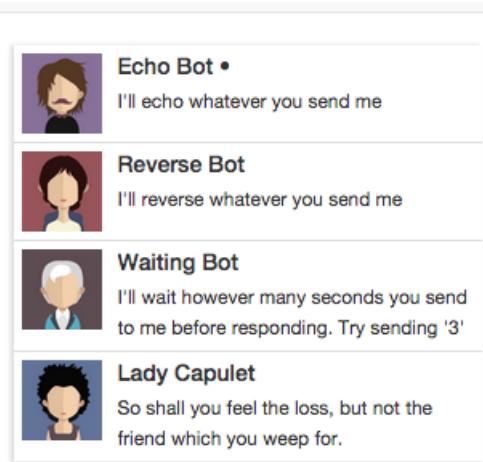
Let's subscribe to `threads` and log out what comes through:

code/rxjs/chat/test/services/ThreadsService.spec.ts

```
33 let threadsService: ThreadsService = new ThreadsService(messagesService);
34
35 threadsService.threads
36   .subscribe( (threadIdx: { [key: string]: Thread }) => {
37     let threads: Thread[] = _.values(threadIdx);
38     let threadNames: string = _.map(threads, (t: Thread) => t.name)
39       .join(', ');
40     console.log(`=> threads (${threads.length}): ${threadNames}`);
41   });
42
43 messagesService.addMessage(m1);
44 messagesService.addMessage(m2);
45 messagesService.addMessage(m3);
46
47 // => threads (1): Thread 1
48 // => threads (1): Thread 1
49 // => threads (2): Thread 1, Thread 2
50
51 });
52});
```

A chronological list of Threads, newest-first (in orderedThreads)

threads gives us a map which acts as an “index” of our list of threads. But we want the threads view to be ordered according the most recent message.



Time Ordered List of Threads

Let's create a new stream that returns an Array of Threads ordered by the most recent Message time:
We'll start by defining orderedThreads as an instance property:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```
13 // `orderedThreads` contains a newest-first chronological list of threads
14 orderedThreads: Observable<Thread[]>;
```

Next, in the constructor we'll define orderedThreads by subscribing to threads and ordered by the most recent message:

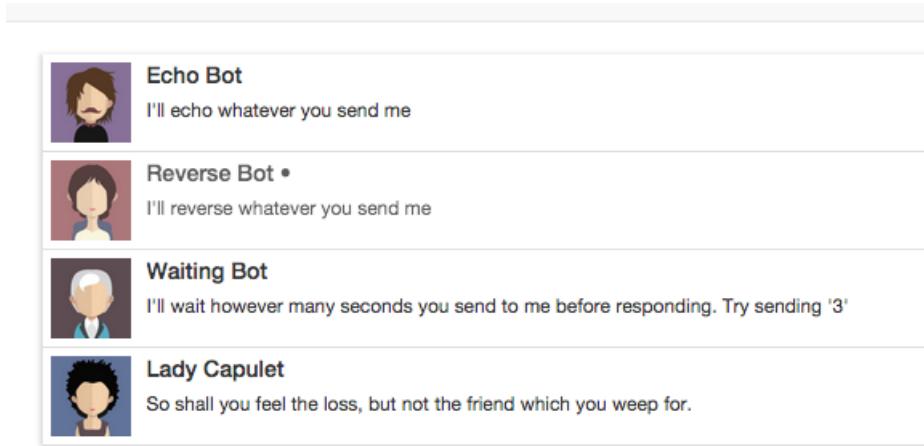
code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```
44 this.orderedThreads = this.threads
45   .map((threadGroups: { [key: string]: Thread }) => {
46     let threads: Thread[] = _.values(threadGroups);
47     return _.sortBy(threads, (t: Thread) => t.lastMessage.sentAt).reverse();
48  });
```

The currently selected Thread (in currentThread)

Our application needs to know which Thread is the currently selected thread. This lets us know:

1. which thread should be shown in the messages window
2. which thread should be marked as the current thread in the list of threads



The current thread is marked by a ‘•’ symbol

Let's create a `BehaviorSubject` that will store the `currentThread`:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

16 // `currentThread` contains the currently selected thread
17 currentThread: Subject<Thread> =
18   new BehaviorSubject<Thread>(new Thread());

```

Notice that we're issuing an empty `Thread` as the default value. We don't need to configure the `currentThread` any further.

Setting the Current Thread

To set the current thread we can have clients either

1. submit new threads via `next` directly or
2. add a helper method to do it.

Let's define a helper method `setCurrentThread` that we can use to set the next thread:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```
69  setCurrentThread(newThread: Thread): void {
70    this.currentThread.next(newThread);
71 }
```

Marking the Current Thread as Read

We want to keep track of the number of unread messages. If we switch to a new Thread then we want to mark all of the Messages in that Thread as read. We have the parts we need to do this:

1. The `messagesService.makeThreadAsRead` accepts a Thread and then will mark all Messages in that Threaad as read
2. Our `currentThread` emits a single Thread that represents the current Thread

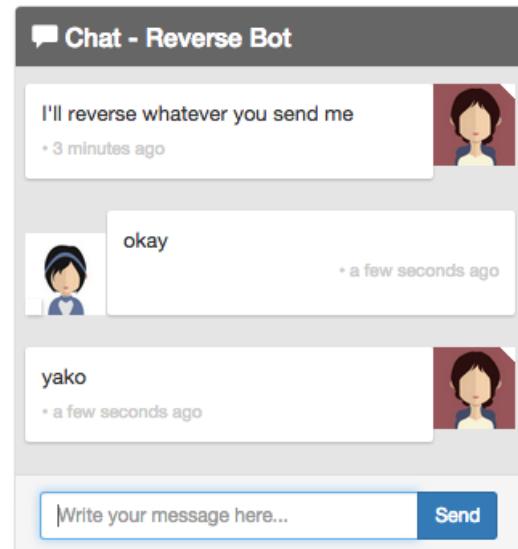
So all we need to do is hook them together:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```
66  this.currentThread.subscribe(this.messagesService.markThreadAsRead);
```

The list of Messages for the currently selected Thread (in `currentThreadMessages`)

Now that we have the currently selected thread, we need to make sure we can show the list of Messages in that Thread.



The current list of messages is for the Reverse Bot

Implementing this is a little bit more complicated than it may seem at the surface. Say we implemented it like this:

```

1 var theCurrentThread: Thread;
2
3 this.currentThread.subscribe((thread: Thread) => {
4   theCurrentThread = thread;
5 })
6
7 this.currentThreadMessages.map(
8   (messages: Message[]) => {
9     return _.filter(messages,
10       (message: Message) => {
11         return message.thread.id == theCurrentThread.id;
12       })
13   })

```

What's wrong with this approach? Well, if the `currentThread` changes, `currentThreadMessages` won't know about it and so we'll have an outdated list of `currentThreadMessages`!

What if we reversed it, and stored the current list of messages in a variable and subscribed to the changing of `currentThread`? We'd have the same problem only this time we would know when the thread changes but not when a new message came in.

How can we solve this problem?

It turns out, RxJS has a set of operators that we can use to **combine multiple streams**. In this case we want to say “if *either* `currentThread` **or** `messagesService.messages` changes, then we want to emit something.” For this we use the `combineLatest91` operator.

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts`

```

50   this.currentThreadMessages = this.currentThread
51     .combineLatest(messagesService.messages,
52                   (currentThread: Thread, messages: Message[] ) => {

```

When we're combining two streams one or the other will arrive first and there's no guarantee that we'll have a value on both streams, so we need to check to make sure we have what we need otherwise we'll just return an empty list.

Now that we have both the current thread and messages, we can filter out just the messages we're interested in:

⁹¹<https://github.com/Reactive-Extensions/RxJS/blob/master/doc/api/core/operators/combinelatestproto.md>

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

50   this.currentThreadMessages = this.currentThread
51     .combineLatest(messagesService.messages,
52                   (currentThread: Thread, messages: Message[]) => {
53       if (currentThread && messages.length > 0) {
54         return _.chain(messages)
55           .filter((message: Message) =>
56             (message.thread.id === currentThread.id))

```

One other detail, since we're already looking at the messages for the current thread, this is a convenient area to mark these messages as read.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

54   return _.chain(messages)
55     .filter((message: Message) =>
56       (message.thread.id === currentThread.id))
57     .map((message: Message) => {
58       message.isRead = true;
59       return message; })
60     .value();

```



Whether or not we should be marking messages as read here is debatable. The biggest drawback is that we're mutating objects in what is, essentially, a "read" thread. i.e. this is a read operation with a side effect, which is generally a Bad Idea. That said, in this application the `currentThreadMessages` only applies to the `currentThread` and the `currentThread` should always have its messages marked as read. That said, the "read with side-effects" is not a pattern I recommend in general.

Putting it together, here's what `currentThreadMessages` looks like:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```

50   this.currentThreadMessages = this.currentThread
51     .combineLatest(messagesService.messages,
52                   (currentThread: Thread, messages: Message[]) => {
53       if (currentThread && messages.length > 0) {
54         return _.chain(messages)
55           .filter((message: Message) =>
56             (message.thread.id === currentThread.id))
57           .map((message: Message) => {

```

```
58         message.isRead = true;
59         return message; })
60     .value();
61 } else {
62     return [];
63 }
64 );
```

Our Completed ThreadsService

Here's what our ThreadService looks like:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/services/ThreadsService.ts

```
1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2 import { Subject, BehaviorSubject, Observable } from 'rxjs';
3 import { Thread, Message } from '../models';
4 import { MessagesService } from './MessagesService';
5 import * as _ from 'underscore';
6
7 @Injectable()
8 export class ThreadsService {
9
10    // `threads` is a observable that contains the most up to date list of threads
11    threads: Observable<{ [key: string]: Thread }>;
12
13    // `orderedThreads` contains a newest-first chronological list of threads
14    orderedThreads: Observable<Thread[]>;
15
16    // `currentThread` contains the currently selected thread
17    currentThread: Subject<Thread> =
18        new BehaviorSubject<Thread>(new Thread());
19
20    // `currentThreadMessages` contains the set of messages for the currently
21    // selected thread
22    currentThreadMessages: Observable<Message[]>;
23
24    constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService) {
25
26        this.threads = messagesService.messages
27            .map( (messages: Message[]) => {
28                let threads: {[key: string]: Thread} = {};
29                // Store the message's thread in our accumulator `threads`
```

```
30     messages.map((message: Message) => {
31         threads[message.thread.id] = threads[message.thread.id] ||
32             message.thread;
33
34         // Cache the most recent message for each thread
35         let messagesThread: Thread = threads[message.thread.id];
36         if (!messagesThread.lastMessage || 
37             messagesThread.lastMessage.sentAt < message.sentAt) {
38             messagesThread.lastMessage = message;
39         }
40     });
41     return threads;
42 });
43
44 this.orderedThreads = this.threads
45     .map((threadGroups: { [key: string]: Thread }) => {
46         let threads: Thread[] = _.values(threadGroups);
47         return _.sortBy(threads, (t: Thread) => t.lastMessage.sentAt).reverse();
48     });
49
50 this.currentThreadMessages = this.currentThread
51     .combineLatest(messagesService.messages,
52                     (currentThread: Thread, messages: Message[]) => {
53         if (currentThread && messages.length > 0) {
54             return _.chain(messages)
55                 .filter((message: Message) =>
56                     (message.thread.id === currentThread.id))
57                 .map((message: Message) => {
58                     message.isRead = true;
59                     return message; })
60                 .value();
61         } else {
62             return [];
63         }
64     });
65
66     this.currentThread.subscribe(this.messagesService.markThreadAsRead);
67 }
68
69 setCurrentThread(newThread: Thread): void {
70     this.currentThread.next(newThread);
71 }
```

```
72
73  }
74
75 export var threadsServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
76   ThreadsService
77 ];
```

Data Model Summary

Our data model and services are complete! Now we have everything we need now to start hooking it up to our view components! In the next chapter we'll build out our 3 major components to render and interact with these streams.

Data Architecture with Observables - Part 2: View Components

Building Our Views: The ChatApp Top-Level Component

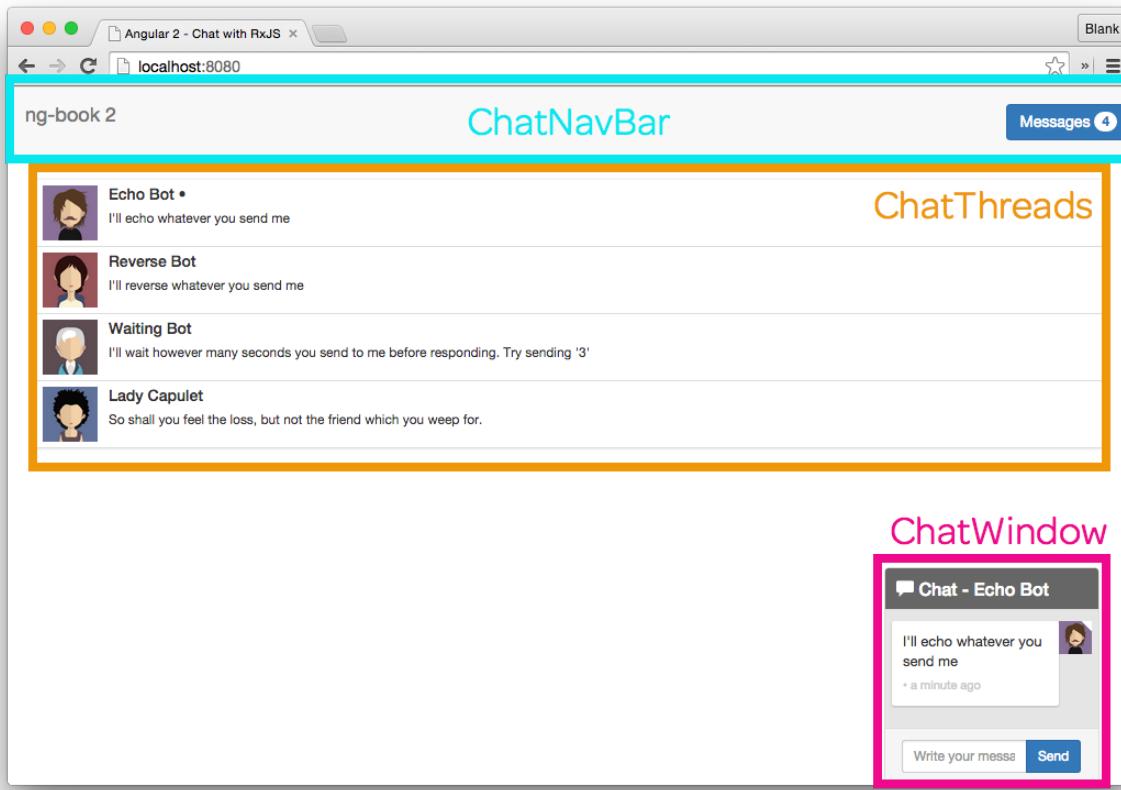
Let's turn our attention to our app and implement our view components.



For the sake of clarity and space, in the following sections I'll be leaving out some `import` statements, CSS, and a few other similar things lines of code. If you're curious about each line of those details, open up the sample code because it contains everything we need to run this app.

The first thing we're going to do is create our top-level component `chat-app`

As we talked about earlier, the page is broken down into three top-level components:



Chat Top-Level Components

- ChatNavBar - contains the unread messages count
- ChatThreads - shows a clickable list of threads, along with the most recent message and the conversation avatar
- ChatWindow - shows the messages in the current thread with an input box to send new messages

Here's what our component looks like in code:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/app.ts`

```
54  @Component({
55    selector: 'chat-app',
56    template: `
57      <div>
58        <nav-bar></nav-bar>
59        <div class="container">
60          <chat-threads></chat-threads>
61          <chat-window></chat-window>
62        </div>
63      </div>
64    `
65  })
66  class ChatApp {
67    constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
68                private threadsService: ThreadsService,
69                private userService: UserService) {
70      ChatExampleData.init(messagesService, threadsService, userService);
71    }
72  }
73
74  @NgModule({
75    declarations: [
76      ChatApp,
77      ChatNavBar,
78      ChatThreads,
79      ChatThread,
80      ChatWindow,
81      ChatMessage,
82      utilInjectables
83    ],
84    imports: [
85      BrowserModule,
86      FormsModule
87    ],
88    bootstrap: [ ChatApp ],
89    providers: [ servicesInjectables ]
90  })
91  export class Chat AppModule {}
92
93  platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(Chat AppModule);
```

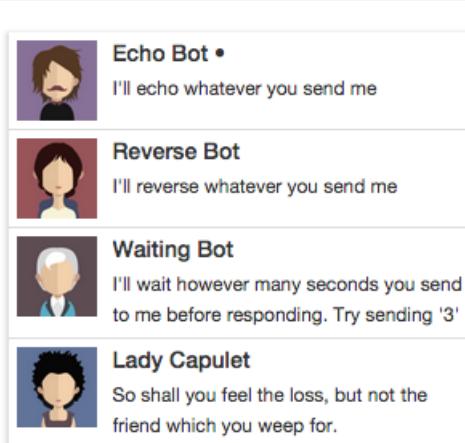
Take a look at the constructor. Here we're injecting our three services: the `MessagesService`, `ThreadsService`, and `UserService`. We're using those services to initialize our example data.



If you're interested in the example data you can find it in `code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/ChatExampleData.ts`.

The ChatThreads Component

Next let's build our thread list in the `ChatThreads` component.



Time Ordered List of Threads

Our selector is straightforward, we want to match `chat-threads`.

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts`

```
52 @Component({  
53   selector: 'chat-threads',
```

ChatThreads Controller

Take a look at our component controller `ChatThreads`:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts

```
69 export class ChatThreads {
70   threads: Observable<any>;
71
72   constructor(private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
73     this.threads = threadsService.orderedThreads;
74   }
75 }
```

Here we're injecting ThreadsService and then we're keeping a reference to the orderedThreads.

ChatThreads template

Lastly, let's look at the template and its configuration:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts

```
52 @Component({
53   selector: 'chat-threads',
54   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
55   template: `
56     <!-- conversations -->
57     <div class="row">
58       <div class="conversation-wrap">
59
60         <chat-thread
61           *ngFor="let thread of threads | async"
62           [thread]="thread">
63         </chat-thread>
64
65       </div>
66     </div>
67   `
```

There's three things to look at here: NgFor with the async pipe, the ChangeDetectionStrategy and ChatThread.

The ChatThread directive component (which matches chat-thread in the markup) will show the view for the Threads. We'll define that in a moment.

The NgFor iterates over our threads, and passes the input [thread] to our ChatThread directive. But you probably notice something new in our *ngFor: the pipe to async.

`async` is implemented by `AsyncPipe` and it lets us use an RxJS `Observable` here in our view. What's great about `async` is that it lets us use our `async` observable as if it was a sync collection. This is super convenient and really cool.

On this component we specify a custom `changeDetection`. Angular 2 has a flexible and efficient change detection system. One of the benefits is that if we have a component which has immutable or observable bindings, then we're able to give the change detection system hints that will make our application run very efficiently.

In this case, instead of watching for changes on an array of `Threads`, Angular will subscribe for changes to the `threads` observable - and trigger an update when a new event is emitted.

Here's what our total `ChatThreads` component looks like:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts

```
52 @Component({
53   selector: 'chat-threads',
54   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
55   template: `
56     <!-- conversations -->
57     <div class="row">
58       <div class="conversation-wrap">
59
60         <chat-thread
61           *ngFor="let thread of threads | async"
62           [thread]="thread">
63         </chat-thread>
64
65       </div>
66     </div>
67   `
68 })
69 export class ChatThreads {
70   threads: Observable<any>;
71
72   constructor(private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
73     this.threads = threadsService.orderedThreads;
74   }
75 }
```

The Single ChatThread Component

Let's look at our `ChatThread` component. This is the component that will be used to display a **single thread**. Starting with the `@Component`:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts

```

10  @Component({
11    inputs: ['thread'],
12    selector: 'chat-thread',
13    template: `
14      <div class="media conversation">
15        <div class="pull-left">
16          
20          <h5 class="media-heading contact-name">{{thread.name}}</h5>
21          <span *ngIf="selected">&bull;</span>
22        </h5>
23          <small class="message-preview">{{thread.lastMessage.text}}</small>
24        </div>
25        <a (click)="clicked($event)" class="div-link">Select</a>
26      </div>
27    `
28  })

```

We'll come back and look at the template in a minute, but first let's look at the component definition controller.

ChatThread Controller and ngOnInit

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts

```

29  export class ChatThread implements OnInit {
30    thread: Thread;
31    selected: boolean = false;
32
33    constructor(private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
34    }
35
36    ngOnInit(): void {
37      this.threadsService.currentThread
38        .subscribe( (currentThread: Thread) => {
39        this.selected = currentThread &&
40        this.thread &&
41        (currentThread.id === this.thread.id);

```

```

42      });
43  }
44
45  clicked(event: any): void {
46    this.threadService.setCurrentThread(this.thread);
47    event.preventDefault();
48  }
49 }

```

Notice that we're implementing a new interface here: `OnInit`. Angular components can declare that they listen for certain lifecycle events. We talk more about lifecycle events [here in the Advanced Components chapter](#).

In this case, because we declared that we implement `OnInit`, the method `ngOnInit` will be called on our component after the component has been checked for changes the first time.

A key reason we will use `ngOnInit` is because **our `thread` property won't be available in the constructor**.

Above you can see that in `ngOnInit` we subscribe to `threadService.currentThread` and if the `currentThread` matches the `thread` property of this component, we set `selected` to true (conversely, if the `Thread` doesn't match, we set `selected` to false).

We also setup an event handler `clicked`. This is how we handle selecting the current thread. In our template (below), we will bind `clicked()` to clicking on the thread view. If we receive `clicked()` then we tell the `threadService` we want to set the current thread to the `Thread` of this component.

ChatThread template

Here's the code for our template:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts`

```

13  template: `
14    <div class="media conversation">
15      <div class="pull-left">
16          
18      </div>
19      <div class="media-body">
20          <h5 class="media-heading contact-name">{{thread.name}}
21              <span *ngIf="selected">&bull;</span>
22          </h5>
23          <small class="message-preview">{{thread.lastMessage.text}}</small>
24      </div>

```

```

25      <a (click)="clicked($event)" class="div-link">Select</a>
26    </div>
27  `
```

Notice we've got some straight-forward bindings like `{{thread.avatarSrc}}`, `{{thread.name}}`, and `{{thread.lastMessage.text}}`.

We've got an `*ngIf` which will show the `•` symbol only if this is the selected thread.

Lastly, we're binding to the `(click)` event to call our `clicked()` handler. Notice that when we call `clicked` we're passing the argument `$event`. This is a special variable provided by Angular that describes the event. We use that in our `clicked` handler by calling `event.preventDefault()`. This makes sure that we don't navigate to a different page.

ChatThread Complete Code

Here's the whole of the `ChatThread` component:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatThreads.ts`

```

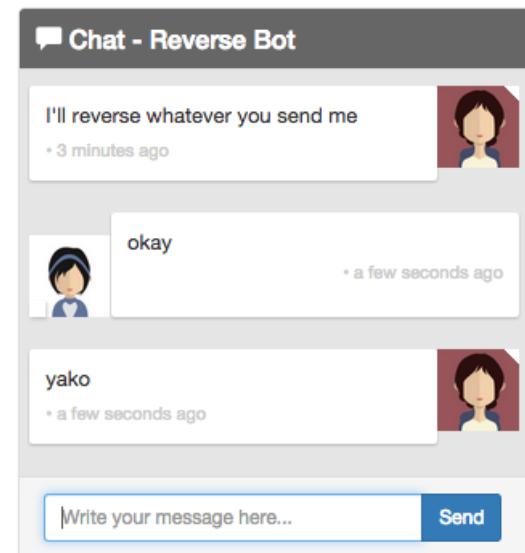
10  @Component({
11    inputs: [ 'thread' ],
12    selector: 'chat-thread',
13    template: `
14      <div class="media conversation">
15        <div class="pull-left">
16          
18        </div>
19        <div class="media-body">
20          <h5 class="media-heading contact-name">{{thread.name}}
21            <span *ngIf="selected">&bull;</span>
22          </h5>
23          <small class="message-preview">{{thread.lastMessage.text}}</small>
24        </div>
25        <a (click)="clicked($event)" class="div-link">Select</a>
26      </div>
27    `
28  })
29  export class ChatThread implements OnInit {
30    thread: Thread;
31    selected: boolean = false;
32
33    constructor(private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
```

```

34      }
35
36  ngOnInit(): void {
37    this.threadsService.currentThread
38      .subscribe( (currentThread: Thread) => {
39        this.selected = currentThread &&
40          this.thread &&
41          (currentThread.id === this.thread.id);
42      });
43  }
44
45  clicked(event: any): void {
46    this.threadsService.setCurrentThread(this.thread);
47    event.preventDefault();
48  }
49 }
```

The ChatWindow Component

The ChatWindow is the most complicated component in our app. Let's take it one section at a time:



The Chat Window

We start by defining our @Component:

[code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts](#)

```
61 @Component({
62   selector: 'chat-window',
63   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
```

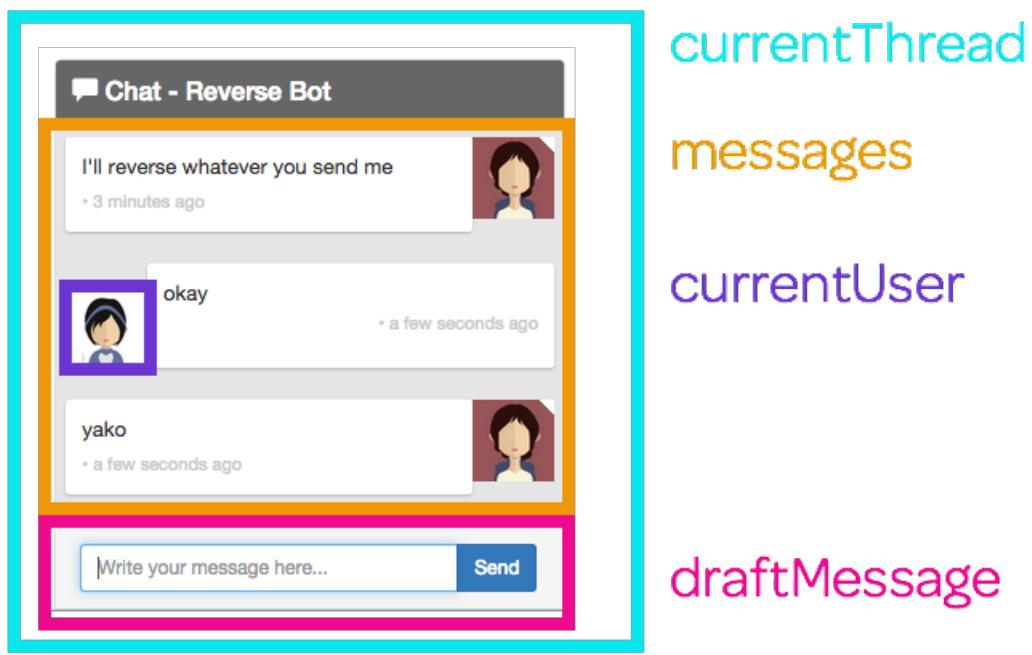
ChatWindow Component Class Properties

Our ChatWindow class has four properties:

[code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts](#)

```
110 export class ChatWindow implements OnInit {
111   messages: Observable<any>;
112   currentThread: Thread;
113   draftMessage: Message;
114   currentUser: User;
```

Here's a diagram of where each one is used:



Chat Window Properties

In our constructor we're going to inject four things:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
116  constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
117      private threadsService: ThreadsService,
118      private userService: UserService,
119      private el: ElementRef) {
120 }
```

The first three are our services. The fourth, `el` is an `ElementRef` which we can use to get access to the host DOM element. We'll use that when we scroll to the bottom of the chat window when we create and receive new messages.



Remember: by using `public messagesService: MessagesService` in the constructor, we are not only injecting the `MessagesService` but setting up an instance variable that we can use later in our class via `this.messagesService`

ChatWindow ngOnInit

We're going to put the initialization of this component in `ngOnInit`. The main thing we're going to be doing here is setting up the subscriptions on our observables which will then change our component properties.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
122 ngOnInit(): void {
123     this.messages = this.threadsService.currentThreadMessages;
124
125     this.draftMessage = new Message();
```

First, we'll save the `currentThreadMessages` into `messages`. Next we create an empty `Message` for the default `draftMessage`.

When we send a new message we need to make sure that `Message` stores a reference to the sending Thread. The sending thread is always going to be the current thread, so let's store a reference to the currently selected thread:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
127  this.threadsService.currentThread.subscribe(  
128    (thread: Thread) => {  
129      this.currentThread = thread;  
130    });
```

We also want new messages to be sent from the current user, so let's do the same with currentUser:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
132  this.userService.currentUser  
133    .subscribe(  
134      (user: User) => {  
135        this.currentUser = user;  
136      });
```

ChatWindow sendMessage

Since we're talking about it, let's implement a sendMessage function that will send a new message:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
152  sendMessage(): void {  
153    let m: Message = this.draftMessage;  
154    m.author = this.currentUser;  
155    m.thread = this.currentThread;  
156    m.isRead = true;  
157    this.messagesService.addMessage(m);  
158    this.draftMessage = new Message();  
159 }
```

The sendMessage function above takes the draftMessage, sets the author and thread using our component properties. Every message we send has “been read” already (we wrote it) so we mark it as read.

Notice here that we're not updating the draftMessage text. That's because we're going to bind the value of the messages text in the view in a few minutes.

After we've updated the draftMessage properties we send it off to the messagesService and then **create a new Message** and set that new Message to this.draftMessage. We do this to make sure we don't mutate an already sent message.

ChatWindow onEnter

In our view, we want to send the message in two scenarios

1. the user hits the “Send” button or
2. the user hits the Enter (or Return) key.

Let’s define a function that will handle that event:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts`

```
147  onEnter(event: any): void {
148      this.sendMessage();
149      event.preventDefault();
150  }
```

ChatWindow scrollToBottom

When we send a message, or when a new message comes in, we want to scroll to the bottom of the chat window. To do that, we’re going to set the `scrollTop` property of our host element:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts`

```
161  scrollToBottom(): void {
162      let scrollPane: any = this.el
163      .nativeElement.querySelector('.msg-container-base');
164      scrollPane.scrollTop = scrollPane.scrollHeight;
165  }
```

Now that we have a function that will scroll to the bottom, we have to make sure that we call it at the right time. Back in `ngOnInit` let’s subscribe to the list of `currentThreadMessages` and scroll to the bottom any time we get a new message:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts`

```
137  this.messages
138      .subscribe(
139          (messages: Array<Message>) => {
140              setTimeout(() => {
141                  this.scrollToBottom();
142              });
143          });
144  }
```



Why do we have the `setTimeout`?

If we call `scrollToBottom` immediately when we get a new message then what happens is we scroll to the bottom before the new message is rendered. By using a `setTimeout` we're telling Javascript that we want to run this function when it is finished with the current execution queue. This happens **after** the component is rendered, so it does what we want.

ChatWindow template

The opening of our template should look familiar, we start by defining some markup and the panel header:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
61 @Component({
62   selector: 'chat-window',
63   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
64   template: `
65     <div class="chat-window-container">
66       <div class="chat-window">
67         <div class="panel-container">
68           <div class="panel panel-default">
69
70             <div class="panel-heading top-bar">
71               <div class="panel-title-container">
72                 <h3 class="panel-title">
73                   <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-comment"></span>
74                   Chat - {{currentThread.name}}
75                 </h3>
76               </div>
77               <div class="panel-buttons-container">
78                 <!-- you could put minimize or close buttons here -->
79               </div>
80             </div>
```

Next we show the list of messages. Here we use `ngFor` along with the `async` pipe to iterate over our list of messages. We'll describe the individual `chat-message` component in a minute.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

82      <div class="panel-body msg-container-base">
83        <chat-message
84          *ngFor="let message of messages | async"
85          [message]="message">
86          </chat-message>
87      </div>

```

Lastly we have the message input box and closing tags :

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

88      <div class="panel-footer">
89        <div class="input-group">
90          <input type="text"
91            class="chat-input"
92            placeholder="Write your message here...""
93            (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
94            [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />
95          <span class="input-group-btn">
96            <button class="btn-chat"
97              (click)="onEnter($event)">
98              >Send</button>
99            </span>
100        </div>
101      </div>
102
103      </div>
104    </div>
105  </div>
106 </div>
107 </div>

```

The message input box is the most interesting part of this view, so let's talk about two interesting properties: 1. `(keydown.enter)` and 2. `[(ngModel)]`.

Handling keystrokes

Angular provides a straightforward way to handle keyboard actions: we bind to the event on an element. In this case, we're binding to `keydown.enter` which says if "Enter" is pressed, call the function in the expression, which in this case is `onEnter($event)`.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

91      <input type="text"
92          class="chat-input"
93          placeholder="Write your message here..."
94          (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
95          [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />

```

Using ngModel

As we've talked about before, Angular doesn't have a general model for two-way binding. However it can be very useful to have a two-way binding between a component and its view. As long as the side-effects are kept local to the component, it can be a very convenient way to keep a component property in sync with the view.

In this case, we're establishing a two-way bind **between the value of the input tag and draftMessage.text**. That is, if we type into the input tag, draftMessage.text will automatically be set to the value of that input. Likewise, if we were to update draftMessage.text in our code, the value in the input tag would change in the view.

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

91      <input type="text"
92          class="chat-input"
93          placeholder="Write your message here..."
94          (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
95          [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />

```

Clicking "Send"

On our "Send" button we bind the (click) property to the onEnter function of our component:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

96      <span class="input-group-btn">
97          <button class="btn-chat"
98              (click)="onEnter($event)">
99              Send</button>
100         </span>

```

The Entire ChatWindow Component

Here's the code listing for the entire ChatWindow Component:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

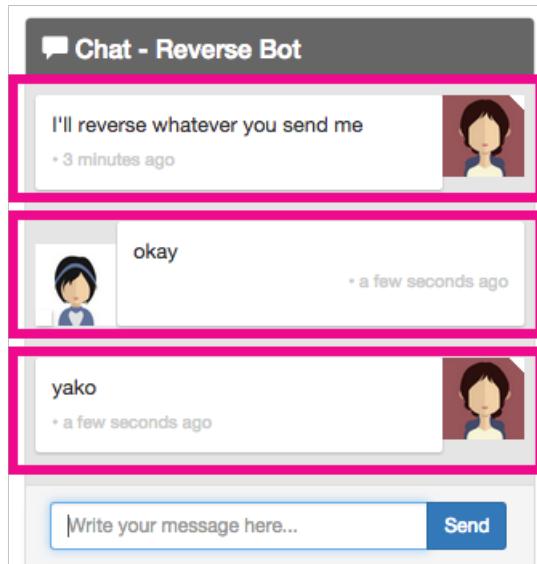
```
61 @Component({
62   selector: 'chat-window',
63   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
64   template: `
65     <div class="chat-window-container">
66       <div class="chat-window">
67         <div class="panel-container">
68           <div class="panel panel-default">
69
70             <div class="panel-heading top-bar">
71               <div class="panel-title-container">
72                 <h3 class="panel-title">
73                   <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-comment"></span>
74                   Chat - {{currentThread.name}}
75                 </h3>
76               </div>
77               <div class="panel-buttons-container">
78                 <!-- you could put minimize or close buttons here -->
79               </div>
80             </div>
81
82             <div class="panel-body msg-container-base">
83               <chat-message
84                 *ngFor="let message of messages | async"
85                 [message]="message">
86               </chat-message>
87             </div>
88
89             <div class="panel-footer">
90               <div class="input-group">
91                 <input type="text"
92                   class="chat-input"
93                   placeholder="Write your message here...""
94                   (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
95                   [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />
96                 <span class="input-group-btn">
97                   <button class="btn-chat"
98                     (click)="onEnter($event)">
99                     >Send</button>
100                </span>
101              </div>
```

```
102         </div>
103
104     </div>
105     </div>
106     </div>
107     </div>
108     `-
109 })
110 export class ChatWindow implements OnInit {
111   messages: Observable<any>;
112   currentThread: Thread;
113   draftMessage: Message;
114   currentUser: User;
115
116   constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
117               private threadsService: ThreadsService,
118               private userService: UserService,
119               private el: ElementRef) {
120   }
121
122   ngOnInit(): void {
123     this.messages = this.threadsService.currentThreadMessages;
124
125     this.draftMessage = new Message();
126
127     this.threadsService.currentThread.subscribe(
128       (thread: Thread) => {
129         this.currentThread = thread;
130       });
131
132     this.userService.currentUser
133       .subscribe(
134         (user: User) => {
135           this.currentUser = user;
136         });
137
138     this.messages
139       .subscribe(
140         (messages: Array<Message>) => {
141           setTimeout(() => {
142             this.scrollToBottom();
143           });
144         });
145
146   }
147 }
```

```
144      });
145  }
146
147  onEnter(event: any): void {
148    this.sendMessage();
149    event.preventDefault();
150  }
151
152  sendMessage(): void {
153    let m: Message = this.draftMessage;
154    m.author = this.currentUser;
155    m.thread = this.currentThread;
156    m.isRead = true;
157    this.messagesService.addMessage(m);
158    this.draftMessage = new Message();
159  }
160
161  scrollToBottom(): void {
162    let scrollPane: any = this.el
163      .nativeElement.querySelector('.msg-container-base');
164    scrollPane.scrollTop = scrollPane.scrollHeight;
165  }
166
167 }
```

The ChatMessage Component

Each Message is rendered by the ChatMessage component.



ChatMessage

ChatMessage

ChatMessage

The ChatMessage Component

This component is relatively straightforward. The main logic here is rendering a slightly different view depending on if the message was authored by the current user. If the Message was **not** written by the current user, then we consider the message `incoming`.

We start by defining the `@Component`:

`code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts`

```
15  @Component({
16    inputs: [ 'message' ],
17    selector: 'chat-message',
```

Setting incoming

Remember that each `ChatMessage` belongs to one `Message`. So in `ngOnInit` we will subscribe to the `currentUser` stream and set `incoming` depending on if this `Message` was written by the current user:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

40 export class ChatMessage implements OnInit {
41   message: Message;
42   currentUser: User;
43   incoming: boolean;
44
45   constructor(private userService: UserService) {
46   }
47
48   ngOnInit(): void {
49     this.userService.currentUser
50       .subscribe(
51         (user: User) => {
52           this.currentUser = user;
53           if (this.message.author && user) {
54             this.incoming = this.message.author.id !== user.id;
55           }
56         });
57   }
58
59 }
```

The ChatMessage template

In our template we have two interesting ideas:

1. the FromNowPipe
2. [ngClass]

First, here's the code:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```

15 @Component({
16   inputs: ['message'],
17   selector: 'chat-message',
18   template: `
19     <div class="msg-container"
20       [ngClass]="{'base-sent': !incoming, 'base-receive': incoming}">
21
22       <div class="avatar"
```

```

23      *ngIf="!incoming">
24        
25      </div>
26
27      <div class="messages"
28        [ngClass]="'msg-sent': !incoming, 'msg-receive': incoming">
29        <p>{{message.text}}</p>
30        <p class="time">{{message.author.name}} • {{message.sentAt | fromNow}}</p>
31      </div>
32
33      <div class="avatar"
34        *ngIf="incoming">
35        
36      </div>
37    </div>
38  ^
39 })

```

The `FromNowPipe` is a pipe that casts our `Messages` sent-at time to a human-readable “x seconds ago” message. You can see that we use it by: `{{message.sentAt | fromNow}}`



`FromNowPipe` uses the excellent `moment.js`⁹² library. If you'd like to learn about creating your own custom pipes read the source of the `FromNowPipe` in `code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/util/FromNowPipe.ts`

We also make extensive use of `ngClass` in this view. The idea is, when we say:

```
1 [ngClass]="'msg-sent': !incoming, 'msg-receive': incoming"
```

We're asking Angular to apply the `msg-receive` class if `incoming` is truthy (and apply `msg-sent` if `incoming` is falsey).

By using the `incoming` property, we're able to display incoming and outgoing messages differently.

The Complete ChatMessage Code Listing

Here's our completed `ChatMessage` component:

⁹²<http://momentjs.com/>

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatWindow.ts

```
1 import {
2   Component,
3   OnInit,
4   ElementRef,
5   ChangeDetectionStrategy
6 } from '@angular/core';
7 import {
8   MessagesService,
9   ThreadsService,
10  UserService
11 } from '../services/services';
12 import {Observable} from 'rxjs';
13 import {User, Thread, Message} from '../models';
14
15 @Component({
16   inputs: ['message'],
17   selector: 'chat-message',
18   template: `
19     <div class="msg-container"
20       [ngClass]="{'base-sent': !incoming, 'base-receive': incoming}">
21
22       <div class="avatar"
23         *ngIf="!incoming">
24         
25       </div>
26
27       <div class="messages"
28         [ngClass]="{'msg-sent': !incoming, 'msg-receive': incoming}">
29         <p>{{message.text}}</p>
30         <p class="time">{{message.author.name}} • {{message.sentAt | fromNow}}</p>
31       </div>
32
33       <div class="avatar"
34         *ngIf="incoming">
35         
36       </div>
37     </div>
38   `
39 })
40 export class ChatMessage implements OnInit {
41   message: Message;
```

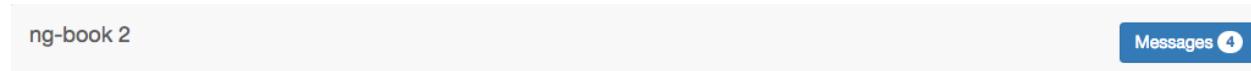
```
42     currentUser: User;
43     incoming: boolean;
44
45     constructor(private userService: UserService) {
46   }
47
48     ngOnInit(): void {
49       this.userService.currentUser
50         .subscribe(
51           (user: User) => {
52             this.currentUser = user;
53             if (this.message.author && user) {
54               this.incoming = this.message.author.id !== user.id;
55             }
56           });
57     }
58
59   }
60
61   @Component({
62     selector: 'chat-window',
63     changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
64     template: `
65       <div class="chat-window-container">
66         <div class="chat-window">
67           <div class="panel-container">
68             <div class="panel panel-default">
69
70               <div class="panel-heading top-bar">
71                 <div class="panel-title-container">
72                   <h3 class="panel-title">
73                     <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-comment"></span>
74                     Chat - {{currentThread.name}}
75                   </h3>
76                 </div>
77                 <div class="panel-buttons-container">
78                   <!-- you could put minimize or close buttons here -->
79                 </div>
80               </div>
81
82               <div class="panel-body msg-container-base">
83                 <chat-message
```

```
84          *ngFor="let message of messages | async"
85            [message]="message">
86              </chat-message>
87            </div>
88
89      <div class="panel-footer">
90        <div class="input-group">
91          <input type="text"
92            class="chat-input"
93            placeholder="Write your message here...""
94            (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
95            [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />
96          <span class="input-group-btn">
97            <button class="btn-chat"
98              (click)="onEnter($event)">Send</button>
99          </span>
100        </div>
101      </div>
102    </div>
103
104  </div>
105  </div>
106  </div>
107 </div>
108 ` 
109 })
110 export class ChatWindow implements OnInit {
111   messages: Observable<any>;
112   currentThread: Thread;
113   draftMessage: Message;
114   currentUser: User;
115
116   constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
117               private threadsService: ThreadsService,
118               private userService: UserService,
119               private el: ElementRef) {
120   }
121
122   ngOnInit(): void {
123     this.messages = this.threadsService.currentThreadMessages;
124
125     this.draftMessage = new Message();
```

```
126
127     this.threadsService.currentThread.subscribe(
128         (thread: Thread) => {
129             this.currentThread = thread;
130         });
131
132     this.userService.currentUser
133         .subscribe(
134             (user: User) => {
135                 this.currentUser = user;
136             });
137
138     this.messages
139         .subscribe(
140             (messages: Array<Message>) => {
141                 setTimeout(() => {
142                     this.scrollToBottom();
143                 });
144             });
145         }
146
147     onEnter(event: any): void {
148         this.sendMessage();
149         event.preventDefault();
150     }
151
152     sendMessage(): void {
153         let m: Message = this.draftMessage;
154         m.author = this.currentUser;
155         m.thread = this.currentThread;
156         m.isRead = true;
157         this.messagesService.addMessage(m);
158         this.draftMessage = new Message();
159     }
160
161     scrollToBottom(): void {
162         let scrollPane: any = this.el
163             .nativeElement.querySelector('.msg-container-base');
164         scrollPane.scrollTop = scrollPane.scrollHeight;
165     }
166
167 }
```

The ChatNavBar Component

The last component we have to talk about is the ChatNavBar. In the nav-bar we'll show an unread messages count to the user.



 Echo Bot •

The Unread Count in the ChatNavBar Component



The best way to try out the unread messages count is to use the “Waiting Bot”. If you haven't already, try sending the message ‘3’ to the Waiting Bot and then switch to another window. The Waiting Bot will then wait 3 seconds before sending you a message and you will see the unread messages counter increment.

The ChatNavBar @Component

First we define a pretty plain @Component configuration:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatNavBar.ts

```
6  @Component({
7    selector: 'nav-bar',
```

The ChatNavBar Controller

The only thing the ChatNavBar controller needs to keep track of is the unreadMessagesCount. This is slightly more complicated than it seems on the surface.

The most straightforward way would be to simply listen to `messagesService.messages` and sum the number of Messages where `isRead` is false. This works fine for all messages outside of the current thread. However new messages in the current thread aren't guaranteed to be marked as read by the time `messages` emits new values.

The safest way to handle this is to combine the `messages` and `currentThread` streams and make sure we don't count any messages that are part of the current thread.

We do this using the `combineLatest` operator, which we've already used earlier in the chapter:

[code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatNavBar.ts](#)

```

26  export class ChatNavBar implements OnInit {
27      unreadMessagesCount: number;
28
29      constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
30                  private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
31  }
32
33      ngOnInit(): void {
34          this.messagesService.messages
35              .combineLatest(
36                  this.threadsService.currentThread,
37                  (messages: Message[], currentThread: Thread) =>
38                  [currentThread, messages] )
39
40          .subscribe(([currentThread, messages]: [Thread, Message[]]) => {
41              this.unreadMessagesCount =
42                  _.reduce(
43                      messages,
44                      (sum: number, m: Message) => {
45                          let messageIsInCurrentThread: boolean = m.thread &&
46                          currentThread &&
47                          (currentThread.id === m.thread.id);
48                          // note: in a "real" app you should also exclude
49                          // messages that were authored by the current user b/c they've
50                          // already been "read"
51                          if (m && !m.isRead && !messageIsInCurrentThread) {
52                              sum = sum + 1;
53                          }
54                          return sum;
55                  },
56                  0);
57          });
58      }
59  }

```

If you're not an expert in TypeScript you might find the above syntax a little bit hard to parse. In the `combineLatest` callback function we're returning an array with `currentThread` and `messages` as its two elements.

Then we subscribe to that stream and we're *destructuring* those objects in the function call. Next we reduce over the `messages` and count the number of messages that are unread and not in the current thread.

The ChatNavBar template

In our view, the only thing we have left to do is display our unreadMessagesCount:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatNavBar.ts

```

6  @Component({
7    selector: 'nav-bar',
8    template: `
9      <nav class="navbar navbar-default">
10        <div class="container-fluid">
11          <div class="navbar-header">
12            <a class="navbar-brand" href="https://ng-book.com/2">
13              
14              ng-book 2
15            </a>
16          </div>
17          <p class="navbar-text navbar-right">
18            <button class="btn btn-primary" type="button">
19              Messages <span class="badge">{unreadMessagesCount}</span>
20            </button>
21          </p>
22        </div>
23      </nav>
24    `
```

The Completed ChatNavBar

Here's the full code listing for ChatNavBar:

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/components/ChatNavBar.ts

```

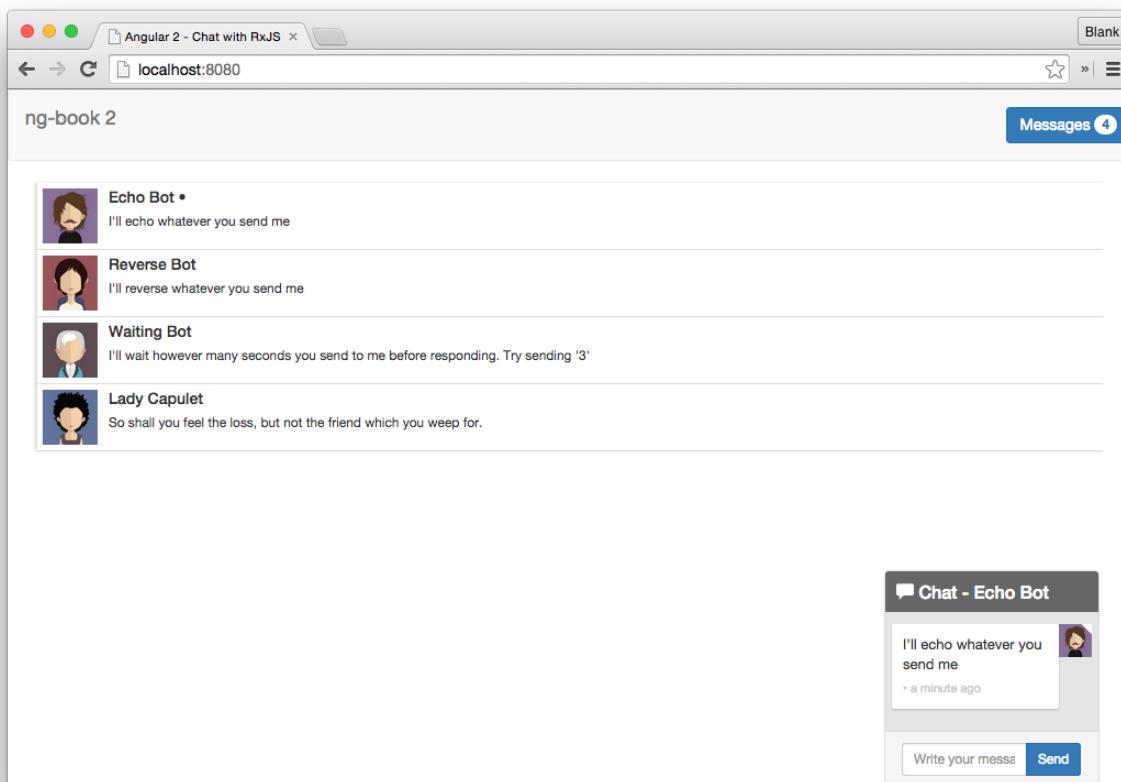
1  import {Component, OnInit} from '@angular/core';
2  import {MessagesService, ThreadsService} from '../services/services';
3  import {Message, Thread} from '../models';
4  import * as _ from 'underscore';
5
6  @Component({
7    selector: 'nav-bar',
8    template: `
9      <nav class="navbar navbar-default">
10        <div class="container-fluid">
11          <div class="navbar-header">
12            <a class="navbar-brand" href="https://ng-book.com/2">
```

```
13      
14      ng-book 2
15    </a>
16  </div>
17  <p class="navbar-text navbar-right">
18    <button class="btn btn-primary" type="button">
19      Messages <span class="badge">\{unreadMessagesCount\}</span>
20    </button>
21  </p>
22 </div>
23 </nav>
24 <
25 })
26 export class ChatNavBar implements OnInit {
27   unreadMessagesCount: number;
28
29   constructor(private messagesService: MessagesService,
30               private threadsService: ThreadsService) {
31   }
32
33   ngOnInit(): void {
34     this.messagesService.messages
35       .combineLatest(
36       this.threadsService.currentThread,
37       (messages: Message[], currentThread: Thread) =>
38         [currentThread, messages] )
39
40     .subscribe(([currentThread, messages]: [Thread, Message[]]) => {
41       this.unreadMessagesCount =
42         _.reduce(
43           messages,
44           (sum: number, m: Message) => {
45             let messageIsInCurrentThread: boolean = m.thread &&
46               currentThread &&
47               (currentThread.id === m.thread.id);
48             // note: in a "real" app you should also exclude
49             // messages that were authored by the current user b/c they've
50             // already been "read"
51             if (m && !m.isRead && !messageIsInCurrentThread) {
52               sum = sum + 1;
53             }
54           return sum;
```

```
55      },
56      0);
57  });
58 }
59 }
```

Summary

There we go, if we put them all together we've got a fully functional chat app!



Completed Chat Application

If you checkout code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/ChatExampleData.ts you'll see we've written a handful of bots for you that you can chat with. Here's a code excerpt from the Reverse Bot:

```
1 let rev: User = new User("Reverse Bot", require("images/avatars/female-avatar-4.\n2 png"));  
3 let tRev: Thread = new Thread("tRev", rev.name, rev.avatarSrc);
```

code/rxjs/chat/app/ts/ChatExampleData.ts

```
88     messagesService.messagesForThreadUser(tRev, rev)  
89         .forEach( (message: Message): void => {  
90             messagesService.addMessage(  
91                 new Message({  
92                     author: rev,  
93                     text: message.text.split(' ').reverse().join(' '),  
94                     thread: tRev  
95                 })  
96             );  
97         },
```

Above you can see that we've subscribed to the messages for the "Reverse Bot" by using `messagesForThreadUser`. Try writing a few bots of your own.

Next Steps

Some ways to improve this chat app would be to become stronger at RxJS and then hook it up to an actual API. We'll talk about how to make API requests in the [HTTP Chapter](#). For now, enjoy your fancy chat application!

Introduction to Redux with TypeScript

In this chapter and the next we'll be looking at a data-architecture pattern called Redux. In this chapter we're going to discuss the ideas behind Redux, build our own mini version, and then hook it up to Angular. In the next chapter we'll use Redux to build a bigger application.

In most of our projects so far, we've managed state in a fairly direct way: We tend to grab data from services and render them in components, passing values down the component tree along the way.

Managing our apps in this way works fine for smaller apps, but as our apps grow, having multiple components manage different parts of the state becomes cumbersome. For instance, passing all of our values down our component tree suffers from the following downsides:

Intermediate property passing - In order to get state to any component we have to pass the values down through `inputs`. This means we have many intermediate components passing state that it isn't directly using or concerned about

Inflexible refactoring - Because we're passing `inputs` down through the component tree, we're introducing a coupling between parent and child components that often isn't necessary. This makes it more difficult to put a child component somewhere else in the hierarchy because we have to change all of the new parents to pass the state

State tree and DOM tree don't match - The "shape" of our state often doesn't match the "shape" of our view/component hierarchy. By passing all data through the component tree via `props` we run into difficulties when we need to reference data in a far branch of the tree

State throughout our app - If we manage state via components, it's difficult to get a snapshot of the total state of our app. This can make it hard to know which component "owns" a particular bit of data, and which components are concerned about changes

Pulling data out of our components and into services helps a lot. At least if services are the "owners" of our data, we have a better idea of where to put things. But this opens a new question: what are the best practices for "service-owned" data? Are there any patterns we can follow? In fact, there are.

In this chapter, we're going to discuss a data-architecture pattern called *Redux* which was designed to help with these issues. We'll implement our own version of Redux which will store **all of our state in a single place**. This idea of holding all of our application's state in one place might sound a little crazy, but the results are surprisingly delightful.

Redux

If you haven't heard of Redux yet you can [read a bit about it on the official website⁹³](#). Web application data architecture is evolving and the traditional ways of structuring data aren't quite adequate for large web apps. Redux has been extremely popular because it's both powerful and easy to understand.

Data architecture can be a complex topic and so Redux's best feature is probably its simplicity. If you strip Redux down to the essential core, Redux is fewer than 100 lines of code.

We can build rich, easy to understand, web apps by using Redux as the backbone of our application. But first, let's walk through how to write a minimal Redux and later we'll work out patterns that emerge as we work out these ideas in a larger app.



There are several attempts to use Redux or create a Redux-inspired system that works with Angular. Two notable examples are:

- [ngrx/store⁹⁴](#) and
- [angular2-redux⁹⁵](#)

`ngrx` is a Redux-inspired architecture that is heavily observables-based. `angular2-redux` uses Redux itself as a dependency, and adds some Angular helpers (dependency-injection, observable wrappers).

Here we're not going to use either. Instead, we're going to use Redux directly in order to show the concepts without introducing a new dependency. That said, both of these libraries may be helpful to you when writing your apps.

Redux: Key Ideas

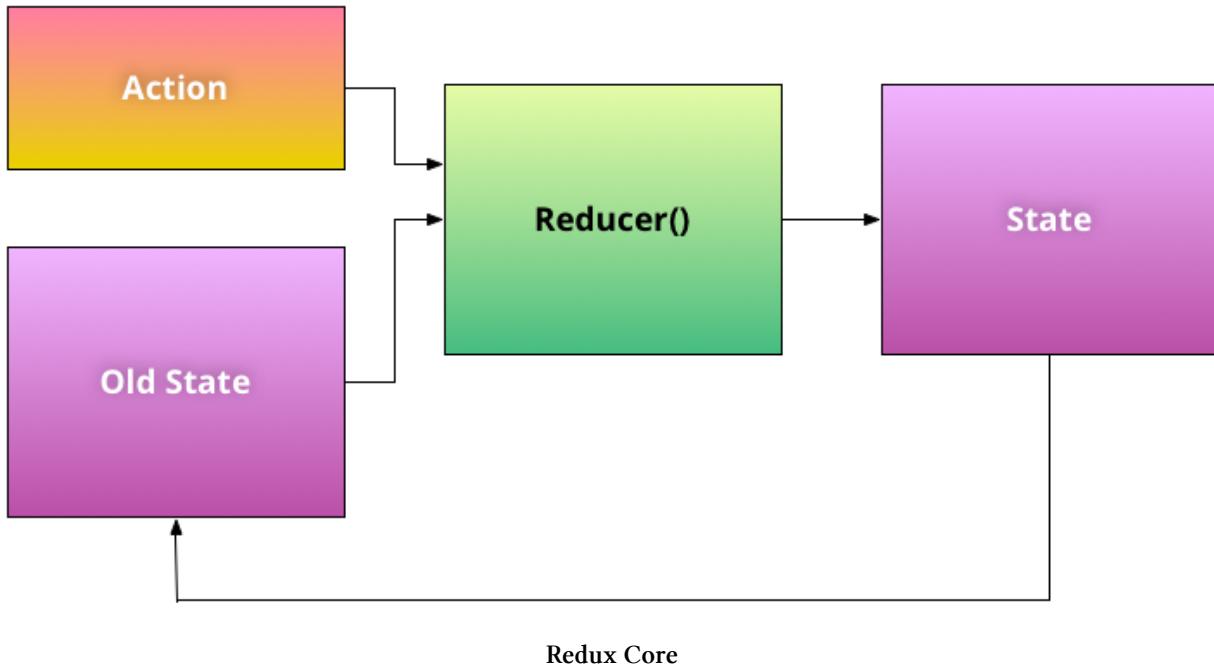
The key ideas of Redux are this:

- All of your application's data is in a single data structure called the *state* which is held in the *store*
- Your app reads the **state** from this **store**
- This **store** is never mutated directly
- User interaction (and other code) fires *actions* which describe what happened
- A *new state* is created by combining the **old state** and the **action** by a function called the *reducer*.

⁹³<http://redux.js.org/>

⁹⁴<https://github.com/ngrx/store>

⁹⁵<https://github.com/InfomediaLtd/angular2-redux>



If the above bullet list isn't clear yet, don't worry about it - putting these ideas into practice is the goal of the rest of this chapter.

Core Redux Ideas

What's a *reducer*?

Let's talk about the *reducer* first. Here's the idea of a *reducer*: it takes the *old state* and an *action* and returns a *new state*.

A reducer must be a **pure function**⁹⁶. That is:

1. It must not mutate the current state directly
2. It must not use any data outside of its arguments

Put another way, a pure function will always **return the same value, given the same set of arguments**. And a pure function won't call any functions which have an effect on the outside world, e.g. no database calls, no HTTP calls, and no mutating outside data structures.

Reducers should always treat the current state as **read-only**. A reducer **does not change the state** instead, it **returns a new state**. (Often this new state will start with a copy of old state, but let's not get ahead of ourselves.)

Let's define our very first reducer. Remember, there are three things involved:

⁹⁶https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pure_function

1. An Action, which defines what to do (with optional arguments)
2. The state, which stores *all* of the data in our application
3. The Reducer which takes the state and the Action and returns a new state.

Defining Action and Reducer Interfaces

Since we're using TypeScript we want to make sure this whole process is typed, so let's setup an interface for our Action and our Reducer:

The Action Interface

Our Action interface looks like this:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/01-identity-reducer.ts`

```
1 interface Action {  
2   type: string;  
3   payload?: any;  
4 }
```

Notice that our Action has two fields:

1. type and
2. payload

The type will be an identifying string that describes the action like INCREMENT or ADD_USER. The payload can be an object of any kind. The ? on payload? means that this field is optional.

The Reducer Interface

Our Reducer interface looks like this:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/01-identity-reducer.ts`

```
6 interface Reducer<T> {  
7   (state: T, action: Action): T;  
8 }
```

Our Reducer is using a feature of TypeScript called *generics*. In this case type T is the type of the state. Notice that we're saying that a valid Reducer has a function which takes a state (of type T) and an action and returns a new state (also of type T).

Creating Our First Reducer

The simplest possible reducer returns the state itself. (You might call this the *identity* reducer because it applies [the identity function⁹⁷](#) on the state. This is the default case for all reducers, as we will soon see).

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/01-identity-reducer.ts

```
10 let reducer: Reducer<number> = (state: number, action: Action) => {  
11   return state;  
12 };
```

Notice that this Reducer makes the generic type concrete to number by the syntax `Reducer<number>`. We'll define more sophisticated states beyond a single number soon.

We're not using the Action yet, but let's try this Reducer just the same.



Running the examples in this section

You can find the code for this chapter in the folder `code/redux`. If the example is runnable you will see the filename the code is from above each code box.

In this first section, these examples are run **outside of the browser and run by node.js**. Because we're using TypeScript in these examples, you should run them using the commandline tool `ts-node`, (instead of `node` directly).

You can install `ts-node` by running:

```
1 npm install -g ts-node
```

Or by doing an `npm install` in the `code/redux/angular2-redux-chat` directory and then calling `./node_modules/.bin/ts-node --noProject`

For instance, to run the example above you might type (not including the \$):

```
1 $ cd code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial  
2 $ ../../node_modules/.bin/ts-node --noProject 01-identity-reducer.ts
```

Use this same procedure for the rest of the code in this chapter until we instruct you to switch to your browser.

Running Our First Reducer

Let's put it all together and run this reducer:

⁹⁷https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Identity_function

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/01-identity-reducer.ts

```
1 interface Action {
2   type: string;
3   payload?: any;
4 }
5
6 interface Reducer<T> {
7   (state: T, action: Action): T;
8 }
9
10 let reducer: Reducer<number> = (state: number, action: Action) => {
11   return state;
12 };
13
14 console.log( reducer(0, null) ); // -> 0
```

And run it:

```
1 $ cd code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial
2 $ ../../node_modules/.bin/ts-node --noProject 01-identity-reducer.ts
3 0
```

It seems almost silly to have that as a code example, but it teaches us our first principle of reducers:
By default, reducers return the original state.

In this case, we passed a state of the number `0` and a `null` action. The result from this reducer is the state `0`.

But let's do something more interesting and make our state change.

Adjusting the Counter With *actions*

Eventually our state is going to be **much more** sophisticated than a single number. We're going to be holding the **all** of the data for our app in the state, so we'll need better data structure for the state eventually.

That said, using a single number for the state lets us focus on other issues for now. So let's continue with the idea that our state is simply a single number that is storing a counter.

Let's say we want to be able to change the state number. Remember that in Redux we do not modify the state. Instead, we create *actions* which instruct the *reducer* on how to generate a *new state*.

Let's create an Action to change our counter. Remember that the only required property is a type. We might define our first action like this:

```
1 let incrementAction: Action = { type: 'INCREMENT' }
```

We should also create a second action that instructs our reducer to make the counter smaller with:

```
1 let decrementAction: Action = { type: 'DECREMENT' }
```

Now that we have these actions, let's try using them in our reducer:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/02-adjusting-reducer.ts

```
10 let reducer: Reducer<number> = (state: number, action: Action) => {
11   if (action.type === 'INCREMENT') {
12     return state + 1;
13   }
14   if (action.type === 'DECREMENT') {
15     return state - 1;
16   }
17   return state;
18 };
```

And now we can try out the whole reducer:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/02-adjusting-reducer.ts

```
20 let incrementAction: Action = { type: 'INCREMENT' };
21
22 console.log( reducer(0, incrementAction ) ); // -> 1
23 console.log( reducer(1, incrementAction ) ); // -> 2
24
25 let decrementAction: Action = { type: 'DECREMENT' };
26
27 console.log( reducer(100, decrementAction ) ); // -> 99
```

Neat! Now the new value of the state is returned according to which action we pass into the reducer.

Reducer switch

Instead of having so many `if` statements, the common practice is to convert the reducer body to a `switch` statement:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/03-adjusting-reducer-switch.ts

```
10 let reducer: Reducer<number> = (state: number, action: Action) => {
11   switch (action.type) {
12     case 'INCREMENT':
13       return state + 1;
14     case 'DECREMENT':
15       return state - 1;
16     default:
17       return state; // <-- dont forget!
18   }
19 };
20
21 let incrementAction: Action = { type: 'INCREMENT' };
22 console.log(reducer(0, incrementAction)); // -> 1
23 console.log(reducer(1, incrementAction)); // -> 2
24
25 let decrementAction: Action = { type: 'DECREMENT' };
26 console.log(reducer(100, decrementAction)); // -> 99
27
28 // any other action just returns the input state
29 let unknownAction: Action = { type: 'UNKNOWN' };
30 console.log(reducer(100, unknownAction)); // -> 100
```

Notice that the `default` case of the `switch` returns the original state. This ensures that if an unknown action is passed in, there's no error and we get the original state unchanged.



Q: Wait, all of my application state is in one giant `switch` statement?

A: Yes and no.

If this is your first exposure to Redux reducers it might feel a little weird to have all of your application state changes be the result of a giant `switch`. There are two things you should know:

1. Having your state changes centralized in one place can help a **ton** in maintaining your program, particularly because it's easy to track down where the changes are happening when they're all together. (Furthermore, you can easily locate what state changes as the result of any action because you can search your code for the token specified for that action's type)
2. You can (and often do) break your reducers down into several sub-reducers which each manage a different branch of the state tree. We'll talk about this later.

Action “Arguments”

In the last example our actions contained only a type which told our reducer either to increment or decrement the state.

But often changes in our app can't be described by a single value - instead we need parameters to describe the change. This is why we have the `payload` field in our Action.

In this counter example, say we wanted to add 9 to the counter. One way to do this would be to send 9 `INCREMENT` actions, but that wouldn't be very efficient, especially if we wanted to add, say, 9000.

Instead, let's add a `PLUS` action that will use the `payload` parameter to send a number which specifies how much we want to add to the counter. Defining this action is easy enough:

```
1 let plusSevenAction = { type: 'PLUS', payload: 7 };
```

Next, to support this action, we add a new case to our reducer that will handle a '`PLUS`' action:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/04-plus-action.ts`

```
10 let reducer: Reducer<number> = (state: number, action: Action) => {
11   switch (action.type) {
12     case 'INCREMENT':
13       return state + 1;
14     case 'DECREMENT':
15       return state - 1;
16     case 'PLUS':
17       return state + action.payload;
18     default:
19       return state;
20   }
21 };
```

`PLUS` will add whatever number is in the `action.payload` to the `state`. We can try it out:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/04-plus-action.ts`

```
23 console.log( reducer(3, { type: 'PLUS', payload: 7 }) ); // -> 10
24 console.log( reducer(3, { type: 'PLUS', payload: 9000 }) ); // -> 9003
25 console.log( reducer(3, { type: 'PLUS', payload: -2 }) ); // -> 1
```

In the first line we take the state 3 and `PLUS` a payload of 7, which results in 10. Neat! However, notice that while we're passing in a `state`, it doesn't really ever *change*. That is, we're not storing the result of our reducer's changes and reusing it for future actions.

Storing Our State

Our reducers are pure functions, and do not change the world around them. The problem is, in our app, things *do* change. Specifically, our state changes and we need to keep the new state somewhere.

In Redux, we keep our state in the *store*. The store has the responsibility of **running the reducer and then keeping the new state**. Let's take a look at a minimal store:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/05-minimal-store.ts

```
10 class Store<T> {
11   private _state: T;
12
13   constructor(
14     private reducer: Reducer<T>,
15     initialState: T
16   ) {
17     this._state = initialState;
18   }
19
20   getState(): T {
21     return this._state;
22   }
23
24   dispatch(action: Action): void {
25     this._state = this.reducer(this._state, action);
26   }
27 }
```

Notice that our Store is generically typed - we specify the type of the *state* with generic type T. We store the state in the private variable `_state`.

We also give our Store a Reducer, which is also typed to operate on T, the state type this is because **each store is tied to a specific reducer**. We store the Reducer in the private variable `reducer`.



In Redux, we generally have 1 store and 1 top-level reducer per application.

Let's take a closer look at each method of our State:

- In our constructor we set the `_state` to the initial state.
- `getState()` simply returns the current `_state`

- `dispatch` takes an action, sends it to the reducer and then **updates the value of `_state`** with the return value

Notice that `dispatch` **doesn't return anything**. It's only *updating* the store's state (once the result returns). This is an important principle of Redux: dispatching actions is a “fire-and-forget” maneuver. **Dispatching actions is not a direct manipulation of the state, and it doesn't return the new state.**

When we dispatch actions, we're sending off a notification of what happened. If we want to know what the current state of the system is, we have to check the state of the store.

Using the Store

Let's try using our store:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/05-minimal-store.ts`

```
43 // create a new store
44 let store = new Store<number>(reducer, 0);
45 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 0
46
47 store.dispatch({ type: 'INCREMENT' });
48 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 1
49
50 store.dispatch({ type: 'INCREMENT' });
51 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 2
52
53 store.dispatch({ type: 'DECREMENT' });
54 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 1
```

We start by creating a new `Store` and we save this in `store`, which we can use to get the current state and dispatch actions.

The state is set to `0` initially, and then we `INCREMENT` twice and `DECREMENT` once and our final state is `1`.

Being Notified with `subscribe`

It's great that our `Store` keeps track of what changed, but in the above example we have to *ask* for the state changes with `store.getState()`. It would be nice for us to know immediately when a new action was dispatched so that we could respond. To do this we can implement the Observer pattern - that is, we'll register a callback function that will *subscribe* to all changes.

Here's how we want it to work:

1. We will register a *listener* function using `subscribe`
2. When `dispatch` is called, we will iterate over all listeners and call them, which is the notification that the state has changed.

Registering Listeners

Our listener callbacks are going to be a function that takes *no arguments*. Let's define an interface that makes it easy to describe this:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts

```
10 interface ListenerCallback {  
11   (): void;  
12 }
```

After we subscribe a listener, we might want to unsubscribe as well, so let's define the interface for an *unsubscribe* function as well:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts

```
14 interface UnsubscribeCallback {  
15   (): void;  
16 }
```

Not much going on here - it's another function that takes no arguments and has no return value. But by defining these types it makes our code clearer to read.

Our store is going to keep a list of `ListenerCallbacks` let's add that to our Store:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts

```
18 class Store<T> {  
19   private _state: T;  
20   private _listeners: ListenerCallback[] = [];
```

Now we want to be able to add to that list of `_listeners` with a `subscribe` function:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts](#)

```

38   subscribe(listener: ListenerCallback): UnsubscribeCallback {
39     this._listeners.push(listener);
40     return () => { // returns an "unsubscribe" function
41       this._listeners = this._listeners.filter(l => l !== listener);
42     };
43   }

```

subscribe accepts a ListenerCallback (i.e. a function with no arguments and no return value) and returns an UnsubscribeCallback (the same signature). Adding the new listener is easy: we push it on to the _listeners array.

The return value is a function which will update the list of _listeners to be the list of _listeners without the listener we just added. That is, it returns the UnsubscribeCallback that we can use to remove this listener from the list.

Notifying Our Listeners

Whenever our state changes, we want to call these listener functions. What this means is, whenever we dispatch a new action, whenever the state changes, we want to call all of the listeners:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts](#)

```

33   dispatch(action: Action): void {
34     this._state = this.reducer(this._state, action);
35     this._listeners.forEach((listener: ListenerCallback) => listener());
36   }

```

The Complete Store

We'll try this out below, but before we do that, here's the complete code listing for our new Store:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts](#)

```

18 class Store<T> {
19   private _state: T;
20   private _listeners: ListenerCallback[] = [];
21
22   constructor(
23     private reducer: Reducer<T>,
24     initialState: T
25   ) {
26     this._state = initialState;

```

```
27      }
28
29      getState(): T {
30          return this._state;
31      }
32
33      dispatch(action: Action): void {
34          this._state = this.reducer(this._state, action);
35          this._listeners.forEach((listener: ListenerCallback) => listener());
36      }
37
38      subscribe(listener: ListenerCallback): UnsubscribeCallback {
39          this._listeners.push(listener);
40          return () => { // returns an "unsubscribe" function
41              this._listeners = this._listeners.filter(l => l !== listener);
42          };
43      }
44 }
```

Trying Out `subscribe`

Now that we can subscribe to changes in our store, let's try it out:

```
code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06-store-w-subscribe.ts
61 let store = new Store<number>(reducer, 0);
62 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 0
63
64 // subscribe
65 let unsubscribe = store.subscribe(() => {
66     console.log('subscribed: ', store.getState());
67 });
68
69 store.dispatch({ type: 'INCREMENT' }); // -> subscribed: 1
70 store.dispatch({ type: 'INCREMENT' }); // -> subscribed: 2
71
72 unsubscribe();
73 store.dispatch({ type: 'DECREMENT' }); // (nothing logged)
74
75 // decrement happened, even though we weren't listening for it
76 console.log(store.getState()); // -> 1
```

Above we subscribe to our store and in the callback function we'll log `subscribed:` and then the current store state.



Notice that the listener function is **not** given the current state as an argument. This might seem like an odd choice, but because there are some nuances to deal with, it's easier to think of *the notification of state changed* as separate from *the current state*. Without digging too much into the weeds, you can read more about this choice [here⁹⁸](#), [here⁹⁹](#), and [here¹⁰⁰](#).

We store the `unsubscribe` callback and then notice that after we call `unsubscribe()` our log message isn't called. We can still dispatch actions, we just won't see the results until we ask the store for them.



If you're the type of person who likes RxJS and Observables, you might notice that implementing our own subscription listeners could also be implemented using RxJS. You could rewrite our `Store` to use Observables instead of our own subscriptions.

In fact, we've already done this for you and you can find the sample code in the file `code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/06b-rx-store.ts`.

Using RxJS for the `Store` is an interesting and powerful pattern if you're willing to use RxJS for the backbone of our application data.

Here we're not going to use Observables very heavily, particularly because we want to discuss Redux itself and how to think about data architecture with a single state tree. Redux itself is powerful enough to use in our applications without Observables.

Once you get the concepts of using "straight" Redux, adding in Observables isn't difficult (if you already understand RxJS, that is). For now, we're going to use "straight" Redux and we'll give you some guidance on some Observable-based Redux-wrappers at the end.

The Core of Redux

The above store is the essential core of Redux. Our reducer takes the current state and action and returns a new state, which is held by the store.

There are obviously many more things that we need to add to build a large, production web app. However, all of the new ideas that we'll cover are patterns that flow from building on this simple idea of an immutable, central store of state. If you understand the ideas presented above, you would be likely to invent many of the patterns (and libraries) you find in more advanced Redux apps.

There's still a lot for us to cover about day-to-day use of redux though. For instance, we need to know:

- How to carefully handle more complex data structures in our state
- How to be notified when our state changes without having to poll the state (with subscriptions)
- How to intercept our dispatch for debugging (a.k.a. middleware)

⁹⁸<https://github.com/reactjs/redux/issues/1707>

⁹⁹<https://github.com/reactjs/redux/issues/1513>

¹⁰⁰<https://github.com/reactjs/redux/issues/303>

- How to compute derived values (with *selectors*)
- How to split up large reducers into more manageable, smaller ones (and recombine them)
- How to deal with asynchronous data

We'll explain on each of these issues and describe common patterns over the rest of this chapter and the next.

Let's first deal with handling more complex data structures in our state. To do that, we're going to need an example that's more interesting than a counter. Let's start building a chat app where users can send each other messages.

A Messaging App

In our messaging app, as in all Redux apps, there are three main parts to the data model:

1. The state
2. The actions
3. The reducer

Messaging App state

The state in our counter app was a single number. However in our messaging app, the state is going to be **an object**.

This state object will have a single property, `messages`. `messages` will be an array of strings, with each string representing an individual message in the application. For example:

```
1 // an example `state` value
2 {
3   messages: [
4     'here is message one',
5     'here is message two'
6   ]
7 }
```

We can define the type for the app's state like this:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts

```
7 interface AppState {  
8   messages: string[];  
9 }
```

Messaging App actions

Our app will process two actions: ADD_MESSAGE and DELETE_MESSAGE.

The ADD_MESSAGE action object will always have the property message, the message to be added to the state. The ADD_MESSAGE action object has this shape:

```
1 {  
2   type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',  
3   message: 'Whatever message we want here'  
4 }
```

The DELETE_MESSAGE action object will delete a specified message from the state. A challenge here is that we have to be able to specify *which message* we want to delete.

If our messages were objects, we could assign each message an id property when it is created. However, to simplify this example, our messages are just simple strings, so we'll have to get a handle to the message another way. The easiest way for now is to just use the index of the message in the array (as a proxy for the ID).

With that in mind, the DELETE_MESSAGE action object has this shape:

```
1 {  
2   type: 'DELETE_MESSAGE',  
3   index: 2 // <- or whatever index is appropriate  
4 }
```

We can define the types for these actions by using the interface ... extends syntax in TypeScript:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts

```
11 interface AddMessageAction extends Action {
12   message: string;
13 }
14
15 interface DeleteMessageAction extends Action {
16   index: number;
17 }
```

In this way our `AddMessageAction` is able to specify a `message` and the `DeleteMessageAction` will specify an `index`.

Messaging App reducer

Remember that our reducer needs to handle two actions: `ADD_MESSAGE` and `DELETE_MESSAGE`. Let's talk about these individually.

Reducing ADD_MESSAGE

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts

```
19 let reducer: Reducer<AppState> =
20   (state: AppState, action: Action): AppState => {
21     switch (action.type) {
22       case 'ADD_MESSAGE':
23         return {
24           messages: state.messages.concat(
25             (<AddMessageAction>action).message
26           ),
27         };
28     }
29   };
30
31 const rootReducer = combineReducers({
32   app: reducer,
33   auth: authReducer
34 });
35
36 export default rootReducer;
```

We start by switching on the `action.type` and handling the `ADD_MESSAGE` case.



TypeScript objects already have a type, so why are we adding a type field?

There are many different ways we might choose to handle this sort of “polymorphic dispatch”. Keeping a string in a type field (where type means “action-type”) is a straightforward, portable way we can use to distinguish different types of actions and handle them in one reducer. In part, it means that you don’t *have* to create a new interface for every action.

That said, it would be more satisfying to be able to use reflection to switch on the concrete type. While this might become possible with more advanced [type guards](#)¹⁰¹, this isn’t currently possible in today’s TypeScript.

Broadly speaking, types are a compile-time construct and this code is compiled down to JavaScript and we can lose some of the typing metadata.

That said, if switching on a type field bothers you and you’d like to use language features directly, you could use the [decoration reflection metadata](#)¹⁰². For now, a simple type field will suffice.

Adding an Item Without Mutation

When we handle an ADD_MESSAGE action, we need to add the given message to the state. As will all reducer handlers, we need to **return a new state**. Remember that our reducers must be *pure* and not mutate the old state.

What would be the problem with the following code?

```
1 case 'ADD_MESSAGE':  
2   state.messages.push( action.message );  
3   return { messages: messages };  
4 // ...
```

The problem is that this code **mutates** the state.messages array, which changes our old state! Instead what we want to do is create a *copy* of the state.messages array and add our new message to the copy.

¹⁰¹<https://basarat.gitbooks.io/typescript/content/docs/types/typeGuard.html>

¹⁰²<http://blog.wolksoftware.com/decorators-metadata-reflection-in-typescript-from-novice-to-expert-part-4>

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts](#)

```

22  case 'ADD_MESSAGE':
23    return {
24      messages: state.messages.concat(
25        (<AddMessageAction>action).message
26      ),
27    };

```



The syntax `<AddMessageAction>action` will cast our action to the more specific type. That is, notice that our reducer takes the more general type `Action`, which does not have the `message` field. If we leave off the cast, then the compiler will complain that `Action` does not have a field `message`.

Instead, we know that we have an `ADD_MESSAGE` action so we cast it to an `AddMessageAction`. We use parenthesis to make sure the compiler knows that we want to cast `action` and not `action.message`.

Remember that the reducer **must return a new AppState**. When we return an object from our reducer it must match the format of the `AppState` that was input. In this case we only have to keep the key `messages`, but in more complicated states we have more fields to worry about.

Deleting an Item Without Mutation

Remember that when we handle the `DELETE_MESSAGE` action we are passing the index of the item in the array as the faux ID. (Another common way of handling the same idea would be to pass a real item ID.) Again, because we do not want to mutate the old `messages` array, we need to handle this case with care:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts](#)

```

28  case 'DELETE_MESSAGE':
29    let idx = (<DeleteMessageAction>action).index;
30    return {
31      messages: [
32        ...state.messages.slice(0, idx),
33        ...state.messages.slice(idx + 1, state.messages.length)
34      ]

```

Here we use the `slice` operator twice. First we take all of the items up until the item we are removing. And we concatenate the items that come after.



There are four common non-mutating operations:

- Adding an item to an array
- Removing an item from an array
- Adding / changing a key in an object
- Removing a key from an object

The first two (array) operations we just covered. We'll talk more about the object operations further down, but for now know that a common way to do this is to use `Object.assign`. As in:

```
1  Object.assign({}, oldObject, newObject)
2          // <-----<-----
```

You can think of `Object.assign` as merging objects in from the right into the object on the left. `newObject` is merged into `oldObject` which is merged into `{}`. This way all of the fields in `oldObject` will be kept, except for where the field exists in `newObject`. Neither `oldObject` nor `newObject` will be mutated.

Of course, handling all of this on your own takes great care and it is easy to make a mistake. This is one of the reasons many people use [Immutable.js¹⁰³](#), which is a set of data structures that help enforce immutability.

Trying Out Our Actions

Now let's try running our actions:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/07-messages-reducer.ts](#)

```
42 let store = new Store<AppState>(reducer, { messages: [] });
43 console.log(store.getState()); // -> { messages: [] }
44
45 store.dispatch({
46   type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',
47   message: 'Would you say the fringe was made of silk?'
48 } as AddMessageAction);
49
50 store.dispatch({
51   type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',
52   message: 'Wouldnt have no other kind but silk'
53 } as AddMessageAction);
```

¹⁰³<https://facebook.github.io/imutable-js/>

```
54
55 store.dispatch({
56   type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',
57   message: 'Has it really got a team of snow white horses?'
58 } as AddMessageAction);
59
60 console.log(store.getState());
61 // ->
62 // { messages:
63 //   [ 'Would you say the fringe was made of silk?',
64 //     'Wouldnt have no other kind but silk',
65 //     'Has it really got a team of snow white horses?' ] }
```

Here we start with a new store and we call `store.getState()` and see that we have an empty `messages` array.

Next we add [three messages¹⁰⁴](#) to our store. For each message we specify the type as `ADD_MESSAGE` and we cast each object to an `AddMessageAction`.

Finally we log the new state and we can see that `messages` contains all three messages.

Our three `dispatch` statements are a bit ugly for two reasons:

1. we manually have to specify the type string each time. We could use a constant, but it would be nice if we didn't have to do this and
2. we're manually casting to an `AddMessageAction`

Instead of creating these objects as an object directly we should create a *function* that will create these objects. This idea of writing a function to create actions is so common in Redux that the pattern has a name: *Action Creators*.

Action Creators

Instead of creating the `ADD_MESSAGE` actions directly as objects, let's create a function to do this for us:

¹⁰⁴https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Surrey_with_the_Fringe_on_Top

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/08-action-creators.ts

```
19 class MessageActions {
20   static addMessage(message: string): AddMessageAction {
21     return {
22       type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',
23       message: message
24     };
25   }
26   static deleteMessage(index: number): DeleteMessageAction {
27     return {
28       type: 'DELETE_MESSAGE',
29       index: index
30     };
31   }
32 }
```

Here we've created a class with two static methods `addMessage` and `deleteMessage`. They return an `AddMessageAction` and a `DeleteMessageAction` respectively.



You definitely don't *have* to use static methods for your action creators. You could use plain functions, functions in a namespace, even instance methods on an object, etc. The key idea is to keep them organized in a way that makes them easy to use.

Now let's use our new action creators:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/08-action-creators.ts

```
55 let store = new Store<AppState>(reducer, { messages: [] });
56 console.log(store.getState()); // -> { messages: [] }
57
58 store.dispatch(
59   MessageActions.addMessage('Would you say the fringe was made of silk?'));
60
61 store.dispatch(
62   MessageActions.addMessage('Wouldnt have no other kind but silk'));
63
64 store.dispatch(
65   MessageActions.addMessage('Has it really got a team of snow white horses?'));
66
67 console.log(store.getState());
68 // ->
```

```
69 // { messages:  
70 //   [ 'Would you say the fringe was made of silk?',  
71 //     'Wouldnt have no other kind but silk',  
72 //     'Has it really got a team of snow white horses?' ] }
```

This feels much nicer!

An added benefit is that if we eventually decided to change the format of our messages, we could do it without having to update all of our dispatch statements. For instance, say we wanted to add the time each message was created. We could add a `created_at` field to `addMessage` and now all `AddMessageActions` will be given a `created_at` field:

```
1 class MessageActions {  
2   static addMessage(message: string): AddMessageAction {  
3     return {  
4       type: 'ADD_MESSAGE',  
5       message: message,  
6       // something like this  
7       created_at: new Date()  
8     };  
9   }  
10  // ....
```

Using Real Redux

Now that we've built our own mini-redux you might be asking, "What do I need to do to use the *real* Redux?" Thankfully, not very much. Let's update our code to use the real Redux now!



If you haven't already, you'll want to run `npm install` in the `code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial` directory.

The first thing we need to do is import `Action`, `Reducer`, and `Store` from the `redux` package. We're also going to import a helper method `createStore` while we're at it:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/09-real-redux.ts

```
1 import {
2   Action,
3   Reducer,
4   Store,
5   createStore
6 } from 'redux';
```

Next, instead of specifying our initial state when we create the *store* instead we're going to let the *reducer* create the initial state. Here we'll do this as the default argument to the reducer. This way if there is no state passed in (e.g. the first time it is called at initialization) we will use the initial state:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/09-real-redux.ts

```
35 let initialState: AppState = { messages: [] };
36
37 let reducer: Reducer<AppState> =
38   (state: AppState = initialState, action: Action) => {
```

What's neat about this is that the rest of our reducer stays the same!

The last thing we need to do is create the store using the `createStore` helper method from Redux:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/09-real-redux.ts

```
58 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(reducer);
```

After that, everything else just works!

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/tutorial/09-real-redux.ts

```
58 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(reducer);
59 console.log(store.getState()); // -> { messages: [] }
60
61 store.dispatch(
62   MessageActions.addMessage('Would you say the fringe was made of silk?'));
63
64 store.dispatch(
65   MessageActions.addMessage('Wouldnt have no other kind but silk'));
66
67 store.dispatch(
68   MessageActions.addMessage('Has it really got a team of snow white horses?'));
```

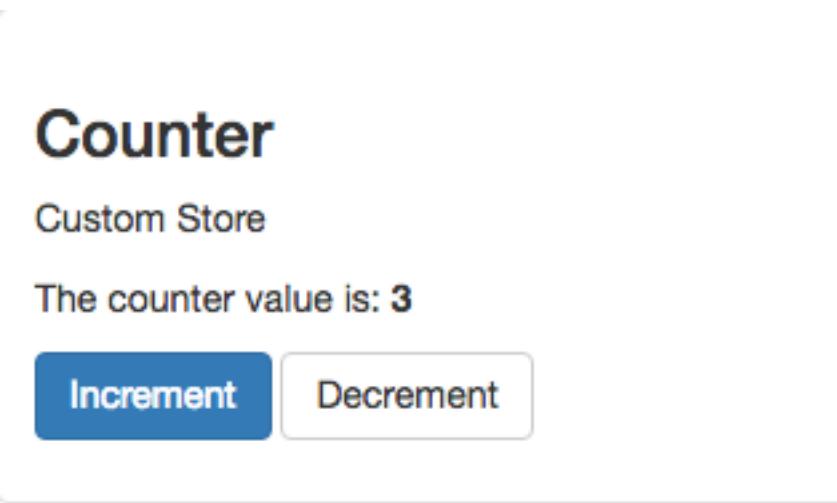
```
70 console.log(store.getState());  
71 // ->  
72 // { messages:  
73 //   [ 'Would you say the fringe was made of silk?',  
74 //     'Wouldnt have no other kind but silk',  
75 //     'Has it really got a team of snow white horses?' ] }
```

Now that we have a handle on using Redux in isolation, the next step is to hook it up to our web app. Let's do that now.

Using Redux in Angular

In the [last section](#) we walked through the core of Redux and showed how to create reducers and use stores to manage our data in isolation. Now it's time to level-up and integrate Redux with our Angular components.

In this section we're going to create a minimal Angular app that contains just a counter which we can increment and decrement with a button.



Counter App

By using such a small app we can focus on the integration points between Redux and Angular and then we can move on to a larger app in the next section. But first, let's see how to build this counter app!



Here we are going to be integrating Redux directly with Angular without any helper libraries in-between. There are several open-source libraries with the goal of making this process easier, and you can find them in the references section below.

That said, it can be much easier to use those libraries once you understand what is going on underneath the hood, which is what we work through here.

Planning Our App

If you recall, the three steps to planning our Redux apps are to:

1. Define the structure of our central app state
2. Define actions that will change that state and
3. Define a reducer that takes the old state and an action and returns a new state.

For this app, we're just going to increment and decrement a counter. We did this in the last section, and so our actions, store, and reducer will all be very familiar.

The other thing we need to do when writing Angular apps is decide where we will create components. In this app, we'll have a top-level CounterApp which will have one component, the CounterComponent which contains the view we see in the screenshot.

At a high level we're going to do the following:

1. Create our Store and make it accessible to our whole app via dependency injection
2. Subscribe to changes to the Store and display them in our components
3. When something changes (a button is pressed) we will dispatch an action to the Store.

Enough planning, let's look at how this works in practice!

Setting Up Redux

We start by importing a few things we'll need along the way:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts

```
9 import {
10   Component
11 } from '@angular/core';
12 import { NgModule } from "@angular/core";
13 import { BrowserModule } from "@angular/platform-browser";
14 import { platformBrowserDynamic } from "@angular/platform-browser-dynamic";
15 import {
16   createStore,
17   Store,
18   StoreEnhancer
19 } from 'redux';
20 import { counterReducer } from './counter-reducer';
```

We're importing `Store` (the class) and `createStore` (the helper creation function), which we've used before. We're also importing a new class called `StoreEnhancer` - more on that in a minute.

We import our reducer from `counter-reducer.ts` and our state interface `AppState` from `app-state.ts`.

Defining the Application State

Let's take a look at our `AppState`:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app-state.ts

```
9  export interface AppState {  
10    counter: number;  
11  };
```

Here we are defining our core state structure as `AppState` - it is an object with one key, `counter` which is a `number`. In the next example (the chat app) we'll talk about how to have more sophisticated states, but for now this will be fine.

Defining the Reducers

Next lets define the reducer which will handle incrementing and decrementing the counter in the application state:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/counter-reducer.ts

```
6  import {  
7    INCREMENT,  
8    DECREMENT  
9  } from './counter-action-creators';  
10  
11 let initialState: AppState = { counter: 0 };  
12  
13 // Create our reducer that will handle changes to the state  
14 export const counterReducer: Reducer<AppState> =  
15  (state: AppState = initialState, action: Action): AppState => {  
16    switch (action.type) {  
17      case INCREMENT:  
18        return Object.assign({}, state, { counter: state.counter + 1 });  
19      case DECREMENT:  
20        return Object.assign({}, state, { counter: state.counter - 1 });  
21      default:22    }
```

```
22     return state;
23   }
24 };
```

We start by importing the constants INCREMENT and DECREMENT, which are exported by our action creators. They're just defined as the strings 'INCREMENT' and 'DECREMENT', but it's nice to get the extra help from the compiler in case we make a typo. We'll look at those action creators in a minute.

The initialState is an AppState which sets the counter to 0.

The counterReducer handles two actions: INCREMENT, which adds 1 to the current counter and DECREMENT, which subtracts 1. Both actions use `Object.assign` to ensure that we don't *mutate* the old state, but instead create a new object that gets returned as the new state.

Since we're here, let's look at the action creators

Defining Action Creators

Our action creators are functions which return objects that define the action to be taken. `increment` and `decrement` below return an object that defines the appropriate type.

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/counter-action-creators.ts](#)

```
1 import {
2   Action,
3   ActionCreator
4 } from 'redux';
5
6 export const INCREMENT: string = 'INCREMENT';
7 export const increment: ActionCreator<Action> = () => ({
8   type: INCREMENT
9 });
10
11 export const DECREMENT: string = 'DECREMENT';
12 export const decrement: ActionCreator<Action> = () => ({
13   type: DECREMENT
14});
```

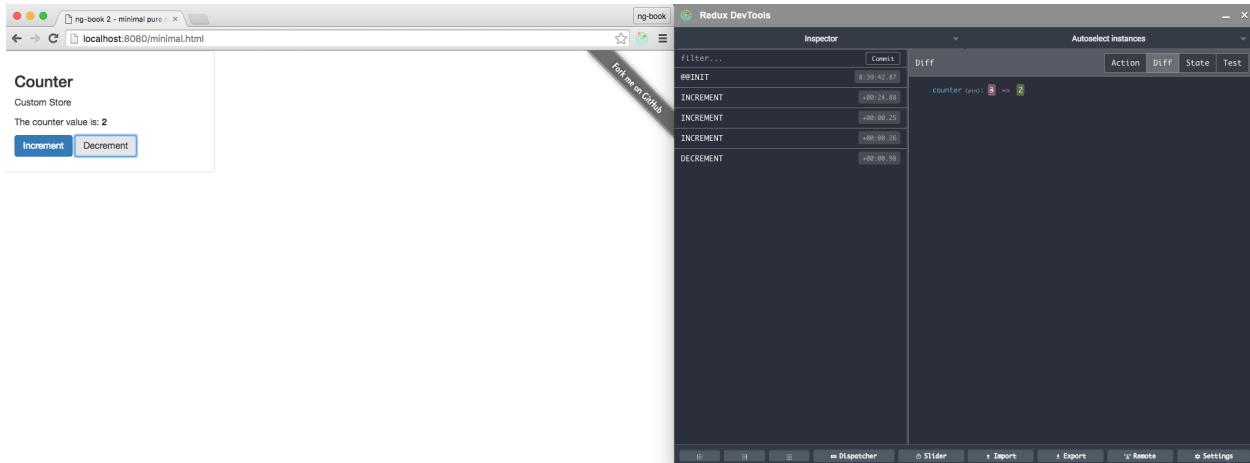
Notice that our action creator functions return the type `ActionCreator<Action>`. `ActionCreator` is a generic class defined by Redux that we use to define functions that create actions. In this case we're using the concrete class `Action`, but we could use a more specific `Action` class, such as `AddMessageAction` that we defined in the last section.

Creating the Store

Now that we have our reducer and state, we could create our store like so:

```
1 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(counterReducer);
```

However, one of the awesome things about Redux is that it has a robust set of developer tools. Specifically, there is a [Chrome extension¹⁰⁵](#) that will let us monitor the state of our application and dispatch actions.



Counter App With Redux Devtools

What's really neat about the Redux Devtools is that it gives us clear insight to every action that flows through the system and its affect on the state.



Go ahead and install [the Redux Devtools Chrome extension¹⁰⁶](#) now!

In order to use the Devtools we have to do one thing: add it to our store.

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts`

```
25 let devtools: StoreEnhancer<AppState> =
26   window['devToolsExtension'] ?
27     window['devToolsExtension']() : f => f;
```

Not everyone who uses our app will necessarily have the Redux Devtools installed. The code above will check for `window.devToolsExtension`, which is defined by Redux Devtools, and if it exists, we will use it. If it doesn't exist, we're just returning an *identity function* (`f => f`) that will return whatever is passed to it.

¹⁰⁵<https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/redux-devtools/lmhkpmbekcpmknkloieibfkpmnfibljd?hl=en>

¹⁰⁶<https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/redux-devtools/lmhkpmbekcpmknkloieibfkpmnfibljd?hl=en>



Middleware is a term for a function that enhances the functionality of another library. The Redux Devtools is one of many possible middleware libraries for Redux. Redux supports lots of interesting middleware and it's easy to write our own.

You can read more about Redux middleware here¹⁰⁷

In order to use this devtools we pass it as *middleware* to our Redux store:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts

```
29 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(
30   counterReducer,
31   devtools
32 );
```

Now whenever we dispatch an action and change our state, we can inspect it in our browser!

CounterApp Component

Now that we have the Redux core setup, let's turn our attention to our Angular components. Let's create our top-level app component, CounterApp. This will be the component we use to bootstrap Angular:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts

```
34 @Component({
35   selector: 'minimal-redux-app',
36   template: `
37     <div>
38       <counter-component>
39       </counter-component>
40     </div>
41   `
42 })
43 class CounterApp {
44 }
```

All this component does is create an instance of the CounterComponent, which we'll define in a minute. But before we define CounterComponent, let's bootstrap our app.

¹⁰⁷<http://redux.js.org/docs/advanced/Middleware.html>

Providing the Store

We're going to use the CounterApp as the root component. Remember that since this is a Redux app, we need to make our store instance accessible everywhere in our app. How should we do this? We'll use dependency injection (DI).

If you recall from the [dependency injection](#) chapter, when we want to make something available via DI, then we use the `providers` configuration to add it to the list of providers in our NgModule.

When we provide something to the DI system, we specify two things:

1. the *token* to use to refer this injectable dependency
2. the *way* to inject the dependency

Oftentimes if we want to provide a singleton service we might use the `useClass` option as in:

```
1 { provide: SpotifyService, useClass: SpotifyService }
```

In the case above, we're using the class `SpotifyService` as the *token* in the DI system. The `useClass` option tells Angular to *create an instance* of `SpotifyService` and reuse that instance whenever the `SpotifyService` injection is requested (e.g. maintain a Singleton).

One problem with us using this method is that we don't want Angular to create our store - we did it ourselves above with `createStore`. We just want to use the store we've already created.

To do this we'll use the `useValue` option of `provide`. We've done this before with configurable values like `API_URL`:

```
1 { provide: API_URL, useValue: 'http://localhost/api' }
```

The one thing we have left to figure out is what token we want to use to inject. Our store is of type `Store<AppState>`:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts`

```
29 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(
30   counterReducer,
31   devtools
32 );
```

Store is an *interface*, not a class and, unfortunately, we can't use interfaces as a dependency injection key.



If you're interested in *why* we can't use an interface as a DI key, it's because TypeScript interfaces are removed after compilation and not available at runtime.

If you'd like to read more, see [here¹⁰⁸](#), [here¹⁰⁹](#), and [here¹¹⁰](#).

This means we need to create our own token that we'll use for injecting the store. Thankfully, Angular makes this easy to do. Let's create this token in its own file so that way we can import it from anywhere in our application;

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app-store.ts`

```
1 import { OpaqueToken } from '@angular/core';
2
3 export const AppStore = new OpaqueToken('App.store');
```

Here we have created a `const AppStore` which uses the `OpaqueToken` class from Angular. `OpaqueToken` is a better choice than injecting a string directly because it helps us avoid collisions.

Now we can use this token `AppStore` with `provide`. Let's do that now.

Bootstrapping the App

Back in `app.ts`, let's create the `NgModule` we'll use to bootstrap our app:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/app.ts`

```
46 @NgModule({
47   declarations: [
48     CounterApp,
49     CounterComponent
50   ],
51   imports: [ BrowserModule ],
52   bootstrap: [ CounterApp ],
53   providers: [
54     {provide: AppStore, useValue: store }
55   ]
56
57 })
58 class CounterApp AppModule {}
59
60 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(CounterApp AppModule)
```

¹⁰⁸<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/32254952/binding-a-class-to-an-interface>

¹⁰⁹<https://github.com/angular/angular/issues/135>

¹¹⁰<http://victorsavkin.com/post/126514197956/dependency-injection-in-angular-1-and-angular-2>

Now we are able to get a reference to our Redux store anywhere in our app by injecting AppStore. The place we need it most now is our CounterComponent.

The CounterComponent

With our setup out of the way, we can start creating our component that actually displays the counter to the user and provides buttons for the user to change the state.

imports

Let's start by looking at the imports:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/CounterComponent.ts

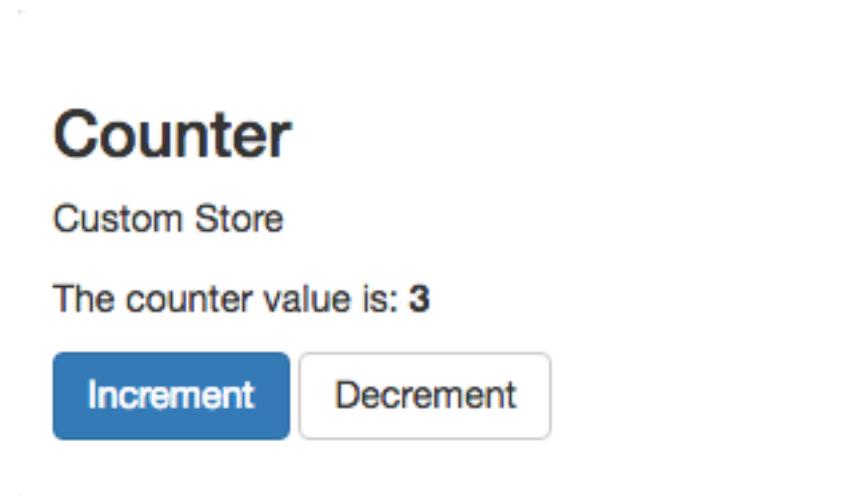
```
8 import {  
9   Component,  
10  Inject  
11 } from '@angular/core';  
12 import { Store } from 'redux';  
13 import { AppStore } from './app-store';  
14 import { AppState } from './app-state';  
15 import * as CounterActions from './counter-action-creators';
```

We import Store from Redux as well as our injector token AppStore, which will get us a reference to the singleton *instance* of our store. We also import the AppState type, which helps us know the structure of the central state.

Lastly, we import our action creators with * as CounterActions. This syntax will let us call CounterActions.increment() to create an INCREMENT action.

The template

Let's look at the template of our CounterComponent:



Counter App Template

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/CounterComponent.ts

```
16 @Component({
17   selector: 'counter-component',
18   template: `
19     <div class="row">
20       <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4">
21         <div class="thumbnail">
22           <div class="caption">
23             <h3>Counter</h3>
24             <p>Custom Store</p>
25
26             <p>
27               The counter value is:
28               <b>{{ counter }}</b>
29             </p>
30
31             <p>
32               <button (click)="increment()" 
33                 class="btn btn-primary">
34                 Increment
35               </button>
36               <button (click)="decrement()" 
37                 class="btn btn-default">
38                 Decrement
39               </button>
40             </p>
```

```
41      </div>
42      </div>
43      </div>
44      </div>
45  `
```

The three things to note here are that we're:

1. displaying the value of the counter in `{} counter {}`
2. calling the `increment()` function in a button and
3. calling the `decrement()` function in a button.

The constructor

Remember that we need this component depends on the Store, so we need to inject it in the constructor. This is how we use our custom AppStore token to inject a dependency:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/CounterComponent.ts`

```
48  export default class CounterComponent {
49      counter: number;
50
51      constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>) {
52          store.subscribe(() => this.readState());
53          this.readState();
54      }
55
56      readState() {
57          let state: AppState = this.store.getState() as AppState;
58          this.counter = state.counter;
59      }
60
61      increment() {
62          this.store.dispatch(CounterActions.increment());
63      }
64
65      decrement() {
66          this.store.dispatch(CounterActions.decrement());
67      }
68 }
```

We use the `@Inject` annotation to inject `AppStore` - notice that we define the type of the variable `store` to `Store<AppState>`. Having a different injection token than the type of the dependency injected is a little different than when we use the class as the injection token (and Angular infers what to inject).

We set the `store` to an instance variable (with `private store`). Now that we have the store we can listen for changes. Here we call `store.subscribe` and call `this.readState()`, which we define below.

The store will call `subscribe` only when a new action is dispatched, so in this case we need to make sure we manually call `readState` at least once to ensure that our component gets the initial data.

The method `readState` reads from our store and updates `this.counter` to the current value. Because `this.counter` is a property on this class and bound in the view, Angular will detect when it changes and re-render this component.

We define two helper methods: `increment` and `decrement`, each of which dispatch their respective actions to the store.

Putting It All Together

Here's the full listing of our `CounterComponent`

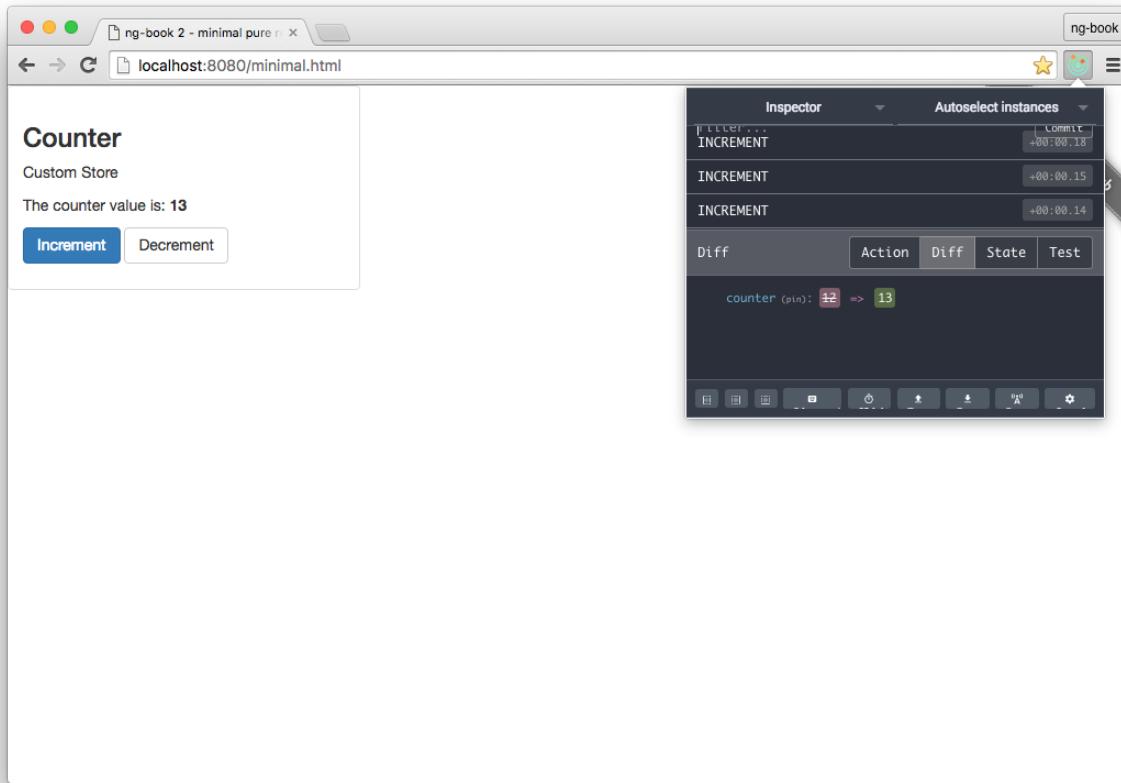
[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/minimal/CounterComponent.ts](#)

```
8 import {
9   Component,
10  Inject
11 } from '@angular/core';
12 import { Store } from 'redux';
13 import { AppStore } from './app-store';
14 import { AppState } from './app-state';
15 import * as CounterActions from './counter-action-creators';
16
17 @Component({
18   selector: 'counter-component',
19   template: `
20     <div class="row">
21       <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4">
22         <div class="thumbnail">
23           <div class="caption">
24             <h3>Counter</h3>
25             <p>Custom Store</p>
26
27           <p>
```

```
28      The counter value is:  
29      <b>{{ counter }}</b>  
30    </p>  
31  
32    <p>  
33      <button (click)="increment()"  
34        class="btn btn-primary">  
35        Increment  
36      </button>  
37      <button (click)="decrement()"  
38        class="btn btn-default">  
39        Decrement  
40      </button>  
41    </p>  
42  </div>  
43  </div>  
44  </div>  
45 </div>  
46 `  
47 })  
48 export default class CounterComponent {  
49   counter: number;  
50  
51   constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>) {  
52     store.subscribe(() => this.readState());  
53     this.readState();  
54   }  
55  
56   readState() {  
57     let state: AppState = this.store.getState() as AppState;  
58     this.counter = state.counter;  
59   }  
60  
61   increment() {  
62     this.store.dispatch(CounterActions.increment());  
63   }  
64  
65   decrement() {  
66     this.store.dispatch(CounterActions.decrement());  
67   }  
68 }
```

Try it out!

- 1 cd code/redux/angular2-redux-chat
- 2 npm install
- 3 npm run go
- 4 open http://localhost:8080/minimal.html



Working Counter App

Congratulations! You've created your first Angular and Redux app!

What's Next

Now that we've built a basic app using Redux and Angular, we should try building a more complicated app. When we build bigger apps we encounter new challenges like:

- How do we combine reducers?

- How do we extract data from different branches of the state?
- How should we organize our Redux code?

In the next chapter, we'll build a chat app which will tackle all of these questions!

References

If you want to learn more about Redux, here are some good resources:

- [Official Redux Website¹¹¹](#)
- [This Video Tutorial by Redux's Creator¹¹²](#)
- [Real World Redux¹¹³](#) (presentation slides)
- [The power of higher-order reducers¹¹⁴](#)

To learn more about Redux and Angular checkout:

- [angular2-redux¹¹⁵](#)
- [ng2-redux¹¹⁶](#)
- [ngrx/store¹¹⁷](#)

Onward!

¹¹¹<http://redux.js.org/>

¹¹²<https://egghead.io/courses/getting-started-with-redux>

¹¹³<https://speakerdeck.com/chrisui/real-world-redux>

¹¹⁴<http://slides.com/omnidan/hor>

¹¹⁵<https://github.com/InfomediaLtd/angular2-redux>

¹¹⁶<https://github.com/angular-redux/ng2-redux>

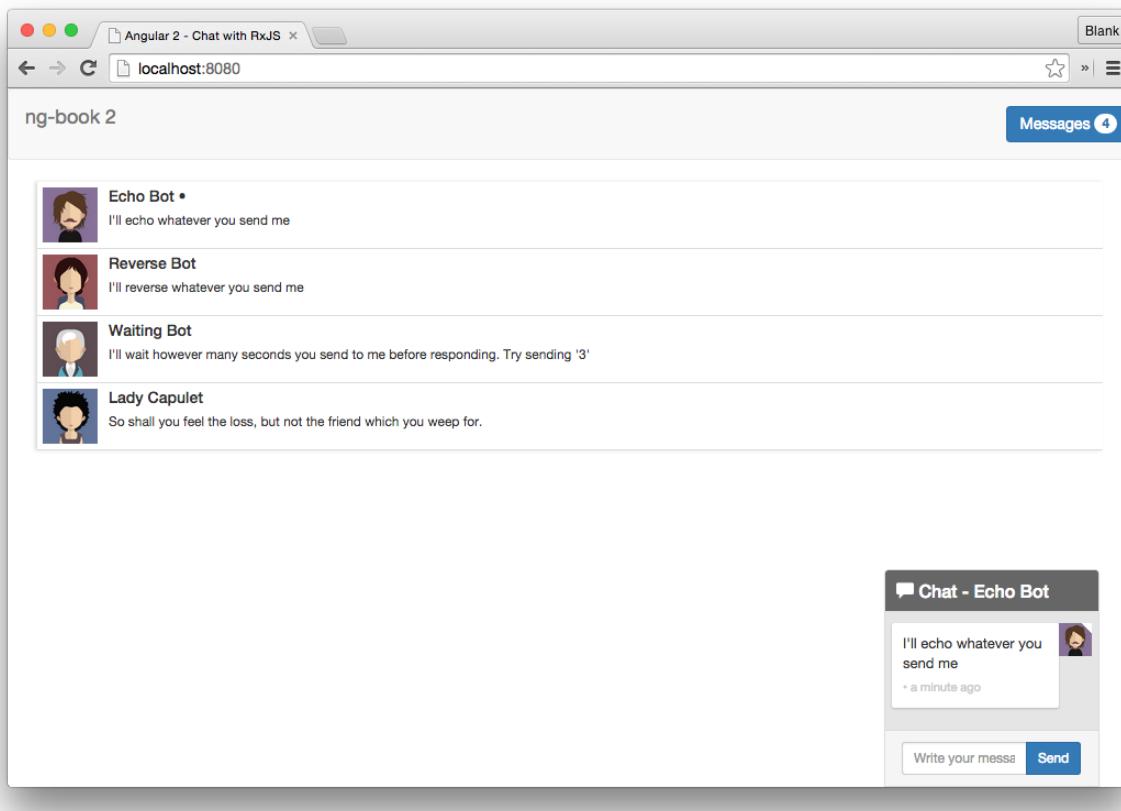
¹¹⁷<https://github.com/ngrx/store>

Intermediate Redux in Angular

In the last chapter we learned about Redux, the popular and elegant data architecture. In that chapter, we built an extremely basic app that tied our Angular components and the Redux store together.

In this chapter we're going to take on those ideas and build on them to create a more sophisticated chat app.

Here's a screenshot of the app we're going to build:



Completed Chat Application

Context For This Chapter

Earlier in this book we [built a chat app using RxJS](#). We're going to be building that same app again only this time with Redux. The point is for you to be able to compare and contrast how the same app works with different data architecture strategies.

You are not required to have read the RxJS chapter in order to work through this one. This chapter stands on its own with regard to the RxJS chapters. If you have read that chapter, you'll be able to skim through some of the sections here where the code is largely the same (for instance, the data models themselves don't change much).

We *do* expect that you've read through the previous Redux chapter or at least have some familiarity with Redux.

Chat App Overview

In this application we've provided a few bots you can chat with. Open up the code and try it out:

```
1 cd code/redux/angular2-redux-chat  
2 npm install  
3 npm run go
```

Now open your browser to <http://localhost:8080>.



If the above URL doesn't work, try this URL: <http://localhost:8080/webpack-dev-server/index.html>



Some Windows users may have trouble doing an `npm install` on this repo. If this causes problems for you, make sure you're running these commands inside [Cygwin¹¹⁸](#).

Notice a few things about this application:

- You can click on the threads to chat with another person
- The bots will send you messages back, depending on their personality
- The unread message count in the top corner stays in sync with the number of unread messages

Let's look at an overview of how this app is constructed. We have

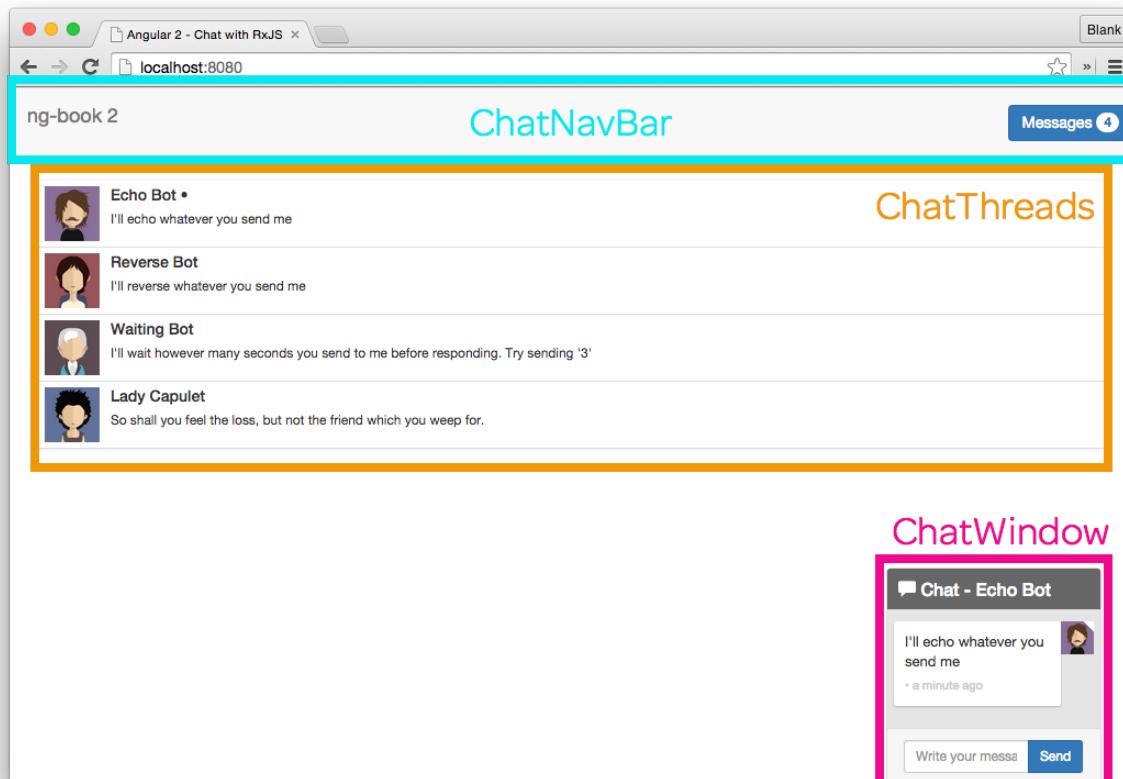
- 3 top-level Angular Components
- 3 models
- and 2 reducers, with their respective action creators

Let's look at them one at a time.

¹¹⁸<https://www.cygwin.com/>

Components

The page is broken down into three top-level components:

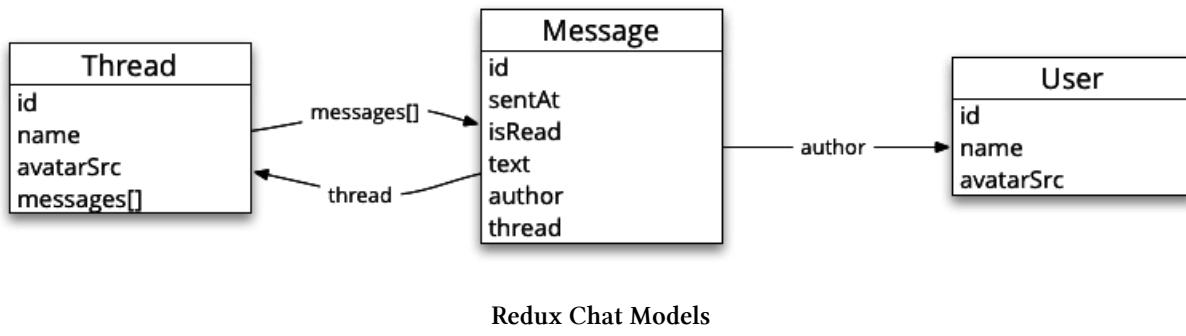


Redux Chat Top-Level Components

- ChatNavBar - contains the unread messages count
- ChatThreads - shows a clickable list of threads, along with the most recent message and the conversation avatar
- ChatWindow - shows the messages in the current thread with an input box to send new messages

Models

This application also has three models:



- User - stores information about a chat participant
- Message - stores an individual message
- Thread - stores a collection of Messages as well as some data about the conversation

Reducers

In this app, we have two reducers:

- `UsersReducer` - handles information about the current user
- `ThreadsReducer` - handles threads and their messages

Summary

At a high level our data architecture looks like this:

- All information about the users and threads (which hold messages) are contained in our central store
- Components subscribe to changes in that store and display the appropriate data (unread count, list of threads, the messages themselves)
- When the user sends a message, our components dispatch an action to the store

In the rest of this chapter, we're going to go in-depth on how we implement this using Angular and Redux. We'll start by implementing our models, then look at how we create our app state and reducers, and then finally we'll implement the Components.

Implementing the Models

Let's start with the easy stuff and take a look at the models.

We're going to be specifying each of our model definitions as `interfaces`. This isn't a requirement and you're free to use more elaborate objects if you wish. That said, objects with methods that mutate their internal state can break the functional model that we're striving for.

That is, all mutations to our app state should only be made by the reducers - the objects in the state should be immutable themselves.

So by defining an `interface` for our models,

1. we're able to ensure that the objects we're working with conform to an expected format at compile time and
2. we don't run the risk of someone accidentally adding a method to the model object that would work in an unexpected way.

User

Our `User` interface has an `id`, `name`, and `avatarSrc`.

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/models/User.ts`

```
12 export interface User {  
13   id: string;  
14   name: string;  
15   avatarSrc: string;  
16   isClient?: boolean;  
17 }
```

We also have a boolean `isClient` (the question mark indicates that this field is optional). We will set this value to `true` for the `User` that represents the client, the person using the app.

Thread

Similarly, `Thread` is also a TypeScript interface:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/models/Thread.ts

```
14 export interface Thread {  
15   id: string;  
16   name: string;  
17   avatarSrc: string;  
18   messages: Message[];  
19 }
```

We store the `id` of the Thread, the `name`, and the current `avatarSrc`. We also expect an array of Messages in the `messages` field.

Message

Message is our third and final model interface:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/models/Message.ts

```
15 export interface Message {  
16   id?: string;  
17   sentAt?: Date;  
18   isRead?: boolean;  
19   thread?: Thread;  
20   author: User;  
21   text: string;  
22 }
```

Each message has:

- `id` - the id of the message
- `sentAt` - when the message was sent
- `isRead` - a boolean indicating that the message was read
- `author` - the User who wrote this message
- `text` - the text of the message
- `thread` - a reference to the containing Thread

App State

Now that we have our models, let's talk about the shape of our central state. In the previous chapter, our central state was a single object with the key `counter` which had the value of a number. This app, however, is more complicated.

Here's the first part of our app state:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/index.ts

```
26 export interface AppState {  
27   users: UsersState;  
28   threads: ThreadsState;  
29 }
```

Our AppState is also an interface and it has two top level keys: users and threads - these are defined by two more interfaces UsersState and ThreadsState, which are defined in their respective reducers.

A Word on Code Layout

This is a common pattern we use in Redux apps: the top level state has a top-level key for each reducer. In our app we're going to keep this top-level reducer in `reducers/index.ts`.

Each reducer will have its own file. In that file we'll store:

- The interface that describes that branch of the state tree
- The value of the initial state, for that branch of the state tree
- The reducer itself
- Any *selectors* that query that branch of the state tree - we haven't talked about *selectors* yet, but we will soon.

The reason we keep all of these different things together is because they all deal with the structure of this branch of the state tree. By putting these things in the same file it's very easy to refactor everything at the same time.

You're free to have multiple layers of nesting, if you so desire. It's a nice way to break up large modules in your app.

The Root Reducer

Since we're talking about how to split up reducers, let's look at our root reducer now:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/index.ts

```
26 export interface AppState {  
27   users: UsersState;  
28   threads: ThreadsState;  
29 }  
30  
31 const rootReducer: Reducer<AppState> = combineReducers<AppState>({  
32   users: UsersReducer,  
33   threads: ThreadsReducer  
34 });
```

Notice the symmetry here - our `UsersReducer` will operate on the `users` key, which is of type `UsersState` and our `ThreadsReducer` will operate on the `threads` key, which is of type `ThreadsState`.

This is made possible by the `combineReducers` function which takes a map of keys and reducers and returns a new reducer that operates appropriately on those keys.

Of course we haven't finished looking at the structure of our `AppState` yet, so let's do that now.

The `UsersState`

Our `UsersState` holds a reference to the `currentUser`.

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/UsersReducer.ts

```
18 export interface UsersState {  
19   currentUser: User;  
20 };  
21  
22 const initialState: UsersState = {  
23   currentUser: null  
24 };
```

You could imagine that this branch of the state tree could hold information about all of the users, when they were last seen, their idle time, etc. But for now this will suffice.

We'll use `initialState` in our reducer when we define it below, but for now we're just going to set the current user to `null`.

The `ThreadsState`

Let's look at the `ThreadsState`:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```

33 export interface ThreadsEntities {
34   [id: string]: Thread;
35 }
36
37 export interface ThreadsState {
38   ids: string[];
39   entities: ThreadsEntities;
40   currentThreadId?: string;
41 };
42
43 const initialState: ThreadsState = {
44   ids: [],
45   currentThreadId: null,
46   entities: {}
47 };

```

We start by defining an interface called `ThreadsEntities` which is a map of thread `ids` to `Threads`. The idea is that we'll be able to look up any thread by id in this map.

In the `ThreadsState` we're also storing an array of the `ids`. This will store the list of possible ids that we might find in `entities`.



This strategy is used by the commonly-used library `normalizr`¹¹⁹. The idea is that when we standardize how we store entities in our Redux state, we're able to build helper libraries and it's clearer to work with. Instead of wondering what the format is for each tree of the state, when we use `normalizr` a lot of the choices have been made for us and we're able to work more quickly.

I've opted not to teach `normalizr` in this chapter because we're learning so many other things. That said, I would be very likely to use `normalizr` in my production applications.

That said, `normalizr` is totally optional - nothing major changes in our app by not using it.

If you'd like to learn how to use `normalizr`, checkout [the official docs](#)¹²⁰, [this blog post](#)¹²¹, and the [thread referenced by Redux creator Dan Abramov here](#)¹²²

We store the currently viewed thread in `currentThreadId` - the idea here is that we want to know which thread the user is currently looking at.

We set our `initialState` to “empty” values.

¹¹⁹<https://github.com/paularmstrong/normalizr>

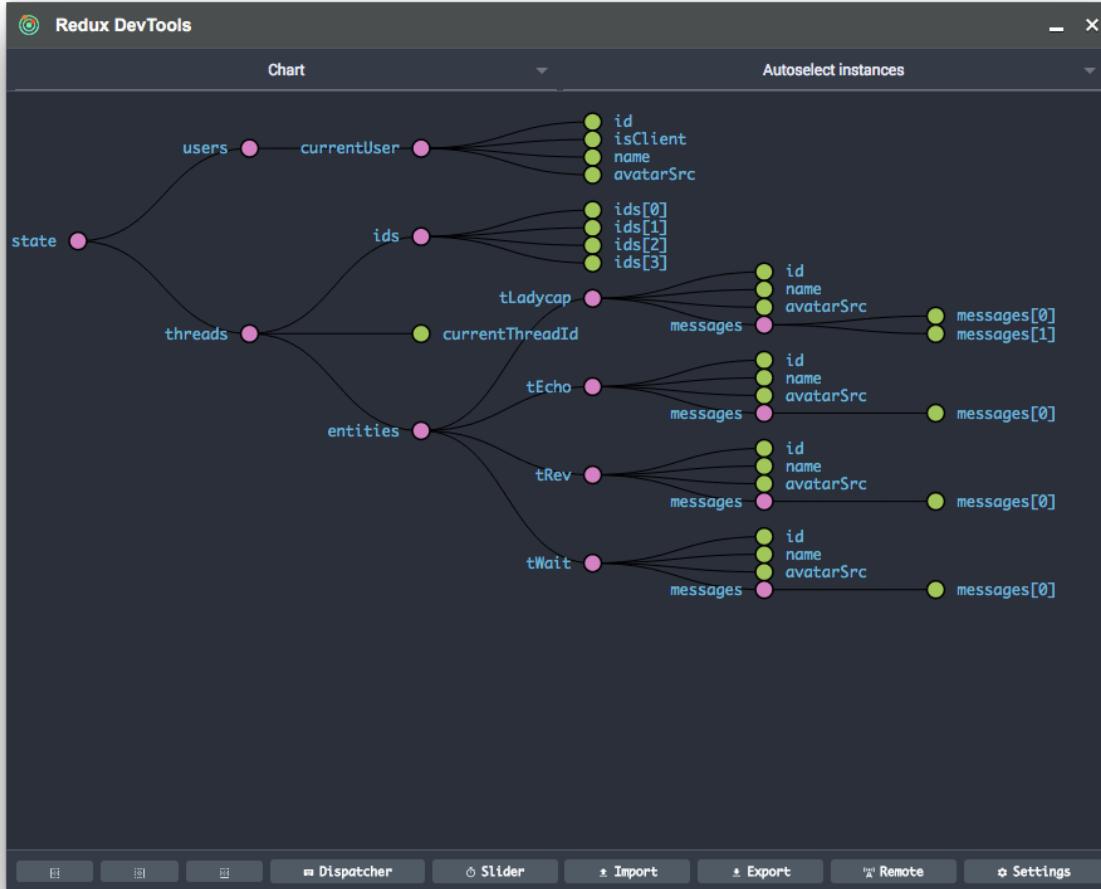
¹²⁰<https://github.com/paularmstrong/normalizr>

¹²¹<https://medium.com/@mcowpercoles/using-normalizr-js-in-a-redux-store-96ab33991369#.l8ur7ipu6>

¹²²https://twitter.com/dan_abramov/status/663032263702106112

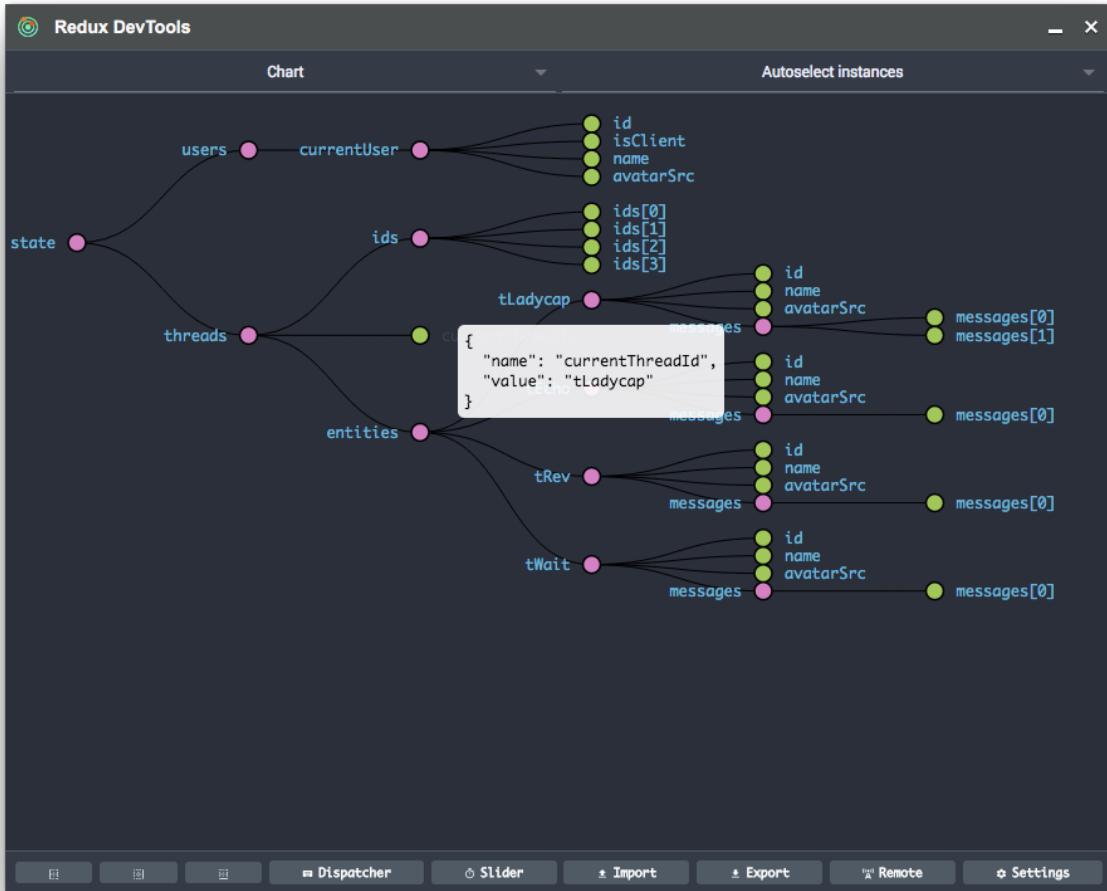
Visualizing Our AppState

Redux Devtools provides us with a “Chart” view that lets us inspect the state of our app. Here’s what mine looks like after being booted with all of the demo data:



Redux Chat State Chart

What’s neat is that we can hover over an individual node and see the attributes of that piece of data:



Inspecting the current thread

Building the Reducers (and Action Creators)

Now that we have our central state, we can start changing it using our reducers!

Since reducers handle actions, we need to know the format of our actions in our reducer. So let's build our action creators at the same time we build our reducers

Set Current User Action Creators

The `UsersState` stores the current user. This means we need an action to set the current user. We're going to keep our actions in the `actions` folder and name the actions to match their corresponding reducer, in this case `UserActions`.

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/actions/UserActions.ts

```

20 export const SET_CURRENT_USER = '[User] Set Current';
21 export interface SetCurrentUserAction extends Action {
22   user: User;
23 }
24 export const setCurrentUser: ActionCreator<SetCurrentUserAction> =
25   (user) => ({
26     type: SET_CURRENT_USER,
27     user: user
28   });

```

Here we define the const SET_CURRENT_USER, which we'll use to switch on in our reducer.

We also define a new subinterface SetCurrentUserAction which extends Action to add a user property. We'll use the user property to indicate *which user* we want to make the current user.

The function setCurrentUser is our proper action creator function. It takes user as an argument, and returns a SetCurrentUserAction which we can give to our reducer.

UsersReducer - Set Current User

Now we turn our attention to our UsersReducer:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/UsersReducer.ts

```

26 export const UsersReducer =
27   function(state: UsersState = initialState, action: Action): UsersState {
28     switch (action.type) {
29       case UserActions.SET_CURRENT_USER:
30         const user: User = (<UserActions.SetCurrentUserAction>action).user;
31         return {
32           currentUser: user
33         };
34       default:
35         return state;
36     }
37   };

```

Our UsersReducer takes a UsersState as the first argument. Notice that this isn't the AppState! Our "child reducer" only works with it's branch of the state tree.

Our UsersReducer, like all reducers, returns a new state, in this case it is of type UsersState.

Next we switch on the `action.type` and we handle the `UserActions.SET_CURRENT_USER`.

In order to set the current user, we need to get the user from the incoming action. To do this, we first cast the action to `UserActions.SetCurrentUserAction` and then we read the `.user` field.



It might seem a little weird that we originally created a `SetCurrentUserAction` but then now we switch on a type string instead of using the type directly.

Indeed, we are fighting TypeScript a little here. We lose interface metadata when the TypeScript is compiled to JavaScript. We could instead try some sort of reflection (through decorator metadata, or looking at a constructor etc.).

While down-casting our `SetCurrentUserAction` to an `Action` on `dispatch` and then re-casting is a bit ugly, it's a straightforward and portable way to handle this "polymorphic dispatch" for this app.

We need to return a new `UsersState`. Since `UsersState` only has one key, we return an object with the `currentUser` set to the incoming action's `user`.

Thread and Messages Overview

The core of our application is messages in threads. There are three actions we need to support:

1. Adding a new thread to the state
2. Adding messages to a thread
3. Selecting a thread

Let's start by creating a new thread

Adding a New Thread Action Creators

Here's the action creator for adding a new `Thread` to our state:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/actions/ThreadActions.ts

```
24 export const ADD_THREAD = '[Thread] Add';
25 export interface AddThreadAction extends Action {
26   thread: Thread;
27 }
28 export const addThread: ActionCreator<AddThreadAction> =
29   (thread) => ({
30     type: ADD_THREAD,
31     thread: thread
32  });
```

Notice that this is structurally very similar to our previous action creator. We define a const ADD_THREAD that we can switch on, a custom Action, and an action creator addThread which generates the Action.

Notice that we don't initialize the Thread itself here - the Thread is accepted as an argument.

Adding a New Thread Reducer

Now let's start our ThreadsReducer by handling ADD_THREAD:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```

53  export const ThreadsReducer =
54    function(state: ThreadsState = initialState, action: Action): ThreadsState {
55      switch (action.type) {
56
57        // Adds a new Thread to the list of entities
58        case ThreadActions.ADD_THREAD: {
59          const thread = (<ThreadActions.AddThreadAction>action).thread;
60
61          if (state.ids.includes(thread.id)) {
62            return state;
63          }
64
65          return {
66            ids: [ ...state.ids, thread.id ],
67            currentThreadId: state.currentThreadId,
68            entities: Object.assign({}, state.entities, {
69              [thread.id]: thread
70            })
71          };
72        }
73      }
74      // Adds a new Message to a particular Thread

```

Our ThreadsReducer handles the ThreadsState. When we handle the ADD_THREAD action, we cast the action object back into a ThreadActions.AddThreadAction and then pull the Thread out.

Next we check to see if this new thread.id already appears in the list of state.ids. If it does, then we don't make any changes, but instead return the current state.

However if this thread is new, then we need to add it to our current state.

Remember when we create a new ThreadsState we need to take care to now mutate our old state. This looks more complicated than any state we've done so far, but it's not very different in principle.

We start by adding our `thread.id` to the `ids` array. Here we're using the ES6 spread operator (...) to indicate that we want to put all of the existing `state.ids` into this new array and then append `thread.id` to the end.

`currentThreadId` does not change when we add a new thread, so we return the *old* `state.currentThreadId` for this field.

For `entities`, remember that it is an object where the key is the string `id` of each thread and the value is the thread itself. We're using `Object.assign` here to create a new object that merges the old `state.entities` with our newly added `thread` into a new object.



You might be kind of tired of meticulously copying these objects when we need to make changes. That's a common response! In fact, it's easy to make mutations here by accident.

This is why [Immutable.js¹²³](#) was written. Immutable.js is often used with Redux for this purpose. When we use Immutable, these careful updates are handled for us.

I'd encourage you to take a look at Immutable.js and see if it is a good fit for your reducers.

Now we can add new threads to our central state!

Adding New Messages Action Creators

Now that we have threads we can start adding messages to them.

Let's define a new action for adding messages:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/actions/ThreadActions.ts`

```
34 export const ADD_MESSAGE = '[Thread] Add Message';
35 export interface AddMessageAction extends Action {
36   thread: Thread;
37   message: Message;
38 }
```

The `AddMessageAction` adds a `Message` to a `Thread`.

Here's the action creator for adding a message:

¹²³<https://facebook.github.io/imutable-js/>

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/actions/ThreadActions.ts

```
39 export const addMessage: ActionCreator<AddMessageAction> =
40   (thread: Thread, messageArgs: Message): AddMessageAction => {
41     const defaults = {
42       id: uuid(),
43       sentAt: new Date(),
44       isRead: false,
45       thread: thread
46     };
47     const message: Message = Object.assign({}, defaults, messageArgs);
48
49     return {
50       type: ADD_MESSAGE,
51       thread: thread,
52       message: message
53     };
54   };
```

The `addMessage` action creator accepts a `thread` and an object we use for crafting the message. Notice here that we keep a list of `defaults`. The idea here is that we want to encapsulate creating an `id`, setting the timestamp, and setting the `isRead` status. Someone who wants to send a message shouldn't have to worry about how the UUIDs are formed, for instance.

That said, maybe the client using this library crafted the message beforehand and if they send a message with an existing `id`, we want to keep it. To enable this default behavior we merge the `messageArgs` into the `defaults` and copy those values to a new object.

Lastly we return the `ADD_MESSAGE` action with the `this thread` and new `message`.

Adding A New Message Reducer

Now we will add our `ADD_MESSAGE` handler to our `ThreadsReducer`. When a new message is added, we need to take the `thread` and add the message to it.

There is one tricky thing we need to handle that may not be obvious at this point: if the `thread` is the “current thread” we need to *mark this message as read*.

The user will always have one thread that is the “current thread” that they’re looking at. We’re going to say that if a new message is added to the current thread, then it’s automatically marked as read.

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```
75  case ThreadActions.ADD_MESSAGE: {
76    const thread = (<ThreadActions.AddMessageAction>action).thread;
77    const message = (<ThreadActions.AddMessageAction>action).message;
78
79    // special case: if the message being added is in the current thread, then
80    // mark it as read
81    const isRead = message.thread.id === state.currentThreadId ?
82      true : message.isRead;
83    const newMessage = Object.assign({}, message, { isRead: isRead });
84
85    // grab the old thraed from entities
86    const oldThread = state.entities[thread.id];
87
88    // create a new thread which has our newMessage
89    const newThread = Object.assign({}, oldThread, {
90      messages: [...oldThread.messages, newMessage]
91    });
92
93    return {
94      ids: state.ids, // unchanged
95      currentThreadId: state.currentThreadId, // unchanged
96      entities: Object.assign({}, state.entities, {
97        [thread.id]: newThread
98      })
99    };
100  }
101
102  // Select a particular thread in the UI
```

The code is a bit long because we're being careful not to mutate the original thread, but it is not much different than what we've done so far in principle.

We start by extracting the `thread` and `message`.

Next we mark the message as read, if its part of the "current thread" (we'll look at how to set the current thread next).

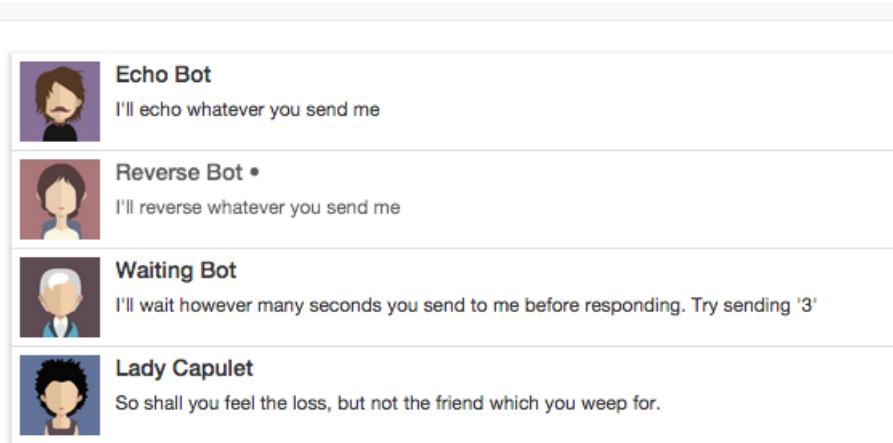
Then we grab the `oldThread` and create a `newThread` which has the `newMessage` appended on to the old `messages`.

Finally we return the new `ThreadsState`. The current list of thread `ids` and the `currentThreadId` are unchanged by adding a message, so we pass the old values here. The only thing we change is that we update `entities` with our `newThread`.

Now let's implement the last part of our data backbone: selecting a thread.

Selecting A Thread Action Creators

Our user can have multiple chat sessions in progress at the same time. However, we only have one chat window (where the user can read and send messages). When the user clicks on a thread, we want to show that thread's messages in the chat window.



Selecting A Thread

We need to keep track of which thread is the currently selected thread. To do that, we'll use the `currentThreadId` property in the `ThreadsState`.

Let's create the actions for this:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/actions/ThreadActions.ts](#)

```

56 export const SELECT_THREAD = '[Thread] Select';
57 export interface SelectThreadAction extends Action {
58   thread: Thread;
59 }
60 export const selectThread: ActionCreator<SelectThreadAction> =
61   (thread) => ({
62     type: SELECT_THREAD,
63     thread: thread
64   });

```

There's nothing conceptually new in this action: we've got a new type of `SELECT_THREAD` and we pass the `Thread` that we're selecting as an argument.

Selecting A Thread Reducer

To select a thread we need to do two things:

1. set `currentThreadId` to the selected thread's id
2. mark all messages in that thread as read

Here's the code for that reducer:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts`

```

103   case ThreadActions.SELECT_THREAD: {
104     const thread = (<ThreadActions.SelectThreadAction>action).thread;
105     const oldThread = state.entities[thread.id];
106
107     // mark the messages as read
108     const newMessages = oldThread.messages.map(
109       (message) => Object.assign({}, message, { isRead: true }));
110
111     // give them to this new thread
112     const newThread = Object.assign({}, oldThread, {
113       messages: newMessages
114     });
115
116     return {
117       ids: state.ids,
118       currentThreadId: thread.id,
119       entities: Object.assign({}, state.entities, {
120         [thread.id]: newThread
121       })
122     };
123   }
124
125   default:
126     return state;
127   }
128 };

```

We start by getting the thread-to-select and then using that `thread.id` to get the current Thread that exists in `state` to get the values.



This maneuver is a bit defensive. Why not just use the `thread` that is passed in? That might be the right design decision for some apps. In this case we protect against some external mutation of `thread` by reading the last known values of that thread in `state.entities`.

Next we create a copy of all of the old messages and set them as `isRead: true`. Then we assign those new read messages to `newThread`.

Finally we return our new `ThreadsState`.

Reducers Summary

We did it! Above is everything we need for the backbone of our data architecture.

To recap, we have a `UsersReducer` which maintains the current user. We have a `ThreadsReducer` which manages:

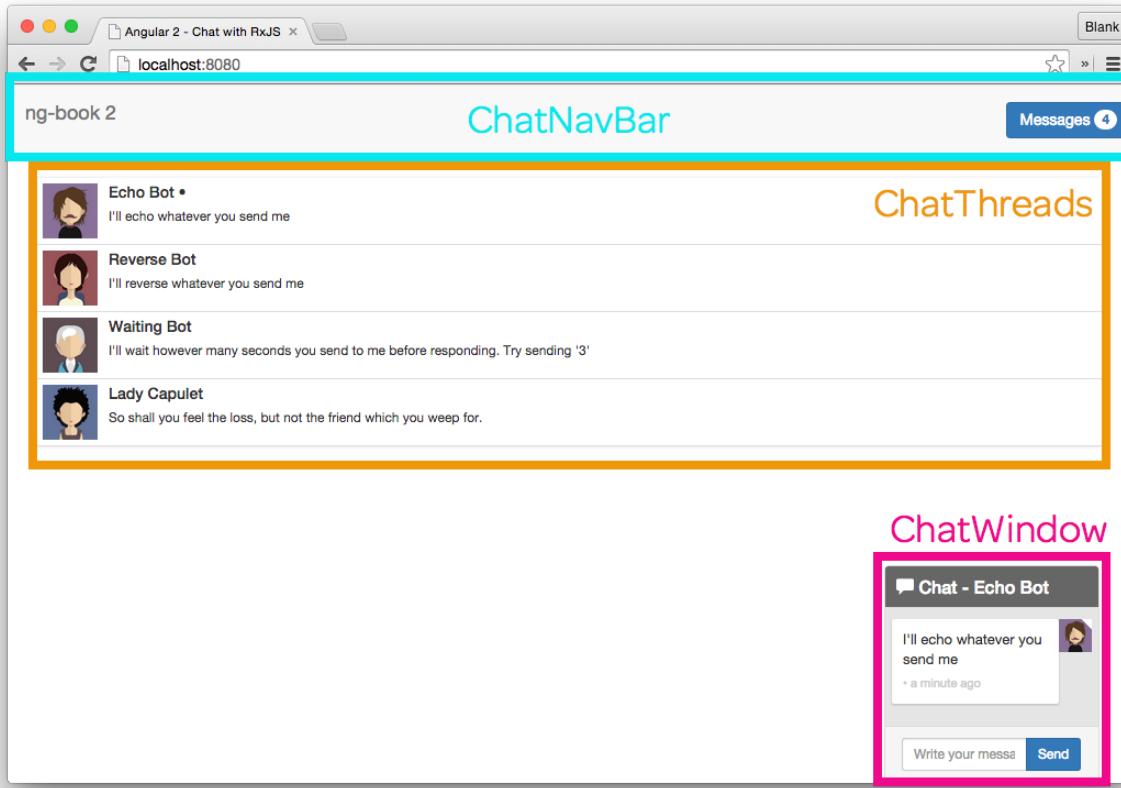
- The list of threads
- The messages in those threads
- The currently selected thread

We can derive everything else that we need (e.g. the unread count) from these pieces of data.

Now we need to hook them up to our components!

Building the Angular Chat App

As we mentioned earlier in the chapter, the page is broken down into three top-level components:



Redux Chat Top-Level Components

- ChatNavBar - contains the unread messages count
- ChatThreads - shows a clickable list of threads, along with the most recent message and the conversation avatar
- ChatWindow - shows the messages in the current thread with an input box to send new messages

We're going to bootstrap our app [much like we did in the last chapter](#). We're going to initialize our Redux store at the top of the app and provide it via Angular's dependency injection system (take a look at the previous chapter if this looks unfamiliar):

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/app.ts

```
58 let store: Store<AppState> = createStore<AppState>(
59   reducer,
60   compose(devtools)
61 );
62
63 @NgModule({
64   declarations: [
65     ChatApp,
66     ChatPage,
67     ChatThreads,
68     ChatNavBar,
69     ChatWindow,
70     ChatThread,
71     ChatMessage,
72     FromNowPipe
73   ],
74   imports: [
75     BrowserModule,
76     FormsModule
77   ],
78   bootstrap: [ ChatApp ],
79   providers: [
80     { provide: AppStore, useFactory: () => store }
81   ]
82 })
83 class Chat AppModule {}
84
85 platformBrowserDynamic().bootstrapModule(Chat AppModule)
```

The top-level ChatApp

Our ChatApp component is the top-level component. It doesn't do much other than render the ChatPage.

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/app.ts

```
40 @Component({
41   selector: 'chat-app',
42   template: `
43     <div>
44       <chat-page></chat-page>
45     </div>
46   `
47 })
48 class ChatApp {
49   constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>) {
50     ChatExampleData(store);
51   }
52 }
```



For this app the bots operate on data on the client and are not connected to a server. The function `ChatExampleData()` sets up the initial data for the app. We won't be covering this code in detail in the book, so feel free to look at the code on disk if you want to learn more about how it works.

We're not using a router in this app, but if we were, we would put it here at the top level of the app. For now, we're going to create a `ChatPage` which will render the bulk of our app.

We don't have any other pages in this app, but it's a good idea to give each page its own component in case we add some in the future.

The ChatPage

Our chat page renders our three main components:

- ChatNavBar
- ChatThreads and
- ChatWindow

Here it is in code:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/pages/ChatPage.ts

```
18 @Component({
19   selector: 'chat-page',
20   template: `
21     <div>
22       <chat-nav-bar></chat-nav-bar>
23       <div class="container">
24         <chat-threads></chat-threads>
25         <chat-window></chat-window>
26       </div>
27     </div>
28   `
29 })
30 export default class ChatPage {
31 }
```

For this app we are using a design pattern called *container components* and these three components are all container components. Let's talk about what that means.

Container vs. Presentational Components

It is hard to reason about our apps if there is data spread throughout all of our components. However, our apps are dynamic - they need to be populated with runtime data and they need to be responsive to user interaction.

One of the patterns that has emerged in managing this tension is the idea of presentational vs. container components. The idea is this:

1. You want to minimize the number of components which interact with outside data sources.
(e.g. APIs, the Redux Store, Cookies etc.)
2. Therefore deliberately put data access into “container” components and
3. Require purely ‘functional’ presentation components to have all of their properties (inputs and outputs) managed by container components.

The great thing about this design is that presentational components are predictable. They’re reusable because they don’t make assumptions about your overall data-architecture, they only give requirements for their own use.

But even beyond reuse, they’re predictable Given the same inputs, they always return the same outputs (e.g. render the same way).



If you squint, you can see that the philosophy that requires reducers to be pure functions is the same that requires presentational components be ‘pure components’

It would be great if our entire app could be all presentational components, but of course, the real world has messy, changing data. So we try to put this complexity of adapting our real-world data into our container components.



If you’re an advanced programmer you may see that there is a loose analogy between MVC and container/presentation components. That is, the presentational component is sort of a “view” of data that is passed in. A container component is sort of a “controller” in that it takes the “model” (the data from the rest of the app) and adapts it for the presentational components.

That said, if you haven’t been programming very long, take this analogy with a grain of salt as Angular components are already a view and a controller themselves.

In our app the container components are going to be the components which interact with the store. This means our container components will be anything that:

1. Reads data from the store
2. Subscribes to the store for changes
3. Dispatches actions to the store

Our three main components are container components and anything below them will be presentational (i.e. functional / pure / not interact with the store).

Let’s build our first container component, the nav bar.

Building the ChatNavBar

In the nav bar we’ll show an unread messages count to the user.



The best way to try out the unread messages count is to use the “Waiting Bot”. If you haven’t already, try sending the message ‘3’ to the Waiting Bot and then switch to another window. The Waiting Bot will then wait 3 seconds before sending you a message and you will see the unread messages counter increment.

Let’s look at the component code first:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatNavBar.ts

```

24  @Component({
25    selector: 'chat-nav-bar',
26    template: `
27      <nav class="navbar navbar-default">
28        <div class="container-fluid">
29          <div class="navbar-header">
30            <a class="navbar-brand" href="https://ng-book.com/2">
31              
32              ng-book 2
33            </a>
34          </div>
35          <p class="navbar-text navbar-right">
36            <button class="btn btn-primary" type="button">
37              Messages <span class="badge">{{ unreadMessagesCount }}</span>
38            </button>
39          </p>
40        </div>
41      </nav>
42      `
43  })
44  export default class ChatNavBar {
45    unreadMessagesCount: number;
46
47    constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>) {
48      store.subscribe(() => this.updateState());
49      this.updateState();
50    }
51
52    updateState() {
53      this.unreadMessagesCount = getUnreadMessagesCount(this.store.getState());
54    }
55  }

```

Our template gives us the DOM structure and CSS necessary for rendering a nav bar (these CSS-classes come from the CSS framework Bootstrap).

The only variable we're showing in this template is `unreadMessagesCount`.

Our `ChatNavBar` has `unreadMessagesCount` as an instance variable. This number will be set to the sum of unread messages in all threads.

Notice in our constructor we do three things:

1. Inject our store
2. Subscribe to any changes in the store
3. Call `this.updateState()`

We call `this.updateState()` after subscribe because we want to make sure this component is initialized with the most recent data. `subscribe` will only be called if something changes *after* this component is initialized.

`updateState()` is the most interesting function - we set `unreadMessagesCount` to the value of the function `getUnreadMessagesCount`. What is `getUnreadMessagesCount` and where did it come from?

`getUnreadMessagesCount` is a new concept called *selectors*.

Redux Selectors

Thinking about our `AppState`, how might we go about getting the unread messages count? How about something like this:

```
1 // get the state
2 let state = this.store.getState();
3
4 // get the threads state
5 let threadsState = state.threads;
6
7 // get the entities from the threads
8 let threadsEntities = threadsState.entities;
9
10 // get all of the threads from state
11 let allThreads = Object.keys(threadsEntities)
12     .map((threadId) => entities[threadId]);
13
14 // iterate over all threads and ...
15 let unreadCount = allThreads.reduce(
16     (unreadCount: number, thread: Thread) => {
17         // foreach message in that thread
18         thread.messages.forEach((message: Message) => {
19             if (!message.isRead) {
20                 // if it's unread, increment unread count
21                 ++unreadCount;
22             }
23         });
24     return unreadCount;
25 },
26 0);
```

Should we put this logic in the `ChatNavBar` component? There's two problems with that approach:

1. This chunk of code reaches deep into our `AppState`. A better approach would be to co-locate this logic next to where the state itself is written.
2. What if we need the unread count somewhere else in the app? How could we share this logic?

Solving these problems is the idea behind *selectors*.

Selectors are functions that take a part of the state and return a value.

Let's take a look at how to make a few selectors.

Threads Selectors

Let's start with an easy one. Say we have our `AppState` and we want to get the `ThreadsState`:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts`

130 `export const getThreadsState = (state): ThreadsState => state.threads;`

Pretty easy, right? Here we're saying, given the top-level `AppState`, we can find the `ThreadsState` at `state.threads`.

Let's say that we want to get the current thread. We could do it like this:

```
1 const getCurrentThread = (state: AppState): Thread => {
2   let currentThreadId = state.threads.currentThreadId;
3   return state.threads.entities[currentThreadId];
4 }
```

For this small example, this selector works fine. But it's worth thinking about how we can make our selectors maintainable as the app grows. It would be nice if we could use selectors to query other selectors. It also would be nice to be able to specify a selector that has multiple selectors as a dependency.

This is what the `reselect`¹²⁴ library provides. With `reselect` we can create small, focused selectors and then combine them together into bigger functionality.

Let's look at how we will get the current thread using `createSelector` from `reselect`.

¹²⁴<https://github.com/reactjs/reselect#createselectorinputselectors--inputselectors-resultfunc>

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```
132 export const getThreadsEntities = createSelector(  
133   getThreadsState,  
134   ( state: ThreadsState ) => state.entities );
```

We start by writing `getThreadsEntities`. `getThreadsEntities` uses `createSelector` and passes two arguments:

1. `getThreadsState`, the selector we defined above and
2. A callback function which will receive *the value of the selector in #1* and return the value we want to select.

This might seem like a lot of overhead to call `state.entities`, but it sets us up for a much more maintainable selectors down the line. Let's look at `getCurrentThread` using `createSelector`:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```
155 export const getCurrentThread = createSelector(  
156   getThreadsEntities,  
157   getThreadsState,  
158   ( entities: ThreadsEntities, state: ThreadsState ) =>  
159     entities[state.currentThreadId] );
```

Notice here that we're citing **two** selectors as dependencies: `getThreadsEntities` and `getThreadsState` - when these selectors resolve they become the arguments to the callback function. We can then combine them together to return the selected thread.

Unread Messages Count Selector

Now that we understand how selectors work, let's create a selector that will get the number of unread messages. If you look at our first attempt at unread messages above, we can see that each variable could instead become its own selector (`getThreadsState`, `getThreadsEntities`, etc.)

Here's a selector that will get all Threads:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```
136 export const getAllThreads = createSelector(  
137   getThreadsEntities,  
138   ( entities: ThreadsEntities ) => Object.keys(entities)  
139     .map((threadId) => entities[threadId]));
```

And then given all of the threads, we can get the sum of the unread messages over all threads:

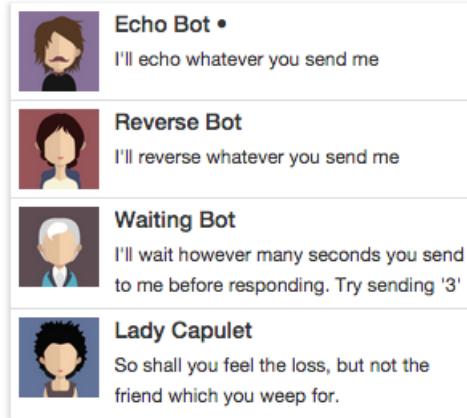
code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/reducers/ThreadsReducer.ts

```
141 export const getUnreadMessagesCount = createSelector(  
142   getAllThreads,  
143   ( threads: Thread[] ) => threads.reduce(  
144     (unreadCount: number, thread: Thread) => {  
145       thread.messages.forEach((message: Message) => {  
146         if (!message.isRead) {  
147           ++unreadCount;  
148         }  
149       });  
150       return unreadCount;  
151     },  
152     0));
```

Now that we have this selector, we can use it to get the number of unread messages in our ChatNavBar (and anywhere else in our app where we might need it).

Building the ChatThreads Component

Next let's build our thread list in the ChatThreads component.



Time Ordered List of Threads

ChatThreads Controller

Let's take a look at our component controller `ChatThreads` before we look at the template:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatThreads.ts`

```

48 export default class ChatThreads {
49   threads: Thread[];
50   currentThreadId: string;
51
52   constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>) {
53     store.subscribe(() => this.updateState());
54     this.updateState();
55   }
56
57   updateState() {
58     let state = this.store.getState();
59
60     // Store the threads list
61     this.threads = getAllThreads(state);
62
63     // We want to mark the current thread as selected,
64     // so we store the currentThreadId as a value
65     this.currentThreadId = getCurrentThread(state).id;
66   }
67
68   handleThreadClicked(thread: Thread) {

```

```
69     this.store.dispatch(ThreadActions.selectThread(thread));
70 }
71 }
```

We're storing two instance variables on this component:

- threads - the list of Threads
- currentThreadId - the current thread (conversation) that the user is participating in

In our constructor we keep a reference to the Redux store and subscribe to updates. When the store changes, we call `updateState()`.

`updateState()` keeps our instance variables in sync with the Redux store. Notice that we're using two selectors:

- `getAllThreads` and
- `getCurrentThread`

which keep their respective instance variables up to date.

The one new idea we've added is an event handler: `handleThreadClicked`. `handleThreadClicked` will dispatch the `selectThread` action. The idea here is that when a thread is clicked on, we'll tell our store to set this new thread as the selected thread and the rest of the application should update in turn.

ChatThreads template

Let's look at the `ChatThreads` template and its configuration:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatThreads.ts

```
30 */
31 @Component({
32   selector: 'chat-threads',
33   template: `
34   <!-- conversations -->
35   <div class="row">
36     <div class="conversation-wrap">
37       <chat-thread
38         *ngFor="let thread of threads"
39         [thread]="thread"
40         [selected]="thread.id === currentThreadId"
```

```
41      (onThreadSelected)="handleThreadClicked($event)">
42      </chat-thread>
43    </div>
44  </div>
45  `
```

In our template we're using `ngFor` to iterate over our threads. We're using a new directive to render the individual threads called `ChatThread`.

`ChatThread` is a *presentational component*. We **won't** be able to access the store in `ChatThread`, neither for fetching data nor dispatching actions. Instead, we're going to pass everything we need to this component through `inputs` and handle any interaction through `outputs`.

We'll look at the implementation of `ChatThread` next, but look at the inputs and outputs we have in this template first.

- We're sending the input `[thread]` with the individual `thread`
- On the input `[selected]` we're passing a *boolean* which indicates if this thread (`thread.id`) is the “current” thread (`currentThreadId`)
- If the thread is clicked, we will emit the output event (`onThreadSelected`) - when this happens we'll call `handleThreadClicked()` (which dispatches a thread selected event to the store).

Let's dig in to the `ChatThread` component.

The Single ChatThread Component

The `ChatThread` component will be used to display a **single thread** in the list of threads. Remember that `ChatThread` is a *presentational component* - it doesn't manipulate any data that isn't given to it directly.

Because it is a presentational component, we're going to store it in the `app/ts/components` directory. Here's the component controller code:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/components/ChatThread.ts

```
43 export default class ChatThread {
44     thread: Thread;
45     selected: boolean;
46     onThreadSelected: EventEmitter<Thread>;
47
48     constructor() {
49         this.onThreadSelected = new EventEmitter<Thread>();
50     }
51
52     clicked(event: any): void {
53         this.onThreadSelected.emit(this.thread);
54         event.preventDefault();
55     }
56 }
```

The main thing to look at here is the `onThreadSelected` `EventEmitter`. If you haven't used `EventEmitters` much, the idea is that it's an implementation of the observer pattern. We use it as the "output channel" for this component - when we want to send data we call `onThreadSelected.emit` and pass whatever data we want along with it.

In this case, we want to emit the current thread as the argument to the `EventEmitter`. When this element is clicked, we will call `onThreadSelected.emit(this.thread)` which will trigger the callback in our parent (`ChatThreads`) component.

ChatThread @Component and template

Here's the code for our `@Component` annotation and template:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/components/ChatThread.ts

```
21 @Component({
22     inputs: ['thread', 'selected'],
23     selector: 'chat-thread',
24     outputs: ['onThreadSelected'],
25     template: `
26         <div class="media conversation">
27             <div class="pull-left">
28                 
30             </div>
31             <div class="media-body">
```

```
32      <h5 class="media-heading contact-name">{{thread.name}}</h5>
33      <span *ngIf="selected">&bull;</span>
34    </h5>
35    <small class="message-preview">
36      {{thread.messages[thread.messages.length - 1].text}}
37    </small>
38  </div>
39  <a (click)="clicked($event)" class="div-link">Select</a>
40 </div>
41 ^
```

Here is where we specify our inputs of `thread` and `selected`, as well as the output of `onThreadsSelected`.

Notice that in our view we've got some straight-forward bindings like `{{thread.avatarSrc}}`, `{{thread.name}}`. In the `message-preview` tag we've got the following:

```
1  {{ thread.messages[thread.messages.length - 1].text }}
```

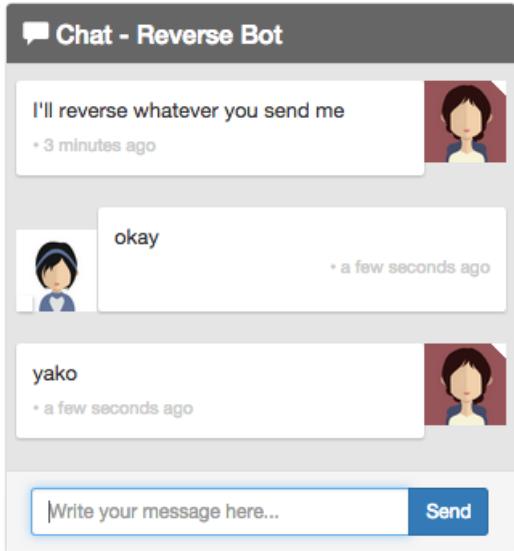
This gets the last message in the thread and displays the text of that message. The idea is we are showing a preview of the most recent message in that thread.

We've got an `*ngIf` which will show the `•` symbol only if this is the selected thread.

Lastly, we're binding to the `(click)` event to call our `clicked()` handler. Notice that when we call `clicked` we're passing the argument `$event`. This is a special variable provided by Angular that describes the event. We use that in our `clicked` handler by calling `event.preventDefault()`. This makes sure that we don't navigate to a different page.

Building the ChatWindow Component

The `ChatWindow` is the most complicated component in our app. Let's take it one section at a time:



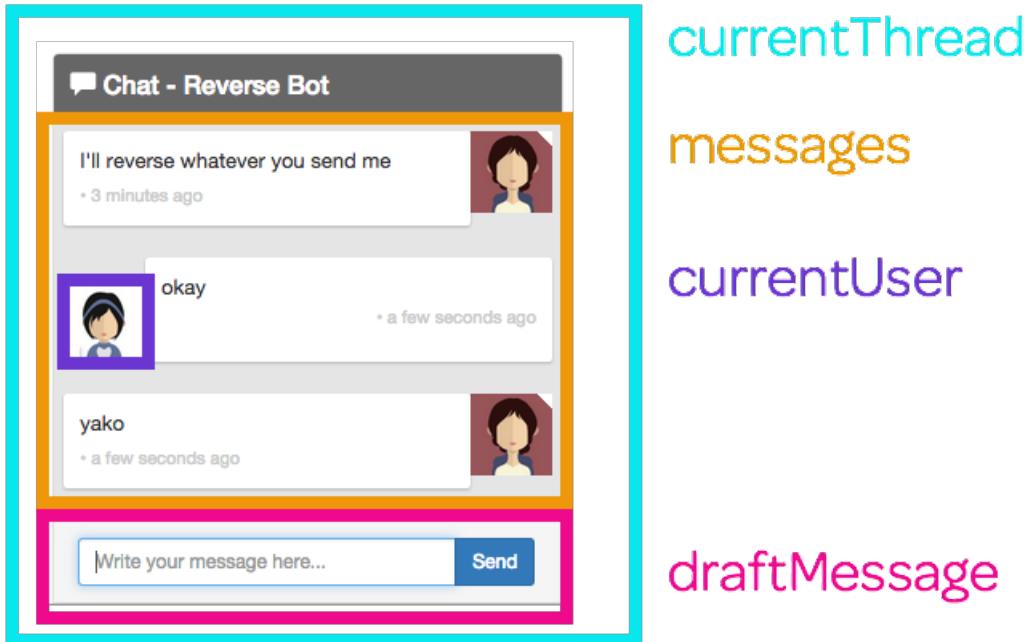
The Chat Window

Our ChatWindow class has three properties: currentThread (which holds messages), draftMessage, and currentUser:

[code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts](#)

```
81 export default class ChatWindow {
82   currentThread: Thread;
83   draftMessage: { text: string };
84   currentUser: User;
```

Here's a diagram of where each one is used:



Chat Window Properties

In our constructor we're going to inject two things:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts`

```

86  constructor(@Inject(AppStore) private store: Store<AppState>,
87            private el: ElementRef) {
88    store.subscribe(() => this.updateState() );
89    this.updateState();
90    this.draftMessage = { text: '' };
91  }

```

The first is our Redux Store. The second, `el` is an `ElementRef` which we can use to get access to the host DOM element. We'll use that when we scroll to the bottom of the chat window when we create and receive new messages.

In our constructor we subscribe to our store, as we have in our other container components.

The next thing we do is to set a default `draftMessage` with an empty string for the `text`. We'll use the `draftMessage` to keep track of the input box as the user is typing their message.

`ChatWindow updateState()`

When the store changes we will update the instance variables for this component:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```

93  updateState() {
94      let state = this.store.getState();
95      this.currentThread = getCurrentThread(state);
96      this.currentUser = getCurrentUser(state);
97      this.scrollToBottom();
98  }

```

Here we store the current thread and the current user. If a new message comes in, we also want to scroll to the bottom of the window. It's a bit coarse to call `scrollToBottom` here, but it's a simple way to make sure that the user doesn't have to scroll manually each time there is a new message (or they switch to a new thread).

ChatWindow `scrollToBottom()`

To scroll to the bottom of the chat window, we're going to use the `ElementRef el` that we saved in the constructor. To make this element scroll, we're going to set the `scrollTop` property of our host element:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```

100  scrollToBottom(): void {
101      let scrollPane: any = this.el
102          .nativeElement.querySelector('.msg-container-base');
103      if (scrollPane) {
104          setTimeout(() => scrollPane.scrollTop = scrollPane.scrollHeight);
105      }
106  }

```



Why do we have the `setTimeout`?

If we call `scrollToBottom` immediately when we get a new message then what happens is we scroll to the bottom before the new message is rendered. By using a `setTimeout` we're telling Javascript that we want to run this function when it is finished with the current execution queue. This happens **after** the component is rendered, so it does what we want.

ChatWindow `sendMessage`

When we want to send a new message, we'll do it by taking:

- The current thread
- The current user
- The draft message text

And then dispatching a new addMessage action on the store. Here's what it looks like in code:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```
108 sendMessage(): void {
109   this.store.dispatch(ThreadActions.addMessage(
110     this.currentThread,
111     {
112       author: this.currentUser,
113       isRead: true,
114       text: this.draftMessage.text
115     }
116   ));
117   this.draftMessage = { text: '' };
118 }
```

The sendMessage function above takes the draftMessage, sets the author and thread using our component properties. Every message we send has “been read” already (we wrote it) so we mark it as read.

After we dispatch the message, we create a new Message^{**} and set that new Message to this.draftMessage. This will clear the search box, and by creating a new object we ensure we don't mutate the message that was sent to the store.

ChatWindow onEnter

In our view, we want to send the message in two scenarios

1. the user hits the “Send” button or
2. the user hits the Enter (or Return) key.

Let's define a function that will handle both events:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```
120  onEnter(event: any): void {
121      this.sendMessage();
122      event.preventDefault();
123  }
```



We create this `onEnter` event handler as a separate function from `sendMessage` because `onEnter` will accept an event as an argument and then call `event.preventDefault()`. This way we *could* call `sendMessage` in scenarios other than in response to a browser event. In this case, we're not really calling `sendMessage` in any other situation, but I find that it's nice to separate the event handler from the function that 'does the work'.

That is, a `sendMessage` function that also 1. requires an event to be passed to it and 2. handles that event feels like a function that may be handling too many concerns.

Now that we've handled the controller code, let's look at the template

ChatWindow template

We start our template by opening the panel tags: and showing the chat name in the header:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```
33 @Component({
34   selector: 'chat-window',
35   template: `
36     <div class="chat-window-container">
37       <div class="chat-window">
38         <div class="panel-container">
39           <div class="panel panel-default">
40
41             <div class="panel-heading top-bar">
42               <div class="panel-title-container">
43                 <h3 class="panel-title">
44                   <span class="glyphicon glyphicon-comment"></span>
45                   Chat - {{currentThread.name}}
46                 </h3>
47               </div>
48               <div class="panel-buttons-container" >
49                 <!-- you could put minimize or close buttons here -->
50               </div>
51           </div>
```

```
52
53      <div class="panel-body msg-container-base">
```

Next we show the list of messages. Here we use `ngFor` to iterate over our list of messages. We'll describe the individual `chat-message` component in a minute.

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts`

```
54          <chat-message
55              *ngFor="let message of currentThread.messages"
56              [message]="message">
57          </chat-message>
58      </div>
59
60      <div class="panel-footer">
```

Lastly we have the message input box and closing tags:

`code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts`

```
61          <div class="input-group">
62              <input type="text"
63                  class="chat-input"
64                  placeholder="Write your message here..."
65                  (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
66                  [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />
67              <span class="input-group-btn">
68                  <button class="btn-chat"
69                      (click)="onEnter($event)"
70                      >Send</button>
71              </span>
72          </div>
73      </div>
74
75      </div>
76  </div>
77  </div>
78  </div>
79  ^
80 })
81 export default class ChatWindow {
```

The message input box is the most interesting part of this view, so let's talk about two interesting properties: 1. `(keydown.enter)` and 2. `[(ngModel)]`.

Handling keystrokes

Angular provides a straightforward way to handle keyboard actions: we bind to the event on an element. In this case, we're binding to `keydown.enter` which says if "Enter" is pressed, call the function in the expression, which in this case is `onEnter($event)`.

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```
63          class="chat-input"
64          placeholder="Write your message here..."
65          (keydown.enter)="onEnter($event)"
66          [(ngModel)]="draftMessage.text" />
67          <span class="input-group-btn">
```

Using ngModel

As we've talked about before, we don't generally use two-way data binding as the crux of our data architecture (like we might have in Angular 1). This is particularly true when we're using Redux which is strictly a one-way data flow.

However it can be very useful to have a two-way binding between a component and its view. As long as the side-effects are kept local to the component, it can be a very convenient way to keep a component property in sync with the view.

In this case, we're establishing a two-way bind **between the value of the input tag and `draftMessage.text`**. That is, if we type into the `input` tag, `draftMessage.text` will automatically be set to the value of that `input`. Likewise, if we were to update `draftMessage.text` in our code, the value in the `input` tag would change in the view.

Clicking "Send"

On our "Send" button we bind the `(click)` property to the `onEnter` function of our component:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/containers/ChatWindow.ts

```
69          (click)="onEnter($event)"
70          >Send</button>
71          </span>
```

We're using the same `onEnter` function to handle the events which should send the draft message for both the button and hitting the enter button.

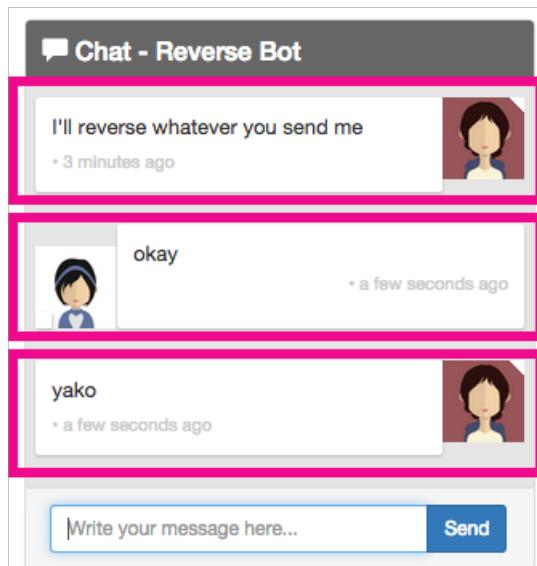
The ChatMessage Component

Instead of putting the rendering code for each individual message in this component, instead we're going to create another *presentational component* ChatMessage.



Tip: If you're using ngFor that's a good indication you should create a new component.

Each Message is rendered by the ChatMessage component.



ChatMessage

ChatMessage

ChatMessage

The ChatMessage Component

This component is relatively straightforward. The main logic here is rendering a slightly different view depending on if the message was authored by the current user. If the Message was **not** written by the current user, then we consider the message **incoming**.

Setting incoming

Remember that each ChatMessage belongs to one Message. So in ngOnInit we will subscribe to the currentUser stream and set incoming depending on if this Message was written by the current user:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/components/ChatMessage.ts

```

45 export default class ChatMessage implements OnInit {
46   message: Message;
47   incoming: boolean;
48
49   ngOnInit(): void {
50     this.incoming = !this.message.author.isClient;
51   }
52 }
```

The ChatMessage template

In our template we have two interesting ideas:

1. the FromNowPipe
2. [ngClass]

First, here's the code:

code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/components/ChatMessage.ts

```

19 */
20 @Component({
21   inputs: ['message'],
22   selector: 'chat-message',
23   template: `
24     <div class="msg-container"
25       [ngClass]="{'base-sent': !incoming, 'base-receive': incoming}">
26
27       <div class="avatar"
28         *ngIf="!incoming">
29           
30       </div>
31
32       <div class="messages"
33         [ngClass]="{'msg-sent': !incoming, 'msg-receive': incoming}">
34           <p>{{message.text}}</p>
35           <p class="time">{{message.sender}} • {{message.sentAt | fromNow}}</p>
36       </div>
37
38       <div class="avatar"
```

```
39      *ngIf="incoming">
40      
41    </div>
42  </div>
43  `
```

The `FromNowPipe` is a pipe that casts our `Messages` sent-at time to a human-readable “x seconds ago” message. You can see that we use it by: `{ {message.sentAt | fromNow} }`



FromNowPipe uses the excellent `moment.js`¹²⁵ library. You can read the source of the FromNowPipe in code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/util/FromNowPipe.ts

We also make extensive use of `ngClass` in this view. The idea is, when we say:

```
1 [ngClass]="{ 'msg-sent': !incoming, 'msg-receive': incoming }"
```

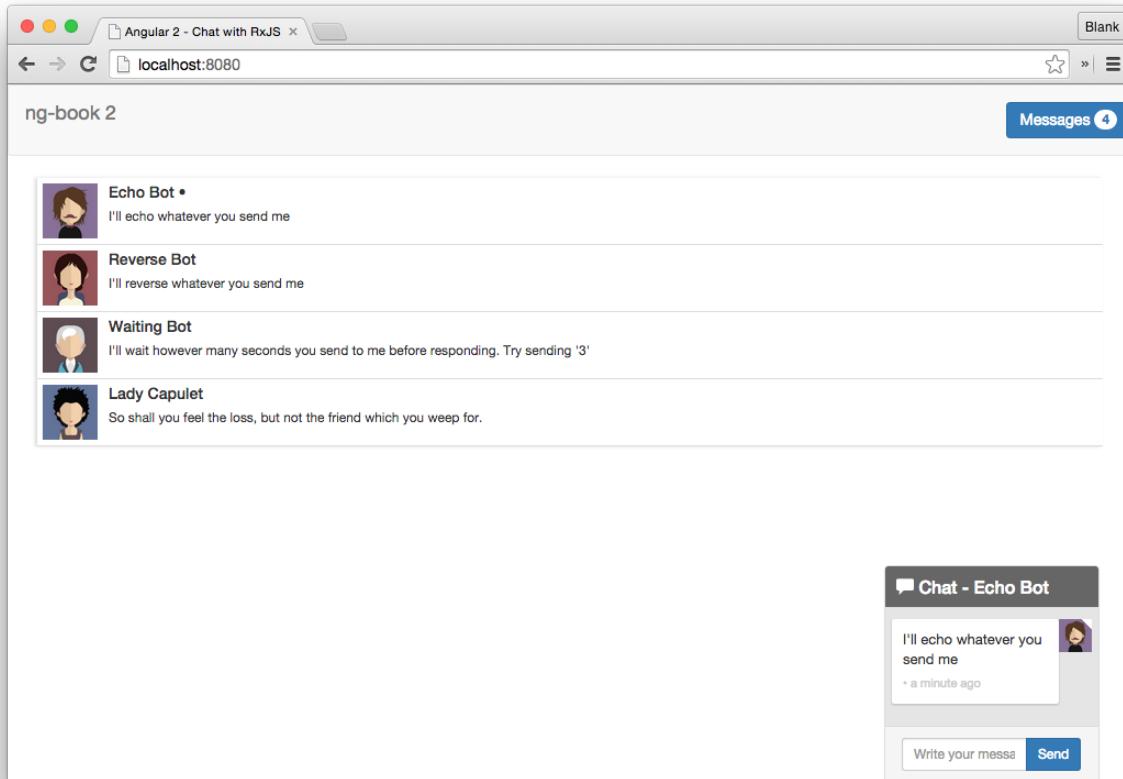
We’re asking Angular to apply the `msg-receive` class if `incoming` is truthy (and apply `msg-sent` if `incoming` is falsey).

By using the `incoming` property, we’re able to display incoming and outgoing messages differently.

Summary

There we go, if we put them all together we’ve got a fully functional chat app!

¹²⁵<http://momentjs.com/>



Completed Chat Application

If you checkout `code/redux/angular2-redux-chat/app/ts/ChatExampleData.ts` you'll see we've written a handful of bots for you that you can chat with. Checkout the code and try writing a few bots of your own!

Advanced Components

Throughout this book, we've learned [how to use Angular's built-in directives](#) and [how to create components of our own](#). In this chapter we'll take a deep dive into **advanced** features we can use to make components.

In this chapter we'll learn the following concepts:

- Styling components (with encapsulation)
- Modifying host DOM elements
- Modifying templates with *content projection*
- Accessing neighbor directives
- Using lifecycle hooks
- Detecting changes

Styling

Angular provides a mechanism for specifying component-specific styles. CSS stands for *cascading style sheet*, but sometimes we **don't** want the cascade. Instead we want to provide styles for a component that won't leak out into the rest of our page.

Angular provides two attributes that allow us to define CSS classes for our component.

To define the style for our component, we use the View attribute `styles` to define in-line styles, or `styleUrls`, to use external CSS files. We can also declare those attributes directly on the Component annotation.

Let's write a component that uses inline styles:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/styling/styling.ts

```
5  @Component({
6    selector: 'inline-style',
7    styles: [`  

8      .highlight {  

9        border: 2px solid red;  

10       background-color: yellow;  

11       text-align: center;  

12       margin-bottom: 20px;  

13     `]
```

```
14  `],
15  template: `
16  <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
17    Inline style example
18  </h4>
19
20  <div class="highlight">
21    This uses component <code>styles</code>
22    property
23  </div>
24  `
25 })
26 class InlineStyle {
27 }
```

In this example we defined the styles we want to use by declaring the `.highlight` class as an item on the array on the `styles` parameter.

Further on in the template we reference that class on the div using `<div class="highlight">`.

And the result is exactly what we expect - a div with a red border and yellow background:

Inline style example

This uses component `styles` property

Example of component using styles

Another way to declare CSS classes is to use the `styleUrls` property. This allows us to declare our CSS on an external file and just reference them from the component.

Let's write another component that uses this, but first let's create a file called `external.css` with the following class:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/styling/external.css

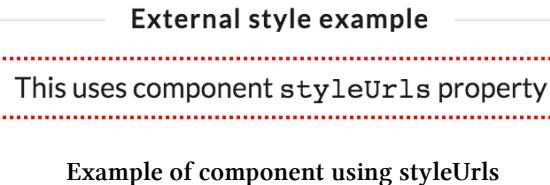
```
1 .highlight {
2   border: 2px dotted red;
3   text-align: center;
4   margin-bottom: 20px;
5 }
```

Then we can write the code that references it:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/styling/styling.ts

```
29  @Component({
30    selector: 'external-style',
31    styleUrls: [externalCSSUrl],
32    template: `
33      <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
34        External style example
35      </h4>
36
37      <div class="highlight">
38        This uses component <code>styleUrls</code>
39        property
40      </div>
41      `
42  })
43  class ExternalStyle {
44 }
```

And when we load the page, we see our div with a dotted border:

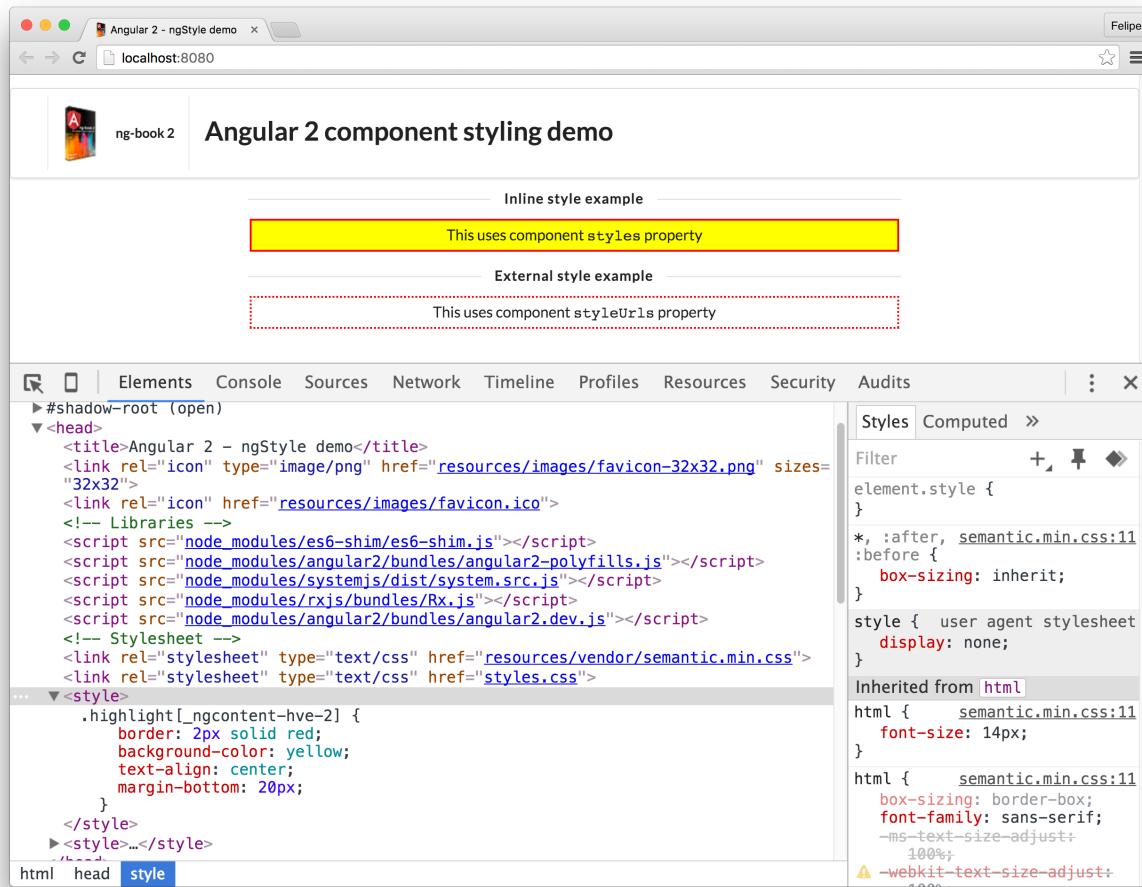


Example of component using styleUrls

View (Style) Encapsulation

One interesting thing about this example is that both components define a class called `highlight` with different properties, but the attributes of one didn't leak into the other.

This happens because Angular styles are **encapsulated by the component context** by default. If we inspect the page and expand the `<head>`, we'll notice that Angular injected a `<style>` tag with our style:



Injected style

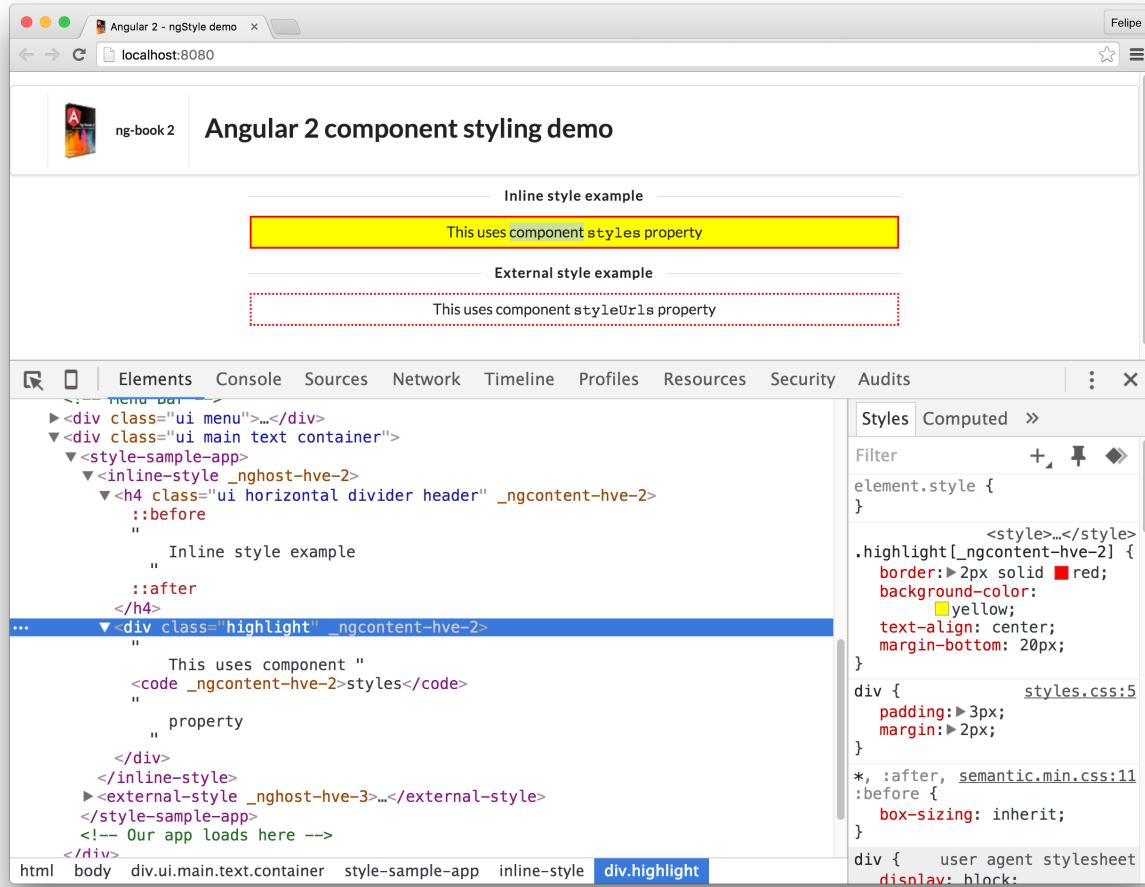
You'll also notice that the CSS class has been scoped with `_ngcontent-hve-2`:

```

1 .highlight[_ngcontent-hve-2] {
2   border: 2px solid red;
3   background-color: yellow;
4   text-align: center;
5   margin-bottom: 20px;
6 }

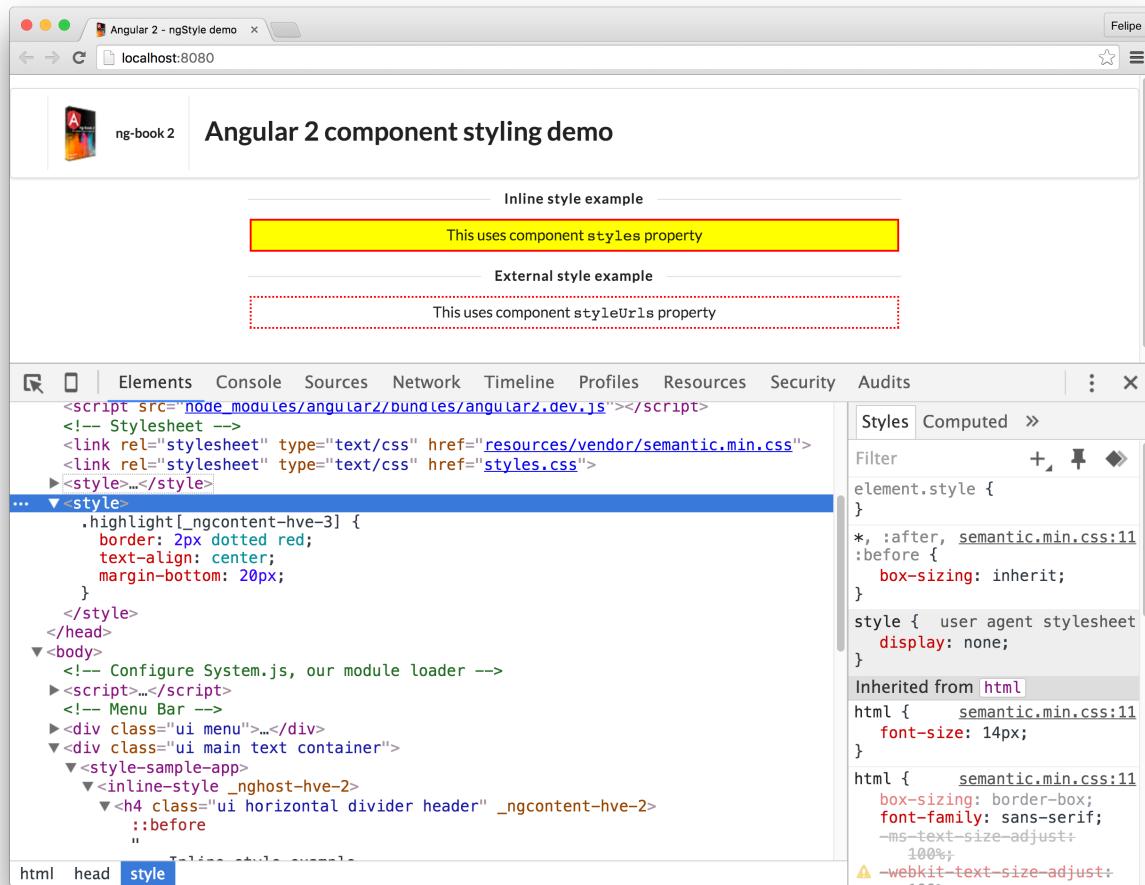
```

And if we check how our `<div>` is rendered, you'll find that `_ng-content-hve-2` was added:



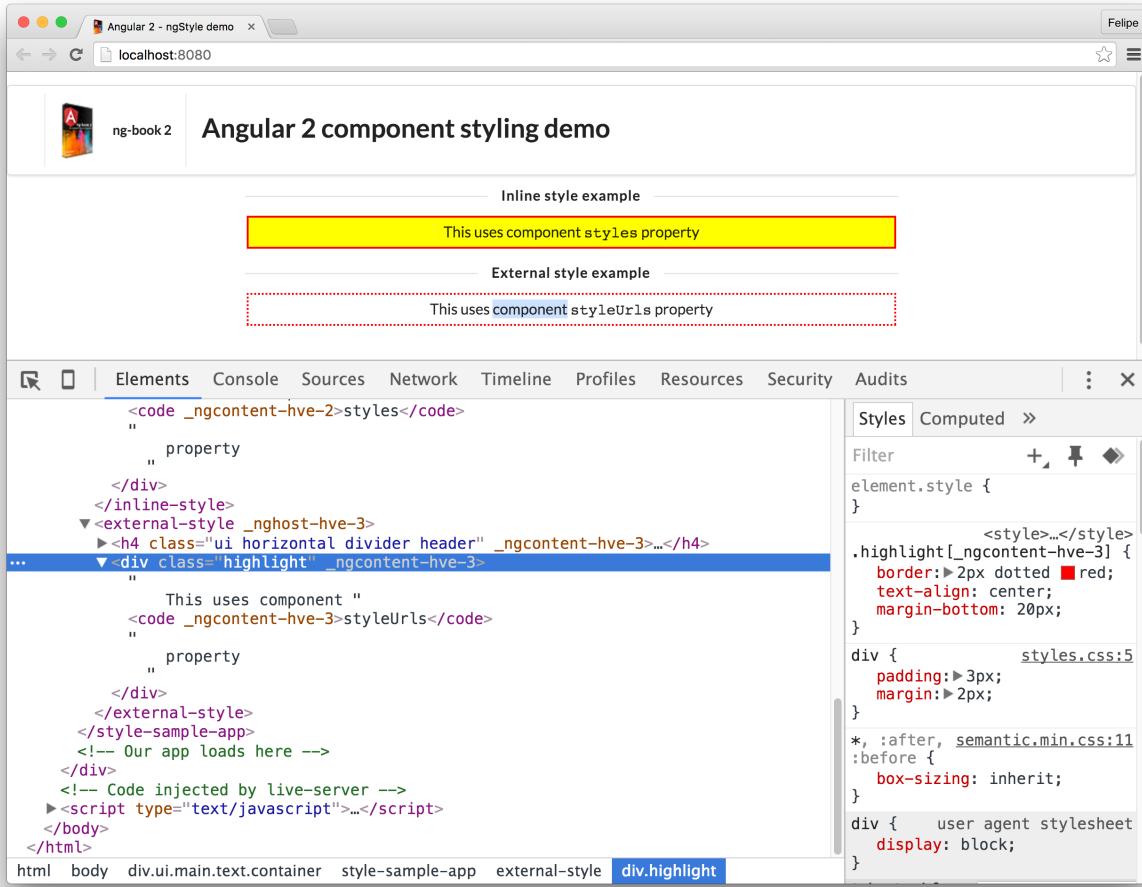
Injected style

The same thing happens for our external style:



External style

and:



External style

Angular allows us to change this behavior, by using the `encapsulation` property.

This property can have the following values, defined by the `ViewEncapsulation` enum:

- **Emulated** - this is the default option and it will encapsulate the styles using the technique we just explained above
- **Native** - with this option, Angular will use the Shadow DOM (more on this below)
- **None** - with this option set, Angular won't encapsulate the styles at all, allowing them to leak to other elements on the page

Shadow DOM Encapsulation

You might be wondering: what is the point of using the Shadow DOM? By using the Shadow DOM the component we use a **unique DOM tree that is hidden from the other elements on the page**. This allows styles defined within that element to be invisible to the rest of the page.



For a deep dive into Shadow DOM, please check this [guide by Eric Bidelman](#)¹²⁶.

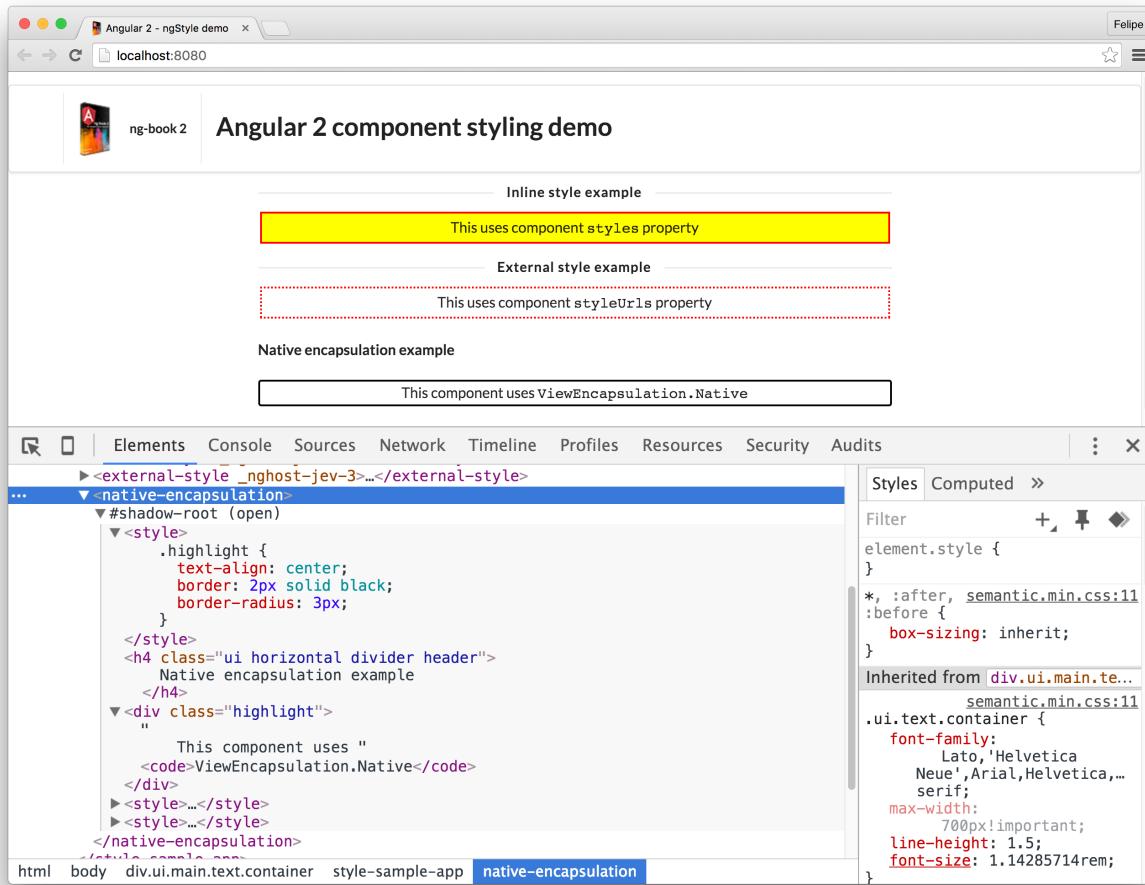
Let's create another component that uses the **Native** encapsulation (Shadow DOM) to understand how this works:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/styling/styling.ts`

```
46 @Component({
47   selector: `native-encapsulation`,
48   styles: [
49     .highlight {
50       text-align: center;
51       border: 2px solid black;
52       border-radius: 3px;
53       margin-bottom: 20px;
54     },
55     template: `
56       <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
57         Native encapsulation example
58       </h4>
59
60       <div class="highlight">
61         This component uses <code>ViewEncapsulation.Native</code>
62       </div>
63     `,
64     encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.Native
65   })
66 class NativeEncapsulation {
67 }
```

In this case, if we inspect the source code, we'll see:

¹²⁶<http://www.html5rocks.com/en/tutorials/webcomponents/shadowdom/>



Native encapsulation

Everything inside the `#shadow-root` element has been encapsulated and isolated from the rest of the page.

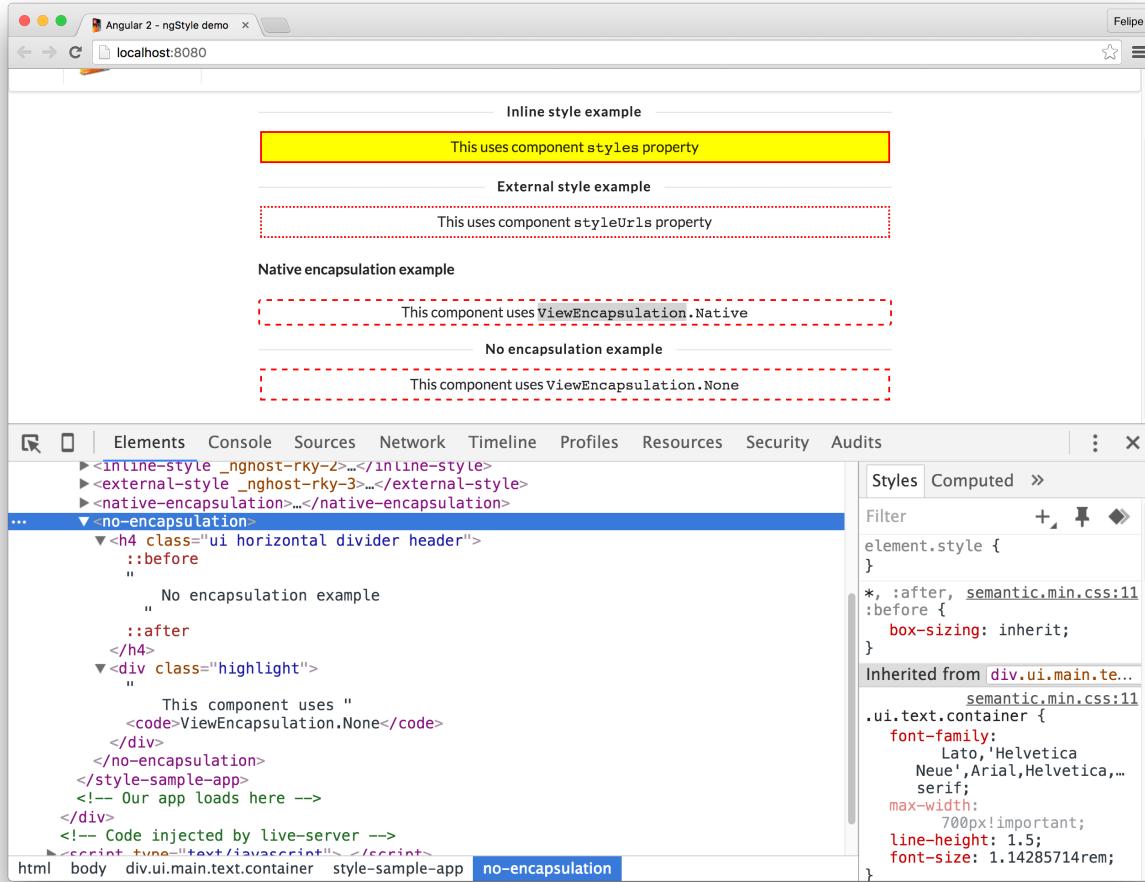
No Encapsulation

Finally, if we create a component that specifies `ViewEncapsulation.None`, no style encapsulation will be added:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/styling/styling.ts

```
69  @Component({
70    selector: `no-encapsulation`,
71    styles: [
72      .highlight {
73        border: 2px dashed red;
74        text-align: center;
75        margin-bottom: 20px;
76      }
77    ],
78    template: `
79      <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
80        No encapsulation example
81      </h4>
82
83      <div class="highlight">
84        This component uses <code>ViewEncapsulation.None</code>
85      </div>
86    `,
87    encapsulation: ViewEncapsulation.None
88  })
89  class NoEncapsulation {
90 }
```

When we inspect the element:



No encapsulation

We can see that nothing was injected on the HTML. Also on the header we can find that the `<style>` tag was also injected exactly like we defined on the `styles` parameter:

```

1 .highlight {
2   border: 2px dashed red;
3   text-align: center;
4   margin-bottom: 20px;
5 }
```

One side-effect of using `ViewEncapsulation.None` is that, since we don't have any encapsulation, this style “leaks” into other components. If we check the picture above, the `ViewEncapsulation.Native` component style was affected by this new component's style. But sometimes this can be exactly what you want.

You can comment out the `<no-encapsulation></no-encapsulation>` code on the `StyleSampleApp` template to see the difference.

Creating a Popup - Referencing and Modifying Host Elements

The *host element* is the element to which the directive or component is bound. Sometimes we have a component that needs to attach markup or behavior to its host element.

In this example, we're going to create a Popup directive that will attach behavior to its host element which will display a message when clicked.



Components vs. Directives - What's the difference?

Components and directives are closely related, but they are slightly different.

You may have heard that “components are directives with a view”. This isn’t exactly true. Components come with functionality that makes it easy to add views, but directives can have views too. In fact, **components are implemented with directives**.

One great example of a directive that renders a conditional view is `NgIf`.

But we can attach behaviors to an element **without a template** by using a *directive*.

Think of it this way: Components are Directives and Components always have a view. Directives may or may not have a view.

If you choose to render a view (a template) in your Directive, you can have more control over how that template is rendered. We’ll talk more about how to use that control later in this chapter.

Popup Structure

Now let’s write our first directive. We want this directive to **show an alert when we click a DOM element** that includes the attribute `popup`. The message displayed will be identified by the element’s `message` attribute.

Here’s what we want it to look like:

```
1 <element popup message="Some message"></element>
```

In order to make this directive work, there are a couple of things we need to do:

- receive the `message` attribute *from* the host
- be notified when the host element is clicked

Let’s start coding our directive:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_01.ts

```
4  @Directive({
5    selector: '[popup]'
6  })
7  class Popup {
8    constructor() {
9      console.log('Directive bound');
10   }
11 }
```

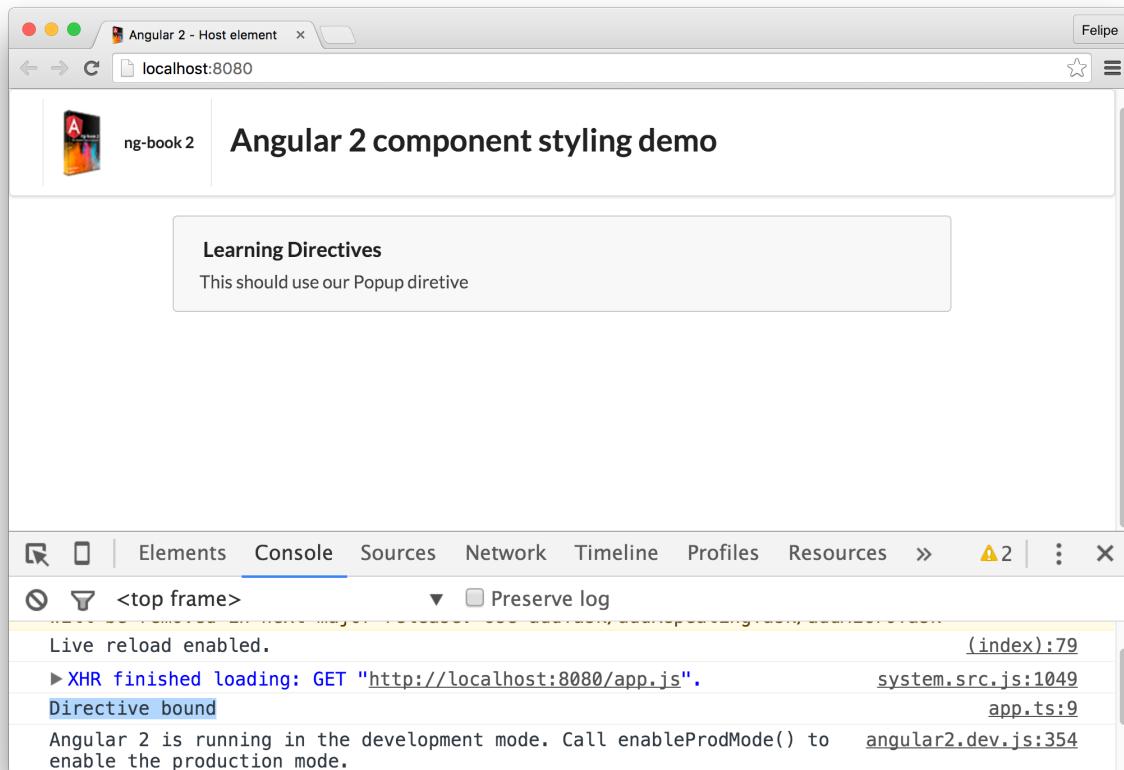
We use the Directive annotation and set the selector parameter to [popup]. This will make this directive bind to any elements that define the popup attribute.

Now let's create an app that has an element that has the popup attribute:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_01.ts

```
13 @Component({
14   selector: 'host-sample-app',
15   template: `
16     <div class="ui message" popup>
17       <div class="header">
18         Learning Directives
19       </div>
20
21       <p>
22         This should use our Popup directive
23       </p>
24     </div>
25   `
26 })
27 export class HostSampleApp1 {
```

When we run this application, we expect the message Directive bound to be logged on the console, indicating we have successfully bound to the first <div> in our template:



Binding to host element

Using ElementRef

If we want to learn more about the host element a directive is bound to, we can use the built-in `ElementRef` class.

This class holds the information about a given Angular element, including the native DOM element using the `nativeElement` property.

In order to see the elements our directive is binding to, we can change our directive constructor to receive the `ElementRef` and log it to the console:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_02.ts

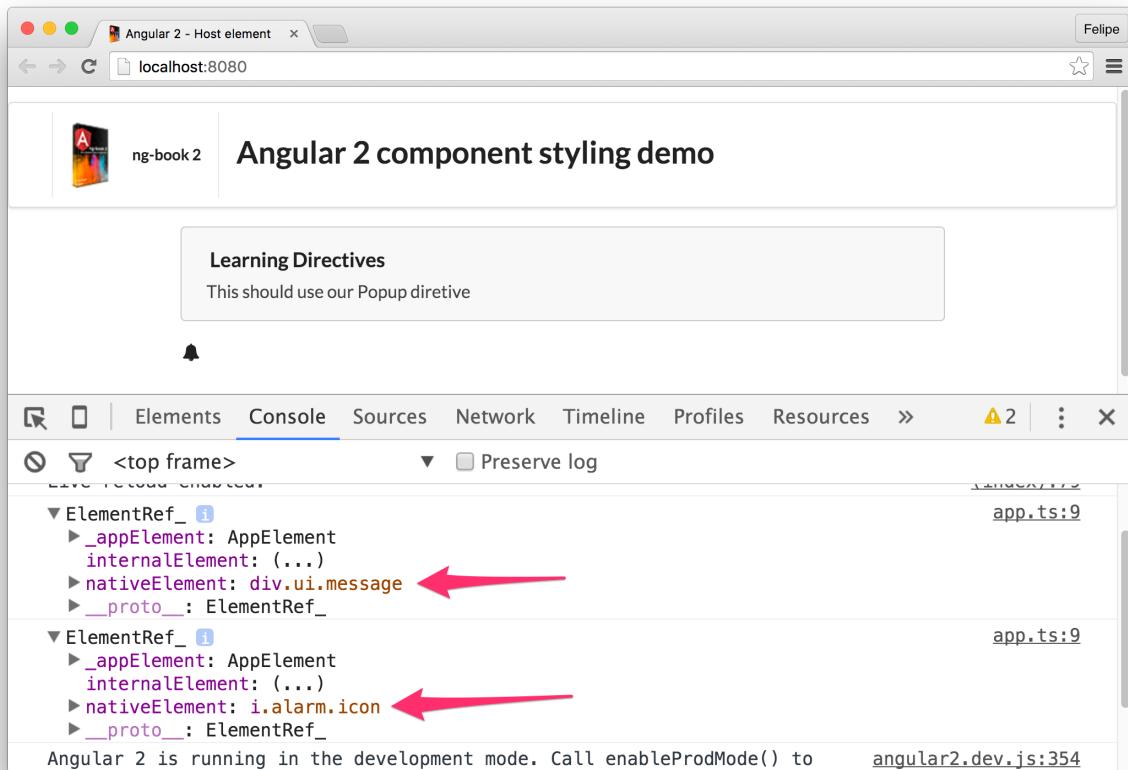
```
4 @Directive({
5   selector: '[popup]'
6 })
7 class Popup {
8   constructor(_elementRef: ElementRef) {
9     console.log(_elementRef);
10  }
11 }
```

We can also add a second element to the page that uses our directive, so we can see two different ElementRef s logged to the console:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_02.ts

```
13 @Component({
14   selector: 'host-sample-app',
15   template: `
16     <div class="ui message" popup>
17       <div class="header">
18         Learning Directives
19       </div>
20
21       <p>
22         This should use our Popup directive
23       </p>
24     </div>
25
26     <i class="alarm icon" popup></i>
27   `
28 })
29 export class HostSampleApp2 {
30 }
```

When we run our app now, we can see two different ElementRef s: one with div.ui.message and the other with i.alarm.icon. This means that the directive was successfully bound to two different host elements:



ElementRefs

Binding to the host

Moving on, our next goal is to do something when the host element is clicked.

We learned before that the way we bind events in elements in Angular is using the `(event)` syntax.

In order to bind events of the host element, we must do something very similar, but using the `host` attribute of the directive. **The `host` attribute allows a directive to change the attributes and behaviors of its host element.**

We also want the host element to define what message will pop up when the element is clicked, using the `message` attribute.

First, let's add an `inputs` attribute to the directive. We'll do this by importing `Input` and using the `@Input` annotation with the property we will use for this input:

```
1 import { Component, Input } from '@angular/core';
2 ...
3 class Popup {
4   @Input() message: String;
5   ...
6 }
```

We're saying that we're having a property with the name `message` and expect to receive an input with the same name.

Then, let's bind to the host. We'll do this by adding `host` to the `@Component` annotation:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_03.ts

```
4 @Directive({
5   selector: '[popup]',
6   host: {
7     '(click)': 'displayMessage()'
8   }
9 })
```

Then when the host element is clicked we'll call the directive's `displayMessage` method, which will display the message the host element defines.

This is how the code now looks:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_03.ts

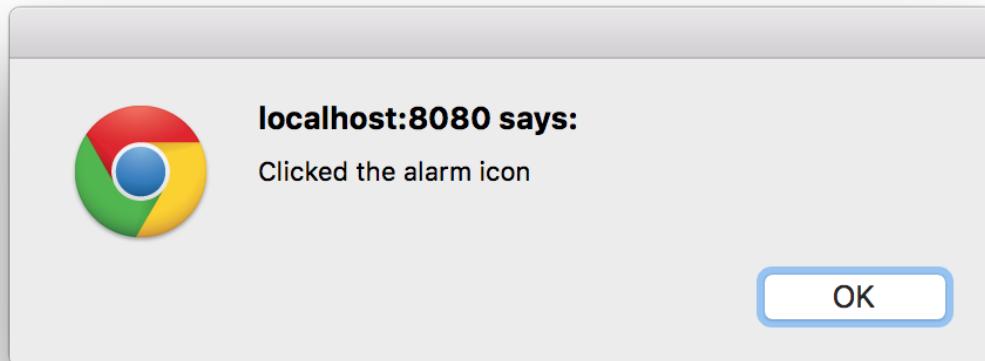
```
10 class Popup {
11   @Input() message: String;
12
13   constructor(_elementRef: ElementRef) {
14     console.log(_elementRef);
15   }
16
17   displayMessage(): void {
18     alert(this.message);
19   }
20 }
```

And finally, we need to change our app template a bit to add the message we want displayed for each element:

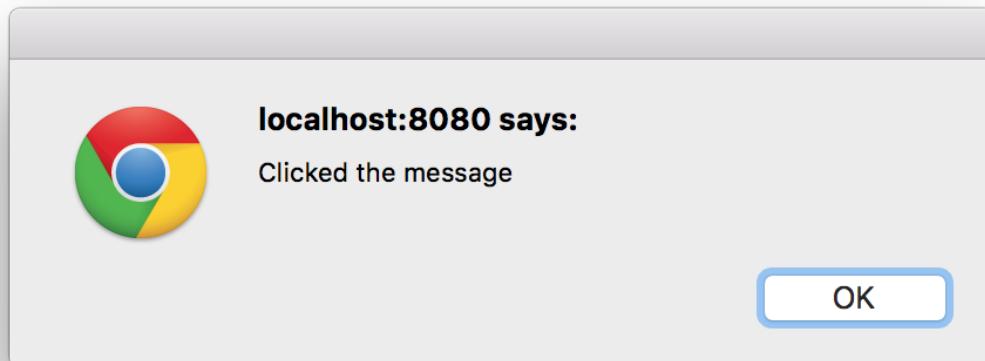
code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_03.ts

```
22 @Component({
23   selector: 'host-sample-app',
24   template: `
25     <div class="ui message" popup
26       message="Clicked the message">
27       <div class="header">
28         Learning Directives
29       </div>
30
31       <p>
32         This should use our Popup directive
33       </p>
34     </div>
35
36     <i class="alarm icon" popup
37       message="Clicked the alarm icon"></i>
38   `
39 })
40 export class HostSampleApp3 {
41 }
```

Notice that we use the `popup` directive twice, and we pass a different `message` each time we use it. This means when we run the app, we're able to click either on the message or on the alarm icon, and we'll see different messages:



Popup 1



Popup 2

Adding a Button using `exportAs`

Now let's say we have a new requirement: we want to trigger the alert manually by clicking a button. How could we trigger the popup message from **outside** the host element?

In order to achieve this, we need to make the directive available from **elsewhere in the template**.

As we discussed in previous chapters, the way to reference a component is by using **template variables**. We can reference directives the same way.

In order to give the templates a reference to a directive we use the `exportAs` attribute. This will allow the host element (or a child of the host element) to define a template variable that references the directive using the `#var="exportName"` syntax.

Let's add the `exportAs` attribute to our directive:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_04.ts

```
4 @Directive({
5   selector: '[popup]',
6   exportAs: 'popup',
7   host: {
8     '(click)': 'displayMessage()'
9   }
10 })
11 class Popup {
12   @Input() message: String;
13
14   constructor(_elementRef: ElementRef) {
15     console.log(_elementRef);
16   }
17
18   displayMessage(): void {
19     alert(this.message);
20   }
21 }
```

And now we need to change the two elements to export the template variable:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_04.ts

```
25 template: `
26 <div class="ui message" popup #popup1="popup"
27   message="Clicked the message">
28   <div class="header">
29     Learning Directives
30   </div>
31
32   <p>
33     This should use our Popup directive
34   </p>
35 </div>
```

```
36
37   <i class="alarm icon" popup #p2="popup"
38     message="Clicked the alarm icon"></i>
```

See that we used the template var #p1 for the div.message and #p2 for the icon.

Now let's add two buttons, one to trigger each popup:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/host/steps/host_04.ts

```
39   <div style="margin-top: 20px;">
40     <button (click)="popup1.displayMessage()" class="ui button">
41       Display popup for message element
42     </button>
43
44     <button (click)="p2.displayMessage()" class="ui button">
45       Display popup for alarm icon
46     </button>
47   </div>
```

Now reload the page and click each of the buttons and each message will appear as expected.

Creating a Message Pane with Content Projection

Sometimes when we are creating components we want to pass inner markup as an argument to the component. This technique is called *content projection*. The idea is that it lets us specify a bit of markup that will be expanded into a bigger template.



Angular 1 digged deep in the dictionary and called this *transclusion*.

Let's create a new directive that will render a nicely styled message like this:

Learning Directives

This should use our Popup directive

Popup 1

Our goal is to write markup like this:

```
1 <div message header="My Message">
2   This is the content of the message
3 </div>
```

Which will render into the more complicated HTML like:

```
1 <div class="ui message">
2   <div class="header">
3     My Message
4   </div>
5
6   <p>
7     This is the content of the message
8   </p>
9 </div>
```

We have two challenges here: we need to change the host element `<div>` to add the `ui` and `message` CSS classes, and we need to add the div's contents to a specific place in our markup.

Changing the host CSS

To add attributes to the host element, we use the same attribute we used to add events to the host element: the `host` attribute. But now, instead of using the (event) notation, we define attribute names and attribute values. In our case using:

```
1 host: { 'class': 'ui message' }
```

Modified the host element, adding those to classes to the `class` attribute.

Using `ng-content`

Our next challenge is to include the original host element children in a specific part of a view. To do that, we use the `ng-content` directive.

Since this directive needs a template, let's use a component instead and write the following code:

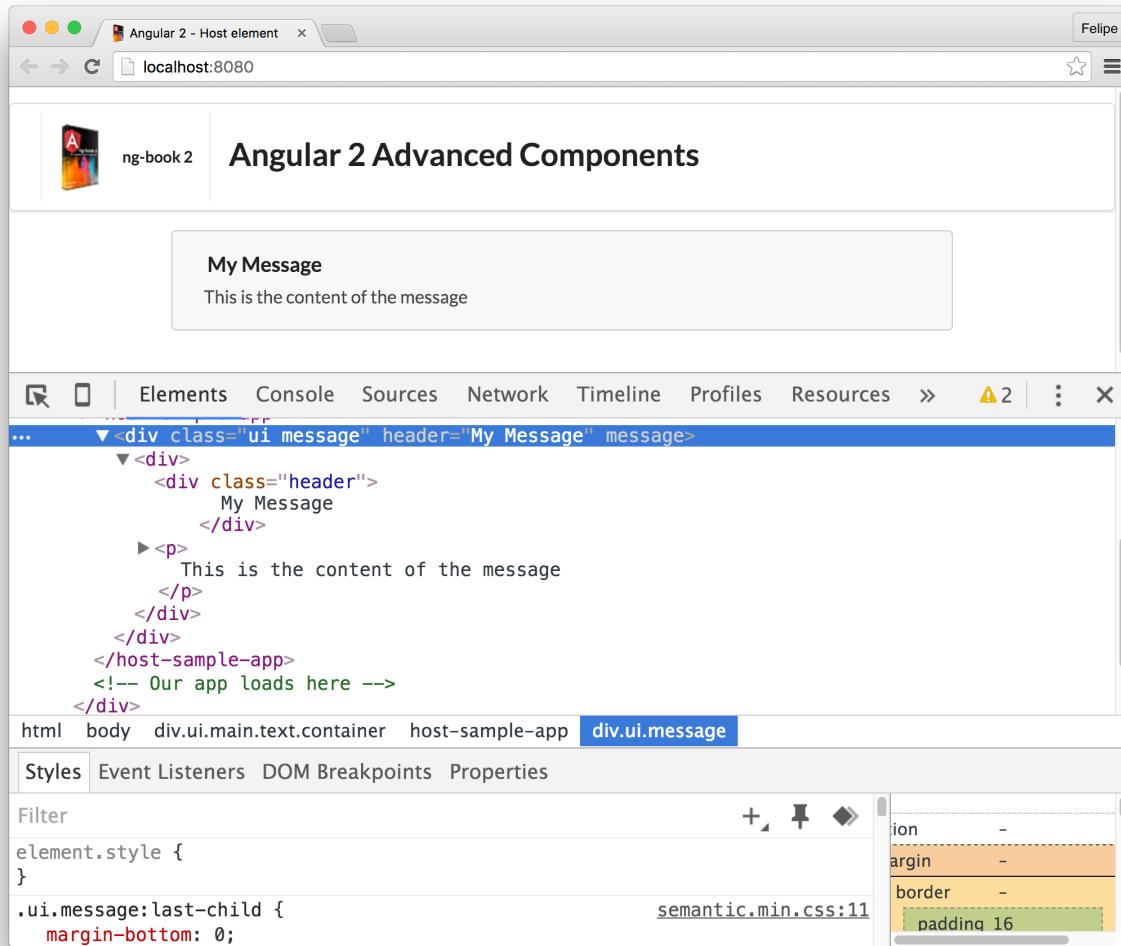
code/advanced_components/app/ts/content-projection/content-projection.ts

```
6  @Component({
7    selector: '[message]',
8    host: {
9      'class': 'ui message'
10   },
11   template: `
12     <div class="header">
13       {{ header }}
14     </div>
15     <p>
16       <ng-content></ng-content>
17     </p>
18   `
19 })
20 export class Message {
21   @Input() header: string;
22
23   ngOnInit(): void {
24     console.log('header', this.header);
25   }
26 }
```

A few highlights:

- We use the `@Input` annotation to indicate we want to receive a `header` attribute, set on the host element
- We set the host element's `class` attribute to `ui message` using the `host` attribute of our component
- We use `<ng-content></ng-content>` to project the host element's children into a specific location of our template

When we open the app in the browser and inspect the `message` div, we see it worked exactly like we planned:



projected content

Querying Neighbor Directives - Writing Tabs

It's great when you can create a component that fully encapsulates its own behavior.

However, as a component grows in features, it might make sense to split it up into several smaller components that work together.

A great example of components that work together is a tab pane that has multiple tabs. The tab panel or *tab set*, as it's usually called, is composed of multiple *tabs*. In this scenario we have a parent component (the tabset) and multiple child components (the tabs). The tabset and the tabs don't make sense separately, but putting all of the logic in one component is cumbersome. So in this example, we're going to cover how to make separate components that work together.

Let's start writing those components in a way that we'll be able to use the following markup:

```
1 <tabset>
2   <tab title="Tab 1">Tab 1</tab>
3   <tab title="Tab 2">Tab 2</tab>
4   ...
5 </tabset>
```

We're going to use [Semantic UI Tab component¹²⁷](#) to render the tabs.

Tab Component

Let's start by writing the Tab component:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/tabs/tabs.ts

```
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'tab',
13   template: `
14     <div class="ui bottom attached tab segment"
15       [class.active]="active">
16       <ng-content></ng-content>
17     </div>
18   `
19 })
20
21 })
22 class Tab {
23   @Input() title: string;
24   active: boolean = false;
25   name: string;
26 }
```

There are not many new concepts here. We're declaring a component that will use the `tab` selector, and it will allow a `title` input to be set.

Then we're rendering a `<div>` and using the content projection concept we learned on the previous section to inline the contents of the `<tab>` directive inside the `div`.

Next we declare 3 properties on our components: `title`, `active` and `name`. One thing to notice is the `@Input('title')` annotation we added to the `title` property. This annotation is a way to ask Angular to automatically bind the value of the `input title` into the `property title`.

Tabset Component

Now let's move on to the `Tabset` component that will be used to wrap the tabs:

¹²⁷<http://semantic-ui.com/modules/tab.html#/examples>

code/advanced_components/app/ts/tabs/tabs.ts

```
28 @Component({
29   selector: 'tabset',
30   template: `
31     <div class="ui top attached tabular menu">
32       <a *ngFor="let tab of tabs"
33         class="item"
34         [class.active]="tab.active"
35         (click)=" setActive(tab)">
36         {{ tab.title }}
37       </a>
38     </div>
39     <ng-content></ng-content>
40   `
41 })
42 class Tabset implements AfterContentInit {
43   @ContentChildren(Tab) tabs: QueryList<Tab>;
44
45   ngAfterContentInit(): void {
46     this.tabs.toArray()[0].active = true;
47   }
48
49   setActive(tab: Tab): void {
50     this.tabs.toArray().forEach(t => t.active = false);
51     tab.active = true;
52   }
53 }
```

Let's break down the implementation so we can learn about the new concepts it introduces.

Tabset @Component Annotation

The @Component section doesn't have many new ideas. We're using the `<tabset>` tab as our selector.

The template itself uses `ngFor` to iterate through the tabs and if the tab has the `active` flag set to true, it will add the `active` CSS class to the `<a>` element that renders the tab.

We also specify that we are rendering the tabs themselves after the initial `div`, right where `ng-content` is.

Tabset class

Now let's turn our attention to the Tabset class. The first new idea we see here is that the Tabset class is implementing AfterContentInit. This *lifecycle hook* will tell Angular to call a method of our class (`ngAfterContentInit`) once the contents of the child directives has been initialized.

Tabset ContentChildren and QueryList

Next thing we do is declare the tabs property that will hold every Tab component we declare inside the tabset. Notice that instead of declaring this list as an array of Tabs, we use the class QueryList, passing a generic of Tab. Why is this?

QueryList is a class provided by Angular and when we use QueryList with a ContentChildren Angular populates this with the **components that match the query** and then **keeps the items up to date** if the state of the application changes.

However, QueryList requires a ContentChildren to populate it, so let's take a look at that now.

On the tabs instance variable, we add the `@ContentChildren(Tab)` annotation. This annotation will tell Angular to inject all the direct child directives (of the Tab type) into the tabs parameter. We then assign it to the tabs property of our component. With this **we now have access to all the child Tab components**.

Initializing the Tabset

When this component is initialized, we want to make the first tab active. To do this we use the `ngAfterContentInit` function (that is described by the `AfterContentInit` hook). Notice that we use `this.tabs.toArray()` to cast the Angular's QueryList into a native TypeScript array.

Tabset setActive

Finally we define a `setActive` method. This method is used when we click a tab on our template e.g. using `(click)="setActive(tab)"`. This function will iterate through all the tabs, setting their active properties to false. Then we set the tab we clicked active.

Using the Tabset

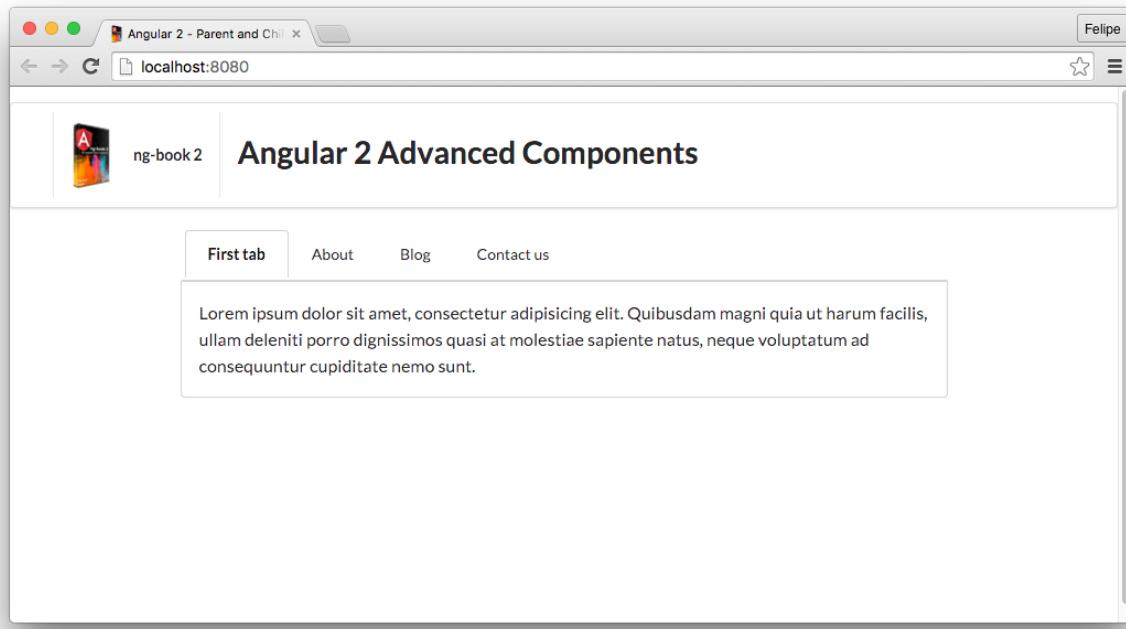
Now the next step is to code the application component that makes use of both of the components we created. Here's how we do it:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/tabs/tabs.ts

```
57 @Component({
58   selector: 'tabs-sample-app',
59   template: `
60     <tabset>
61       <tab title="First tab">
62         Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit.
63         Quibusdam magni quia ut harum facilis, ullam deleniti porro
64         dignissimos quasi at molestiae sapiente natus, neque voluptatum
65         ad consequuntur cupiditate nemo sunt.
66     </tab>
67     <tab *ngFor="let tab of tabs" [title]="tab.title">
68       {{ tab.content }}
69     </tab>
70   </tabset>
71   `
72 })
73 export class TabsSampleApp {
74   tabs: any;
75
76   constructor() {
77     this.tabs = [
78       { title: 'About', content: 'This is the About tab' },
79       { title: 'Blog', content: 'This is our blog' },
80       { title: 'Contact us', content: 'Contact us here' },
81     ];
82   }
83 }
```

We're declaring that we're using **tabs-sample-app** as our component's selector and using the **Tabset** and **Tab** components.

On the template we then create a **tabset** and we add first a static tab (First tab) and we add a few more tabs from the **tabs** property of the component controller class, to illustrate how we can render tabs dynamically.



Tabset application

Lifecycle Hooks

Lifecycle hooks are the way Angular allows you to add code that runs before or after each step of the directive or component lifecycle.

The list of hooks Angular offers are:

- OnInit
- OnDestroy
- DoCheck
- OnChanges
- AfterContentInit
- AfterContentChecked
- AfterViewInit
- AfterViewChecked

Using these hooks each follow a similar pattern:

In order to be notified about those events you

1. declare that your directive or component class implements the interface and then
2. declare the ng method of the hook (e.g. `ngOnInit`)

Every method name is `ng` plus the name of the hook. For example, for `OnInit` we declare the method `ngOnInit`, for `AfterContentInit` we declare `ngAfterContentInit` and so on.

When Angular knows that a component implements these functions, it will invoke them at the appropriate time.

Let's take a look at each hook individually and when we would use each of them.



It is actually not mandatory for the class to implement the interface, one could just create the method of the hook. But it is [considered good practice](#)¹²⁸ and has benefits from strong typing and editor tooling.

OnInit and OnDestroy

The `OnInit` hook is called when your directive properties have been initialized, and before any of the child directive properties are initialized.

Similarly, the `OnDestroy` hook is called when the directive instance is destroyed. This is typically used if we need to do some cleanup every time our directive is destroyed.

In order to illustrate let's write a component that implements both `OnInit` and `OnDestroy`:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_01.ts

```
9  @Component({
10    selector: 'on-init',
11    template: `
12      <div class="ui label">
13        <i class="cubes icon"></i> Init/Destroy
14      </div>
15    `
16  })
17  class OnInitCmp implements OnInit, OnDestroy {
18    ngOnInit(): void {
19      console.log('On init');
20    }
21
22    ngOnDestroy(): void {
23      console.log('On destroy');
24    }
25 }
```

¹²⁸<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/lifecycle-hooks.html>

For this component, we're just logging *On init* and *On destroy* to the console when the hooks are called.

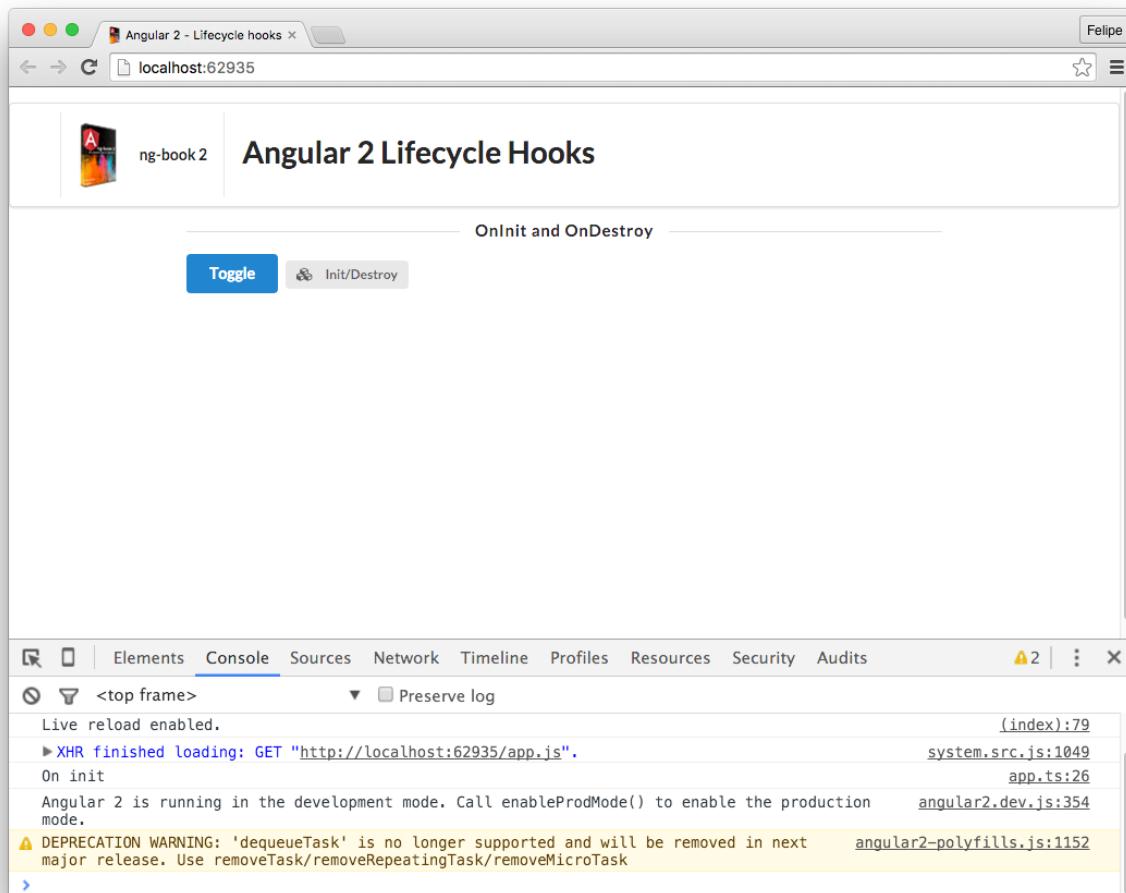
Now in order to test those hooks let's use our component in our app component using `ngFor` to conditionally display it based on a boolean property. Let's also add a button that allows us to toggle that flag. This way, when the flag is false, our component will be *removed* from the page, causing the `OnDestroy` hook to be called. Similarly when the flag is toggled to true, the `OnInit` hook will be called.

Here's how our app component will look:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_01.ts

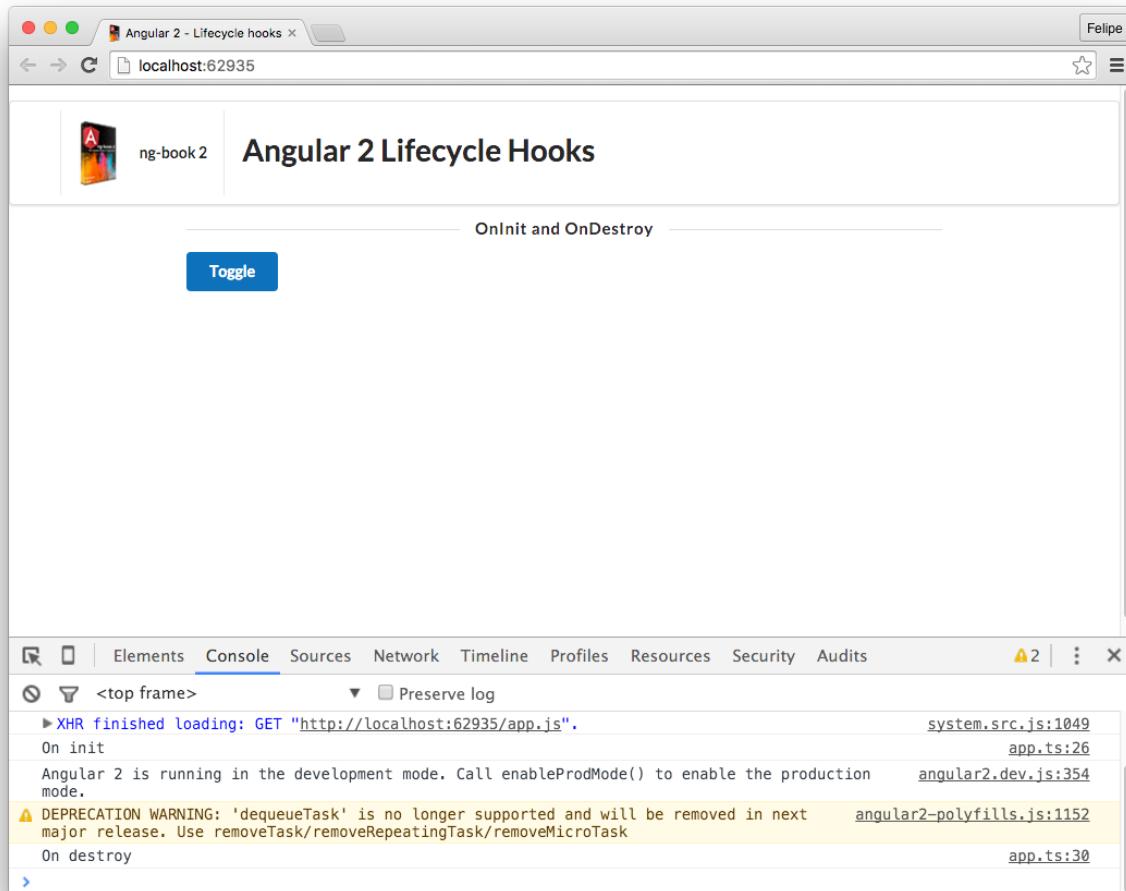
```
27 @Component({
28   selector: 'lifecycle-sample-app',
29   template: `
30     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
31       OnInit and OnDestroy
32     </h4>
33
34     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggle()">
35       Toggle
36     </button>
37     <on-init *ngIf="display"></on-init>
38     `
39   })
40 export class LifecycleSampleApp1 {
41   display: boolean;
42
43   constructor() {
44     this.display = true;
45   }
46
47   toggle(): void {
48     this.display = !this.display;
49   }
50 }
```

When we first run the application, we can see that the `OnInit` hook was called when the component was first instantiated:



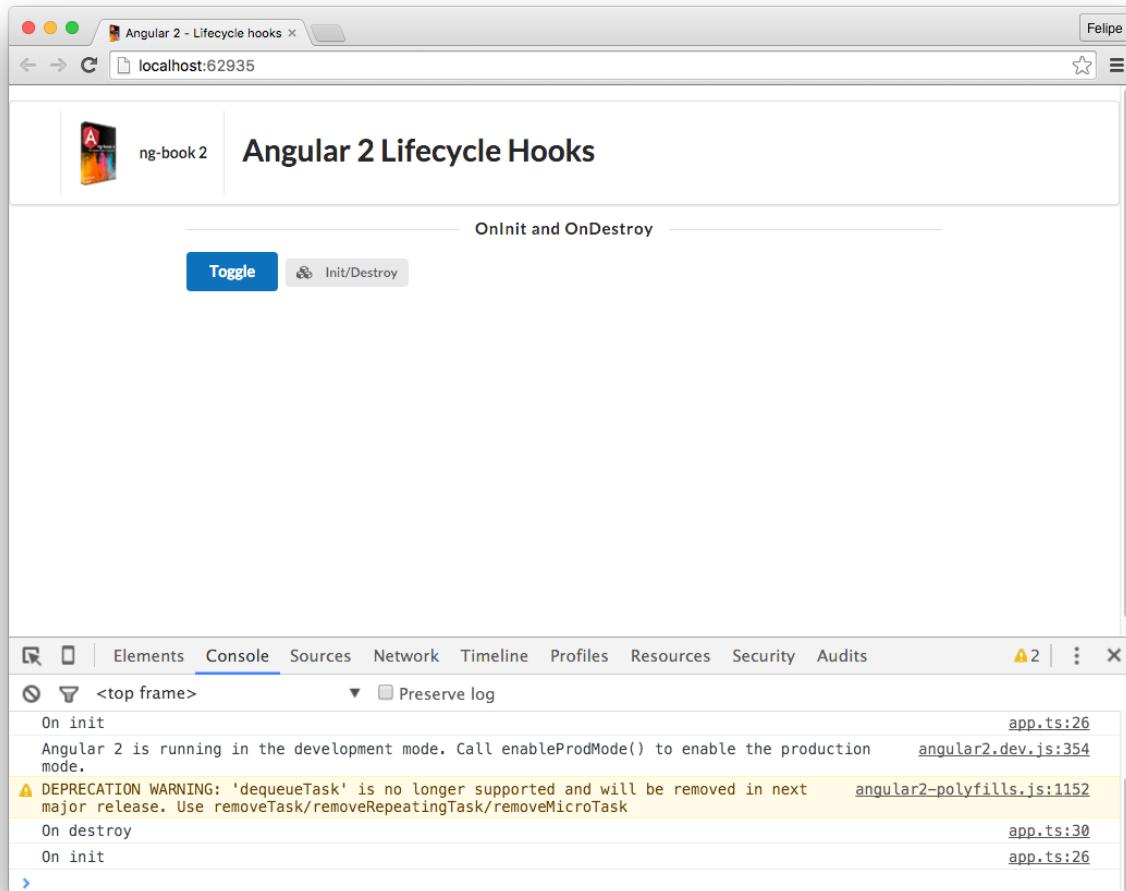
Initial state of our component

When I click the **Toggle** button for the first time, the component is destroyed and the hook is called as expected:



OnDestroy hook

And if we click it another time:



OnDestroy hook

OnChanges

The `OnChanges` hook is called after one or more of our component properties have been changed. The `ngOnChanges` method receives a parameter which tells which properties have changed.

To understand this better, let's write a comment block component that has two inputs: `name` and `comment`:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_02.ts

```
30 @Component({
31   selector: 'on-change',
32   template: `
33     <div class="ui comments">
34       <div class="comment">
35         <a class="avatar">
36           
37         </a>
38         <div class="content">
39           <a class="author">{{name}}</a>
40           <div class="text">
41             {{comment}}
42           </div>
43         </div>
44       </div>
45     `),
46   })
47 })
48 class OnChangeCmp implements OnChanges {
49   @Input('name') name: string;
50   @Input('comment') comment: string;
51
52   ngOnChanges(changes: {[propName: string]: SimpleChange}): void {
53     console.log('Changes', changes);
54   }
55 }
```

The important thing about this component is that it implements the `OnChanges` interface, and it declares the `ngOnChanges` method with this signature:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_02.ts

```
52   ngOnChanges(changes: {[propName: string]: SimpleChange}): void {
53     console.log('Changes', changes);
54   }
```

This method will be triggered whenever the values of either the `name` or `comment` properties change. When that happens, we receive an object that maps changed fields to `SimpleChange` objects.

Each `SimpleChange` instance has two fields: `currentValue` and `previousValue`. If both `name` and `comment` properties change for our component, we expect the value of `changes` in our method to be something like:

```
1  {
2    name: {
3      currentValue: 'new name value',
4      previousValue: 'old name value'
5    },
6    comment: {
7      currentValue: 'new comment value',
8      previousValue: 'old comment value'
9    }
10 }
```

Now, let's change the app component to use our component and also add a little form where we can play with the name and comment properties of our component:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_02.ts

```
57 @Component({
58   selector: 'lifecycle-sample-app',
59   template: `
60     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
61       OnInit and OnDestroy
62     </h4>
63
64     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggle()">
65       Toggle
66     </button>
67     <on-init *ngIf="display"></on-init>
68
69     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
70       OnChange
71     </h4>
72
73     <div class="ui form">
74       <div class="field">
75         <label>Name</label>
76         <input type="text" #namefld value="{{name}}"
77             (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)">
78       </div>
79
80       <div class="field">
81         <label>Comment</label>
82         <textarea (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)"
83             rows="2" #commentfld>{{comment}}</textarea>
```

```
84      </div>
85    </div>
86
87    <on-change [name]="name" [comment]="comment"></on-change>
88    `
89  })
90 export class LifecycleSampleApp2 {
91   display: boolean;
92   name: string;
93   comment: string;
94
95   constructor() {
96     this.display = true;
97     this.name = 'Felipe Coury';
98     this.comment = 'I am learning so much!';
99   }
100
101  setValues(namefld, commentfld): void {
102    this.name = namefld.value;
103    this.comment = commentfld.value;
104  }
105
106  toggle(): void {
107    this.display = !this.display;
108  }
109}
```

The important pieces that we added here were the template areas where we declare a new form with name and comment fields:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_02.ts

```
73  <div class="ui form">
74    <div class="field">
75      <label>Name</label>
76      <input type="text" #namefld value="{{name}}"
77          (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)">
78    </div>
79
80    <div class="field">
81      <label>Comment</label>
82      <textarea (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)"
83          rows="2" #commentfld>{{comment}}</textarea>
```

```
84    </div>
85    </div>
```

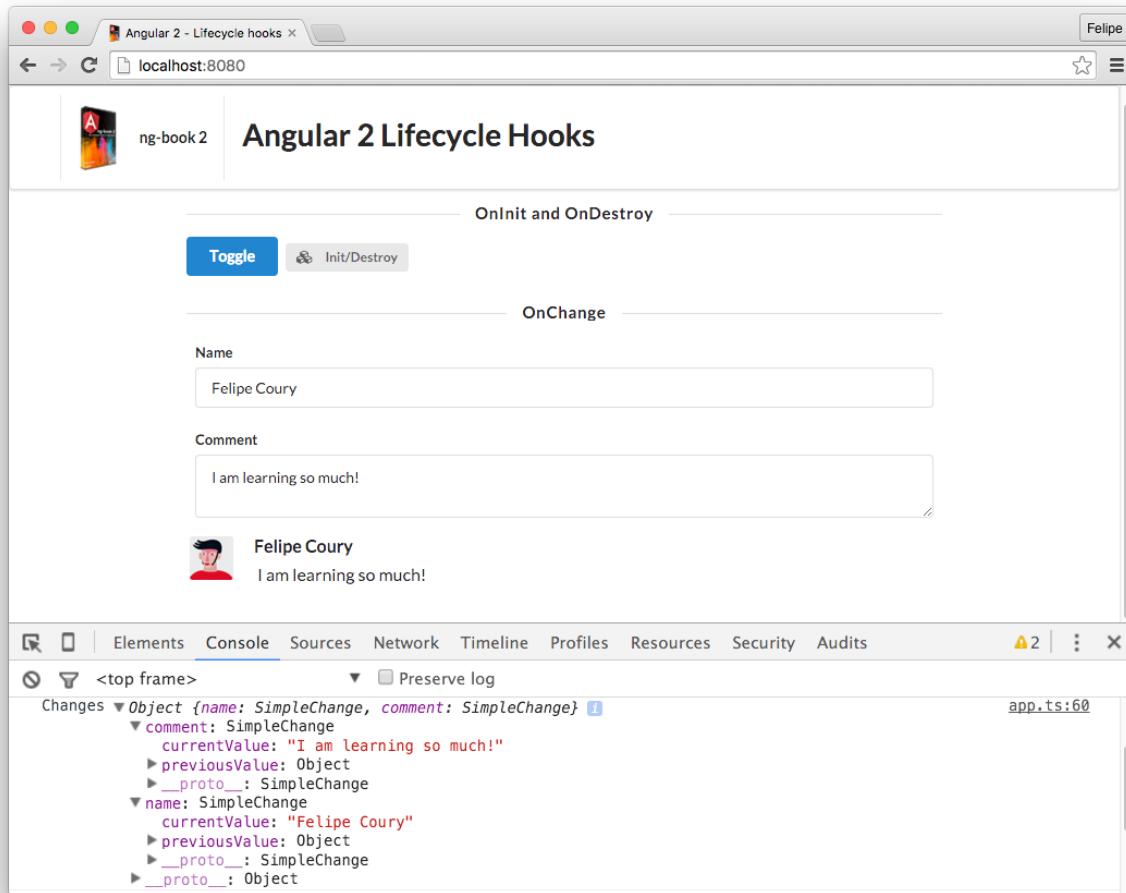
Here, when the *keyup* event is fired for either the name or comment fields, we are calling `setValues` with the template vars `namefld` and `commentfld` that represent the input and textarea.

This method just takes the value from those fields and updates the name and comment properties accordingly:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_02.ts`

```
101 setValues(namefld, commentfld): void {
102     this.name = namefld.value;
103     this.comment = commentfld.value;
104 }
```

So now, the first time we open the app, we can see that our `OnChanges` hook is called:



OnChanges

This happens when the initial values are set, on the constructor of the `LifecycleSampleApp` component.

Now if we play with the name, we can see that the hook is called repeatedly. In the case below, we pasted the name *Nate Murray* on top of the previous name, and the values for the changes are displayed as expected:

The screenshot shows a web browser window titled "Angular 2 - Lifecycle hooks" at "localhost:8080". The page displays a form with fields for Name (Nate Murray) and Comment (I am learning so much!). Below the form, a message from "Nate Murray" is shown. A "Toggle" button is present. The browser's developer tools are open, specifically the "Console" tab, which logs a change object: {name: SimpleChange} with properties: name: SimpleChange, currentValue: "Nate Murray", previousValue: "Felipe Coury", __proto__: SimpleChange, __proto__: Object. The file path app.ts:60 is indicated.

OnChanges

DoCheck

The default notification system implemented by `OnChanges` is triggered every time the Angular change detection mechanism notices there was a change on any of the directive properties.

However, there may be times when the overhead added by this change notification may be too much, specially if performance is a concern.

There may be times when we just want to do something in case an item was removed or added, or if only a particular property changed, for instance.

If we run into one of these scenarios, we can use the `DoCheck` hook.



It's important to note that the `OnChanges` hook gets overridden by `DoCheck` so if we implement both, `OnChanges` will be ignored.

Checking for changes

In order to evaluate what changed, Angular provides *differs*. Differs will evaluate a given property of your directive to determine *what* changed.

There are two types of built-in differs: *iterable differs* and *key-value differs*.

Iterable differs

Iterable differs should be used when we have a list-like structure and we're only interested on knowing things that were added or removed from that list.

Key-value differs

Key-value differs should be used for dictionary-like structures, and work at the key level. This differ will identify changes when a new key is added, when a key removed and when the value of a key changed.

Rendering a comment with `do-check-item`

To illustrate these concepts, let's build a component that renders a stream of comments, like below:

Justen posted a comment 1 Hour Ago

Thanks!

Remove Clear 12 Likes

Jenny posted a comment 1 Hour Ago

Ours is a life of constant reruns. We're always circling back to where we'd we started, then starting all over again. Even if we don't run extra laps that day, we surely will come back for more of the same another day soon.

Remove Clear 4 Likes

Justen posted a comment 1 Hour Ago

Really cool!

Remove Clear 7 Likes

Add

DoCheck example

First, let's write a component that will render one individual comment:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
61 @Component({
62   selector: 'do-check-item',
63   outputs: [ 'onRemove' ],
64   template: `
65   <div class="ui feed">
66     <div class="event">
67       <div class="label" *ngIf="comment.author">
68         
69       </div>
70       <div class="content">
71         <div class="summary">
72           <a class="user">
73             {{comment.author}}
74           </a> posted a comment
75           <div class="date">
76             1 Hour Ago
77           </div>
78         </div>
79         <div class="extra text">
80           {{comment.comment}}
81         </div>
82         <div class="meta">
83           <a class="trash" (click)="remove()">
84             <i class="trash icon"></i> Remove
85           </a>
86           <a class="trash" (click)="clear()">
87             <i class="eraser icon"></i> Clear
88           </a>
89           <a class="like" (click)="like()">
90             <i class="like icon"></i> {{comment.likes}} Likes
91           </a>
92         </div>
93       </div>
94     </div>
95   </div>
96   `
97 })
```

Here we are declaring the component metadata. Our component will receive the comment that should be rendered and it will emit an event with the remove button icon clicked.

Moving on to the component implementation:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
98 class DoCheckItem implements DoCheck {
99   @Input() comment: any;
100  onRemove: EventEmitter<any>;
101  differ: any;
```

On the class declaration we indicate we're implementing the DoCheck interface. We then declare the input property `comment`, and the output event `onRemove`. We also declare a `differ` property.

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
103 constructor(differs: KeyValueDiffers) {
104   this.differ = differs.find([]).create(null);
105   this.onRemove = new EventEmitter();
106 }
```

On the constructor we're receiving a `KeyValueDiffers` instance on the `differs` variable. We then use this variable to create an instance of the key value differ using this syntax `differs.find([]).create(null)`. We're also initializing our event emitter `onRemove`.

Next, let's implement the `ngDoCheck` method, required by the interface:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
108 ngDoCheck(): void {
109   let changes = this.differ.diff(this.comment);
110
111   if (changes) {
112     changes.forEachAddedItem(r => this.logChange('added', r));
113     changes.forEachRemovedItem(r => this.logChange('removed', r));
114     changes.forEachChangedItem(r => this.logChange('changed', r));
115   }
116 }
```

This is how you check for changes, if you're using a key-value differ. You call the `diff` method, providing the property you want to check. In our case, we want to know if there were changes to the `comment` property.

When no changes are detected, the returned value will be `null`. Now, if there are changes, we can call three different iterable methods on the differ:

- `forEachAddedItem`, for *keys* that were added

- `forEachRemovedItem`, for *keys* that were removed
- `forEachChangedItem`, for *keys* that were changed

Each method will call the provided callback with a *record*. For the key-value differ, this record will be an instance of the `KVChangeRecord` class.

```
▼ KVChangeRecord {key: "likes", previousValue: null, currentValue: 10, _nextPrevious: null, _next: null...} ⓘ
  _next: null
  _nextAdded: null
  _nextChanged: null
  _nextPrevious: null
  _nextRemoved: null
  _prevRemoved: null
  currentValue: 10
  key: "likes"
  previousValue: 10
```

Example of a `KVChangeRecord` instance

The important fields for understanding what changed are `key`, `previousValue` and `currentValue`.

Next, let's write a method that will log to the console a nice sentence about what changed:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
118 logChange(action, r) {
119   if (action === 'changed') {
120     console.log(r.key, action, 'from', r.previousValue, 'to', r.currentValue);
121   }
122   if (action === 'added') {
123     console.log(action, r.key, 'with', r.currentValue);
124   }
125   if (action === 'removed') {
126     console.log(action, r.key, '(was ' + r.previousValue + ')');
127   }
128 }
```

Finally, let's write the methods that will help us change things on our component, to trigger our `DoCheck` hook:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
130  remove(): void {
131    this.onRemove.emit(this.comment);
132  }
133
134  clear(): void {
135    delete this.comment.comment;
136  }
137
138  like(): void {
139    this.comment.likes += 1;
140 }
```

The `remove()` method will emit the event indicating that the user asked for this comment to be removed, the `clear()` method will remove the comment text from the comment object, and the `like()` method will increase to the like counter for the comment.

Rendering a list of comments with do-check

Now that we have written a component for one individual comment, let's write a second component that will be responsible for rendering the list of comments:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
143 @Component({
144   selector: 'do-check',
145   template: `
146     <do-check-item [comment]="comment"
147       *ngFor="let comment of comments" (onRemove)="removeComment($event)">
148     </do-check-item>
149
150     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="addComment()">
151       Add
152     </button>
153     `
154 })
```

The component metadata is pretty straightforward: we're using the component we created above, and then using `ngFor` to iterate through a list of comments, rendering them. We also have a button that will allow the user to add more comments to the list.

Now let's implement our comment list class `DoCheckCmp`:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
155 class DoCheckCmp implements DoCheck {  
156   comments: any[];  
157   iterable: boolean;  
158   authors: string[];  
159   texts: string[];  
160   differ: any;
```

Here we declare the variables we'll use: `comments`, `iterable`, `authors`, and `texts`.

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
162   constructor(differs: IterableDiffers) {  
163     this.differ = differs.find([]).create(null);  
164     this.comments = [];  
165  
166     this.authors = ['Elliot', 'Helen', 'Jenny', 'Joe', 'Justen', 'Matt'];  
167     this.texts = [  
168       "Ours is a life of constant reruns. We're always circling back to where we\\'  
169       'd we started, then starting all over again. Even if we don't run extra laps tha\\'  
170       't day, we surely will come back for more of the same another day soon.",  
171       'Really cool!',  
172       'Thanks!'  
173     ];  
174  
175     this.addComment();  
176   }
```

For this component, we'll be using an iterable differ. We can see that the class we're using to create the differ is now `IterableDiffers`. However, the way we create a differ remains the same.

On the constructor we also initialize a list of authors and a list of comment texts to be used when adding new comments.

Finally, we call the `addComment()` method so we don't initialize the app with an empty list of comments.

The next three methods are used to add a new comment:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
176  getRandomInt(max: number): number {
177      return Math.floor(Math.random() * (max + 1));
178  }
179
180  getRandomItem(array: string[]): string {
181      let pos: number = this.getRandomInt(array.length - 1);
182      return array[pos];
183  }
184
185  addComment(): void {
186      this.comments.push({
187          author: this.getRandomItem(this.authors),
188          comment: this.getRandomItem(this.texts),
189          likes: this.getRandomInt(20)
190      });
191  }
192
193  removeComment(comment) {
194      let pos = this.comments.indexOf(comment);
195      this.comments.splice(pos, 1);
196  }
```

We are declaring two methods that will return a random integer and a random item from an array, respectively.

Finally, the `addComment()` method will push a new comment to the list, with a random author, random text and a random number of likes.

Next, we have the `removeComment()` method, that will be used to remove one comment from the list:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

```
193  removeComment(comment) {
194      let pos = this.comments.indexOf(comment);
195      this.comments.splice(pos, 1);
196  }
```

And finally we declare our change detection method `ngDoCheck()`:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_03.ts

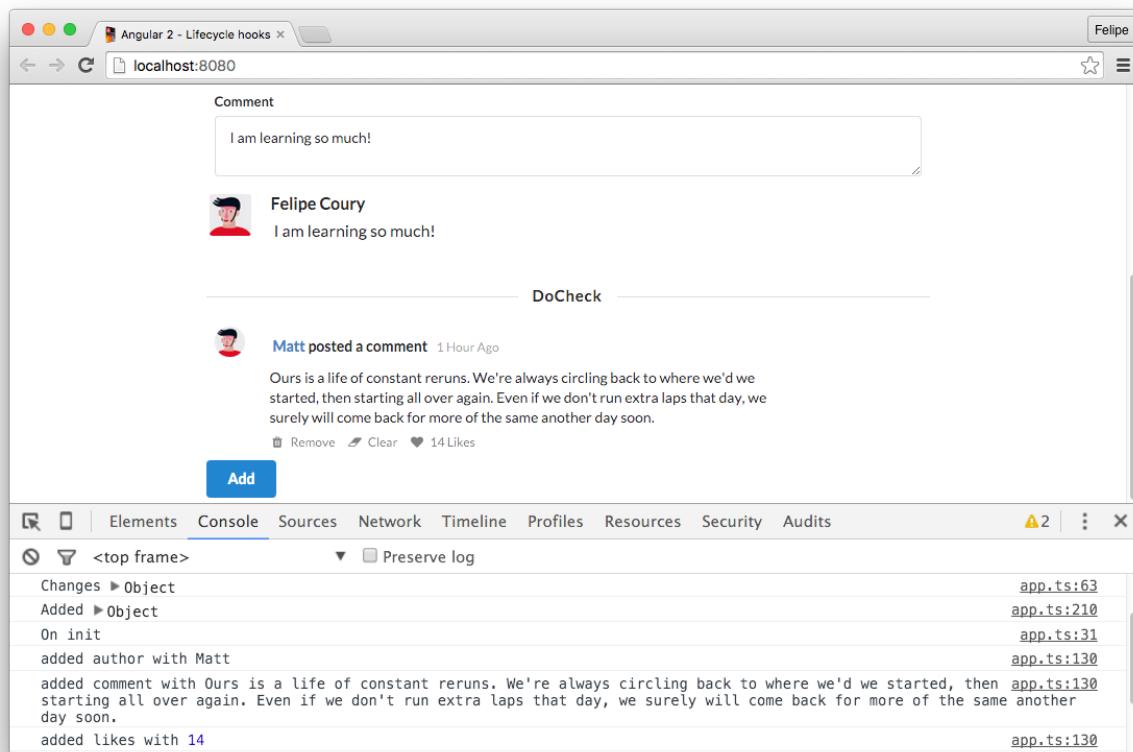
```

198  ngDoCheck(): void {
199    let changes = this.differ.diff(this.comments);
200
201    if (changes) {
202      changes.forEachAddedItem(r => console.log('Added', r.item));
203      changes.forEachRemovedItem(r => console.log('Removed', r.item));
204    }
205  }

```

The iterable differ behaves the same way as the key-value differ but it only provides methods for items that were added or removed.

When we run the app now, we get the list of comments with one comment:



Initial state

We can also see that a few things were logged to the console, like:

- 1 added author with Matt
- 2 ...
- 3 added likes with 14

Let's see what happens when we add a new comment to the list by clicking the Add button:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the title "Angular 2 - Lifecycle hooks" at "localhost:8080". The page displays a list of comments from users Felipe, Matt, and Helen. An "Add" button is visible at the bottom left. Below the browser window, the developer tools' Console tab is open, showing the following log entries:

```
Added Object {author: "Helen", comment: "Thanks!", likes: 17}
added author with Helen
added comment with Thanks!
added likes with 17
```

The log entries correspond to the steps listed in the code block above.

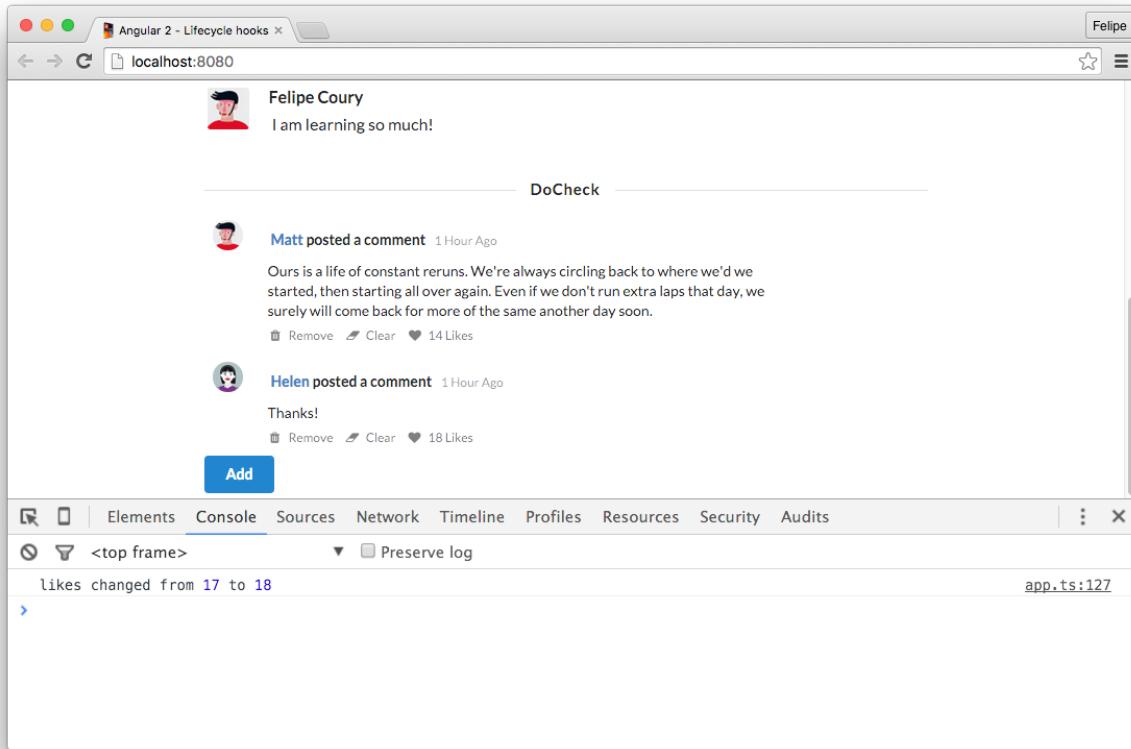
Comment added

We can see that the iterable differs identified that we added a new object to the list {author: "Helen", comment: "Thanks!", likes: 17}.

We also got individual changes to the comment object logged, as detected by the key-value differ:

- 1 added author with Helen
- 2 added comment with Thanks!
- 3 added likes with 17

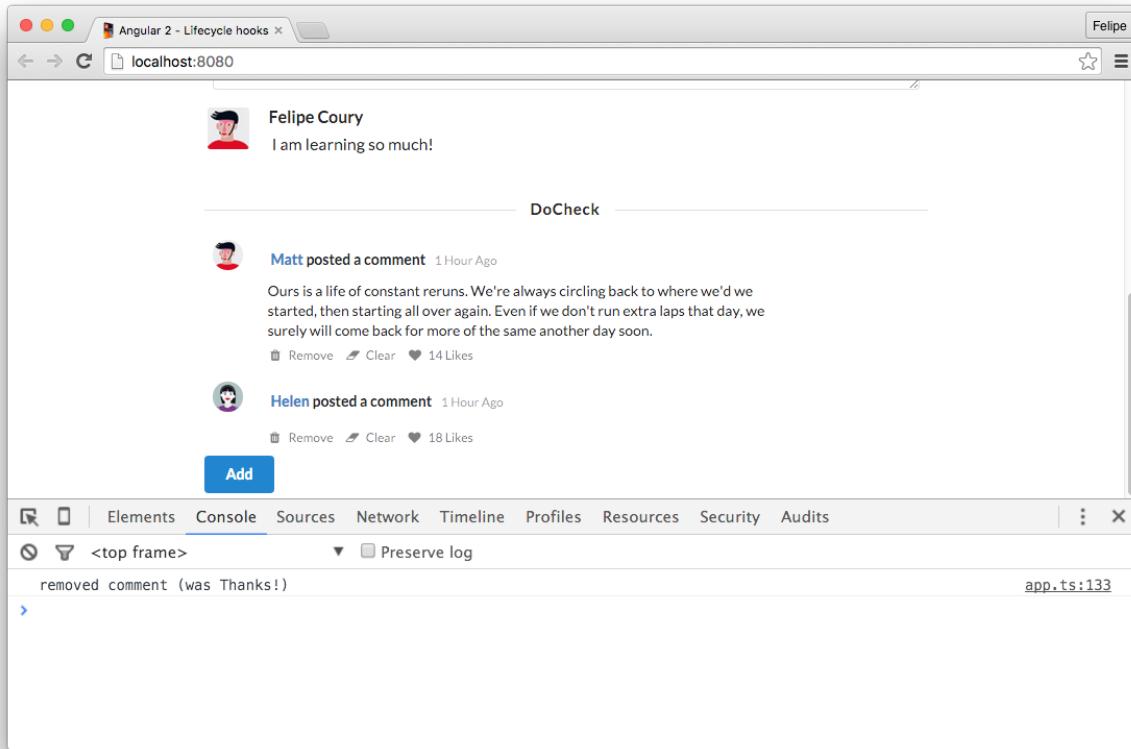
Now we can click the like button for this new comment:



Number of likes changed

And now only the like change was detected.

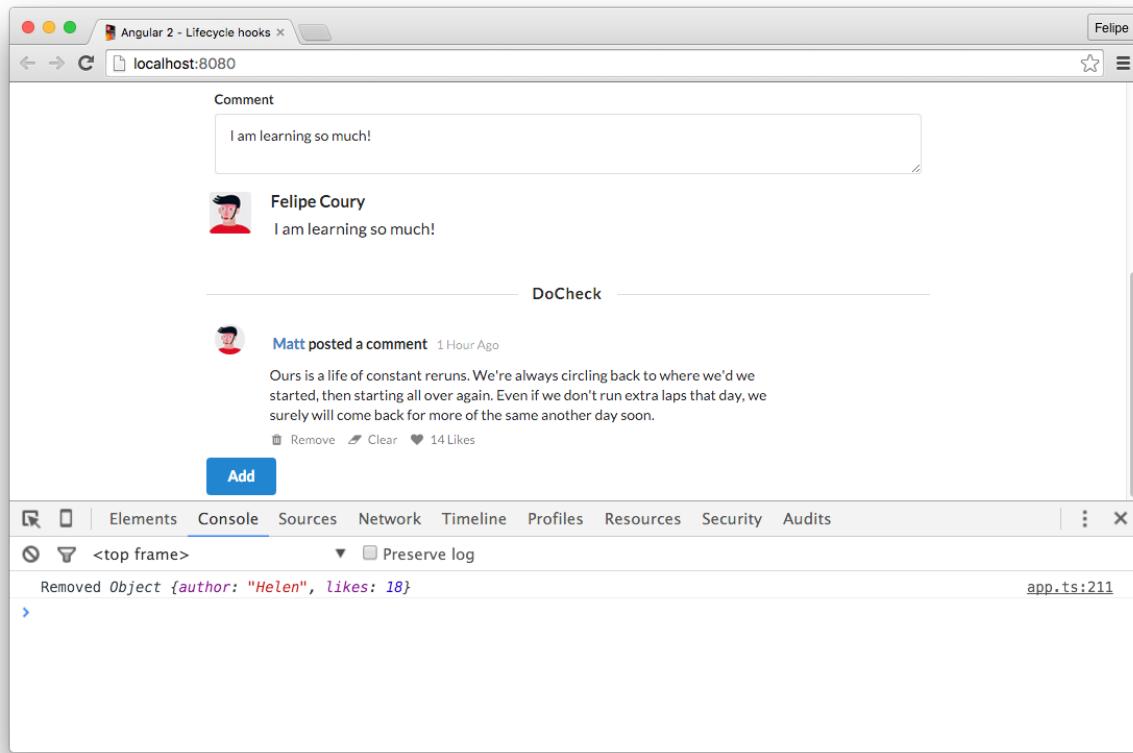
If we click the *Clear* icon, it will remove the `comment` key from the comment object:



Comment text cleared

And the log confirms that we removed that key.

Finally, let's remove the last comment, by clicking the *Remove* icon:



Comment removed

And as expected, we get a removed object log.

AfterContentInit, AfterViewInit, AfterContentChecked and AfterViewChecked

The `AfterContentInit` hook is called after `OnInit`, right after the initialization of the content of the component or directive has finished.

The `AfterContentChecked` works similarly, but it's called after the directive check has finished. The check, in this context, is the change detection system check.

The other two hooks: `AfterViewInit` and `AfterViewChecked` are triggered right after the content ones above, right after the view has been fully initialized. Those two hooks are only applicable to components, and not to directives.

Also, the `AfterXXXInit` hooks are only called once during the directive lifecycle, while the `AfterXXXChecked` hooks are called after every change detection cycle.

To better understand this, let's write another component that logs to the console during each lifecycle hook. It will also have a counter that we can increment by clicking a button:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_04.ts

```
212 @Component({
213   selector: 'afters',
214   template: `
215     <div class="ui label">
216       <i class="list icon"></i> Counter: {{ counter }}
217     </div>
218
219     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="inc()">
220       Increment
221     </button>
222   `
223 })
224 class AftersCmp implements OnInit, OnDestroy, DoCheck,
225                         OnChanges, AfterContentInit,
226                         AfterContentChecked, AfterViewInit,
227                         AfterViewChecked {
228   counter: number;
229
230   constructor() {
231     console.log('AfterCmp ----- [constructor]');
232     this.counter = 1;
233   }
234   inc() {
235     console.log('AfterCmp ----- [counter]');
236     this.counter += 1;
237   }
238   ngOnInit() {
239     console.log('AfterCmp - OnInit');
240   }
241   ngOnDestroy() {
242     console.log('AfterCmp - OnDestroy');
243   }
244   ngDoCheck() {
245     console.log('AfterCmp - DoCheck');
246   }
247   ngOnChanges() {
248     console.log('AfterCmp - OnChanges');
249   }
250   ngAfterContentInit() {
251     console.log('AfterCmp - AfterContentInit');
252   }
```

```
253     ngAfterContentChecked() {
254       console.log('AfterCmp - AfterContentChecked');
255     }
256     ngAfterViewInit() {
257       console.log('AfterCmp - AfterViewInit');
258     }
259     ngAfterViewChecked() {
260       console.log('AfterCmp - AfterViewChecked');
261     }
262 }
```

Now let's add it to the app component, along with a Toggle button, like the one we used for the `OnDestroy` hook:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_04.ts`

```
306   <afters *ngIf="displayAfters"></afters>
307   <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggleAfters()">
308     Toggle
309   </button>
```

The final implementation for the app component now should look like this:

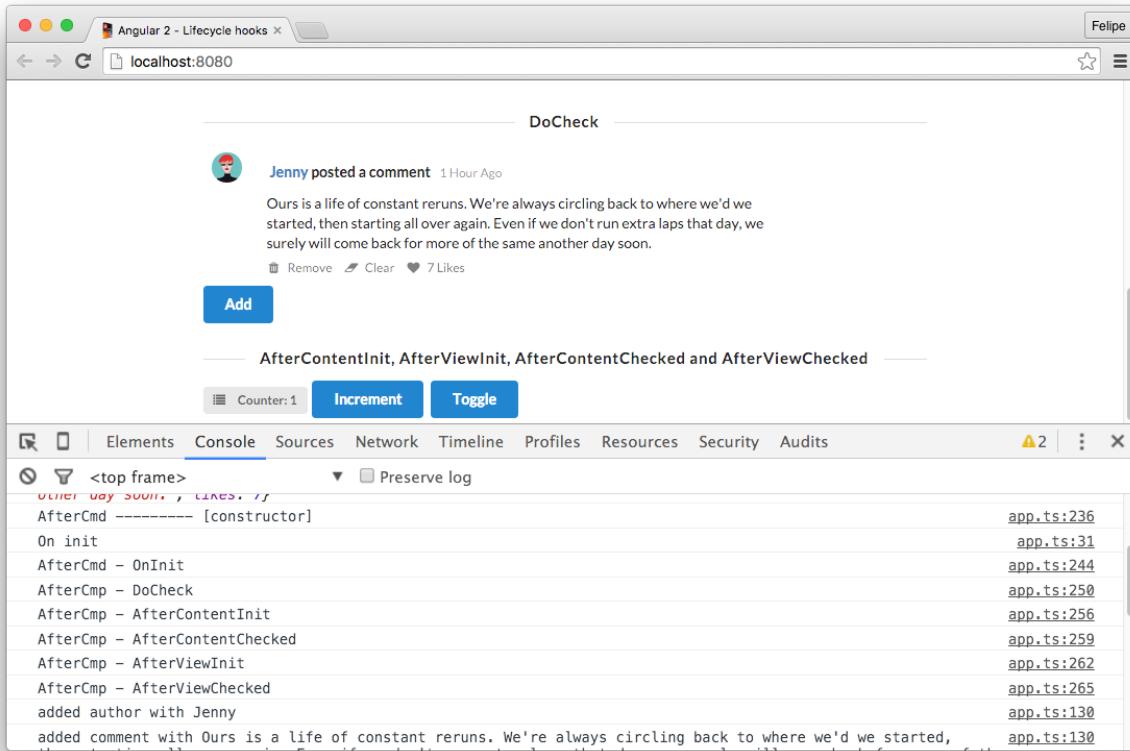
`code/advanced_components/app/ts/lifecycle-hooks/lifecycle_04.ts`

```
264 @Component({
265   selector: 'lifecycle-sample-app',
266   template: `
267     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
268       OnInit and OnDestroy
269     </h4>
270
271     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggle()">
272       Toggle
273     </button>
274     <on-init *ngIf="display"></on-init>
275
276     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
277       OnChange
278     </h4>
279
280     <div class="ui form">
281       <div class="field">
```

```
282     <label>Name</label>
283     <input type="text" #namefld value="{{name}}"
284         (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)">
285   </div>
286
287   <div class="field">
288     <label>Comment</label>
289     <textarea (keyup)="setValues(namefld, commentfld)"
290         rows="2" #commentfld>{{comment}}</textarea>
291   </div>
292 </div>
293
294 <on-change [name]="name" [comment]="comment"></on-change>
295
296 <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
297   DoCheck
298 </h4>
299
300 <do-check></do-check>
301
302 <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
303   AfterContentInit, AfterViewInit, AfterContentChecked and AfterViewChecked
304 </h4>
305
306 <afters *ngIf="displayAfters"></afters>
307 <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggleAfters()">
308   Toggle
309 </button>
310   ^
311 })
312 export class LifecycleSampleApp4 {
313   display: boolean;
314   displayAfters: boolean;
315   name: string;
316   comment: string;
317
318   constructor() {
319     // OnInit and OnDestroy
320     this.display = true;
321
322     // OnChange
323     this.name = 'Felipe Coury';
```

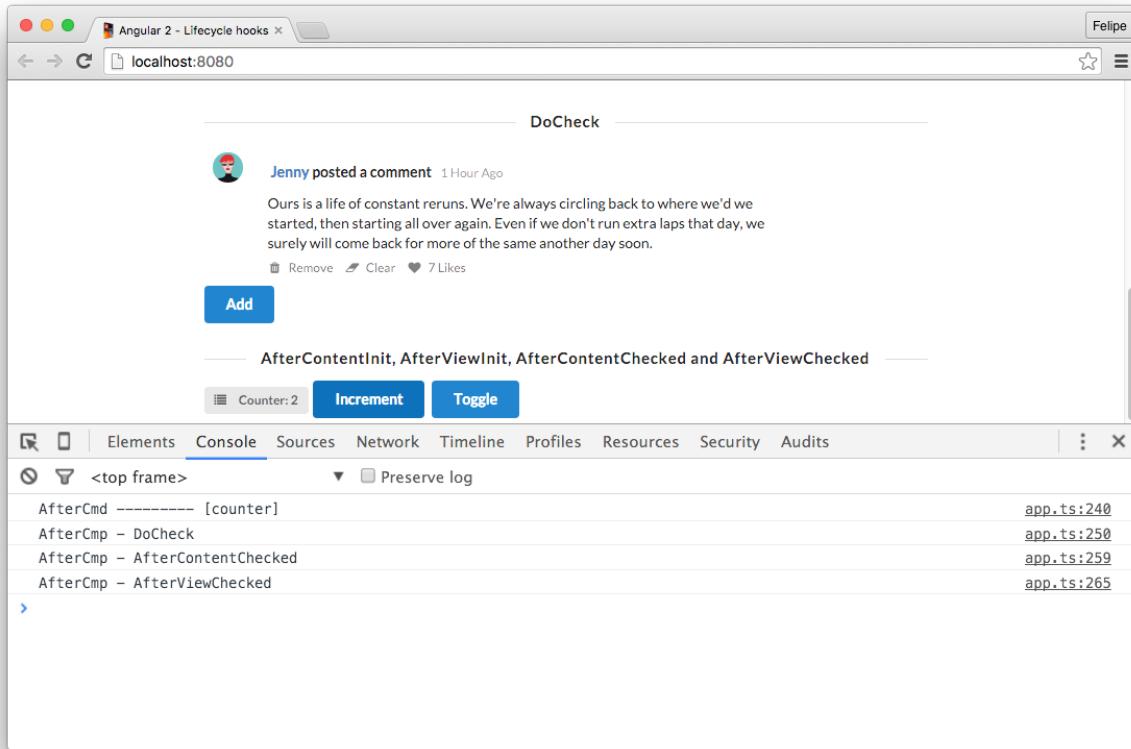
```
324     this.comment = 'I am learning so much!';
325
326     // AfterXXX
327     this.displayAfters = true;
328 }
329
330 setValues(namefld, commentfld) {
331     this.name = namefld.value;
332     this.comment = commentfld.value;
333 }
334
335 toggle(): void {
336     this.display = !this.display;
337 }
338
339 toggleAfters(): void {
340     this.displayAfters = !this.displayAfters;
341 }
342 }
```

When the application starts, we can see each hook is logged:



App started

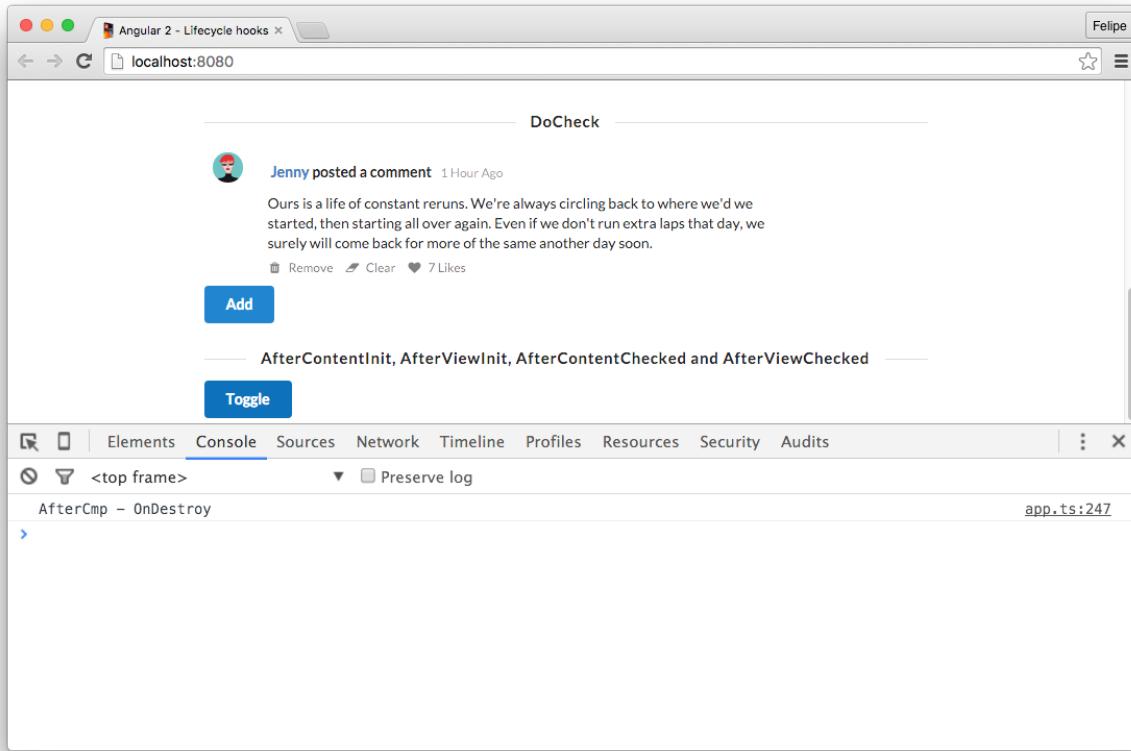
Now let's clear the console and click the Increment button:



After counter increment

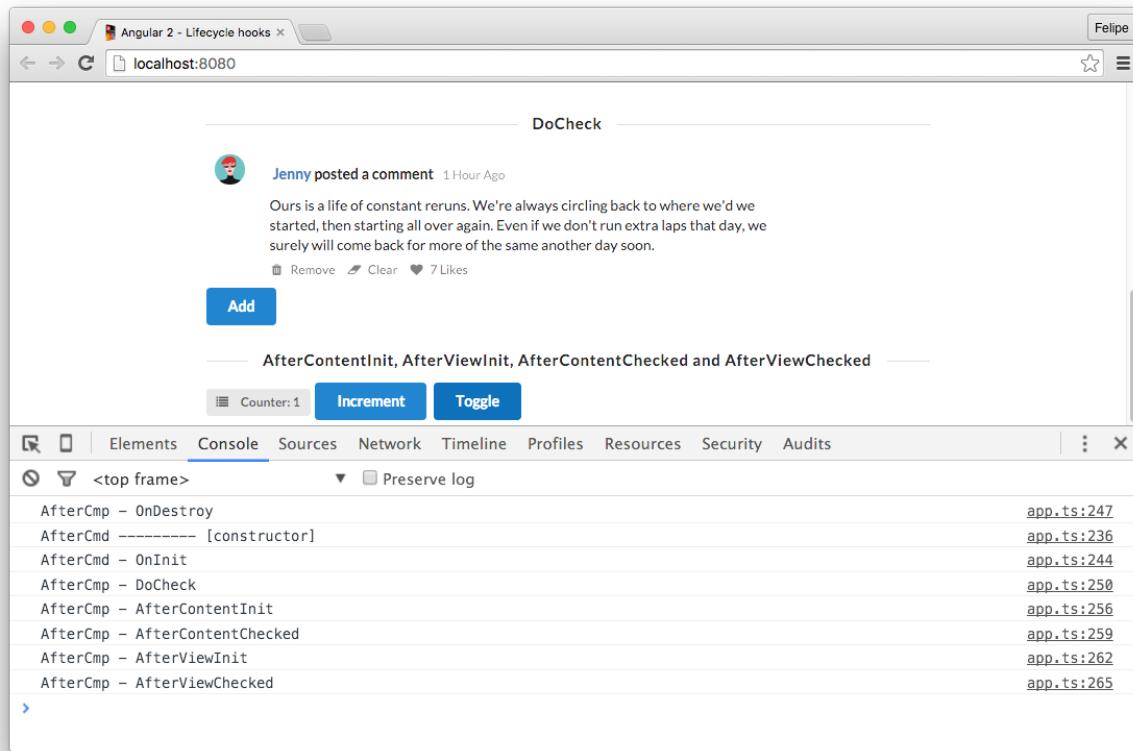
You can see that now only the DoCheck, AfterContentCheck and AfterViewCheck hooks were triggered.

Sure enough, if we click the Toggle button:



App started

And click it again:



App started

All the hooks are triggered.

Advanced Templates

Template elements are special elements used to create views that can be dynamically manipulated. In order to make working with templates simpler, Angular provides some syntactic sugar to create templates, so we often don't create them by hand.

For instance, when we write:

```
1 <do-check-item
2   *ngFor="let comment of comments"
3   [comment]="comment"
4   (onRemove)="removeComment($event)">
5 </do-check-item>
```

This gets converted into:

```
1 <do-check-item
2   template="ngFor let comment of comments; #i=index"
3   [comment]="comment"
4   (onRemove)="removeComment($event)">
5 </do-check-item>
```

Which then gets converted into:

```
1 <template
2   ngFor
3   [ngForOf]="comments"
4   let-comment="$implicit"
5   let-index="i">
6   <do-check-item
7     [comment]="comment"
8     (onRemove)="removeComment($event)">
9   </do-check-item>
10 </template>
```

It's important that we understand this underlying concept so we can build our own directives.

Rewriting `ngIf` - `ngBookIf`

Let's create a directive that does exactly what `ngIf` does. Let's call it `ngBookIf`.

`ngBookIf @Directive`

We start by declaring the `@Directive` annotation for our class:

```
1 @Directive({
2   selector: '[ngBookIf]'
3 })
```

We're using `[ngBookIf]` as the selector because, as we learned above, when we use `*ngBookIf="condition"`, it will be converted to:

```
1 <template ngBookIf [ngBookIf]="condition">
```

Since `ngBookIf` is also an attribute we need to indicate that we're expecting to receive it as an input. The job of this directive should be to add the directive template contents when the condition is true and remove it when it's false.

So when the condition is true, we will use a *view container*. The view container is used to attach one or more views to the directive.

We will use the view container to either:

- create a new view with our directive template embedded or
- clear the view container contents.

Before we do that, we need to inject the `ViewContainerRef` and the `TemplateRef`. They will be injected with the directive's view container and template.

Here's the code we'll need:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/if.ts

```
13 class NgBookIf {
14     constructor(private viewContainer: ViewContainerRef,
15                 private template: TemplateRef<any>) {}
```

Now that we have references to both the view container and the template, we will use a TypeScript property setter construct and also specify that this is an input using the `@Input()` annotation:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/if.ts

```
17     @Input() set ngBookIf(condition) {
18         if (condition) {
19             this.viewContainer.createEmbeddedView(this.template);
20         } else {
21             this.viewContainer.clear();
22         }
23     }
24 }
```

This method will be called every time we set a value on the `ngBookIf` property of our class. That is, this method will be called anytime the condition in `ngBookIf="condition"` changes.

Now we use the view container's `createEmbeddedView` method to attach the directive's template if the condition is true, or the `clear` method to remove everything from the view container.

Using `ngBookIf`

In order to use our directive, we can write the following component:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/if.ts

```
26 @Component({
27   selector: 'template-sample-app',
28   template: `
29     <button class="ui primary button" (click)="toggle()">
30       Toggle
31     </button>
32
33     <div *ngBookIf="display">
34       The message is displayed
35     </div>
36
37   `
38 })
39 export class IfTemplateSampleApp {
40   display: boolean;
41
42   constructor() {
43     this.display = true;
44   }
45
46   toggle() {
47     this.display = !this.display;
48   }
49 }
```

When we run the application, we can see that the directive works as expected: when we click the **Toggle** button the message *This message is displayed* is toggled on and off the page.

Rewriting ngFor - ngBookRepeat

Now let's write a simplified version of the ngFor directive that Angular provides to handle repetition of templates for a given collection.

ngBookRepeat template deconstruction

This directive will be used with the `*ngBookRepeat="let var of collection"` notation.

Like we did for the previous directive, we need to declare the selector as being `[ngBookRepeat]`. However the input parameter in this case won't be `ngBookRepeat` only.

If we look back at how Angular converts the `*something="let var in collection"` notation, we can see that the final form of the element is the equivalent of:

```
1 <template something [somethingOf]="collection" let-var="$implicit">
2   <!-- ... -->
3 </template>
```

As we can see, the attribute that's being passed isn't `something` but `somethingOf` instead. That's where our directive receives the collection we're iterating on.

In template that is generated, we're going to have a local view variable `#var`, that will receive the value from the `$implicit` local variable. That's the name of the local variable that Angular uses when "de-sugaring" the syntax into a template.

ngBookRepeat @Directive

Time to write the directive. First we have to write the directive annotation:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts

```
16 @Directive({
17   selector: '[ngBookRepeat]'
18 })
```

ngBookRepeat class

Then we start writing the component class:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts

```
19 class NgBookRepeat implements DoCheck {
20   private items: any;
21   private differ: IterableDiffer;
22   private views: Map<any, ViewRef> = new Map<any, ViewRef>();
23
24
25   constructor(private viewContainer: ViewContainerRef,
26             private template: TemplateRef<any>,
27             private changeDetector: ChangeDetectorRef,
28             private differs: IterableDiffers) {}
```

We are declaring some properties for our class:

- `items` holds the collection we're iterating on
- `differ` is an `IterableDiffer` (which we learned about in the [Lifecycle Hooks section above](#)) that will be used for change detection purposes

- `views` is a `Map` that will link a given item on the collection with the view that contains it

The constructor will receive the `viewContainer`, the template and an `IIterableDiffers` instance (we discussed each of these things earlier in this chapter above).

Now, the next thing that's being injected is a change detector. We will have a deep dive in change detection in the next section. For now, let's say that this is the class that Angular creates to trigger the detection when properties of our directive change.

The next step is to write code that will trigger when we set the `ngBookRepeatOf` input:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts`

```

30  @Input() set ngBookRepeatOf(items) {
31    this.items = items;
32    if (this.items && !this.differ) {
33      this.differ = this.differs.find(items).create(this.changeDetector);
34    }
35  }

```

When we set this attribute, we're keeping the collection on the directive's `item` property and if the collection is valid and we don't have a differ yet, we create one.

To do that, we're creating an instance of `IIterableDiffer` that reuses the directive's change detector (the one we injected in the constructor).

Now it's time to write the code that will react to a change on the collection. For this, we're going to use the `DoCheck` lifecycle hook by implementing the `ngDoCheck` method as follows:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts`

```

37  ngDoCheck(): void {
38    if (this.differ) {
39      let changes = this.differ.diff(this.items);
40      if (changes) {
41
42        changes.forEachAddedItem((change) => {
43          let view = this.viewContainer.createEmbeddedView(
44            this.template,
45            {'$implicit': change.item});
46          this.views.set(change.item, view);
47        });
48        changes.forEachRemovedItem((change) => {
49          let view = this.views.get(change.item);
50          let idx = this.viewContainer.indexOf(view);

```

```
51     this.viewContainer.remove(idx);
52     this.views.delete(change.item);
53   });
54 }
55 }
56 }
```

Let's break this down a bit. First thing we do in this method is make sure we already instantiated the differ. If not, we do nothing.

Next, we ask the differ what changed. If there are changes, we first iterate through the items that were added using `changes.forEachAddedItem`. This method will receive a `CollectionChangeRecord` object for every element that was added.

Then for each element, we create a new embedded view using the view container's `createEmbeddedView` method.

```
1 let view = this.viewContainer.createEmbeddedView(this.template, {'$implicit': ch\
2 ange.item});
```

The second argument to `createEmbeddedView` is the *view context*. In this case, we're setting the `$implicit` local variable to `change.item`. This will allow us to reference the variable we declared back on the `*ngBookRepeat="let var of collection"` as `var` on that view. That is, the `var` in `let var` is the `$implicit` variable. We use `$implicit` because we don't know what name the user will assign to it when we're writing this component.

The final thing we need to do is to connect the item with the collection to its view. The reason behind this is that, if an item gets removed from the collection, we need to get rid of the correct view, as we do next.

Now for each item that was removed from the collection, we use the item-to-view map we keep to find the view. Then we ask the view container for the index of that view. We need that because the view container's `remove` method needs an index. Finally, we also remove the view from the item-to-view map.

Trying out our directive

To test our new directive, let's write the following component:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts

```
59  @Component({
60    selector: 'template-sample-app',
61    template: `
62      <ul>
63        <li *ngBookRepeat="let p of people">
64          {{ p.name }} is {{ p.age }}
65          <a href (click)="remove(p)">Remove</a>
66        </li>
67      </ul>
68
69      <div class="ui form">
70        <div class="fields">
71          <div class="field">
72            <label>Name</label>
73            <input type="text" #name placeholder="Name">
74          </div>
75          <div class="field">
76            <label>Age</label>
77            <input type="text" #age placeholder="Age">
78          </div>
79        </div>
80      </div>
81      <div class="ui submit button"
82        (click)="add(name, age)">
83        Add
84      </div>
85      `
86    })
87  export class ForTemplateSampleApp {
88    people: any[];
89
90    constructor() {
91      this.people = [
92        {name: 'Joe', age: 10},
93        {name: 'Patrick', age: 21},
94        {name: 'Melissa', age: 12},
95        {name: 'Kate', age: 19}
96      ];
97    }
98
99    remove(p) {
```

```
100     let idx: number = this.people.indexOf(p);
101     this.people.splice(idx, 1);
102     return false;
103 }
104
105 add(name, age) {
106     this.people.push({name: name.value, age: age.value});
107     name.value = '';
108     age.value = '';
109 }
110 }
```

We're using our directive to iterate through a list of people:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts`

```
62 <ul>
63   <li *ngForRepeat="let p of people">
64     {{ p.name }} is {{ p.age }}
65     <a href (click)="remove(p)">Remove</a>
66   </li>
67 </ul>
```

When we click **Remove** we remove the item from the collection, triggering the change detection.

We also provide a form that allows adding items to the collection:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/templates/for.ts`

```
69 <div class="ui form">
70   <div class="fields">
71     <div class="field">
72       <label>Name</label>
73       <input type="text" #name placeholder="Name">
74     </div>
75     <div class="field">
76       <label>Age</label>
77       <input type="text" #age placeholder="Age">
78     </div>
79   </div>
80 </div>
81 <div class="ui submit button"
82   (click)="add(name, age)">
83   Add
84 </div>
```

Change Detection

As a user interacts with our app, data (state) changes and our app needs to respond accordingly.

One of the big problems any modern JavaScript framework needs to solve is how to figure out when changes have happened and re-render components accordingly.

In order to make the view react to changes to components state, Angular uses *change detection*.

What are the things that can trigger changes in a component's state? The most obvious thing is user interaction. For instance, if we have a component:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'my-component',
3   template: `
4     Name: {{name}}
5     <button (click)="changeName()">Change! </button>
6   `
7 })
8 class MyComponent {
9   name: string;
10  constructor() {
11    this.name = 'Felipe';
12  }
13
14  changeName() {
15    this.name = 'Nate';
16  }
17 }
```

We can see that when the user *clicks* on the Change! button, the component's *name* property will change.

Another source of change could be, for instance, a HTTP request:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'my-component',
3   template: `
4     Name: {{name}}
5   `
6 })
7 class MyComponent {
8   name: string;
9   constructor(private http: Http) {
```

```
10    this.http.get('/names/1')
11      .map(res => res.json())
12      .subscribe(data => this.name = data.name);
13  }
14 }
```

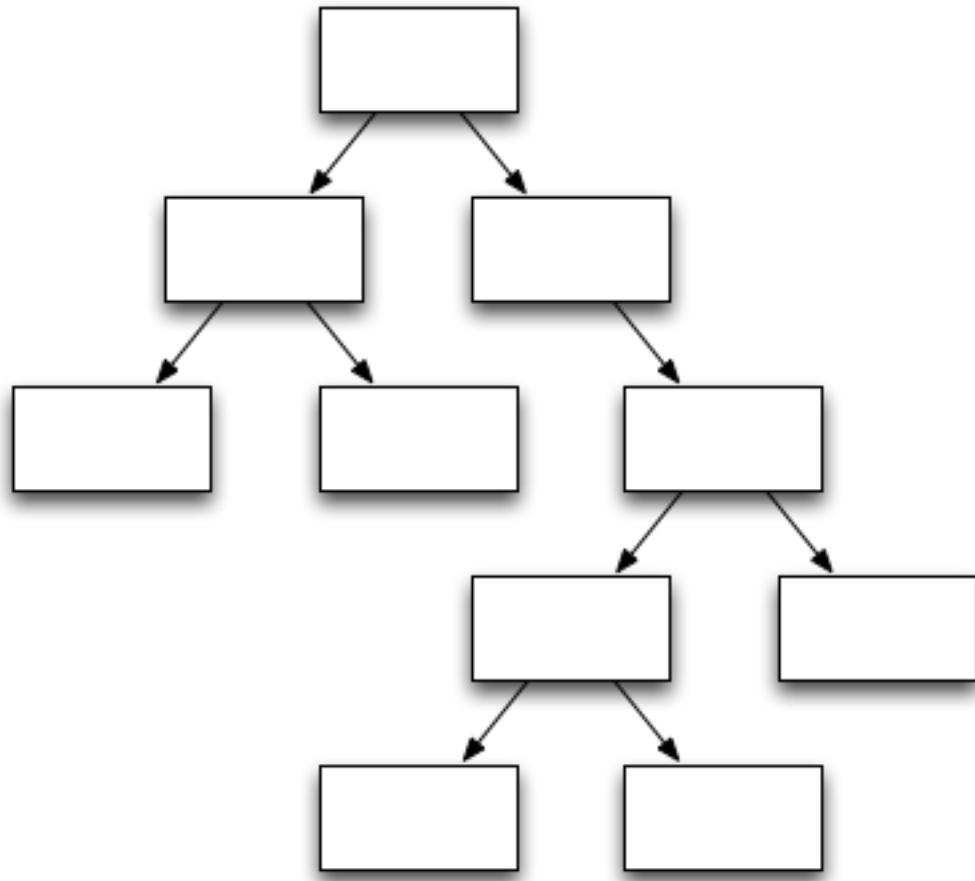
And finally, we could have a timer that would trigger the change:

```
1 @Component({
2   selector: 'my-component',
3   template: `
4     Name: {{name}}
5   `
6 })
7 class MyComponent {
8   name: string;
9   constructor() {
10     setTimeout(() => this.name = 'Felipe', 2000);
11   }
12 }
```

But how does Angular become aware of these changes?

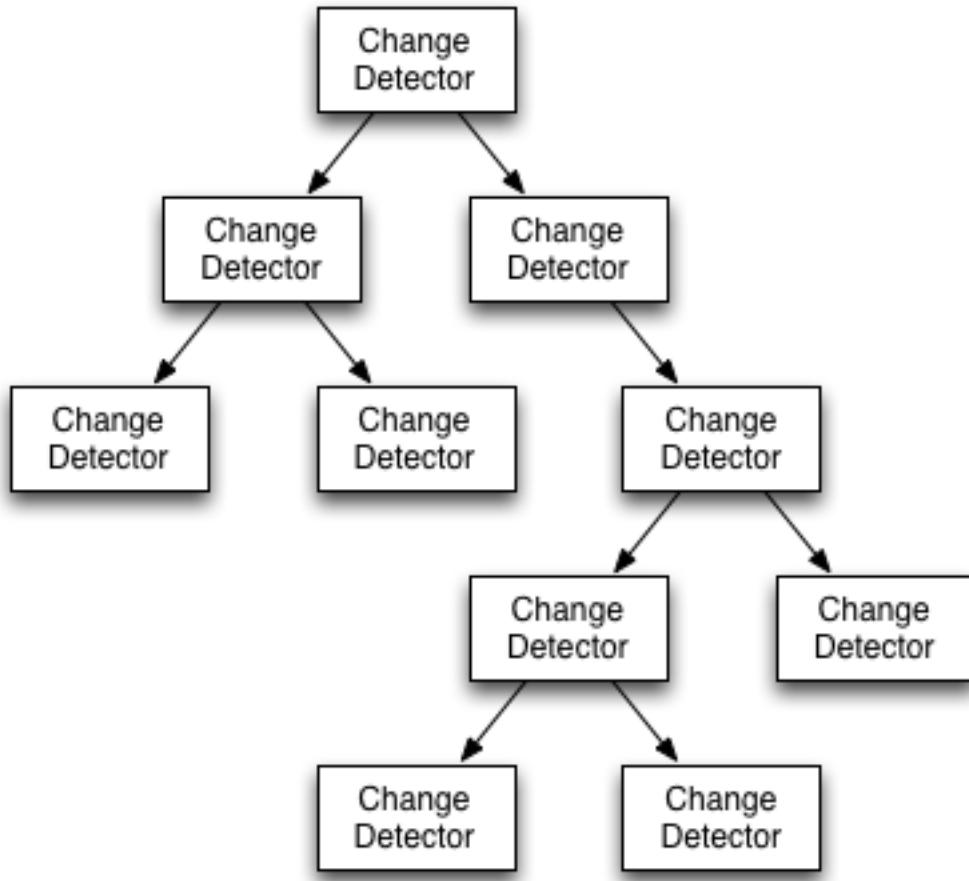
The first thing to know is that each component gets a change detector.

Like we've seen before, a typical application will have a number of components that will interact with each other, creating a dependency tree like below:



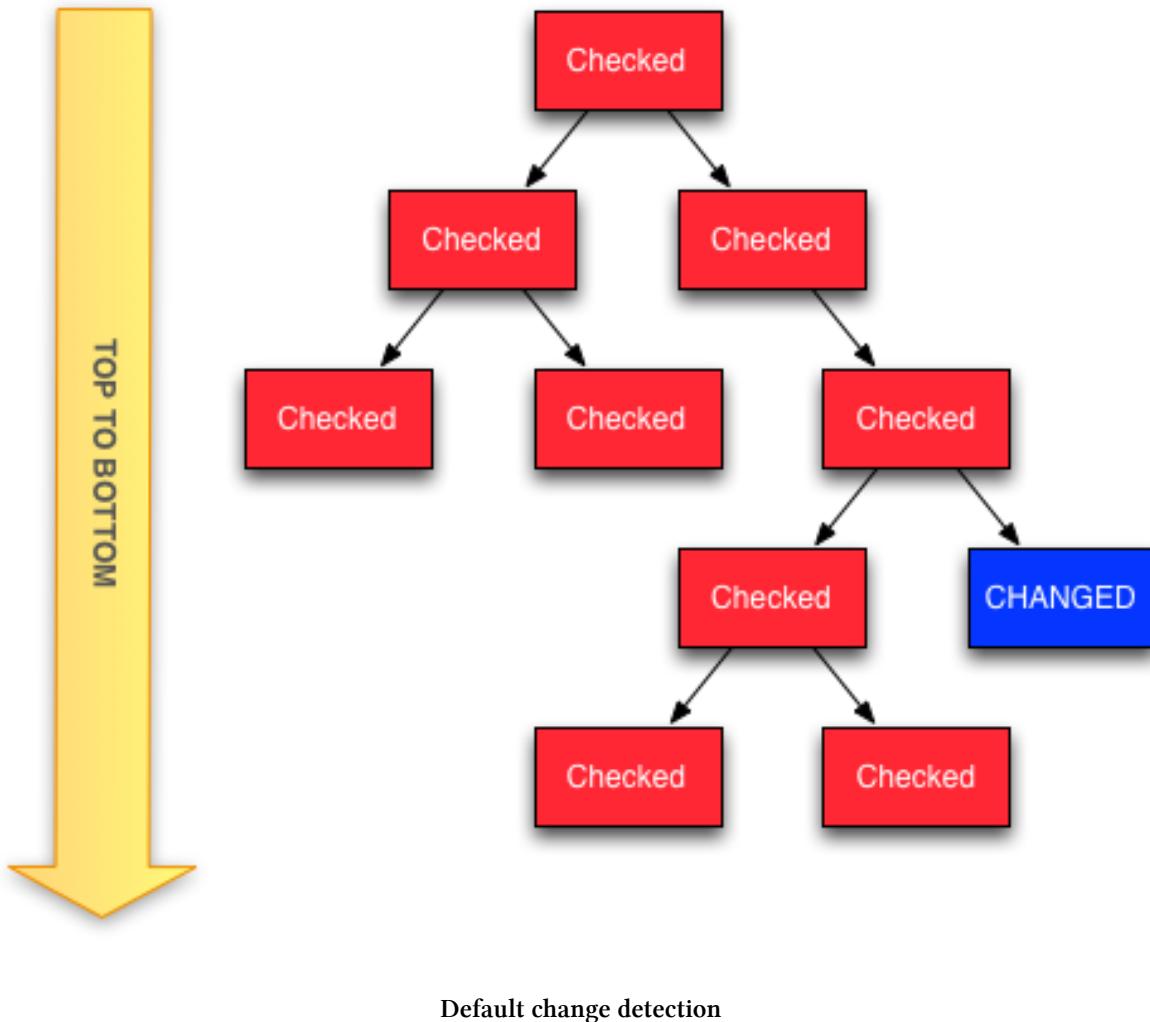
Component tree

For each component on our tree, a change detector is created and so we end up with a tree of change detectors:



Change detector tree

When one of the the components change, no matter where it is in the tree, a change detection pass is triggered for the whole tree. This happens because Angular scans for changes from the top component node, all the way to the bottom leaves of the tree.



In our diagram above, the component in blue changed, but as we can see, it triggered checks for the whole component tree. Objects that were checked are indicated in red (note that the component itself was also checked).

It is natural to think that this check may be a very expensive operation. However, due to a number of optimizations (that make Angular code eligible for further optimization by the JavaScript engine), it's actually surprisingly fast.

Customizing Change Detection

There are times that the built-in or default change detection mechanism may be overkill. One example is if you're using immutable objects or if your application architecture relies on observables. In these cases, Angular provides mechanisms for configuring the change detection system so that you get very fast performance.

The first way to change the change detector behavior is by telling a component that it should only be checked if one of its *input values* change.

To recap, an input value is an attribute your component receives from the outside world. For instance, in this code:

```
1 class Person {  
2     constructor(public name: string, public age: string) {}  
3 }  
4  
5 @Component({  
6     selector: 'mycomp',  
7     template: `  
8         <div>  
9             <span class="name">{person.name}</span>  
10            is {person.age} years old.  
11        </div>  
12    `,  
13 })  
14 class MyComp {  
15     @Input() person: Person;  
16 }
```

We have `person` as an input attribute. Now, if we want to make this component change only when its input attribute changes, we just need to change the change detection strategy, by setting its `changeDetection` attribute to `ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush`.



By the way, if you're curious, the default value for `changeDetection` is `ChangeDetectionStrategy.Default`.

Let's write a small experiment with two components. The first one will use the default change detection behavior and the other will use the `OnPush` strategy:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/onpush.ts

```
1 import {  
2     Component,  
3     Input,  
4     ChangeDetectionStrategy,  
5 } from '@angular/core';  
6  
7  
8 class Profile {
```

```
9  constructor(private first: string, private last: string) {}
10
11 lastChanged() {
12     return new Date();
13 }
14 }
```

So we start with some imports and we declare a `Person` class that will be used as the input in both of our components. Notice that we also created a method called `lastChange()` on the `Profile` class. It will help us determine when the change detection is triggered. When a given component is marked as needing to be checked, this method will be called, since it's present on the template. So this method will reliably indicate the last time the component was checked for changes.

Next, we declare the `DefaultCmp` that will use the default change detection strategy:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/onpush.ts`

```
16 @Component({
17   selector: 'default',
18   template: `
19     <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">
20       Default Strategy
21     </h4>
22
23     <form class="ui form">
24       <div class="field">
25         <label>First Name</label>
26         <input
27           type="text"
28           [(ngModel)]="profile.first"
29           name="first"
30           placeholder="First Name">
31       </div>
32       <div class="field">
33         <label>Last Name</label>
34         <input
35           type="text"
36           [(ngModel)]="profile.last"
37           name="last"
38           placeholder="Last Name">
39       </div>
40     </form>
41   <div>
```

```
42     {{profile.lastChanged() | date:'medium'}}  
43   </div>  
44   `.  
45 })  
46 export class DefaultCmp {  
47   @Input() profile: Profile;  
48 }
```

And a second component using OnPush strategy:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/onpush.ts

```
50 @Component({  
51   selector: 'on-push',  
52   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,  
53   template: `.  
54   <h4 class="ui horizontal divider header">  
55     OnPush Strategy  
56   </h4>  
57  
58   <form class="ui form">  
59     <div class="field">  
60       <label>First Name</label>  
61       <input  
62         type="text"  
63         [(ngModel)]="profile.first"  
64         name="first"  
65         placeholder="First Name">  
66     </div>  
67     <div class="field">  
68       <label>Last Name</label>  
69       <input  
70         type="text"  
71         [(ngModel)]="profile.last"  
72         name="last"  
73         placeholder="Last Name">  
74     </div>  
75   </form>  
76   <div>  
77     {{profile.lastChanged() | date:'medium'}}  
78   </div>  
79   `.  
80 })
```

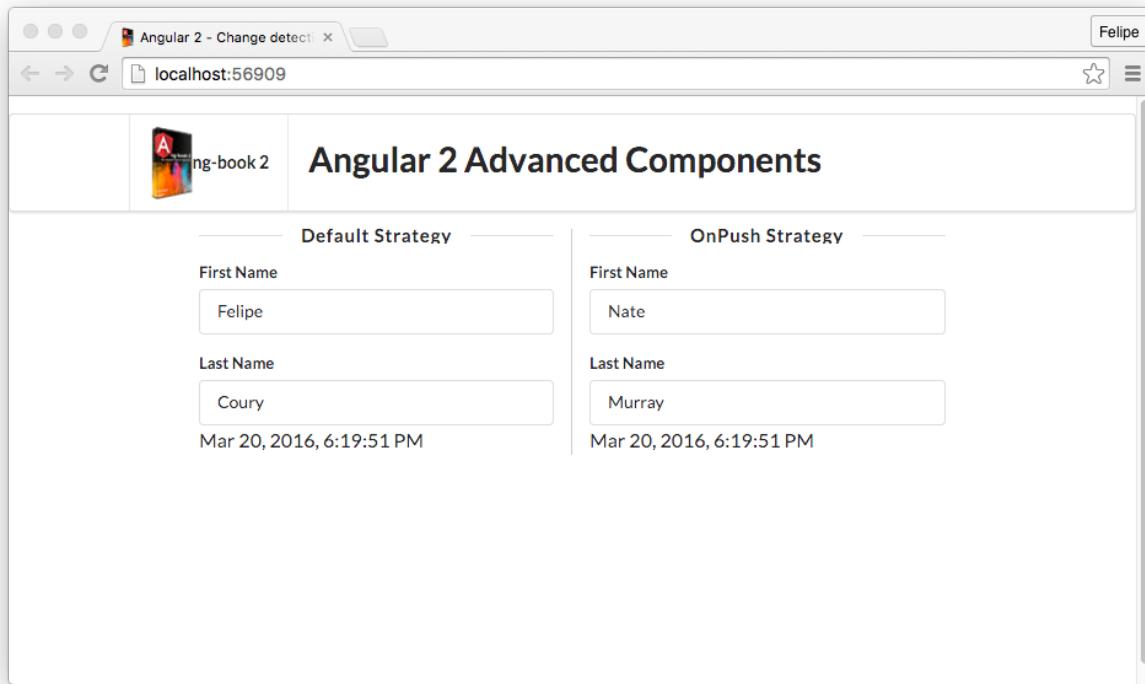
```
81 export class OnPushCmp {  
82     @Input() profile: Profile;  
83 }
```

As we can see, both components use the same template. The only thing that is different is the header. Finally, let's add the component that will render both components side by side:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/onpush.ts

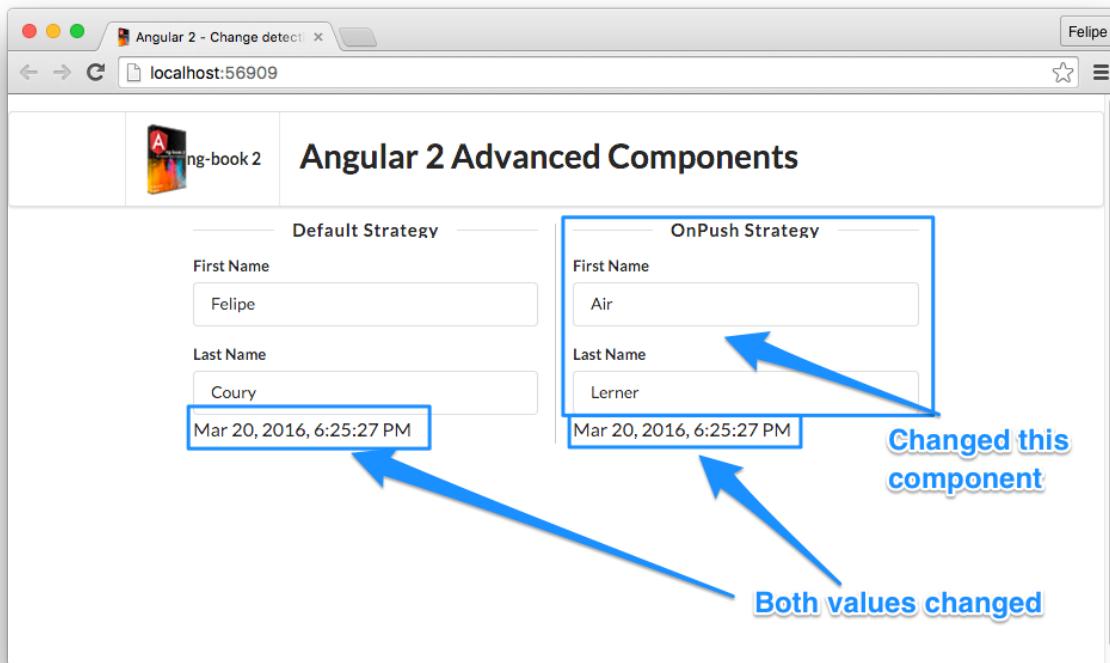
```
85 @Component({  
86     selector: 'change-detection-sample-app',  
87     template: `  
88         <div class="ui page grid">  
89             <div class="two column row">  
90                 <div class="column area">  
91                     <default [profile]="profile1"></default>  
92                 </div>  
93                 <div class="column area">  
94                     <on-push [profile]="profile2"></on-push>  
95                 </div>  
96             </div>  
97         </div>  
98     `,  
99 })  
100 export class OnPushChangeDetectionSampleApp {  
101     profile1: Profile = new Profile('Felipe', 'Couri');  
102     profile2: Profile = new Profile('Nate', 'Murray');  
103 }
```

When we run this application, we should see both components rendered like below:



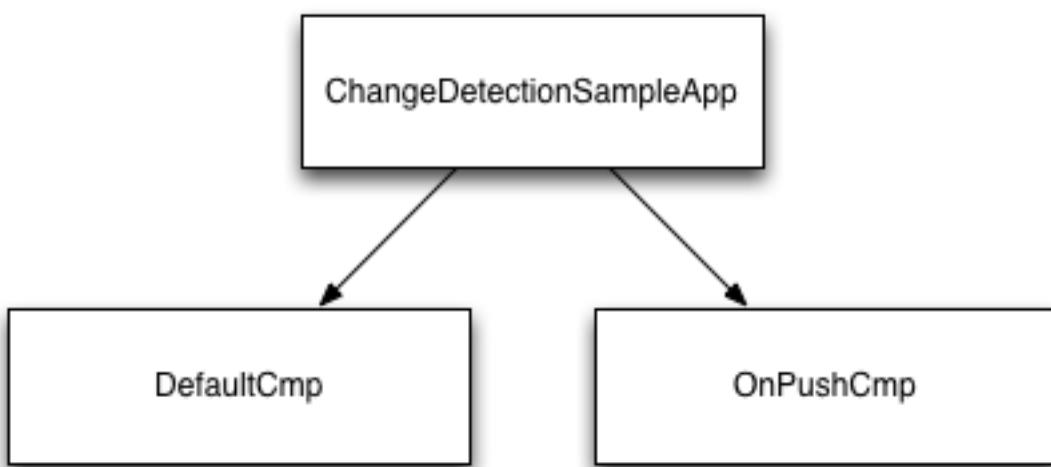
Default vs. OnPush strategies

When we change something on the component on the left, with the default strategy, we notice that the timestamp for the component on the right doesn't change:



OnPush changed, default got checked

To understand why this happened, let's check this new tree of components:

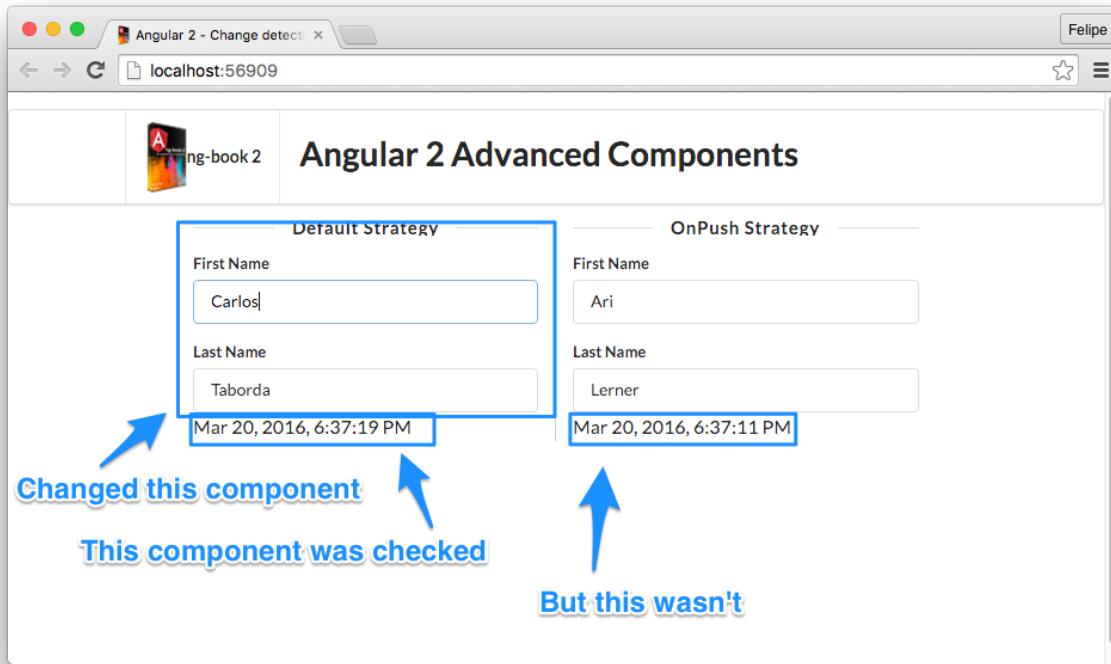


Tree of components

Angular checks for changes from the top to the bottom, so it queried first ChangeDetectionSampleApp, then DefaultCmp and finally OnPushCmp. When it inferred that OnPushCmp changed, it updates

all the components of the tree, from top to bottom, making the DefaultCmp to be rendered again.

Now when we change the value of the component on the right:



Default changed, OnPush didn't get checked

So now the change detection engine kicked in, the DefaultCmp component was checked but OnPushCmp wasn't. This happened because when we set the OnPush strategy for this component, it made the change detection kick in for this component *only* when one of its input attributes change. Changing other components of the tree doesn't trigger this component's change detector.

Zones

Under the hood, Angular uses a library called Zones to automatically detect changes and trigger the change detection mechanism. Zones will automatically tell Angular that something changed under the most common scenarios:

- when a DOM Event occurs (like *click*, *change*, etc.)
- when an HTTP request is resolved
- when a Timer is triggered (*setTimeout* or *setInterval*)

However, there are scenarios where Zones won't be able to automatically identify that something changed. That's another scenario where the **OnPush** strategy can be very useful.

A few examples of things that is out of the Zones control, would be:

- using a third party library that runs asynchronously
- immutable data
- Observables

these are perfect candidates for using **OnPush** along with a technique to manually hint Angular that something changed.

Observables and OnPush

Let's write a component that receives an **Observable** as a parameter. Every time we receive a value from this observable, we will increment a counter that is a property of the component.

If we were using the regular change detection strategy, any time we incremented the counter, we would get change detection triggered by Angular. However, we will have this component use the **OnPush** strategy and, instead of letting the change detector kick in for each increment, we'll only kick it when the number is a multiple of 5 or when the observable completes.

In order to do that, let's write our component:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts

```
1 import {
2   Component,
3   Input,
4   ChangeDetectorRef,
5   ChangeDetectionStrategy
6 } from '@angular/core';
7
8 import { Observable } from 'rxjs/Rx';
9
10 @Component({
11   selector: 'observable',
12   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
13   template: `
14     <div>
15       <div>Total items: {{counter}}</div>
16     </div>
17   `
18 })
19 export class ObservableCmp {
20   @Input() items: Observable<number>;
```

```
21 counter: number = 0;
22
23 constructor(private changeDetector: ChangeDetectorRef) {
24 }
25
26 ngOnInit() {
27   this.items.subscribe((v) => {
28     console.log('got value', v);
29     this.counter++;
30     if (this.counter % 5 === 0) {
31       this.changeDetector.markForCheck();
32     }
33   },
34   null,
35   () => {
36     this.changeDetector.markForCheck();
37   });
38 }
39 }
```

Let's break down the code a bit so we can make sure we understand. First, we're declaring the component to take `items` as the input attribute and to use the `OnPush` detection strategy:

`code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts`

```
10 @Component({
11   selector: 'observable',
12   changeDetection: ChangeDetectionStrategy.OnPush,
13   template: `
14     <div>
15       <div>Total items: {{counter}}</div>
16     </div>
17   `
18 })
```

Next, we're storing our input attribute on the `items` property of the component class, and setting another property, called `counter`, to `0`.

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts

```
19 export class ObservableCmp {  
20   @Input() items: Observable<number>;  
21   counter: number = 0;
```

Then we use the constructor to get hold of the component's change detector:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts

```
23   constructor(private changeDetector: ChangeDetectorRef) {  
24 }
```

Then, during the component initialization, on the `ngOnInit` hook:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts

```
26   ngOnInit() {  
27     this.items.subscribe((v) => {  
28       console.log('got value', v);  
29       this.counter++;  
30       if (this.counter % 5 === 0) {  
31         this.changeDetector.markForCheck();  
32       }  
33     },  
34     null,  
35     () => {  
36       this.changeDetector.markForCheck();  
37     });  
38   }
```

We're subscribing to the Observable. The `subscribe` method takes three callbacks: `onNext`, `onError` and `onCompleted`.

Our `onNext` callback will print out the value we got, then increment the counter. Finally, if the current counter value is a multiple of 5, we call the change detector's `markForCheck` method. That's the method we use whenever we want to tell Angular that a change has been made, so the change detector should kick in.

Then for the `onError` callback, we're using `null`, indicating we don't want to handle this scenario.

Finally, for the `onComplete` callback, we're also triggering the change detector, so the final counter can be displayed.

Now, on to the application component code, that will create the subscriber:

code/advanced_components/app/ts/change-detection/observables.ts

```
41 @Component({
42   selector: 'change-detection-sample-app',
43   template: `
44     <observable [items]="itemObservable"></observable>
45   `
46 })
47 export class ObservableChangeDetectionSampleApp {
48   itemObservable: Observable<number>;
49
50   constructor() {
51     this.itemObservable = Observable.timer(100, 100).take(101);
52   }
53 }
```

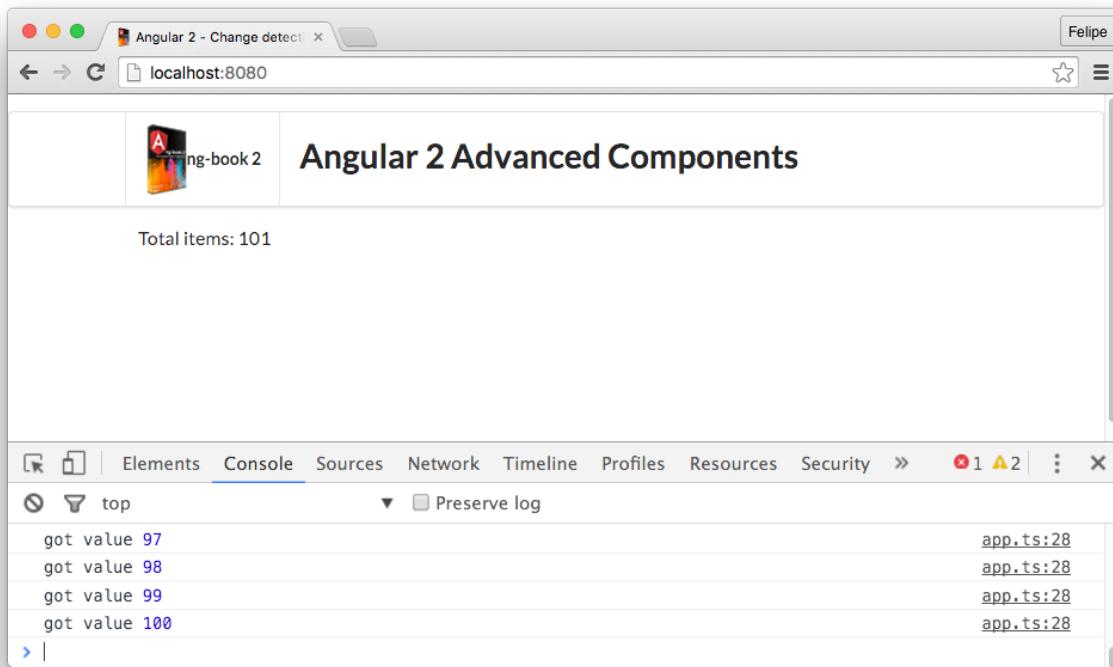
The important line here is the following:

```
1 this.itemObservable = Observable.timer(100, 100).take(101);
```

This line creates the Observable we're passing to the component on the `items` input attribute. We're passing two parameters to the `timer` method: the first is the number of milliseconds to wait before producing the first value and the second is the milliseconds to wait between values. So this observable will generate sequential values every 100 values forever.

Since we don't want the observable to run forever, we use the `take` method, to take only the first 101 values.

When we run this code, we'll see that the counter will only be updated for each 5 values obtained from the observer and also when the observable completes, generating a final value of 101:



Manually triggering change detection

Summary

Angular 2 provides us with many tools we can use for writing advanced components. Using the techniques in this chapter you will be able to write nearly any component functionality you wish.

However, there's one important concept that you'll use in many advanced components that we haven't talked about yet: Dependency Injection.

With dependency injection we can hook our components into many other parts of the system. In the next chapter we'll talk about what DI is, how you can use it in your apps, and common patterns for injecting services.

Testing

After spending hours, days, months on a web app you're finally ready to release it to the world. Plenty of hard work and time has been poured into it and now it's time for it to pay off... and then boom: a blocking bug shows up that prevents anyone from signing up.

Test driven?

Testing can help reveal bugs before they appear, instill confidence in your web application, and makes it easy to onboard new developers into the application. There is little doubt about the power of testing amongst the world of software development. However, there is debate about how to go about it.

Is it better to write the tests first and then write the implementation to make those tests pass or would it be better to validate that code that we've already written is correct? It's pretty odd to think that this is a source of contention across the development community, but there is a debate that can get pretty heated as to which is the *right* way to handle testing.

In our experience, particularly when coming from a prototype-heavy background, we focus on building testable code. Although your experience may differ, we have found that while we are prototyping applications, testing individual pieces of code that are likely to change can double or triple the amount of work it takes to keep them up. In contrast, we focus on building our applications in small components, keeping large amounts of functionality broken into several methods which allows us to test the functionality of a part of the larger picture. This is what we mean when we say *testable* code.



An alternative methodology to prototyping (and then testing after) is called "Red-Green-Refactor". The idea is that you **write your tests first** and they fail (red) because you haven't written any code yet. Only after you have failing tests do you go on to write your implementation code until it all passes (green).

Of course, the decision of *what* to test is up to you and your team, however we'll focus on *how* to test your applications in this chapter.

End-to-end vs. Unit Testing

There are two major ways to test your applications: *end-to-end testing* or *unit testing*.

If you take a top-down approach on testing you write tests that see the application as a “black box” and you interact with the application like a user would and evaluate if the app seems to work from the “outside”. This top-down technique of testing is called *End to End testing*.



In the Angular world, the tool that is mostly used is called [Protractor¹²⁹](#). Protractor is a tool that opens a browser and interacts with the application, collecting results, to check whether the testing expectations were met.

The second testing approach commonly used is to isolate each part of the application and test it in isolation. This form of testing is called *Unit Testing*.

In Unit Testing we write tests that provide a given input to a given aspect of that unit and evaluate the output to make sure it matches our expectations.

In this chapter we’re going to be covering how to **unit test** your Angular apps.

Testing Tools

In order to test our apps, we’ll use two tools: Jasmine and Karma.

Jasmine

[Jasmine¹³⁰](#) is a behavior-driven development framework for testing JavaScript code.

Using Jasmine, you can set expectations about what your code should do when invoked.

For instance, let’s assume we have a `sum` function on a `Calculator` object. We want to make sure that adding 1 and 1 results in 2. We could express that test (also called a `_spec`), by writing the following code:

```
1 describe('Calculator', () => {
2   it('sums 1 and 1 to 2', () => {
3     var calc = new Calculator();
4     expect(calc.sum(1, 1)).toEqual(2);
5   });
6 });
```

One of the nice things about Jasmine is how readable the tests are. You can see here that we expect the `calc.sum` operation to equal 2.

We organize our tests with `describe` blocks and `it` blocks.

¹²⁹<https://angular.github.io/protractor/#/>

¹³⁰<http://jasmine.github.io/2.4/introduction.html>

Normally we use `describe` for each logical unit we're testing and inside that each we use one `it` for each expectation you want to assert. However, this isn't a hard and fast rule. You'll often see an `it` block contain several expectations.

On the `Calculator` example above we have a very simple object. For that reason, we used one `describe` block for the whole class and one `it` block for each method.

This is not the case most of the times. For example, methods that produce different outcomes depending on the input will probably have more than one `it` block associated. On those cases, it's perfectly fine to have nested `describes`: one for the object and one for each method, and then different assertions inside individual `it` blocks.

We'll be looking at a lot of `describe` and `it` blocks throughout this chapter, so don't worry if it isn't clear when to use one vs. the other. We'll be showing lots of examples.

For more information about Jasmine and all its syntax, check out the [Jasmine documentation page¹³¹](#).

Karma

With Jasmine we can describe our tests and their expectations. Now, in order to actually run the tests we need to have a browser environment.

That's where Karma comes in. Karma allows us to run JavaScript code within a browser like Chrome or Firefox, or on a **headless** browser (or a browser that doesn't expose a user interface) like PhantomJS.

Writing Unit Tests

Our main focus on this section will be to understand how we write unit tests against different parts of our Angular apps.

We're going to learn to test **Services**, **Components**, **HTTP requests** and more. Along the way we're also going to see a couple of different techniques to make our code more testable.

Angular Unit testing framework

Angular provides its own set of classes that build upon the Jasmine framework to help writing unit testing for the framework.

The main testing framework can be found on the `@angular/core/testing` package. (Although, for testing components we'll use the `@angular/compiler/testing` package and `@angular/platform-browser/testing` for some other helpers. But more on that later.)

¹³¹<http://jasmine.github.io/2.4/introduction.html>



If this is your first time testing Angular I want to prepare you for something: When you write tests for Angular, there is a bit of setup.

For instance, when we have dependencies to inject, we often manually configure them. When we want to test a component, we have to use testing-helpers to initialize them. And when we want to test routing, there are quite a few dependencies we need to structure.

If it feels like there is a lot of setup, don't worry: you'll get the hang of it and find that the setup doesn't change that much from project to project. Besides, we'll walk you through each step in this chapter.

As always, you can find all of the sample code for this chapter in the code download. Looking over the code directly in your favorite editor can provide a good overview of the details we cover in this chapter. We'd encourage you to keep the code open as you go through this chapter.

Setting Up Testing

Earlier in the [Routing Chapter](#) we created an application for searching for music. In this chapter, let's write tests for that application.

Karma requires a configuration in order to run. So the first thing we need to do to setup Karma is to create a `karma.conf.js` file.

Let's `karma.conf.js` file on the root path of our project, like so:

code/routes/music/karma.conf.js

```
1 // Karma configuration
2 var path = require('path');
3 var cwd = process.cwd();
4
5 module.exports = function(config) {
6   config.set({
7     // base path that will be used to resolve all patterns (eg. files, exclude)
8     basePath: '',
9
10    // frameworks to use
11    // available frameworks: https://npmjs.org/browse/keyword/karma-adapter
12    frameworks: ['jasmine'],
13
14    // list of files / patterns to load in the browser
15    files: [
16      { pattern: 'test.bundle.js', watched: false }
17    ],
18  });
19}
```

```
18
19      // list of files to exclude
20      exclude: [
21        ],
22
23      // preprocess matching files before serving them to the browser
24      // available preprocessors: https://npmjs.org/browse/keyword/karma-preprocessor
25    sor
26      preprocessors: {
27        'test.bundle.js': ['webpack', 'sourcemap']
28      },
29
30      webpack: {
31        devtool: 'inline-source-map',
32        resolve: {
33          root: [path.resolve(cwd)],
34          modulesDirectories: ['node_modules', 'app', 'app/ts', 'test', '.'],
35          extensions: ['', '.ts', '.js', '.css'],
36          alias: {
37            'app': 'app'
38          }
39        },
40        module: {
41          loaders: [
42            { test: /\.ts$/, loader: 'ts-loader', exclude: [/node_modules/] }
43          ]
44        },
45        stats: {
46          colors: true,
47          reasons: true
48        },
49        watch: true,
50        debug: true
51      },
52
53      webpackServer: {
54        noInfo: true
55      },
56
57
58      // test results reporter to use
59      // possible values: 'dots', 'progress'
```

```
60  // available reporters: https://npmjs.org/browse/keyword/karma-reporter
61  reporters: ['spec'],
62
63
64  // web server port
65  port: 9876,
66
67
68  // enable / disable colors in the output (reporters and logs)
69  colors: true,
70
71
72  // level of logging
73  // possible values: config.LOG_DISABLE || config.LOG_ERROR || config.LOG_WAR \
74  N || config.LOG_INFO || config.LOG_DEBUG
75  LogLevel: config.LOG_INFO,
76
77
78  // enable / disable watching file and executing tests whenever any file chan\
79  ges
80  autoWatch: true,
81
82
83  // start these browsers
84  // available browser launchers: https://npmjs.org/browse/keyword/karma-launc\
85  her
86  browsers: ['Chrome'],
87
88
89  // Continuous Integration mode
90  // if true, Karma captures browsers, runs the tests and exits
91  singleRun: false
92  })
93 }
```

Don't worry too much about this file's contents right now, just keep in mind a few things about it:

- sets PhantomJS as the target testing browser;
- uses Jasmine karma framework for testing;
- uses a WebPack bundle called `test.bundle.js` that basically wraps all our testing and app code;

The next step is to create a new test folder to hold our test files.

```
1 mkdir test
```

Testing Services and HTTP

Services in Angular start out their life as plain classes. In one sense, this makes our services easy to test because we can sometimes test them directly without using Angular.

With Karma configuration done, let's start testing the SpotifyService class. If we remember, this service works by interacting with the Spotify API to retrieve album, track and artist information.

Inside the test folder, let's create a service subfolder where all our service tests will go. Finally, let's create our first test file inside it, called SpotifyService.spec.ts.

Now we can start putting this test file together. The first thing we need to do is import the test helpers from the @angular/core/testing package:

```
code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts
```

```
1 import {
2   inject,
3   fakeAsync,
4   tick,
5   TestBed
6 } from '@angular/core/testing';
```

Next, we'll import a couple more classes:

```
code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts
```

```
7 import { MockBackend } from '@angular/http/testing';
8 import {
9   Http,
10  ConnectionBackend,
11  BaseRequestOptions,
12  Response,
13  ResponseOptions
14 } from '@angular/http';
```

Since our service uses HTTP requests, we'll import the MockBackend class from @angular/http/testing package. This class will help us set expectations and verify HTTP requests.

The last thing we need to import is the class we're testing:

code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts

16 import { SpotifyService } from '../app/ts/services/SpotifyService';

HTTP Considerations

We could start writing our tests right now, but during each test execution we would be calling out and hitting the Spotify server. This is far from ideal for two reasons:

1. HTTP requests are relatively slow and as our test suite grows, we'd notice it takes longer and longer to run all of the tests.
2. Spotify's API has a quota, and if our whole team is running the tests, we might use up our API call resources needlessly
3. If we are offline or if Spotify is down or inaccessible our tests would start breaking, even though our code might technically be correct

This is a good hint when writing unit tests: isolate everything that you don't control before testing.

In our case, this piece is the Spotify service. The solution is that we will replace the HTTP request with something that would behave like it, but will **not hit the real Spotify server**.

Doing this in the testing world is called *mocking* a dependency. They are sometimes also called *stubbing* a dependency.



You can read more about the difference between Mocks and Stubs in this article [Mocks are not Stubs¹³²](#)

Let's pretend we're writing code that depends on a given Car class.

This class has a bunch of methods: you can start a car instance, stop it, park it and getSpeed of that car.

Let's see how we could use stubs and mocks to write tests that depend on this class.

Stubs

Stubs are objects we create on the fly, with a subset of the behaviors our dependency has.

Let's write a test that just interacts with the start method of the class.

You could create a *stub* of that Car class on-the-fly and inject that into the class you're testing:

¹³²<http://martinfowler.com/articles/mocksArentStubs.html>

```

1 describe('Speedtrap', function() {
2   it('tickets a car at more than 60mph', function() {
3     var stubCar = { getSpeed: function() { return 61; } };
4     var speedTrap = new SpeedTrap(stubCar);
5     speedTrap.ticketCount = 0;
6     speedTrap.checkSpeed();
7     expect(speedTrap.ticketCount).toEqual(1);
8   });
9 });

```

This would be a typical case for using a stub and we'd probably only use it locally to that test.

Mocks

Mocks in our case will be a more complete representation of objects, that overrides parts or all of the behavior of the dependency. Mocks can, and most of the time will be reused by more than one test across our suite.

They will also be used sometimes to assert that given methods were called the way they were supposed to be called.

One example of a mock version of our Car class would be:

```

1 class MockCar {
2   startCallCount: number = 0;
3
4   start() {
5     this.startCallCount++;
6   }
7 }

```

And it would be used to write another test like this:

```

1 describe('CarRemote', function() {
2   it('starts the car when the start key is held', function() {
3     var car = new MockCar();
4     var remote = new CarRemote();
5     remote.holdButton('start');
6     expect(car.startCallCount).toEqual(1);
7   });
8 });

```

The biggest difference between a mock and a stub is that:

- a stub provides a subset of functionality with “manual” behavior overrides whereas
- a mock generally sets expectations and verifies that certain methods were called

Http MockBackend

Now that we have this background in mind, let's go back to writing our service test code.

Interacting with the live Spotify service every time we run our tests is a poor idea but thankfully Angular provides us with a way to create fake HTTP calls with `MockBackend`.

This class can be injected into a `Http` instance and gives us control of how we want the HTTP interaction to act. We can interfere and assert in a variety of different ways: we can manually set a response, simulate an HTTP error, and add expectations, like asserting the URL being requested matches what we want, if the provided request parameters are correct and a lot more.

So the idea here is that we're going to provide our code with a "fake" `Http` library. This "fake" library will appear to our code to be the real `Http` library: all of the methods will match, it will return responses and so on. However, we're not *actually* going to make the requests.

In fact, beyond not making the requests, our `MockBackend` will actually allow us to setup *expectations* and watch for behaviors we expect.

TestBed.configureTestingModuleTestingModule and Providers

When we test our Angular apps we need to make sure we configure the top-level `NgModule` that we will use for this test. When we do this, we can configure providers, declare components, and import other modules: just like you would [when using NgModules generally](#).

Sometimes when testing Angular code, we *manually setup injections*. This is good because it gives us more control over what we're actually testing.

So in the case of testing `Http` requests, we don't want to inject the "real" `Http` class, but instead we want to inject something that looks like `Http`, but really intercepts the requests and returns the responses we configure.

To do that, we create a version of the `Http` class that uses `MockBackend` internally.

To do this, we use the `TestBed.configureTestingModuleTestingModule` in the `beforeEach` hook. This hook takes a callback function that will be called before each test is run, giving us a great opportunity to configure alternative class implementations.

`code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts`

```
18 describe('SpotifyService', () => {
19   beforeEach(() => {
20     TestBed.configureTestingModule({
21       providers: [
22         BaseRequestOptions,
23         MockBackend,
24         SpotifyService,
25         { provide: Http,
```

```

26     useFactory: (backend: ConnectionBackend,
27                 defaultOptions: BaseRequestOptions) => {
28         return new Http(backend, defaultOptions);
29     }, deps: [MockBackend, BaseRequestOptions] ],
30 ]
31 });
32 );

```

Notice that `TestBed.configureTestingModule` accepts an **array of providers** in the `providers` key to be used by the test injector.

`BaseRequestOptions` and `SpotifyService` are just the default implementation of those classes. But the last provider is a little more complicated :

code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts

```

25     { provide: Http,
26      useFactory: (backend: ConnectionBackend,
27                    defaultOptions: BaseRequestOptions) => {
28          return new Http(backend, defaultOptions);
29      }, deps: [MockBackend, BaseRequestOptions] ],
30 ]

```

This code uses `provide` with `useFactory` to create a version of the `Http` class, using a factory (that's what `useFactory` does).

That factory has a signature that expects `ConnectionBackend` and a `BaseRequestOption` instances. The second key on that object is `deps: [MockBackend, BaseRequestOptions]`. That indicates that we'll be using `MockBackend` as the first parameter of the factory and `BaseRequestOptions` (the default implementation) as the second.

Finally, we return our customized `Http` class with the `MockBackend` as a result of that function.

What benefit do we get from this? Well now every time (in our test) that our code requests `Http` as an injection, it will instead receive our customized `Http` instance.

This is a powerful idea that we'll use a lot in testing: use dependency injection to customize dependencies and isolate the functionality you're trying to test.

Testing `getTrack`

Now, when writing tests for the service, we want to verify that we're calling the correct URL.



If you haven't looked at the Routing chapter music example in a while, you can find the [code for this example here](#)

Let's write a test for the `getTrack` method:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
39  getTrack(id: string): Observable<any[]> {
40    return this.query(`tracks/${id}`);
41 }
```

If you remember how that method works, it uses the `query` method, that builds the URL based on the parameters it receives:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
19  query(URL: string, params?: Array<string>): Observable<any[]> {
20    let queryURL: string = `${SpotifyService.BASE_URL}${URL}`;
21    if (params) {
22      queryURL = `${queryURL}?${params.join('&')}`;
23    }
24
25    return this.http.request(queryURL).map((res: any) => res.json());
26 }
```

Since we're passing `/tracks/${id}` we assume that when calling `getTrack('TRACK_ID')` the expected URL will be `https://api.spotify.com/v1/tracks/TRACK_ID`.

Here is how we write the test for this:

```
1 describe('getTrack', () => {
2   it('retrieves using the track ID',
3     inject([SpotifyService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((spotifyService, mockBackend\
4 ) => {
5       var res;
6       mockBackend.connections.subscribe(c => {
7         expect(c.request.url).toBe('https://api.spotify.com/v1/tracks/TRACK_ID');
8         let response = new ResponseOptions({body: '{"name": "felipe"}'});
9         c.mockRespond(new Response(response));
10      });
11      spotifyService.getTrack('TRACK_ID').subscribe(_res) => {
12        res = _res;
13      });
14      tick();
15      expect(res.name).toBe('felipe');
16    )));
17  );
18});
```

This seems like a lot to grasp at first, so let's break it down a bit:

Every time we write tests with dependencies, we need to ask Angular injector to provide us with the instances of those classes. To do that we use:

```
1 inject([Class1, ..., ClassN], (instance1, ..., instanceN) => {  
2   ... testing code ...  
3 })
```

When you are testing code that returns either a Promise or an RxJS Observable, you can use `fakeAsync` helper to test that code as if it were synchronous. This way every Promises are fulfilled and Observables are notified immediately after you call `tick()`.

So in this code:

```
1 inject([SpotifyService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((spotifyService, mockBackend) => \  
2 {  
3   ...  
4 }));
```

We're getting two variables: `spotifyService` and `mockBackend`. The first one has a concrete instance of the `SpotifyService` and the second is an instance `MockBackend` class. Notice that the arguments to the inner function (`spotifyService, mockBackend`) are injections of the classes specified in the first argument array of the `inject` function (`SpotifyService` and `MockBackend`).

We're also running inside `fakeAsync` which means that async code will be run synchronously when `tick()` is called.

Now that we've setup the injections and context for our test, we can start writing our "actual" test. We start by declaring a `res` variable that will eventually get the HTTP call response. Next we subscribe to `mockBackend.connections`:

```
1 var res;  
2 mockBackend.connections.subscribe(c => { ... });
```

Here we're saying that whenever a new connection comes in to `mockBackend` we want to be notified (e.g. call this function).

We want to verify that the `SpotifyService` is calling out to the correct URL given the track id `TRACK_ID`. So what we do is specify an *expectation* that the URL is as we would expect. We can get the URL from the connection `c` via `c.request.url`. So we setup an expectation that `c.request.url` should be the string '`https://api.spotify.com/v1/tracks/TRACK_ID`':

```
1 expect(c.request.url).toBe('https://api.spotify.com/v1/tracks/TRACK_ID');
```

When our test is run, if the request URL doesn't match, then the test will fail.

Now that we've received our request and verified that it is correct, we need to craft a response. We do this by creating a new `ResponseOptions` instance. Here we specify that it will return the JSON string: `{"name": "felipe"}` as the body of the response.

```
1 let response = new ResponseOptions({body: '{"name": "felipe"}'});
```

Finally, we tell the connection to replace the response with a `Response` object that wraps the `ResponseOptions` instance we created:

```
1 c.mockRespond(new Response(response));
```



An interesting thing to note here is that your callback function in `subscribe` can be as sophisticated as you wish it to be. You could have conditional logic based on the URL, query parameters, or anything you can read from the `request` object etc.

This allows us to write tests for nearly every possible scenario our code might encounter.

We have now everything setup to call the `getTrack` method with `TRACK_ID` as a parameter and tracking the response in our `res` variable:

```
1 spotifyService.getTrack('TRACK_ID').subscribe((_res) => {
2   res = _res;
3 });
```

If we ended our test here, we would be waiting for the HTTP call to be made and the response to be fulfilled before the callback function would be triggered. It would also happen on a different execution path and we'd have to orchestrate our code to sync things up. Thankfully using `fakeAsync` takes that problem away. All we need to do is call `tick()` and, like magic, our `async` code will be executed:

```
1 tick();
```

We now perform one final check just to make sure our response we setup is the one we received:

```
1 expect(res.name).toBe('felipe');
```

If you think about it, the code for all the methods of this service are *very* similar. So let's extract the snippet we use to setup the URL expectation into a function called `expectURL`:

code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts

```

35  function expectURL(backend: MockBackend, url: string) {
36    backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
37      expect(c.request.url).toBe(url);
38      let response = new ResponseOptions({body: '{"name": "felipe"}'});
39      c.mockRespond(new Response(response));
40    });
41  }

```

Following the same lines, it should be very simple to create similar tests for `getArtist` and `getAlbum` methods:

code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts

```

57  describe('getArtist', () => {
58    it('retrieves using the artist ID',
59      inject([SpotifyService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((svc, backend) => {
60        var res;
61        expectURL(backend, 'https://api.spotify.com/v1/artists/ARTIST_ID');
62        svc.getArtist('ARTIST_ID').subscribe(_res => {
63          res = _res;
64        });
65        tick();
66        expect(res.name).toBe('felipe');
67      }))
68    );
69  });
70
71  describe('getAlbum', () => {
72    it('retrieves using the album ID',
73      inject([SpotifyService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((svc, backend) => {
74        var res;
75        expectURL(backend, 'https://api.spotify.com/v1/albums/ALBUM_ID');
76        svc.getAlbum('ALBUM_ID').subscribe(_res => {
77          res = _res;
78        });
79        tick();
80        expect(res.name).toBe('felipe');
81      }))
82    );
83  });

```

Now `searchTrack` is slightly different: instead of calling `query`, this method uses the `search` method:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
35  searchTrack(query: string): Observable<any[]> {
36    return this.search(query, 'track');
37 }
```

And then `search` calls `query` with `/search` as the first argument and an Array containing `q=<query>` and `type=track` as the second argument:

code/routes/music/app/ts/services/SpotifyService.ts

```
28  search(query: string, type: string): Observable<any[]> {
29    return this.query(`/search`, [
30      `q=${query}`,
31      `type=${type}`
32    ]);
33 }
```

Finally, `query` will transform the parameters into a URL *path* with a *QueryString*. So now, the URL we expect to call ends with `/search?q=<query>&type=track`.

Let's now write the test for `searchTrack` that takes into consideration what we learned above:

code/routes/music/test/services/SpotifyService.spec.ts

```
85  describe('searchTrack', () => {
86    it('searches type and term',
87      inject([SpotifyService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((svc, backend) => {
88        var res;
89        expectURL(backend, 'https://api.spotify.com/v1/search?q=TERM&type=track' \
90      );
91        svc.searchTrack("TERM").subscribe(_res => {
92          res = _res;
93        });
94        tick();
95        expect(res.name).toBe('felipe');
96      }))
97    );
98  });
```

The test ended up also being very similar to the ones we wrote so far. Let's review what this test does:

- it hooks into the HTTP lifecycle, by adding a callback when a new HTTP connection is initiated
- it sets an expectation for the URL we expect the connection to use including the query type and the search term
- it calls the method we're testing, `searchTrack`
- it then tells Angular to complete all the pending async calls
- it finally asserts that we have the expected response

In essence, when testing services our goals should be:

1. Isolate all the dependencies by using stubs or mocks
2. In case of async calls, use `fakeAsync` and `tick` to make sure they are fulfilled
3. Call the service method you're testing
4. Assert that the returning value from the method matches what we expect

Now let's move on to the classes that usually consume the services: components.

Testing Routing to Components

When testing components, we can either:

1. write tests that will interact with the component from the outside, passing attributes in and checking how the markup is affected or
2. test individual component methods and their output.

Those test strategies are known as **black box** and **white box** testing, respectively. During this section, we'll see a mix of both.

We'll begin by writing tests for the `ArtistComponent` class, which is one of the simpler components we have. This initial set of tests will test the component's internals, so it falls into the **white box** category of testing.

Before we jump into it, let's remember what `ArtistComponent` does:

The first thing we do on the class constructor is retrieve the **id** from the `routeParams` collection:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/ArtistComponent.ts

```
31  constructor(private route: ActivatedRoute, private spotify: SpotifyService,
32                private location: Location) {
33   route.params.subscribe(params => { this.id = params['id']; });
34 }
```

And with that we have our first obstacle. How can we retrieve the ID of a route without an available running router?

Creating a Router for Testing

Remember that when we write tests in Angular we manually configure many of the classes that are injected. Routing (and testing components) has a daunting number of dependencies that we need to inject. That said, once it's configured, it isn't something we change very much and it's very easy to use.

When we test write tests it's often convenient to use `beforeEach` with `TestBed.configureTestingModuleTestingModule` to set the dependencies that can be injected. In the case of testing our `ArtistComponent` we're going to create a custom function that will create and configure our router for testing:

code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts

```
16 describe('ArtistComponent', () => {
17   beforeEach(() => {
18     configureMusicTests();
19   });
}
```

We define `configureMusicTests` in the helper file `MusicTestHelpers.ts`. Let's look at that now.

Here's the implementation of `configureMusicTests`. Don't worry, we'll explain each part:

code/routes/music/test/MusicTestHelpers.ts

```
66 export function configureMusicTests() {
67   const mockSpotifyService: MockSpotifyService = new MockSpotifyService();
68
69   TestBed.configureTestingModule({
70     imports: [
71       { // TODO RouterTestingModule.withRoutes coming soon
72         ngModule: RouterTestingModule,
73         providers: [provideRoutes(routerConfig)]
74       },
75       TestModule
76     ]
77   });
78 }
```

```
76  ],
77  providers: [
78    mockSpotifyService.getProviders(),
79    {
80      provide: ActivatedRoute,
81      useFactory: (r: Router) => r.routerState.root, deps: [ Router ]
82    }
83  ]
84 });
85 }
```

We start by creating an instance of `MockSpotifyService` that we will use to mock the real implementation of `SpotifyService`.

Next we use a class called `TestBed` and call `configureTestingModule`. `TestBed` is a helper library that ships with Angular to help make testing easier.

In this case, `TestBed.configureTestingModule` is used to configure the `NgModule` used for testing. You can see that we provide an `NgModule` configuration as the argument which has:

- imports and
- providers

In our imports we're importing

- The `RouterTestingModule` and configuring it with our `routerConfig` - this configures the routes for testing
- The `TestModule` - which is the `NgModule` which declares all of the components we will test (see `MusicTestHelpers.ts` for the full details)

In providers

- We provide the `MockSpotifyService` (via `mockSpotifyService.getProviders()`)
- and the `ActivatedRoute`

Let's take a closer look at these starting with the `Router`.

Router

One thing we haven't talked about yet is what routes we want to use when testing. There are many different ways of doing this. First we'll look at what we're doing here:

`code/routes/music/test/MusicTestHelpers.ts`

```
30  @Component({
31    selector: 'blank-cmp',
32    template: ```
33  })
34  export class BlankCmp {
35  }
36
37  @Component({
38    selector: 'root-cmp',
39    template: `<router-outlet></router-outlet>`
40  })
41  export class RootCmp {
42  }
43
44  export const routerConfig: Routes = [
45    { path: '', component: BlankCmp },
46    { path: 'search', component: SearchComponent },
47    { path: 'artists/:id', component: ArtistComponent },
48    { path: 'tracks/:id', component: TrackComponent },
49    { path: 'albums/:id', component: AlbumComponent }
50 ];
```

Here instead of redirecting (like we do in the real router config) for the empty URL, we're just using `BlankCmp`.

Of course, if you want to use the same `RouterConfig` as in your top-level app then all you need to do is `export` it somewhere and `import` it here.

If you have a more complex scenario where you need to test lots of different route configurations, you could even accept a parameter to the `musicTestProviders` function where you use a new router configuration each time.

There are many possibilities here and you'll need to pick whichever fits best for your team. This configuration works for cases where your routes are relatively static and one configuration works for all of the tests.

Now that we have all of the dependencies, we create the new `Router` and call `r.initialNavigation()` on it.

`ActivatedRoute`

The `ActivatedRoute` service keeps track of the “current route”. It requires the `Router` itself as a dependency so we put it in `deps` and inject it.

MockSpotifyService

Earlier we tested our SpotifyService by mocking out the HTTP library that backed it. Instead here, we're going to **mock out the whole service itself**. Let's look at how we can mock out this, or any, service.

Mocking dependencies

If you look inside music/test you'll find a mocks/spotify.ts file. Let's take a look:

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```
1 import {SpyObject} from './helper';
2 import {SpotifyService} from '../../../../../app/ts/services/SpotifyService';
3
4 export class MockSpotifyService extends SpyObject {
5   getAlbumSpy;
6   getArtistSpy;
7   getTrackSpy;
8   searchTrackSpy;
9   mockObservable;
10  fakeResponse;
```

Here we're declaring the `MockSpotifyService` class, which will be a mocked version of the real `SpotifyService`. These instance variables will act as *spies*.

Spies

A *spy* is a specific type of mock object that gives us two benefits:

1. we can simulate return values and
2. count how many times the method was called and with which parameters.

In order to use spies with Angular, we're using the internal `SpyObject` class (it's used by Angular to test itself).

You can either declare a class by creating a new `SpyObject` on the fly or you can make your mock class inherit from `SpyObject`, like we're doing in our code.

The great thing inheriting or using this class gives us is the `spy` method. The `spy` method lets us override a method and force a return value (as well as watch and ensure the method was called). We use `spy` on our class constructor:

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```

12  constructor() {
13    super(SpotifyService);
14
15    this.fakeResponse = null;
16    this.getAlbumSpy = this.spy('getAlbum').andReturn(this);
17    this.getArtistSpy = this.spy('getArtist').andReturn(this);
18    this.getTrackSpy = this.spy('getTrack').andReturn(this);
19    this.searchTrackSpy = this.spy('searchTrack').andReturn(this);
20  }

```

The first line of the constructor call's the `SpyObject` constructor, passing the concrete class we're mocking. Calling `super(...)` is optional, but when you do the mock class will inherit all the concrete class methods, so you can override just the pieces you're testing.



If you're curious about how `SpyObject` is implemented you can check it on the [angular/angular repository](#), on the file `/modules/angular2/src/testing/testing_internal.ts`¹³³

After calling `super`, we're initializing the `fakeResponse` field, that we'll use later to `null`.

Next we declare spies that will replace the concrete class methods. Having a reference to them will be helpful to set expectations and simulate responses while writing our tests.

When we use the `SpotifyService` within the `ArtistComponent`, the real `getArtist` method returns an `Observable` and the method we're calling from our components is the `subscribe` method:

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/ArtistComponent.ts

```

36  ngOnInit(): void {
37    this.spotify
38      .getArtist(this.id)
39      .subscribe((res: any) => this.renderArtist(res));
40  }

```

However, in our mock service, we're going to do something tricky: instead of returning an observable from `getArtist`, we're returning `this`, the `MockSpotifyService` itself. That means the return value of `this.spotify.getArtist(this.id)` above will be the `MockSpotifyService`.

There's one problem with doing this though: our `ArtistComponent` was expecting to call `subscribe` on an `Observable`. To account for this, we're going to define `subscribe` on our `MockSpotifyService`:

¹³³https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/b0cebdab6b65c1e9e7eb5bf801ea42dc7c4a7f25/modules/angular2/src/testing/testing_internal.ts#L205

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```
22 subscribe(callback) {
23   callback(this.fakeResponse);
24 }
```

Now when `subscribe` is called on our mock, we're immediately calling the callback, making the async call happen synchronously.

The other thing you'll notice is that we're calling the callback function with `this.fakeResponse`. This leads us to the next method:

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```
26 setResponse(json: any): void {
27   this.fakeResponse = json;
28 }
```

This method doesn't replace anything on the concrete service, but is instead a helper method to allow the test code to set a given response (that would come from the service on the concrete class) and with that simulate different responses.

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```
30 getProviders(): Array<any> {
31   return [{ provide: SpotifyService, useValue: this }];
32 }
```

This last method is a helper method to be used in `TestBed.configureTestingModule.providers` like we'll see later when we get back to writing component tests.

Here's what our `MockSpotifyService` looks like altogether:

code/routes/music/test/mocks/spotify.ts

```
1 import {SpyObject} from './helper';
2 import {SpotifyService} from '../../app/ts/services/SpotifyService';
3
4 export class MockSpotifyService extends SpyObject {
5   getAlbumSpy;
6   getArtistSpy;
7   getTrackSpy;
8   searchTrackSpy;
9   mockObservable;
```

```
10    fakeResponse;
11
12    constructor() {
13        super(SpotifyService);
14
15        this.fakeResponse = null;
16        this.getAlbumSpy = this.spy('getAlbum').andReturn(this);
17        this.getArtistSpy = this.spy('getArtist').andReturn(this);
18        this.getTrackSpy = this.spy('getTrack').andReturn(this);
19        this.searchTrackSpy = this.spy('searchTrack').andReturn(this);
20    }
21
22    subscribe(callback) {
23        callback(this.fakeResponse);
24    }
25
26    setResponse(json: any): void {
27        this.fakeResponse = json;
28    }
29
30    getProviders(): Array<any> {
31        return [{ provide: SpotifyService, useValue: this }];
32    }
33 }
```

Back to Testing Code

Now that we have all our dependencies under control, it is easier to write our tests. Let's write our test for our ArtistComponent.

As usual, we start with imports:

code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts

```
1 import {
2     inject,
3     fakeAsync,
4 } from '@angular/core/testing';
5 import { Router } from '@angular/router';
6 import { Location } from '@angular/common';
7 import { MockSpotifyService } from '../mocks/spotify';
8 import { SpotifyService } from '../../app/ts/services/SpotifyService';
9 import {
```

```
10  advance,
11  createRoot,
12  RootCmp,
13  configureMusicTests
14 } from './MusicTestHelpers';
```

Next, before we can start to describe our tests `configureMusicTests` to ensure we can access our `musicTestProviders` in each test:

`code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts`

```
16 describe('ArtistComponent', () => {
17   beforeEach(() => {
18     configureMusicTests();
19   });
}
```

Next, we'll write a test for everything that happens during the initialization of the component. First, let's take a refresh look at what happens on initialization of our `ArtistComponent`:

`code/routes/music/app/ts/components/ArtistComponent.ts`

```
27 export class ArtistComponent implements OnInit {
28   id: string;
29   artist: Object;
30
31   constructor(private route: ActivatedRoute, private spotify: SpotifyService,
32             private location: Location) {
33     route.params.subscribe(params => { this.id = params['id']; });
34   }
35
36   ngOnInit(): void {
37     this.spotify
38       .getArtist(this.id)
39       .subscribe((res: any) => this.renderArtist(res));
40   }
}
```

Remember that during the creation of the component, we use `route.params` to retrieve the current route `id` param and store it on the `id` attribute of the class.

When the component is initialized `ngOnInit` is triggered by Angular (because we declared that this component `implements OnInit`). We then use the `SpotifyService` to retrieve the artist for the received `id`, and we subscribe to the returned observable. When the artist is finally retrieved, we call `renderArtist`, passing the artist data.

An important idea here is that we used dependency injection to get the SpotifyService, but remember, we created a **MockSpotifyService**!

So in order to test this behavior, let's:

1. Use our router to navigate to the ArtistComponent, which will initialize the component
2. Check our MockSpotifyService and ensure that the ArtistComponent did, indeed, try to get the artist with the appropriate id.

Here's the code for our test:

code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts

```
21  describe('initialization', () => {
22    it('retrieves the artist', fakeAsync(
23      inject([Router, SpotifyService],
24        (router: Router,
25          mockSpotifyService: MockSpotifyService) => {
26          const fixture = createRoot(router, RootCmp);
27
28          router.navigateByUrl('/artists/2');
29          advance(fixture);
30
31          expect(mockSpotifyService.getArtistSpy).toHaveBeenCalledWith('2');
32        }));
33    ));
```

Let's take it step by step.

fakeAsync and advance

We start by wrapping the test in `fakeAsync`. Without getting too bogged down in the details, by using `fakeAsync` we're able to have more control over when change detection and asynchronous operations occur. A consequence of this is that we need to explicitly tell our components that they need to detect changes after we make changes in our tests.

Normally you don't need to worry about this when writing your apps, as zones tend to do the right thing, but during tests we manipulate the change detection process more carefully.

If you skip a few lines down you'll notice that we're using a function called `advance` that comes from our `MusicTestHelpers`. Let's take a look at that function:

code/routes/music/test/MusicTestHelpers.ts

```
52 export function advance(fixture: ComponentFixture<any>): void {  
53   tick();  
54   fixture.detectChanges();  
55 }
```

So we see here that `advance` does two things:

1. It tells the component to detect changes and
2. Calls `tick()`

When we use `fakeAsync`, timers are actually synchronous and we use `tick()` to simulate the asynchronous passage of time.

Practically speaking, in our tests we'll call `advance` whenever we want Angular to "work it's magic". So for instance, whenever we navigate to a new route, update a form element, make an HTTP request etc. we'll call `advance` to give Angular a chance to do it's thing.

inject

In our test we need some dependencies. We use `inject` to get them. The `inject` function takes two arguments:

1. An array of *tokens* to inject
2. A function into which to provide the injections

And what classes will `inject` use? The providers we defined in `TestBed.configureTestingModule.providers`.

Notice that we're injecting:

1. Router
2. SpotifyService

The Router that will be injected is the Router we configured in `musicTestProviders` above.

For SpotifyService, notice that we're requesting injection of the *token* SpotifyService, but we're receiving a MockSpotifyService. A little tricky, but hopefully it makes sense given what we've talked about so far.

Testing ArtistComponent's Initialization

Let's review the contents of our actual test:

`code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts`

```
26 const fixture = createRoot(router, RootCmp);  
27  
28 router.navigateByUrl('/artists/2');  
29 advance(fixture);  
30  
31 expect(mockSpotifyService.getArtistSpy).toHaveBeenCalledWith('2');
```

We start by creating an instance of our RootCmp by using `createRoot`. Let's look at the `createRoot` helper function:

`code/routes/music/test/MusicTestHelpers.ts`

```
57 export function createRoot(router: Router,  
58                           componentType: any): ComponentFixture<any> {  
59   const f = TestBed.createComponent(componentType);  
60   advance(f);  
61   (<any>router).initialNavigation();  
62   advance(f);  
63   return f;  
64 }
```

Notice here that when we call `createRoot` we

1. Create an instance of the root component
2. advance it
3. Tell the router to setup its `initialNavigation`
4. advance again
5. return the new root component.

This is something we'll do a lot when we want to test a component that depends on routing, so it's handy to have this helper function around.

Notice that we're using the `TestBed` library again to call `TestBed.createComponent`. This function creates a component of the appropriate type.



RootCmp is an empty component that we created in `MusicTestHelpers`. You definitely don't need to create an empty component for your root component, but I like to do it this way because it lets us test our child component (`ArtistComponent`) more-or-less in isolation. That is, we don't have to worry about the effects of the parent app component.

That said, maybe you *want* to make sure that the child component operates correctly in context. In that case instead of using RootCmp you'd probably want to use your app's normal parent component.

Next we use router to navigate to the url /artists/2 and advance. When we navigate to that URL, ArtistComponent should be initialized, so we assert that the getArtist method of the SpotifyService was called with the proper value.

Testing ArtistComponent Methods

Recall that the ArtistComponent has an href which calls the back() function.

code/routes/music/app/ts/components/ArtistComponent.ts

```
42  back(): void {
43    this.location.back();
44 }
```

Let's test that when the back method is called, the router will redirect the user back to the previous location.

The current location state is controlled by the Location service. When we need to send the user back to the previous location, we use the Location's back method.

Here is how we test the back method:

code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts

```
35  describe('back', () => {
36    it('returns to the previous location', fakeAsync(
37      inject([Router, Location],
38        (router: Router, location: Location) => {
39          const fixture = createRoot(router, RootCmp);
40          expect(location.path()).toEqual('/');
41
42          router.navigateByUrl('/artists/2');
43          advance(fixture);
44          expect(location.path()).toEqual('/artists/2');
45
46          const artist = fixture.debugElement.children[1].componentInstance;
47          artist.back();
48          advance(fixture);
49
50          expect(location.path()).toEqual('/');
51        })));
52  });
```

The initial structure is similar: we inject our dependencies and create a new component.

We have a new expectation - we assert that the `location.path()` is equal to what we expect it to be.

We also have another new idea: we're accessing the methods on the `ArtistComponent` itself. We get a reference to our `ArtistComponent` instance through the line

```
fixture.debugElement.children[1].componentInstance.
```

Now that we have the instance of the component, we're able to call methods on it directly, like `back()`.

After we call `back()` we advance and then verify that the `location.path()` is what we expected it to be.

Testing ArtistComponent DOM Template Values

The last thing we need to test on `ArtistComponent` is the template that renders the artist.

`code/routes/music/app/ts/components/ArtistComponent.ts`

```
15  template: ``
16    <div *ngIf="artist">
17      <h1>{{ artist.name }}</h1>
18
19      <p>
20        
21      </p>
22
23      <p><a href (click)="back()">Back</a></p>
24    </div>
25`
```

Remember that the instance variable `artist` is set by the result of the `SpotifyService.getArtist` call. Since we're mocking the `SpotifyService` with `MockSpotifyService`, the data we should have in our template should be whatever the `mockSpotifyService` returns. Let's look at how we do this:

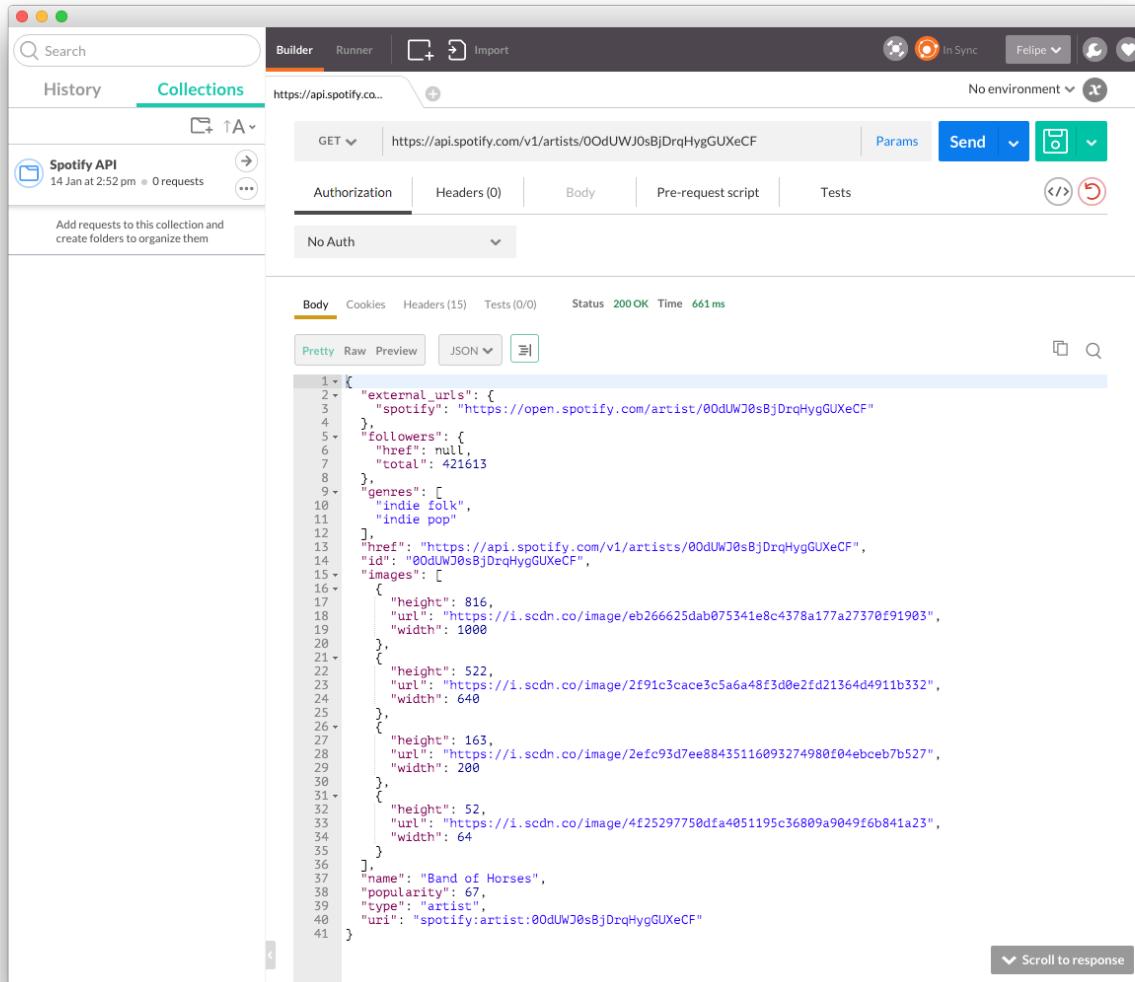
code/routes/music/test/components/ArtistComponent.spec.ts

```
54  describe('renderArtist', () => {
55    it('renders album info', fakeAsync(
56      inject([Router, SpotifyService],
57        (router: Router,
58          mockSpotifyService: MockSpotifyService) => {
59        const fixture = createRoot(router, RootCmp);
60
61        let artist = {name: 'ARTIST NAME', images: [{url: 'IMAGE_1'}]};
62        mockSpotifyService.setResponse(artist);
63
64        router.navigateByUrl('/artists/2');
65        advance(fixture);
66
67        const compiled = fixture.debugElement.nativeElement;
68
69        expect(compiled.querySelector('h1').innerHTML).toContain('ARTIST NAME');
70        expect(compiled.querySelector('img').src).toContain('IMAGE_1');
71      }));
72  });
```

The first thing that's new here is that we're *manually setting the response* of the `mockSpotifyService` with `setResponse`.

The `artist` variable is a *fixture* that represents what we get from the Spotify API when we call the `artists` endpoint at GET `https://api.spotify.com/v1/artists/{id}`.

Here's what the real JSON looks like:



Postman - Spotify Get Artist Endpoint

However, for this test we need only the `name` and `images` properties.

When we call the `setResponse` method, that response will be used for the next call we make to any of the service methods. In this case, we want the method `getArtist` to return this response.

Next we navigate with the router and advance. Now that the view is rendered, we can use the DOM representation of the component's view to check if the artist was properly rendered.

We do that by getting the `nativeElement` property of the `DebugElement` with the line `fixture.debugElement.nativeElement`.

In our assertions, we expect to see `H1` tag containing the artist's name, in our case the string `ARTIST NAME` (because of our `artist` fixture above).

To check those conditions, we use the `NativeElement`'s `querySelector` method. This method will

return the first element that matches the provided CSS selector.

For the H1 we check that the text is indeed ARTIST NAME and for the image, we check its `src` property is IMAGE 1.

With this, we are done testing the `ArtistComponent` class.

Testing Forms

To write form tests, let's use the `DemoFormNgModel` component we created [back in the Forms chapter](#). This example is a good candidate because it uses a few features of Angular's forms:

- it uses a `FormBuilder`
- has validations
- handles events

Here's the full code for that class:

`code/forms/app/forms/demo_form_with_events.ts`

```
1 import { Component } from '@angular/core';
2 import {
3   FormBuilder,
4   FormGroup,
5   Validators,
6   AbstractControl
7 } from '@angular/forms';
8
9 @Component({
10   selector: 'demo-form-with-events',
11   template: `
12     <div class="ui raised segment">
13       <h2 class="ui header">Demo Form: with events</h2>
14       <form [formGroup]="myForm"
15         (ngSubmit)="onSubmit(myForm.value)"
16         class="ui form">
17
18         <div class="field"
19           [class.error]="!sku.valid && sku.touched">
20           <label for="skuInput">SKU</label>
21           <input type="text"
22             class="form-control"
23             id="skuInput"
```

```
24          placeholder="SKU"
25          [FormControl]="sku">
26          <div *ngIf="!sku.valid"
27              class="ui error message">SKU is invalid</div>
28          <div *ngIf="sku.hasError('required')"
29              class="ui error message">SKU is required</div>
30      </div>
31
32      <div *ngIf="!myForm.valid"
33          class="ui error message">Form is invalid</div>
34
35      <button type="submit" class="ui button">Submit</button>
36  </form>
37 </div>
38 `

39 })
40 export class DemoFormWithEvents {
41     myForm: FormGroup;
42     sku: AbstractControl;
43
44     constructor(fb: FormBuilder) {
45         this.myForm = fb.group({
46             'sku': ['', Validators.required]
47         });
48
49         this.sku = this.myForm.controls['sku'];
50
51         this.sku.valueChanges.subscribe(
52             (value: string) => {
53                 console.log('sku changed to:', value);
54             }
55         );
56
57         this.myForm.valueChanges.subscribe(
58             (form: any) => {
59                 console.log('form changed to:', form);
60             }
61         );
62     }
63 }
64
65 onSubmit(form: any): void {
```

```
66     console.log('you submitted value:', form.sku);
67 }
68 }
```

Just to recap, this code will have the following behavior:

- when no value is present for the SKU field, two validation error will be displayed: *SKU is invalid* and *SKU is required*
- when the value of the SKU field changes, we are logging a message to the console
- when the form changes, we are also logging to the console
- when the form is submitted, we log yet another final message to the console

It seems that one obvious external dependency we have is the console. As we learned before, we need to somehow mock all external dependencies.

Creating a ConsoleSpy

This time, instead of using a SpyObject to create a mock, let's do something simpler, since all we're using from the console is the `log` method.

We will replace the original `console` instance, that is held on the `window.console` object and replace by an object we control: a `ConsoleSpy`.

code/forms/test/util.ts

```
14 export class ConsoleSpy {
15   public logs: string[] = [];
16   log(...args) {
17     this.logs.push(args.join(' '));
18   }
19   warn(...args) {
20     this.log(...args);
21   }
22 }
```

The `ConsoleSpy` is an object that will take whatever is logged, naively convert it to a string, and store it in an internal list of things that were logged.



To accept a variable number of arguments on our version of the `console.log` method, we are using ES6 and TypeScript's *Rest parameters*¹³⁴.

This operator, represented by an ellipsis, like `...theArgs` as our function argument. In a nutshell using it indicates that we're going to capture all the remaining arguments from that point on. If we had something like `(a, b, ...theArgs)` and called `func(1, 2, 3, 4, 5)`, `a` would be `1`, `b` would be `2` and `theArgs` would have `[3, 4, 5]`.

You can play with it yourself if you have a recent version of `Node.js`¹³⁵ installed:

```

1 $ node --harmony
2 > var test = (a, b, ...theArgs) => console.log('a=', a, 'b=', b, 'theArgs=', theArgs);
3 undefined
4 > test(1,2,3,4,5);
5 a= 1 b= 2 theArgs= [ 3, 4, 5 ]

```

So instead of writing it to the console itself, we'll be storing them on an array. If the code under test calls `console.log` three times:

```

1 console.log('First message', 'is', 123);
2 console.log('Second message');
3 console.log('Third message');

```

We expect the `_logs` field to have an array of `['First message is 123', 'Second message', 'Third message']`.

Installing the ConsoleSpy

To use our spy in our test we start by declaring two variables: `originalConsole` will keep a reference to the original `console` instance, and `fakeConsole` that will hold the *mocked* version of the `console`. We also declare a few variables that will be helpful in testing our `input` and `form` elements.

`code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts`

```

19 describe('DemoFormWithEvents', () => {
20   let originalConsole, fakeConsole;
21   let el, input, form;

```

And then we can install the fake console and specify our providers:

¹³⁴https://developer.mozilla.org/en/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Functions/rest_parameters

¹³⁵<https://nodejs.org/en/>

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts

```
23  beforeEach(() => {
24    // replace the real window.console with our spy
25    fakeConsole = new ConsoleSpy();
26    originalConsole = window.console;
27    (<any>window).console = fakeConsole;
28
29    TestBed.configureTestingModule({
30      imports: [FormsModule, ReactiveFormsModule],
31      declarations: [DemoFormWithEvents]
32    });
33  });
```

Back to the testing code, the next thing we need to do is replace the real console instance with ours, saving the original instance.

Finally, on the `afterAll` method, we restore the original console instance to make sure it doesn't *leak* into other tests.

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts

```
35  // restores the real console
36  afterAll(() => (<any>window).console = originalConsole);
```

Configuring the Testing Module

Notice that in the `beforeEach` we call `TestBed.configureTestingModule` - remember that `configureTestingModule` sets up the root NgModule for our tests.

In this case we're importing the two forms modules and declaring the `DemoFormWithEvents` component.

Now that we have control of the console, let's begin testing our form.

Testing The Form

Now we need to test the validation errors and the events of the form.

The first thing we need to do is to get the references to the SKU input field and to the form elements:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
38  it('validates and triggers events', fakeAsync((tcb) => {
39    let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(DemoFormWithEvents);
40
41    let el = fixture.debugElement.nativeElement;
42    let input = fixture.debugElement.query(By.css('input')).nativeElement;
43    let form = fixture.debugElement.query(By.css('form')).nativeElement;
44    fixture.detectChanges();
```

The last line tells Angular to commit all the pending changes, similar to what we did in the routing section above. Next, we will set the SKU input value to the empty string:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
46  input.value = '';
47  dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
48  fixture.detectChanges();
49  tick();
```

Here we use `dispatchEvent` to notify Angular that the input element changed, and then we trigger the change detection a second time. Finally we use `tick()` to make sure all asynchronous code triggered up to this point gets executed.

The reason we are using `fakeAsync` and `tick` on this test, is to assure the form events are triggered. If we used `async` and `inject` instead, we would finish the code before the events were triggered.

Now that we have changed the input value, let's make sure the validation is working. We ask the component element (using the `el` variable) for all child elements that are error messages and then making sure we have both error messages displayed:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
52  let msgs = el.querySelectorAll('.ui.error.message');
53  expect(msgs[0].innerHTML).toContain('SKU is invalid');
54  expect(msgs[1].innerHTML).toContain('SKU is required');
```

Next, we will do something similar, but this time we set a value to the SKU field:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
57   input.value = 'XYZ';
58   dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
59   fixture.detectChanges();
60   tick();
```

And make sure all the error messages are gone:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
62   msgs = el.querySelectorAll('.ui.error.message');
63   expect(msgs.length).toEqual(0);
```

Finally, we will trigger the submit event of the form:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
65   fixture.detectChanges();
66   dispatchEvent(form, 'submit');
67   tick();
```

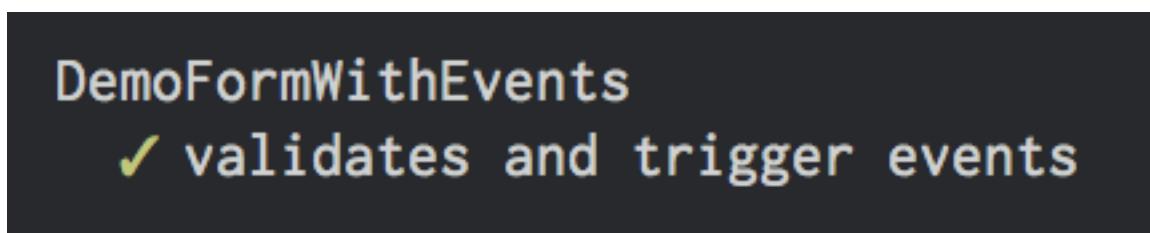
And finally we make sure the event was kicked by checking that the message we log to the console when the form is submitted is there:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events_bad.spec.ts

```
69   // checks for the form submitted message
70   expect(fakeConsole.logs).toContain('you submitted value: XYZ');
```

We could continue and add new verifications for the other two events our form triggers: the SKU change and the form change events. However, our test is growing quite long.

When we run our tests, we see it passes:



DemoFormWithEvents test output

This test works, but stylistically we have some code smells:

- a really long `it` condition (more than 5-10 lines)
- more than one or two `expects` per `it` condition
- the word `and` on the test description

Refactoring Our Form Test

Let's fix that by first extracting the code that creates the component and gets the component element and also the elements for the input and for the form:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts

```
38  function createComponent(): ComponentFixture<any> {
39    let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(DemoFormWithEvents);
40    el = fixture.debugElement.nativeElement;
41    input = fixture.debugElement.query(By.css('input')).nativeElement;
42    form = fixture.debugElement.query(By.css('form')).nativeElement;
43    fixture.detectChanges();
44
45    return fixture;
46 }
```

The `createComponent` code is pretty straightforward: Creates the component with `TestBed.createComponent`, retrieves all the elements we need and calls `detectChanges`.

Now the first thing we want to test is that given an empty SKU field, we should see two error messages:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts

```
48  it('displays errors with no sku', fakeAsync( () => {
49    let fixture = createComponent();
50    input.value = '';
51    dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
52    fixture.detectChanges();
53
54    // no value on sku field, all error messages are displayed
55    let msgs = el.querySelectorAll('.ui.error.message');
56    expect(msgs[0].innerHTML).toContain('SKU is invalid');
57    expect(msgs[1].innerHTML).toContain('SKU is required');
58  }));

```

See how much cleaner this is? Our test is focused and tests only one thing. Great job!

This new structure makes adding the second test easy. This time we want to test that, once we add a value to the SKU field, the error messages are gone:

`code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts`

```
60  it('displays no errors when sku has a value', fakeAsync( () => {
61    let fixture = createComponent();
62    input.value = 'XYZ';
63    dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
64    fixture.detectChanges();
65
66    let msgs = el.querySelectorAll('.ui.error.message');
67    expect(msgs.length).toEqual(0);
68  }));


---


```

One thing you may have noticed is that so far, our tests are not using `fakeAsync`, but `async` plus `inject` instead.

That's another bonus of this refactoring: we will only use `fakeAsync` and `tick()` when we want to check if something was added to the console, because that's all our form's event handlers do.

The next test will do exactly that - when the SKU value changes, we should have a message logged to the console:

`code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts`

```
70  it('handles sku value changes', fakeAsync( () => {
71    let fixture = createComponent();
72    input.value = 'XYZ';
73    dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
74    tick();
75
76    expect(fakeConsole.logs).toContain('sku changed to: XYZ');
77  }));


---


```

We can write similar code for both the form change...

`code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts`

```
79  it('handles form changes', fakeAsync(() => {
80    let fixture = createComponent();
81    input.value = 'XYZ';
82    dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
83    tick();
84
85    expect(fakeConsole.logs).toContain('form changed to: [object Object]');
86  }));


---


```

... and the form submission events:

code/forms/test/forms/demo_form_with_events.spec.ts

```
88 it('handles form submission', fakeAsync((tcb) => {
89   let fixture = createComponent();
90   input.value = 'ABC';
91   dispatchEvent(input, 'input');
92   tick();
93
94   fixture.detectChanges();
95   dispatchEvent(form, 'submit');
96   tick();
97
98   expect(fakeConsole.logs).toContain('you submitted value: ABC');
99 }));
```

When we run the tests now, we get a much nicer output:

DemoFormWithEvents

- ✓ displays errors with no sku
- ✓ displays no errors when sku has a value
- ✓ handles sku value changes
- ✓ handles form changes
- ✓ handles form submission

DemoFormWithEvents test output after refactoring

Another great benefit from this refactor can be seen when something goes wrong. Let's go back to the component code and change the message when the form gets submitted, in order to force one of our tests to fail:

```
1 onSubmit(form: any): void {
2   console.log('you have submitted the value:', form.sku);
3 }
```

If we ran the previous version of the test, here's what would happen:

```
DemoFormWithEvents
  ✘ validates and trigger events
    Expected [ 'sku changed to: ', 'form changed to: [object Object]', 'sku changed to: XYZ', 'form changed to: [object Object]', 'you have submitted the value: XYZ' ] to contain 'you submitted value: XYZ'.
      at /Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:41894
      at run (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5942)
      at zoneBoundFn (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5915)
      at lib$es6$promise$$internal$$tryCatch (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5915)
```

DemoFormWithEvents error output before refactoring

It's not immediately obvious what failed. We have to read the error code to realize it was the submission message that failed. We also can't be sure if that was the only thing that broke on the component code, since we may have other test conditions after the one that failed that never had a chance to be executed.

Now, compare that to the error we get from our refactored code:

```
DemoFormWithEvents
  ✓ displays errors with no sku
  ✓ displays no errors when sku has a value
  ✓ handles sku value changes
  ✓ handles form changes
  ✘ handles form submission
    Expected [ 'sku changed to: ABC', 'form changed to: [object Object]', 'you have submitted the value: ABC' ] to contain 'you submitted value: ABC'.
      at /Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:41673
      at run (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5942)
      at zoneBoundFn (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5915)
      at lib$es6$promise$$internal$$tryCatch (/Users/fcoury/code/ng-book2/manuscript/code/forms/test.bundle.js:5915)
```

DemoFormWithEvents error output after refactoring

This version makes it pretty obvious that the only thing that failed was the form submission event.

Testing HTTP requests

We could test the HTTP interaction in our apps using the same strategy as we used so far: write a mock version of the `Http` class, since it is an external dependency.

But since the vast majority of single page apps written using frameworks like Angular use HTTP interaction to talk to APIs, the Angular testing library already provides a built in alternative: `MockBackend`.

We have used this class before in this chapter when we were testing the `SpotifyService` class.

Let's dive a little deeper now and see some more testing scenarios and also some good practices. In order to do this, let's write tests for the examples from the *HTTP chapter*.

First, let's see how we test different HTTP methods, like POST or DELETE and how to test the correct HTTP headers are being sent.

Back on the HTTP chapter, we created this example that covered how to do those things using `Http`.

Testing a POST

The first test we'll write is to make sure we're doing a proper POST request on the `makePost` method:

code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts

```
30  makePost(): void {
31      this.loading = true;
32      this.http.post(
33          'http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts',
34          JSON.stringify({
35              body: 'bar',
36              title: 'foo',
37              userId: 1
38          }))
39      .subscribe((res: Response) => {
40          this.data = res.json();
41          this.loading = false;
42      });
43  }
```

When writing our test for this method, our goal is to test two things:

1. the request method (POST) is correct and that
2. the URL we're hitting is also correct.

Here's how we turn that into a test:

code/http/test/MoreHTTPRequests.spec.ts

```
37  it('performs a POST', {
38      async inject([MockBackend], (backend) => {
39          let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(MoreHTTPRequests);
40          let comp = fixture.debugElement.componentInstance;
41
42          backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
43              expect(c.request.url)
44                  .toBe('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts');
45              expect(c.request.method).toBe(RequestMethod.Post);
46              c.mockRespond(new Response(<any>{body: '{"response": "OK"}'}));
47          });
48
49          comp.makePost();
```

```
50     expect(comp.data).toEqual({ 'response': 'OK' });
51   }));
52 );
```

Notice how we have a `subscribe` call to `backend.connections`. This will trigger our code whenever a new HTTP connection is established, giving us an opportunity to peek into the request and also provide the response we want.

This place is where you can:

- add request assertions, like checking the correct URL or HTTP method was requested
- set a mocked response, to force your code to deal with different responses, given different test scenarios

Angular uses an `enum` called `RequestMethod` to identify HTTP methods. Here are the supported methods:

```
1 export enum RequestMethod {
2   Get,
3   Post,
4   Put,
5   Delete,
6   Options,
7   Head,
8   Patch
9 }
```

Finally, after the call `makePost()` we're doing another check to make sure that the mock response we set was the one that was assigned to our component.

Now that we understand how this work, adding a second test for a `DELETE` method is easy.

Testing DELETE

Here's how the `makeDelete` method is implemented:

code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts

```
45  makeDelete(): void {
46    this.loading = true;
47    this.http.delete('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1')
48      .subscribe((res: Response) => {
49        this.data = res.json();
50        this.loading = false;
51      });
52 }
```

And this is the code we use to test it:

code/http/test/MoreHTTPRequests.spec.ts

```
54  it('performs a DELETE',
55    async(inject([MockBackend], (backend) => {
56      let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(MoreHTTPRequests);
57      let comp = fixture.debugElement.componentInstance;
58
59      backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
60        expect(c.request.url)
61          .toBe('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1');
62        expect(c.request.method).toBe(RequestMethod.Delete);
63        c.mockRespond(new Response(<any>{body: '{"response": "OK"}'}));
64      });
65
66      comp.makeDelete();
67      expect(comp.data).toEqual({ 'response': 'OK' });
68    }))
69  );
```

Everything here is the same, except for the URL that changes a bit and the HTTP method, which is now RequestMethod.Delete.

Testing HTTP Headers

The last method we have to test on this class is makeHeaders:

`code/http/app/ts/components/MoreHTTPRequests.ts`

```
54  makeHeaders(): void {
55      let headers: Headers = new Headers();
56      headers.append('X-API-TOKEN', 'ng-book');
57
58      let opts: RequestOptions = new RequestOptions();
59      opts.headers = headers;
60
61      this.http.get('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1', opts)
62          .subscribe((res: Response) => {
63              this.data = res.json();
64          });
65 }
```

In this case, what our test should focus on is making sure the header X-API-TOKEN is being properly set to ng-book:

`code/http/test/MoreHTTPRequests.spec.ts`

```
71  it('sends correct headers',
72      async(inject([MockBackend], (backend) => {
73          let fixture = TestBed.createComponent(MoreHTTPRequests);
74          let comp = fixture.debugElement.componentInstance;
75
76          backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
77              expect(c.request.url)
78                  .toBe('http://jsonplaceholder.typicode.com/posts/1');
79              expect(c.request.headers.has('X-API-TOKEN')).toBeTruthy();
80              expect(c.request.headers.get('X-API-TOKEN')).toEqual('ng-book');
81              c.mockRespond(new Response(<any>{body: '{"response": "OK"}'}));
82          });
83
84          comp.makeHeaders();
85          expect(comp.data).toEqual({ 'response': 'OK' });
86      }));
87 );
```

The connection's request.headers attribute returns a Headers class instance and we're using two methods to perform two different assertions:

- the has method to check whether a given header was set, ignoring its value

- the get method, that returns the value that was set

If having the header set is sufficient, use has. Otherwise, if you need to inspect the set value, use get.

And with that we finish the tests of different methods and headers on Angular. Time to move to a more complex example, that will be closer to what you will encounter when coding real world applications.

Testing YouTubeService

The other example we built back on the HTTP chapter was a YouTube video search. The HTTP interaction for that example takes place on a service called YouTubeService:

code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts

```
47  /**
48   * YouTubeService connects to the YouTube API
49   * See: * https://developers.google.com/youtube/v3/docs/search/list
50  */
51 @Injectable()
52 export class YouTubeService {
53   constructor(private http: Http,
54             @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_KEY) private apiKey: string,
55             @Inject(YOUTUBE_API_URL) private apiUrl: string) {
56 }
57
58   search(query: string): Observable<SearchResult[]> {
59     let params: string = [
60       `q=${query}`,
61       `key=${this.apiKey}`,
62       `part=snippet`,
63       `type=video`,
64       `maxResults=10`
65     ].join('&');
66     let queryUrl: string = `${this.apiUrl}?${params}`;
67     return this.http.get(queryUrl)
68       .map((response: Response) => {
69         return (<any>response.json()).items.map(item => {
70           // console.log("raw item", item); // uncomment if you want to debug
71           return new SearchResult({
72             id: item.id.videoId,
73             title: item.snippet.title,
```

```
74     description: item.snippet.description,
75     thumbnailUrl: item.snippet.thumbnails.high.url
76   });
77 });
78 });
79 }
80 }
```

It uses the YouTube API to search for videos and parse the results into a `SearchResult` instance:

`code/http/app/ts/components/YouTubeSearchComponent.ts`

```
30 class SearchResult {
31   id: string;
32   title: string;
33   description: string;
34   thumbnailUrl: string;
35   videoUrl: string;
36
37   constructor(obj?: any) {
38     this.id          = obj && obj.id           || null;
39     this.title       = obj && obj.title        || null;
40     this.description = obj && obj.description || null;
41     this.thumbnailUrl = obj && obj.thumbnailUrl || null;
42     this.videoUrl    = obj && obj.videoUrl     ||
43                           `https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=${this.id}`;
44   }
45 }
```

The important aspects of this service we need to test are that:

- given a JSON response, the service is able to parse the video id, title, description and thumbnail
- the URL we are requesting uses the provided search term
- the URL starts with what is set on the `YOUTUBE_API_URL` constant
- the API key used matches the `YOUTUBE_API_KEY` constant

With that in mind, let's start writing our test:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentBefore.spec.ts

```
21 describe('MoreHTTPRequests (before)', () => {
22   beforeEach(() => {
23     TestBed.configureTestingModule({
24       providers: [
25         YouTubeService,
26         BaseRequestOptions,
27         MockBackend,
28         { provide: YOUTUBE_API_KEY, useValue: 'YOUTUBE_API_KEY' },
29         { provide: YOUTUBE_API_URL, useValue: 'YOUTUBE_API_URL' },
30         { provide: Http,
31           useFactory: (backend: ConnectionBackend,
32             defaultOptions: BaseRequestOptions) => {
33               return new Http(backend, defaultOptions);
34             }, deps: [MockBackend, BaseRequestOptions] }
35       ]
36     });
37   });
38 });
```

As we did for every test we wrote on this chapter, we start by declaring how we want to setup our dependencies: we're using the real YouTubeService instance, but setting fake values for YOUTUBE_API_KEY and YOUTUBE_API_URL constants. We also setting up the Http class to use a MockBackend.

Now, let's begin to write our first test case:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentBefore.spec.ts

```
40  describe('search', () => {
41    it('parses YouTube response',
42      inject([YouTubeService, MockBackend], fakeAsync((service, backend) => {
43        let res;
44
45        backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
46          c.mockRespond(new Response(<any>{
47            body: `
48            {
49              "items": [
50                {
51                  "id": { "videoId": "VIDEO_ID" },
52                  "snippet": {
53                    "title": "TITLE",
```

```
54         "description": "DESCRIPTION",
55         "thumbnails": {
56             "high": { "url": "THUMBNAIL_URL" }
57         }]}]}
58     }));
59 });
60
61     service.search('hey').subscribe(_res => {
62         res = _res;
63     });
64     tick();
65
66     let video = res[0];
67     expect(video.id).toEqual('VIDEO_ID');
68     expect(video.title).toEqual('TITLE');
69     expect(video.description).toEqual('DESCRIPTION');
70     expect(video.thumbnailUrl).toEqual('THUMBNAIL_URL');
71 })
72 )
73 );
```

Here we are telling `Http` to return a fake response that will match the relevant fields what we expect the YouTube API to respond when we call the real URL. We do that by using the `mockRespond` method of the connection.

`code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentBefore.spec.ts`

```
61     service.search('hey').subscribe(_res => {
62         res = _res;
63     });
64     tick();
```

Next, we're calling the method we're testing: `search`. We're calling it with the term `hey` and capturing the response on the `res` variable.

If you noticed before, we're using `fakeAsync` that requires us to manually sync asynchronous code by calling `tick()`. When we do that here, we expect that the search finished executing and our `res` variable to have a value.

Now is the time to evaluate that value:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentBefore.spec.ts

```
66  let video = res[0];
67  expect(video.id).toEqual('VIDEO_ID');
68  expect(video.title).toEqual('TITLE');
69  expect(video.description).toEqual('DESCRIPTION');
70  expect(video.thumbnailUrl).toEqual('THUMBNAIL_URL');
```

We are getting the first element from the list of responses. We know it's a `SearchResult`, so we're now checking that each attribute was set correctly, based on our provided response: the id, title, description and thumbnail URL should all match.

With this, we completed our first goal when writing this test. However, didn't we just say that having a huge `it` method and having too many `expects` are testing code smells?

We did, so before we continue let's refactor this code to make isolated assertions easier.

Add the following helper function inside our `describe('search', ...)`:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentAfter.spec.ts

```
55  function search(term: string, response: any, callback) {
56    return inject([YouTubeService, MockBackend],
57      fakeAsync((service, backend) => {
58        var req;
59        var res;
60
61        backend.connections.subscribe(c => {
62          req = c.request;
63          c.mockRespond(new Response(<any>{body: response}));
64        });
65
66        service.search(term).subscribe(_res => {
67          res = _res;
68        });
69        tick();
70
71        callback(req, res);
72      })
73    )
74  }
```

Let's see what this function does: it uses `inject` and `fakeAsync` to perform the same thing we were doing before, but in a configurable way. We take a *search term*, a *response* and a *callback function*.

We use those parameters to call the `search` method with the search term, set the fake response and call the callback function after the request is finished, providing the request and the response objects.

This way, all our test need to do is call the function and check one of the objects.

Let's break the test we had before into four tests, each testing one specific aspect of the response:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentAfter.spec.ts

```
76  it('parses YouTube video id', search('hey', response, (req, res) => {
77    let video = res[0];
78    expect(video.id).toEqual('VIDEO_ID');
79  }));
80
81  it('parses YouTube video title', search('hey', response, (req, res) => {
82    let video = res[0];
83    expect(video.title).toEqual('TITLE');
84  }));
85
86  it('parses YouTube video description', search('hey', response, (req, res) => \
87  {
88    let video = res[0];
89    expect(video.description).toEqual('DESCRIPTION');
90  }));
91
92  it('parses YouTube video thumbnail', search('hey', response, (req, res) => {
93    let video = res[0];
94    expect(video.description).toEqual('DESCRIPTION');
95  }));

```

Doesn't it look good? Small, focused tests that test only one thing. Great!

Now it should be really easy to add tests for the remaining goals we had:

code/http/test/YouTubeSearchComponentAfter.spec.ts

```
96  it('sends the query', search('term', response, (req, res) => {
97    expect(req.url).toContain('q=term');
98  }));
99
100  it('sends the API key', search('term', response, (req, res) => {
101    expect(req.url).toContain('key=YOUTUBE_API_KEY');
102  }));
103
104  it('uses the provided YouTube URL', search('term', response, (req, res) => {
```

```
105     expect(req.url).toMatch(/^YOUTUBE_API_URL\b?/);
106 });


```

Feel free to add more tests as you see fit. For example, you could add a test for when you have more than one item on the response, with different attributes. See if you can find other aspects of the code you'd like to test.

Conclusion

The Angular team has done a great job building testing right into Angular. It's easy to test all of the aspects of our application: from controllers, to services, forms and HTTP. Even testing asynchronous code that was a difficult to test is now a breeze.

Converting an Angular 1 App to Angular 2

If you've been using Angular for a while, then you probably already have production Angular 1 apps. Angular 2 is great, but there's no way we can drop everything and rewrite our entire production apps in Angular 2. What we need is a way to *incrementally* upgrade our Angular 1 app. Thankfully, Angular 2 has a fantastic way to do that.

The interoperability of Angular 1 (ng1) and Angular 2 (ng2) works really well. In this chapter, we're going to talk about how to upgrade your ng1 app to ng2 by writing a *hybrid* app. A hybrid app is running ng1 and ng2 simultaneously (and we can exchange data between them).

Peripheral Concepts

When we talk about interoperability between Angular 1 and Angular 2, there's a lot of peripheral concepts. For instance:

Mapping Angular 1 Concepts to Angular 2: At a high level, ng2 Components are ng1 directives. We also use Services in both. However, this chapter is about using both ng1 and ng2, so we're going to assume you have basic knowledge of both. If you haven't used ng2 much, checkout the chapter on [How Angular Works](#) before reading this chapter.

Preparing ng1 apps for ng2: Angular 1.5 provides a new `.component` method to make "component-directives". `.component` is a great way to start preparing your ng1 app for ng2. Furthermore, creating thin controllers (or [banning them altogether¹³⁶](#)) is a great way to refactor your ng1 app such that it's easier to integrate with ng2.

Another way to prepare your ng1 app is to reduce or eliminate your use of two-way data-binding in favor of a one-way data flow. In-part, you'd do this by reducing `$scope` changes that pass data between directives and instead use services to pass your data around.

These ideas are important and warrant further exploration. However, we're not going to extensively cover best-practices for pre-upgrade refactoring in this chapter.

Instead, here's what we **are** going to talk about:

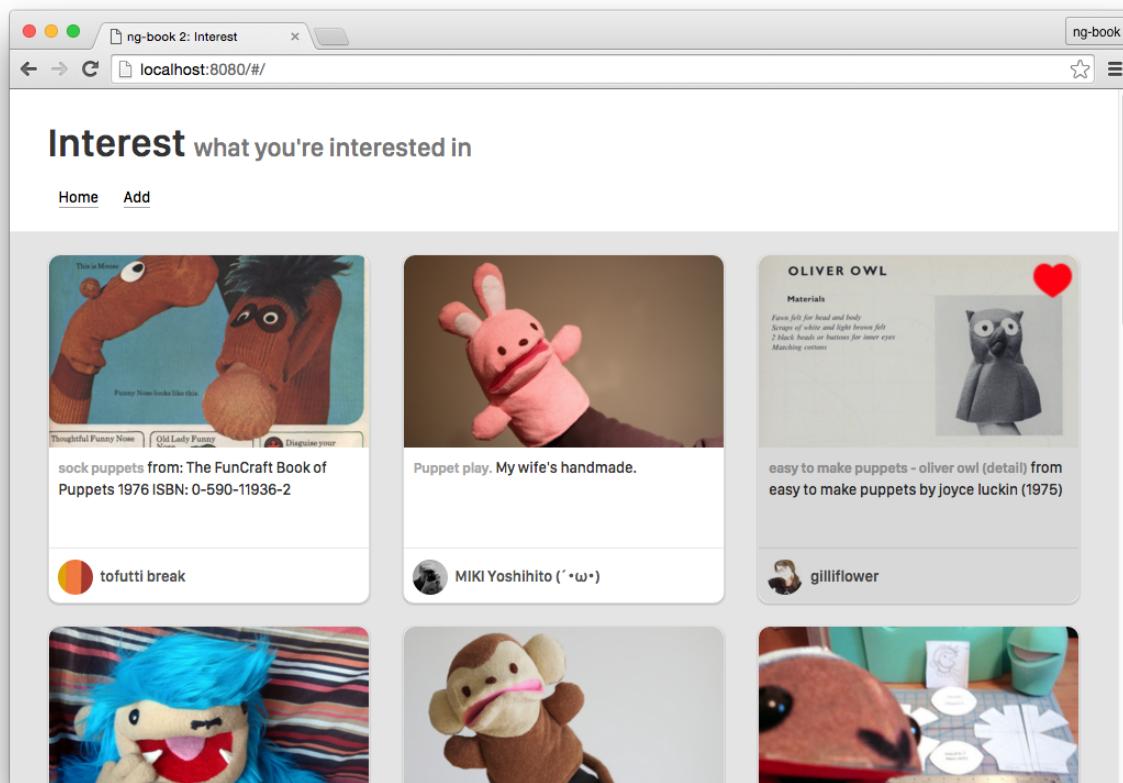
Writing hybrid ng1/ng2 apps: ng2 provides a way to bootstrap your ng1 app and then write ng2 components and services. You can write ng2 components that will mix with ng1 components and it "just works". Furthermore, the dependency injection system supports passing between ng1 and ng2 (both directions), so you can write services which will run in either ng1 or ng2.

¹³⁶[http://teropa.info/blog/2014/10/24/how-i've-improved-my-angular-apps-by-banning-ng-controller.html](http://teropa.info/blog/2014/10/24/how-ive-improved-my-angular-apps-by-banning-ng-controller.html)

The best part? Change detection runs within Zones, so you don't need to call `$scope.apply` or worry much about change-detection at all.

What We're Building

In this chapter, we're going to be converting an app called "Interest" - it's a Pinterest-like clone. The idea is that you can save a "Pin" which is a link with an image. The Pins will be shown in a list and you can "fav" (or unfav) a pin.



Our completed Pinterest-like app



You can find the completed code for both the ng1 version and the completed hybrid version in the sample code download under `code/conversion/ng1` and `code/conversion/hybrid`

Before we dive in, let's set the stage for interoperability between ng1 and ng2

Mapping Angular 1 to Angular 2

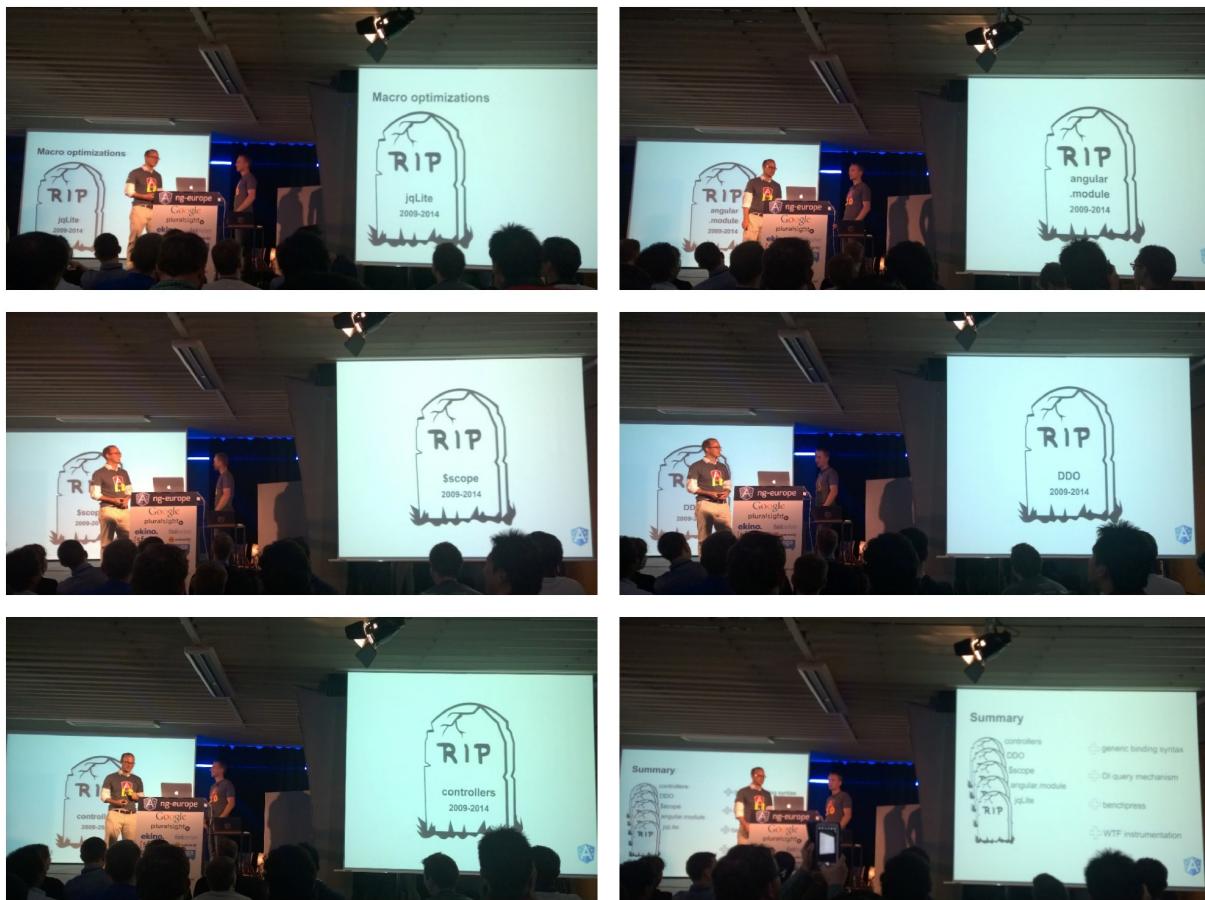
From a high level, the five main parts of Angular 1 are:

- Directives
- Controllers
- Scopes
- Services
- Dependency Injection

Angular 2 changes this list significantly. You might have heard that at ngEurope 2014 Igor and Tobias from the Angular core team announced that they were killing off several “core” ideas in Angular 1 ([video here¹³⁷](#)). Specifically, they announced that Angular 2 was killing off:

- \$scope (& two-way binding by default)
- Directive Definition Objects
- Controllers
- angular.module

¹³⁷<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=gNmWybAyBHI>



Igor and Tobias killing off many APIs from 1.x. at ngEurope 2014. Photo Credit: Michael Bromley (used with permission)

As someone who's built Angular 1 apps and is used to thinking in ng1, we might ask: if we take those things away, what is left? How can you build Angular apps without Controllers and \$scope?

Well, as much as people like to dramatize how **different** Angular 2 is, it turns out, a lot of the same ideas are still with us and, in fact, Angular 2 provides just as much functionality but with a **much simpler model**.

At a high-level Angular 2 core is made up of:

- Components (think “directives”) and
- Services

Of course there's tons of infrastructure required to make those things work. For instance, you need Dependency Injection to manage your Services. And you need a strong change detection library to efficiently propagate data changes to your app. And you need an efficient rendering layer to handle rendering the DOM at the right time.

Requirements for Interoperability

So given these two different systems, what features do we need for easy interoperability?

- **Use Angular 2 Components in Angular 1:** The first thing that comes to mind is that we need to be able to write new ng2 components, but use them within our ng1 app.
- **Use Angular 1 Components in Angular 2:** It's likely that we won't replace a whole branch of our component-tree with all ng2 components. We want to be able to re-use any ng1 components we have *within* a ng2 component.
- **Service Sharing:** If we have, say, a `UserService` we want to share that service between both ng1 and ng2. Services are normally plain Javascript objects so, more generally, what we need is an interoperable **dependency injection** system.
- **Change Detection:** If we make changes in one side, we want those changes to propagate to the other.

Angular 2 provides solutions for all of these situations and we'll cover them in this chapter.

In this chapter we're going to do the following:

- Describe the ng1 app we'll be converting
- Explain how to setup your hybrid app by using ng2's `UpgradeAdapter`
- Explain step-by-step how to share components (directives) and services between ng1 and ng2 by converting the ng1 app to a hybrid app

The Angular 1 App

To set the stage, let's go over the Angular 1 version of our app.



This chapter assumes some knowledge of Angular 1 and `ui-router`¹³⁸. If you're not comfortable with Angular 1 yet, check out [ng-book 1](#)¹³⁹.

We won't be diving too deeply into explaining each Angular 1 concept. Instead, we're going to review the structure of the app to prepare for our upgrade to a ng2/hybrid app.

To run the ng1 app, cd into `conversion/ng1` in the code samples, install the dependencies, and run the app.

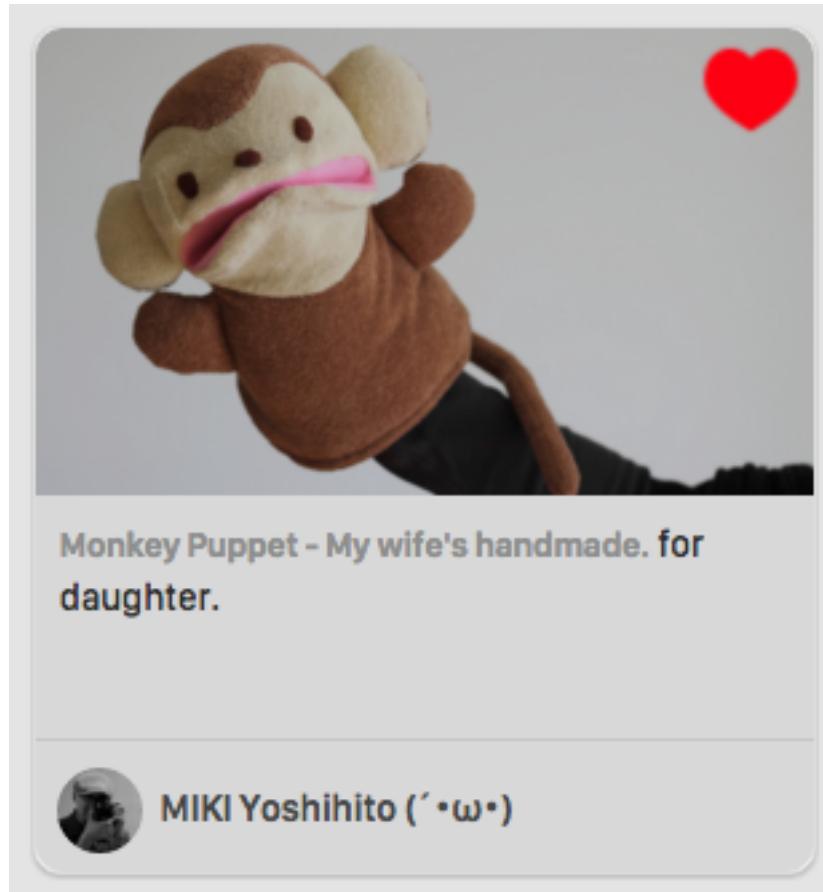
¹³⁸<https://github.com/angular-ui/ui-router>

¹³⁹<http://ng-book.com>

```
1 cd code/conversion/ng1    # change directories  
2 npm install               # install dependencies  
3 npm run go                 # run the app
```

If your browser doesn't open automatically, open the url: <http://localhost:8080>¹⁴⁰.

In this app, you can see that our user is collecting puppets. We can hover over an item and click the heart to "fav" a pin.



Red heart indicates a faved pin

We can also go to the /add page and add a new pin. Try submitting the default form.



Handling image uploads is more complex than we want to handle in this demo. For now, just paste the full URL to an image if you want to try a different image.

¹⁴⁰<http://localhost:8080>

The ng1-app HTML

The index.html in our ng1 app uses a common structure:

code/conversion/ng1/index.html

```
1 <!DOCTYPE html>
2 <html ng-app='interestApp'>
3 <head>
4   <meta charset="utf-8">
5   <title>Interest</title>
6   <link rel="stylesheet" href="css/bootstrap.min.css">
7   <link rel="stylesheet" href="css/sf.css">
8   <link rel="stylesheet" href="css/interest.css">
9 </head>
10 <body class="container-fullwidth">
11
12   <div class="page-header">
13     <div class="container">
14       <h1>Interest <small>what you're interested in</small></h1>
15
16       <div class="navLinks">
17         <a ui-sref='home' id="navLinkHome">Home</a>
18         <a ui-sref='add' id="navLinkAdd">Add</a>
19       </div>
20     </div>
21   </div>
22
23   <div id="content">
24     <div ui-view=' '></div>
25   </div>
26
27   <script src="js/vendor/lodash.js"></script>
28   <script src="js/vendor/angular.js"></script>
29   <script src="js/vendor/angular-ui-router.js"></script>
30   <script src="js/app.js"></script>
31 </body>
32 </html>
```

- Notice that we're using ng-app in the html tag to specify that this app uses the module interestApp.
- We load our javascript with script tags at the bottom of the body.
- The template contains a page-header which stores our navigation

- We're using ui-router which means we:
 - Use ui-sref for our links (Home and Add) and
 - We use ui-view where we want the router to populate our content.

Code Overview

We'll look at each section in code, but first, let's briefly describe the moving parts.

In our app, we have two routes:

- / uses the HomeController
- /add uses the AddController

We use a PinsService to hold an array of all of the current pins. HomeController renders the list of pins and AddController adds a new element to that list.

Our root-level route uses our HomeController to render pins. We have a pin directive that renders each pin.

The PinsService stores the data in our app, so let's look at the PinsService first.

ng1: PinsService

code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js

```

1 angular.module('interestApp', ['ui.router'])
2 .service('PinsService', function($http, $q) {
3   this._pins = null;
4
5   this.pins = function() {
6     var self = this;
7     if(self._pins == null) {
8       // initialize with sample data
9       return $http.get("/js/data/sample-data.json").then(
10         function(response) {
11           self._pins = response.data;
12           return self._pins;
13         })
14     } else {
15       return $q.when(self._pins);
16     }
17   }
18 }
```

```

19  this.addPin = function(newPin) {
20    // adding would normally be an API request so lets mock async
21    return $q.when(
22      this._pins.unshift(newPin)
23    );
24  }
25 })

```

The PinsService is a .service that stores an array of pins in the property `_pins`.

The method `.pins` returns a promise that resolves to the list of pins. If `_pins` is null (i.e. the first time), then we will load sample data from `/js/data/sample-data.json`.

`code/conversion/ng1/js/data/sample-data.json`

```

1 [
2   {
3     "title": "sock puppets",
4     "description": "from:\nThe FunCraft Book of Puppets\n1976\nISBN: 0-590-11936\
5 -2",
6     "user_name": "tofutti break",
7     "avatar_src": "images/avatars/42826303@N00.jpg",
8     "src": "images/pins/106033588_167d811702_o.jpg",
9     "url": "https://www.flickr.com/photos/tofuttibreak/106033588/",
10    "faved": false,
11    "id": "106033588"
12  },
13  {
14    "title": "Puppet play.",
15    "description": "My wife's handmade.",
16    "user_name": "MIKI Yoshihito (ミキヨシヒト)",
17    "avatar_src": "images/avatars/7940758@N07.jpg",
18    "src": "images/pins/4422575066_7d5c4c41e7_o.jpg",
19    "url": "https://www.flickr.com/photos/mujitra/4422575066/",
20    "faved": false,
21    "id": "4422575066"
22  },
23  {
24    "title": "easy to make puppets - oliver owl (detail)",
25    "description": "from easy to make puppets by joyce luckin (1975)",
26    "user_name": "gilliflower",
27    "avatar_src": "images/avatars/26265986@N00.jpg",
28    "src": "images/pins/6819859061_25d05ef2e1_o.jpg",

```

```

29     "url": "https://www.flickr.com/photos/gilliflower/6819859061/",
30     "faved": false,
31     "id": "6819859061"
32 },

```

Snippet from Sample Data

The method `.addPin` simply adds the new pin to the array of pins. We use `$q.when` here to return a promise, which is likely what would happen if we were doing a real async call to a server.

ng1: Configuring Routes

We're going to configure our routes with `ui-router`.



If you're unfamiliar with `ui-router` you can [read the docs here¹⁴¹](#).

As we mentioned, we're going to have two routes:

code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js

```

26 .config(function($stateProvider, $urlRouterProvider) {
27   $stateProvider
28     .state('home', {
29       templateUrl: '/templates/home.html',
30       controller: 'HomeController as ctrl',
31       url: '/',
32       resolve: {
33         'pins': function(PinsService) {
34           return PinsService.pins();
35         }
36       }
37     })
38     .state('add', {
39       templateUrl: '/templates/add.html',
40       controller: 'AddController as ctrl',
41       url: '/add',
42       resolve: {
43         'pins': function(PinsService) {
44           return PinsService.pins();
45         }
46     })

```

¹⁴¹<https://github.com/angular-ui/ui-router/wiki>

```
46      }
47  })
48
49  $urlRouterProvider.when(' ', '/');
50 })
```

The first route / maps to the `HomeController`. It has a template, which we'll look at in a minute. Notice that we also are using the `resolve` functionality of `ui-router`. This says that before we load this route for the user, we want to call `PinsService.pins()` and inject the result (the list of pins) into the controller (`HomeController`).

The /add route is similarly, except that it has a different template and a different controller.

Let's first look at our `HomeController`.

ng1: `HomeController`

Our `HomeController` is straightforward. We save `pins`, which is injected because of our `resolve`, to `$scope.pins`.

[code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js](#)

```
60 .controller('HomeController', function(pins) {
61   this.pins = pins;
62 })
```

ng1: / `HomeController` template

Our home template is small: we use an `ng-repeat` to repeat over the pins in `$scope.pins`. Then we render each pin with the `pin` directive.

[code/conversion/ng1/templates/home.html](#)

```
1 <div class="container">
2   <div class="row">
3     <pin item="pin" ng-repeat="pin in ctrl.pins">
4       </pin>
5     </div>
6   </div>
```

Let's dive deeper and look at this `pin` directive.

ng1: pin Directive

The `pin` directive is restricted to matching an element (`E`) and has a template.

We can input our `pin` via the `item` attribute, as we did in the `home.html` template.

Our `link` function, defines a function on the scope called `toggleFav` which toggles the pin's `faved` property.

`code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js`

```
92  })
93 .directive('pin', function() {
94   return {
95     restrict: 'E',
96     templateUrl: '/templates/pin.html',
97     scope: {
98       'pin': "=item"
99     },
100    link: function(scope, elem, attrs) {
101      scope.toggleFav = function() {
102        scope.pin.faved = !scope.pin.faved;
103      }
104    }
105  }
106 })
```



This directive shouldn't be taken as an example of directive best-practices in 2016. For instance, if I was writing this component anew (in ng1) I would probably use the new `.component` directive in Angular 1.5. At the very least, I'd probably use `controllerAs` instead of `link` here.

But this section is less about how to write ng1 code, as much as how to work with the ng1 code you already have.

ng1: pin Directive template

The template `templates/pin.html` renders an individual pin on our page.

code/conversion/ng1/templates/pin.html

```

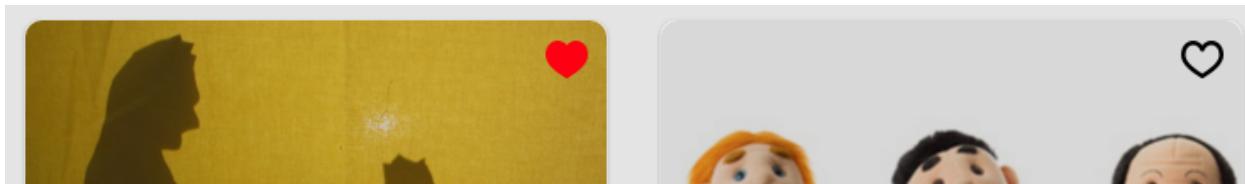
1 <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4">
2   <div class="thumbnail">
3     <div class="content">
4       
5       <div class="caption">
6         <h3>{{pin.title}}</h3>
7         <p>{{pin.description | truncate:100}}</p>
8       </div>
9       <div class="attribution">
10        
11        <h4>{{pin.user_name}}</h4>
12      </div>
13    </div>
14    <div class="overlay">
15      <div class="controls">
16        <div class="heart">
17          <a ng-click="toggleFav()">
18            </img>
19            </img>
20          </a>
21        </div>
22      </div>
23    </div>
24  </div>
25 </div>

```

The directives we use here are ng1 built-ins:

- We use `ng-src` to render the `img`.
- Next we show the `pin.title` and `pin.description`.
- We use `ng-if` to show either the red or empty heart

The most interesting thing here is the `ng-click` that will call `toggleFav`. `toggleFav` changes the `pin.faved` property and thus the red or empty heart will be shown accordingly.



Red vs. Black Heart

Now let's turn our attention to the AddController.

ng1: AddController

Our AddController has a bit more code than the HomeController. We open by defining the controller and specifying the services it will inject:

code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js

```
63 .controller('AddController', function($state, PinsService, $timeout) {
64   var ctrl = this;
65   ctrl.saving = false;
```

We're using controllerAs syntax in our router and template, which means we set properties on this instead of on \$scope. Scoping this in ES5 Javascript can be tricky, so we assign var ctrl = this; which helps disambiguate when we're referencing the controller in nested functions.

code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js

```
67   var makeNewPin = function() {
68     return {
69       "title": "Steampunk Cat",
70       "description": "A cat wearing goggles",
71       "user_name": "me",
72       "avatar_src": "images/avatars/me.jpg",
73       "src": "/images/pins/cat.jpg",
74       "url": "http://cats.com",
75       "faved": false,
76       "id": Math.floor(Math.random() * 10000).toString()
77     }
78   }
79
80   ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
```

We create a function makeNewPin that contains the default structure and data for a pin.

We also initialize this controller by setting ctrl.newPin to the value of calling this function.

The last thing we need to do is define the function to submit a new pin:

[code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js](#)

```

82   ctrl.submitPin = function() {
83     ctrl.saving = true;
84     $timeout(function()) {
85       PinsService.addPin(ctrl.newPin).then(function()) {
86         ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
87         ctrl.saving = false;
88         $state.go('home');
89       });
90     }, 2000);
91   }
92 })

```

Essentially, this article is calling out to `PinsService.addPin` and creating a new pin. But there's a few other things going on here.

In a real application, this would almost certainly call back to a server. We're mimicking that effect by using `$timeout`. (That is, you could remove the `$timeout` function and this would still work. It's just here to deliberately slow down the app to give us a chance to see the "Saving" indicator.)

We want to give some indication to the user that their pin is saving, so we set the `ctrl.saving = true`.

We call `PinsService.addPin` giving it our `ctrl.newPin`. `addPin` returns a promise, so in our promise function we

1. revert `ctrl.newPin` to the original value
2. we set `ctrl.saving` to `false`, because we're done saving the pin
3. we use the `$state` service to redirect the user to the homepage where we can see our new pin

Here's the whole code of the AddController:

[code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js](#)

```

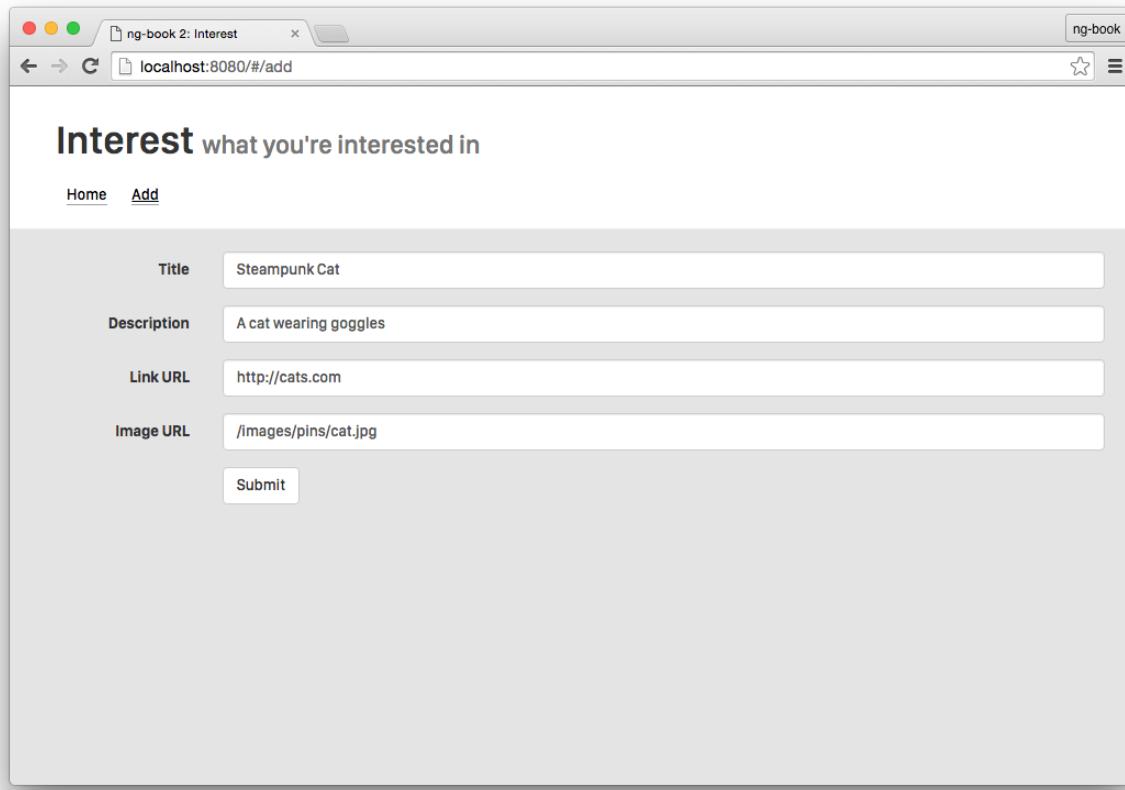
63 .controller('AddController', function($state, PinsService, $timeout) {
64   var ctrl = this;
65   ctrl.saving = false;
66
67   var makeNewPin = function() {
68     return {
69       "title": "Steampunk Cat",
70       "description": "A cat wearing goggles",
71       "user_name": "me",

```

```
72     "avatar_src": "images/avatars/me.jpg",
73     "src": "/images/pins/cat.jpg",
74     "url": "http://cats.com",
75     "faved": false,
76     "id": Math.floor(Math.random() * 10000).toString()
77   }
78 }
79
80 ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
81
82 ctrl.submitPin = function() {
83   ctrl.saving = true;
84   $timeout(function() {
85     PinsService.addPin(ctrl.newPin).then(function() {
86       ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
87       ctrl.saving = false;
88       $state.go('home');
89     });
90   }, 2000);
91 }
92 })
```

ng1: AddController template

Our /add route renders the add.html template.



Adding a New Pin Form

The template uses `ng-model` to bind the `input` tags to the properties of the `newPin` on the controller. The interesting things here are that:

- We use `ng-click` on the submit button to call `ctrl.submitPin` and
- We show a “Saving...” message if `ctrl.saving` is truthy

code/conversion/ng1/templates/add.html

```
1 <div class="container">
2   <div class="row">
3
4     <form class="form-horizontal">
5
6       <div class="form-group">
7         <label for="title"
8           class="col-sm-2 control-label">Title</label>
```

```
9   <div class="col-sm-10">
10    <input type="text"
11      class="form-control"
12      id="title"
13      placeholder="Title"
14      ng-model="ctrl.newPin.title">
15    </div>
16  </div>
17
18  <div class="form-group">
19    <label for="description"
20      class="col-sm-2 control-label">Description</label>
21    <div class="col-sm-10">
22      <input type="text"
23        class="form-control"
24        id="description"
25        placeholder="Description"
26        ng-model="ctrl.newPin.description">
27    </div>
28  </div>
29
30  <div class="form-group">
31    <label for="url"
32      class="col-sm-2 control-label">Link URL</label>
33    <div class="col-sm-10">
34      <input type="text"
35        class="form-control"
36        id="url"
37        placeholder="Link URL"
38        ng-model="ctrl.newPin.url">
39    </div>
40  </div>
41
42  <div class="form-group">
43    <label for="url"
44      class="col-sm-2 control-label">Image URL</label>
45    <div class="col-sm-10">
46      <input type="text"
47        class="form-control"
48        id="url"
49        placeholder="Image URL"
50        ng-model="ctrl.newPin.src">
```

```
51      </div>
52      </div>
53
54      <div class="form-group">
55          <div class="col-sm-offset-2 col-sm-10">
56              <button type="submit"
57                  class="btn btn-default"
58                  ng-click="ctrl1.submitPin()">Submit</button>
59          </div>
60      </div>
61      <div ng-if="ctrl1.saving">
62          Saving...
63      </div>
64  </form>
65
66  </div>
67 </div>
```

ng1: Summary

There we have it. This app has just the right amount of complexity that we can start porting it to Angular 2.

Building A Hybrid

Now we're ready to start putting some Angular 2 in our Angular 1 app.

Before we start using Angular 2 in our browser, we're going to need to make some modifications to our project structure.



You can find the code for this example in `code/conversion/hybrid`.

Hybrid Project Structure

The first step to creating a hybrid app is to make sure you have both ng1 and ng2 loaded as dependencies. Everyone's situation is going to be slightly different.

In this example we've **vendored** the Angular 1 libraries (in `js/vendor`) and we're loading the Angular 2 libraries from `npm`.

In your project, you might want to vendor them both, use `bower`¹⁴², etc. However, using `npm` is very convenient for Angular 2, and so we suggest using `npm` to install Angular 2.

Dependencies with `package.json`

You install dependencies with `npm` using the `package.json` file. Here's our `package.json` for the hybrid example:

`code/conversion/hybrid/package.json`

```
1  {
2      "name": "ng-hybrid-pinterest",
3      "version": "0.0.1",
4      "description": "toy pinterest clone in ng1/ng2 hybrid",
5      "contributors": [
6          "Nate Murray <nate@fullstack.io>",
7          "Felipe Coury <felipe@ng-book.com>"
8      ],
9      "main": "index.js",
10     "private": true,
11     "scripts": {
12         "clean": "rm -f ts/*.js ts/*.js.map ts/components/*.js ts/components/*.js.ma\
13 p ts/services/*.js ts/services.js.map",
14         "tsc": "./node_modules/.bin/tsc",
15         "tsc:w": "./node_modules/.bin/tsc -w",
16         "serve": "./node_modules/.bin/live-server --host=localhost --port=8080 .",
17         "e2e:serve": "npm run tsc && ./node_modules/.bin/live-server --host=localhost\
18 t --port=8080 --no-browser .",
19         "go": "concurrent \"npm run tsc:w\" \"npm run serve\" "
20     },
21     "dependencies": {
22         "@angular/common": "2.4.8",
23         "@angular/compiler": "2.4.8",
24         "@angular/core": "2.4.8",
25         "@angular/forms": "2.4.8",
26         "@angular/http": "2.4.8",
27         "@angular/platform-browser": "2.4.8",
28         "@angular/platform-browser-dynamic": "2.4.8",
29         "@angular/router": "3.4.8",
30         "@angular/upgrade": "2.0.0-rc.6",
31         "@types/jasmine": "2.5.40",
32         "core-js": "2.4.1",
```

¹⁴²<http://bower.io/>

```
33      "es6-shim": "0.35.0",
34      "reflect-metadata": "0.1.3",
35      "rxjs": "5.0.1",
36      "systemjs": "0.19.6",
37      "ts-helpers": "1.1.1",
38      "tslint": "3.7.0-dev.2",
39      "zone.js": "0.7.2"
40  },
41  "devDependencies": {
42    "@types/jasmine": "2.2.30",
43    "@types/node": "6.0.42",
44    "concurrently": "1.0.0",
45    "jasmine-spec-reporter": "2.5.0",
46    "karma": "0.12.22",
47    "karma-chrome-launcher": "0.1.4",
48    "karma-jasmine": "0.1.5",
49    "live-server": "0.9.0",
50    "protractor": "4.0.14",
51    "ts-node": "1.2.1",
52    "typescript": "2.0.2",
53    "@angular/compiler-cli": "2.4.8"
54  }
55 }
```



If you're unfamiliar with what one of these packages does, it's a good idea to find out. `rxjs`, for example, is the library that provides our observables. `systemjs` provides the module loader that we're going to use in this chapter.

Once you've added the Angular 2 dependencies, run the command `npm install` to install them.

Compiling our code

You'll notice that in the package.json "scripts" key we have another key that specifies "tsc". This means we can run the command `npm run tsc` and it will call out to the TypeScript compiler and compile our code.

We're going to be using TypeScript in this example alongside our Javascript Angular 1 code.

To do this, we're going to put all of our TypeScript code in the folder `ts/` and our Javascript code in the folder `js/`.

We configure the TypeScript compiler by using the `tsconfig.json` file. The important thing to know right now about that file is that in the `filesGlob` key we're specifying a glob of: `./ts/**/*.{ts,js}`

which means “when we run the TypeScript compiler, we want to compile all files ending in `.ts` in the `ts` directory”.

In this project **our browser will only load Javascript**. We’re going to use the TypeScript compiler (`tsc`) to compile our code to Javascript and then we will load our `ng1` and `ng2` *JavaScript* in our browser.

Loading `index.html` dependencies

Now that we have our dependencies and our compiler setup, we need to load these Javascript files into our browser. We do that by adding `script` tags:

`code/conversion/ng1/hybrid/index.html`

```

23  <div id="content">
24    <div ui-view='''></div>
25  </div>
26
27  <!-- Libraries -->
28  <script src="node_modules/core-js/client/shim.min.js"></script>
29  <script src="node_modules/zone.js/dist/zone.js"></script>
30  <script src="node_modules/reflect-metadata/Reflect.js"></script>
31  <script src="node_modules/systemjs/dist/system.src.js"></script>
32
33  <script src="js/vendor/angular.js"></script>
34  <script src="js/vendor/angular-ui-router.js"></script>
```

The files we loaded from `node_modules/` are Angular 2 and its dependencies. Similarly, the files we loaded from `js/vendor/` are Angular 1 and its dependencies.

But you’ll notice here we didn’t load any of *our* code in these tags. To load our code we’re going to use `System.js`.

Configuring System.js

We’re going to use `System.js` as the module loader for this example.



We could use `Webpack` (as we do in other examples in this book) or a variety of other loaders (`requirejs` etc.). However `System.js` is a wonderful and flexible loader that is often used with Angular 2. This chapter will provide a nice example of how you can use Angular 2 with `System.js`.

To configure `System.js` we do the following in a `<script>` tag in our `index.html`:

```

1 <script src="resources/systemjs.config.js"></script>
2 System.import('ts/app.js')
3 .then(null, console.error.bind(console));

```

`System.import('ts/app.js')` says that the entry point of our app will be the file `ts/app.js`. When we write hybrid ng2 apps **the Angular 2 code becomes the entry point**. This makes sense because it's Angular 2 that's providing the backwards compatibility with Angular 1. We'll talk more about how to bootstrap the app in a minute.

Another thing to notice here is that we're loading a `.js` file from the `ts/` directory. Why? Because our TypeScript compiler will have compiled this file down to Javascript by the time this page loads.

We have configured `System.js` in `resources/systemjs.config.js`. That file contains a mostly-standard configuration, but since we have to be able to load our ng1 app in our ng2 code we've added a special key `interestAppNg1` that points to our ng1 app. This option lets us do the following in our TypeScript code:

```
1 import 'interestAppNg1'; // "bare import" for side-effects
```

The module loader will see the string '`interestAppNg1`' and load our Angular 1 app at `./js/app.js`.

The `packages` key specifies that files in the `ts` "packages" will have the extension `.js` and use the `System.js` register module format.



There are a bunch of module formats your TypeScript compiler can output. The `System.js` format needs to match the module format you're compiling to. So in this case, the `register` module format will work with our TypeScript because we specified `compilerOptions.module` as "`system`" in our `tsconfig.json`



Configuring `System.js` is fairly advanced and there are a lot of potential options here.

This isn't a book on module loaders and, in-fact, it would probably take a whole book to explore in-depth how to configure `System.js` and other Javascript module loaders.

For now, we're not going to talk much more about module loading, but you can read up more on `System.js` [here¹⁴³](#)



Would you like to read a book on Javascript module loaders? We're considering writing one. If you'd like to be notified when it's ready, put in your email [here¹⁴⁴](#)

¹⁴³<https://github.com/systemjs/systemjs/blob/master/docs/config-api.md>

¹⁴⁴<http://eepurl.com/bMOaEX>

Bootstrapping our Hybrid App

Now that we have our project structure in place, let's bootstrap the app.

If you recall, with Angular 1 you can bootstrap the app in 1 of two ways:

1. You can use the `ng-app` directive, such as `ng-app='interestApp'`, in your HTML or
2. You can use `angular.bootstrap` in Javascript

In hybrid apps we use a **new bootstrap** method that comes from an `UpgradeAdapter`.

Since we'll be bootstrapping the app in code, **make sure you remove the `ng-app` from your `index.html`**.

Here's what a minimal bootstrapping of our code would look like:

```
1 // code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts
2 import {
3   NgModule,
4   forwardRef
5 } from '@angular/core';
6 import { CommonModule } from '@angular/common';
7 import { BrowserModule } from '@angular/platform-browser';
8
9 import { UpgradeAdapter } from '@angular/upgrade';
10 declare var angular: any;
11 import 'interestAppNg1'; // "bare import" for side-effects
12
13 /*
14  * Create our upgradeAdapter
15 */
16 const upgradeAdapter: UpgradeAdapter = new UpgradeAdapter(
17   forwardRef(() => AppModule)); // <-- notice forward reference
18
19 // ...
20 // upgrade and downgrade components in here
21 // ...
22
23 /*
24  * Create our app's entry NgModule
25 */
26 @NgModule({
27   declarations: [ MyNg2Component, ... ],
28   imports: [
```

```
29     CommonModule,  
30     BrowserModule  
31   ],  
32   providers: [ MyNg2Services, ... ]  
33 })  
34 class AppModule { }  
35  
36 /*  
37 * Bootstrap the App  
38 */  
39 upgradeAdapter.bootstrap(document.body, ['interestApp']);
```

We start by importing the `UpgradeAdapter` and then we create an instance of it: `upgradeAdapter`.

However, the constructor of `UpgradeAdapter` requires an `NgModule` that we'll be using for our Angular 2 up - but we haven't defined it yet! To get around this we use the `forwardRef` function which allows us to take a 'forward reference' to our `NgModule` which we declare below.

When we define our `NgModule` `My AppModule` (or specifically in this app it will be `Interest AppModule`), we define it like we would any other Angular 2 `NgModule`: we put in our declarations, imports, providers, etc.

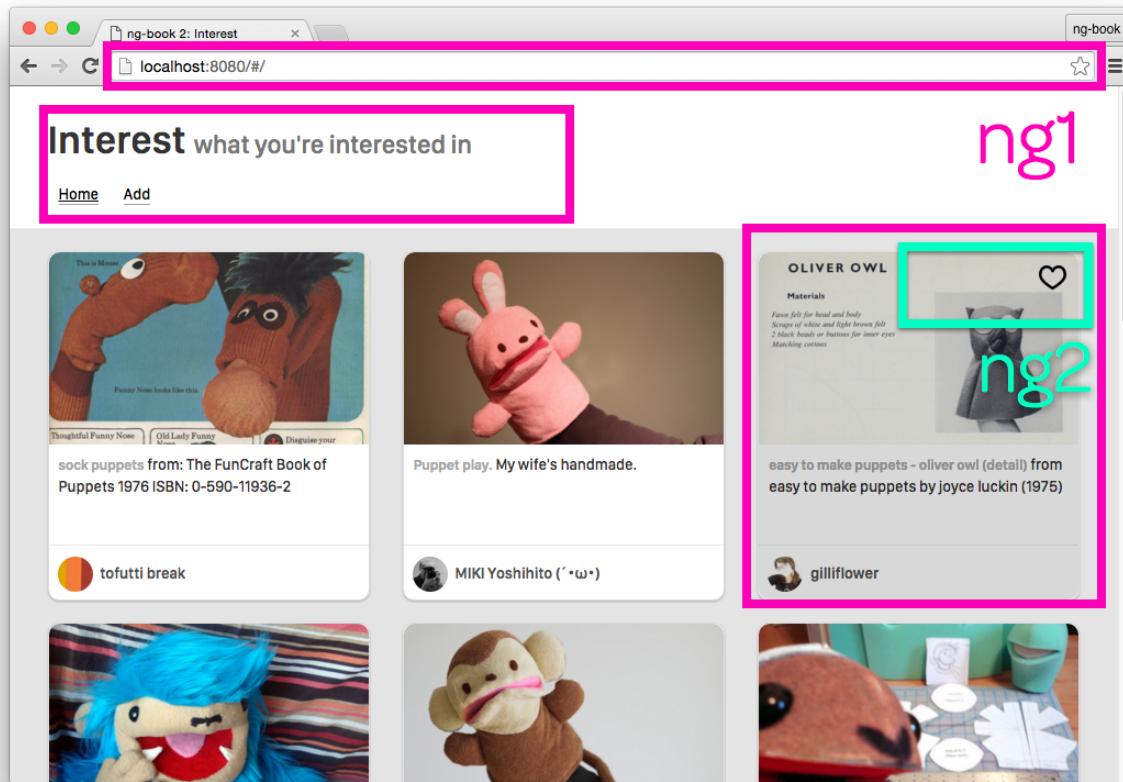
Lastly, we tell the `upgradeAdapter` to bootstrap our app on the element `document.body` and we specify the module name of our **angular 1 app**.

This will bootstrap our Angular 1 app within our Angular 2 app! Now we can start replacing pieces with Angular 2.

What We'll Upgrade

Let's discuss what we're going to port to ng2 in this example and what will stay in ng1.

The Homepage



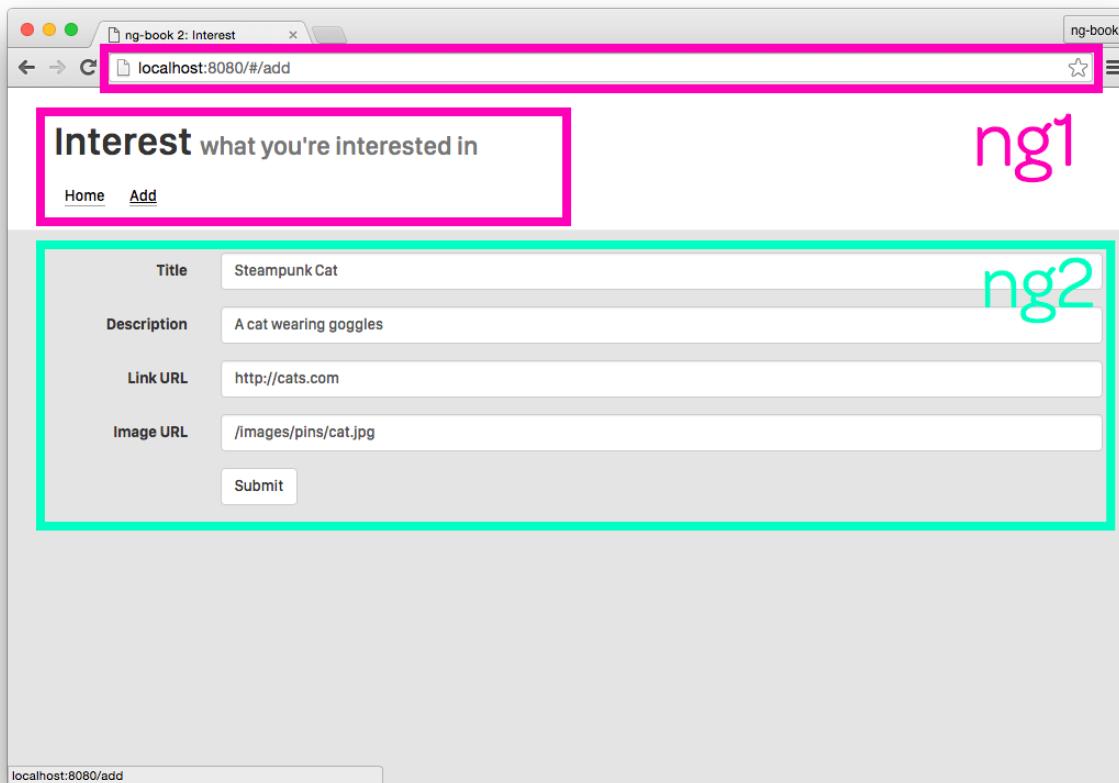
Homepage ng1 and ng2 Components

The first thing to notice is that we’re going to continue to manage routing with ng1. Of course, Angular 2 has its own routing, which you can read about in [our routing chapter](#). But if you’re building a hybrid app, you probably have lots of routes configured with Angular 1 and so in this example we’ll continue to use `ui-router` for the routing.

On the homepage, we’re going to nest a ng2 component within an ng1 directive. In this case, we’re going to convert the “pin controls” to a ng2 component. That is, our ng1 `pin` directive, will call out to the ng2 `pin-controls` component and `pin-controls` will render the fav heart.

It’s a small example that shows a powerful idea: how to seamlessly exchange data between ng versions.

The About Page



About Page ng1 and ng2 Components

We're going to use ng1 for the router and header on the about page as well. However on the about page, we're going to replace the whole form with a ng2 component: AddPinComponent.

If you recall, the form will add a new pin to the PinsService, and so in this example we're going to need to somehow make the (ng1) PinsService accessible to the (ng2) AddPinComponent.

Also, remember that when a new pin is added, the app should be redirected to the homepage. However, to change routes we need to use the ui-router \$state service (ng1) in the AddPinComponent (ng2). So we also need to make sure the \$state service can be used in AddPinComponent as well.

Services

So far we've talked about two ng1 services that will be *upgraded* to ng2:

- PinsService and
- \$state

We also want to explore “downgrading” a ng2 service to be used by ng1. For this, later on in the chapter, we’ll create an `AnalyticsService` in TypeScript/ng2 that we share with ng1.

Taking Inventory

So to recap we’re going to “cross-expose” the following:

- Downgrade the `PinControlsComponent` to ng1 (for the fav buttons)
- Downgrade the `AddPinComponent` to ng1 (for the add pin page)
- Downgrade the `AnalyticsService` to ng1 (for recording events)
- Upgrade the `PinsService` to ng2 (for adding new pins)
- Upgrade the `$state` service to ng2 (for controlling routes)

A Minor Detour: Typing Files

One of the great things about TypeScript is the compile-time typing. However, if you’re building a hybrid app, I suspect that you’ve got a lot of untyped Javascript code that you’re going to be integrating into this project.

When you try to use your Javascript code from TypeScript you may get compiler errors because the compiler doesn’t know the structure of your Javascript objects. You could try casting everything to `<any>` but that is ugly and error prone.

The better solution is to, instead, provide your TypeScript compiler with custom *type annotations*. Then the compiler will be able to enforce the types of your Javascript code.

For instance, remember how in our ng1 app we created a pin object in `makeNewPin`?

code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js

```
67  var makeNewPin = function() {
68    return {
69      "title": "Steampunk Cat",
70      "description": "A cat wearing goggles",
71      "user_name": "me",
72      "avatar_src": "images/avatars/me.jpg",
73      "src": "/images/pins/cat.jpg",
74      "url": "http://cats.com",
75      "faved": false,
76      "id": Math.floor(Math.random() * 10000).toString()
77    }
78  }
79
80  ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
```

It would be nice if we could tell the compiler about the structure of these objects and not resort to using `any` everywhere.

Furthermore, we're going to be using the `ui-router $state` service in Angular 2 / TypeScript, and we need to tell the compiler what functions are available there, too.

So while providing TypeScript custom type definitions is a TypeScript (and not an Angular-specific) chore, it's a chore we need to do nonetheless. And it's something that many people haven't done yet because TypeScript is, at time of publishing, relatively new.

So in this section I want to walk through how you deal with custom typings in TypeScript.



If you're already familiar with how to create and use TypeScript type definition files, you can safely skim this section.

Typing Files

In TypeScript we can describe the structure of our code by writing *typing definition files*. Typing definition files generally end in the extension `.d.ts`.

Generally, when you write TypeScript code, you don't need to write a `.d.ts` because your TypeScript code itself contains types. We write `.d.ts` files when we have some external Javascript code that we want to add typing to after the fact.

For instance, in describing our `Pin` object, we could write an `interface` for it like so:

`code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.d.ts`

```
3  export interface Pin {
4      title: string;
5      description: string;
6      user_name: string;
7      avatar_src: string;
8      src: string;
9      url: string;
10     faved: boolean;
11     id: string;
12 }
```

Notice that we're not declaring a class, and we're not creating an instance. Instead, we're defining the shape (types) of an interface.

In order to use `.d.ts` files, you need to tell the TypeScript compiler where they are. The easiest way to do this is by modifying the `tsconfig.json` file. For instance, if we had a file `js/app.d.ts` we could add it like this:

```
1 // tsconfig.json
2 "compilerOptions": { ... },
3 "files": [
4     "ts/app.ts",
5     "js/app.d.ts"
6 ],
7 // more...
```

Look closely at the paths of the files in this case. We're loading our TypeScript `ts/app.ts`. And we're loading `app.d.ts` from `js/`. This is because the `js/app.d.ts` is the typing file for `js/app.js` (the ng1 Javascript file, not the ng2 TypeScript).

We'll write `app.d.ts` in a little bit. First, let's explore a tool that exists to help us with third-party TypeScript definition files: `typings`.

Third-party libraries with `typings`

`typings` is a tool for managing TypeScript type definition files for libraries that may not have them otherwise.

We're going to use `angular-ui-router` with our app, so let's install the `typings` typings for `angular-ui-router`. Here's how to get it setup.

You need to have `typings` installed, which you can do with `npm install -g typings`.

Next we configure a `typings.json` file, which you can create with `typings init` (or use the one provided).

Then we install the package we need by running: `typings install angular-ui-router --save`.

Notice that `typings` created a `typings` directory that contains a file `browser.d.ts`. This `browser.d.ts` is the entry point for the rest of the typings that are **managed by `typings`**. That is, if you write your own typings files, they're not going to be here, but any of the typings files you install via `typings` will be loaded via the `reference` tag in that file.



Don't modify the `typings/browser.d.ts` file directly! `typings` manages this file for you and if you change it your changes may be overwritten.

Now that we have the typings file `typings/browser.d.ts`, how do we use it? We have to tell our compiler about it, and we do that via the `tsconfig.json` file.

```
1 // tsconfig.json
2 "compilerOptions": { ... },
3 "files": [
4     "typings/browser.d.ts",
5     "ts/app.ts",
6     "js/app.d.ts"
7 ],
8 // more...
```

Notice that we added `typings/browser.d.ts` to the `files` array. This tells our compiler that we want to include our typings typings at compile time.



What if we were loading a different library, such as underscore and we needed to load it from `System.js` as well?

The idea is that you have to 1. make the typings available to the compiler at compile time and 2. make the code available at runtime

One way is like this:

1. `typings install underscore` - installs the typings file
2. `npm install underscore` - installs the javascript file in `node_modules`
3. In your `index.html` where you call `System.config`, add a new entry to the `paths` key like: `underscore: './node_modules/underscore/underscore.js'`
4. Then you can import underscore in your TypeScript using: `import * as _ from 'underscore';`
5. Use underscore like so: `let foo = _.map([1,2,3], (x) => x + 1);`



We've already done a `typings install` for you for this application so you don't need to install the dependencies yourself.

In fact, if you do run `typings install` you may find that you get the error:

```
1 node_modules/angular2/typings/angular-protractor/angular-protractor.d.ts(1679,13\
2 ): error TS2403: Subsequent variable declarations must have the same type. Vari\
3 able '$' must be of type 'JQueryStatic', but here has type 'cssSelectorHelper'.
```

This is due to a bug between the `jquery` and the `angular` typings both trying to assign a type to the dollar sign `$`. At time of publishing, the hacky workaround is to open `typings/jquery/jquery.d.ts` and comment out this line:

```
1 // declare var $: JQueryStatic; // - ng-book told me to comment this
```

Of course, this will cause problems if you're trying to use jQuery-specific typings via `$` in TypeScript (but we aren't for this example).

Custom Typing Files

Being able to use third-party typing files is great, but there are going to be situations where typing files don't already exist: especially in the case of our own code.

Generally, when we write custom typing files we co-locate the file alongside its respective Javascript code. So let's create the file `js/app.d.ts`:

`code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.d.ts`

```
1 declare module interestAppNg1 {
2
3   export interface Pin {
4     title: string;
5     description: string;
6     user_name: string;
7     avatar_src: string;
8     src: string;
9     url: string;
10    faved: boolean;
11    id: string;
12  }
13
14  export interface PinsService {
15    pins(): Promise<Pin[]>;
```

```

16     addPin(pin: Pin): Promise<any>;
17 }
18
19 }
20
21 declare module 'interestAppNg1' {
22   export = interestAppNg1;
23 }
```

When we use the `declare` keyword, that is called making an “ambient declaration” and the idea is that we’re defining a variable that didn’t originate from a TypeScript file. In this case, we’re defining two interfaces:

1. Pin
2. PinsService

The `Pin` interface describes the keys and value-types of a pin object.

The `PinsService` interface describes the types of our two methods on our `PinsService`.

- `pins()` returns a `Promise` of an array of `Pins`
- `addPin()` takes a `Pin` as an argument and returns a `Promise`



Learn More about Writing Type Definition Files

If you’d like to learn more about writing `.d.ts` files, checkout these helpful links:

- [TypeScript Handbook: Working with other Javascript Libraries¹⁴⁵](http://www.typescriptlang.org/Handbook#modules-working-with-other-javascript-libraries)
- [TypeScript Handbook: Writing definition files¹⁴⁶](https://github.com/Microsoft/TypeScript-Handbook/blob/master/pages/Writing%20Definition%20Files.md)
- [Quick tip: Typescript declare keyword¹⁴⁷](http://blogs.microsoft.co.il/gilf/2013/07/22/quick-tip-typescript-declare-keyword/)

You might have noticed that we don’t declare the token `interestAppNg1` anywhere in our `ng1` Javascript code. `interestAppNg1` is just an identifier we use on the TypeScript side to specify this javascript code.

Now that we have this file setup, we can import these types like so:

¹⁴⁵<http://www.typescriptlang.org/Handbook#modules-working-with-other-javascript-libraries>

¹⁴⁶<https://github.com/Microsoft/TypeScript-Handbook/blob/master/pages/Writing%20Definition%20Files.md>

¹⁴⁷<http://blogs.microsoft.co.il/gilf/2013/07/22/quick-tip-typescript-declare-keyword/>

```
1 import { Pin, PinsService } from 'interestAppNg1';
```

Writing ng2 PinControlsComponent

Now that we have the typings figured out, let's turn our attention back to the hybrid app.

The first thing we're going to do is write the ng2 PinControlsComponent. This will be an ng2 component nested within an ng1 directive. The PinControlsComponent displays the fav hearts and toggles fav'ing a pin.

Let's start by importing our `Pin` type, along with a few other constants that we'll need:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/PinControlsComponent.ts

```
1 /*
2  * PinControls: a component that holds the controls for a particular pin
3  */
4 import {
5   Component,
6   Input,
7   Output,
8   EventEmitter
9 } from '@angular/core';
10 import { NgIf } from '@angular/common';
11 import { Pin } from 'interestAppNg1';
```

Next, let's write the `@Component` annotation:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/PinControlsComponent.ts

```
13 @Component({
14   selector: 'pin-controls',
15   template: `
16     <div class="controls">
17       <div class="heart">
18         <a (click)="toggleFav()">
19           
20           
21         </a>
22       </div>
23     </div>
24   `,
25 })
```

Notice here that we'll match the element `pin-controls`.

Our template looks very similar to the ng1 version except we're using the ng2 template syntax for `(click)` and `*ngIf`.

Now the component definition class:

`code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/PinControlsComponent.ts`

```

26 export class PinControlsComponent {
27   @Input() pin: Pin;
28   @Output() faved: EventEmitter<Pin> = new EventEmitter<Pin>();
29
30   toggleFav(): void {
31     this.faved.next(this.pin);
32   }
33 }
```

Notice that instead of specifying inputs and outputs in the `@Component` annotation, in this case we're annotating the properties on the class directly with the `@Input` and `@Output` annotations. This is a convenient way to us to provide typings to these properties.

This component will take an input of `pin`, which is the `Pin` object we're controlling.

This component specifies an output of `faved`. This is a little bit different than how we did it in the ng1 app. If you look at `toggleFav` all we're doing is emitting (on the `EventEmitter`) the current pin.

The idea here is that we've already implemented how to change the `faved` state in ng1 and we may not want to re-implement that functionality ng2 (you may want to, it just depends on your team conventions).

Using ng2 `PinControlsComponent`

Now that we have an ng2 `pin-controls` component, we can use it in a template. Here's what our `pin.html` template looks like now:

`code/conversion/hybrid/templates/pin.html`

```

1 <div class="col-sm-6 col-md-4">
2   <div class="thumbnail">
3     <div class="content">
4       
5       <div class="caption">
6         <h3>{{pin.title}}</h3>
7         <p>{{pin.description | truncate:100}}</p>
8     </div>
```

```

9      <div class="attribution">
10         
11         <h4>{{pin.user_name}}</h4>
12     </div>
13 </div>
14 <div class="overlay">
15     <pin-controls [pin]="pin"
16             (faved)="toggleFav($event)"></pin-controls>
17 </div>
18 </div>
19 </div>

```

This template is for an ng1 directive, and we can use ng1 directives such as `ng-src`. However, notice the line where we use our ng2 `pin-controls` component:

```

1 <pin-controls [pin]="pin"
2             (faved)="toggleFav($event)"></pin-controls>

```

What's interesting here is that we're using the ng2 input bracket syntax `[pin]` and the ng2 output parenthesis syntax `(faved)`.

In a hybrid app **when you use ng2 directives in ng1, you still use the ng2 syntax.**

With our input `[pin]` we're passing the `pin` which comes from the scope of the ng1 directive.

With our output `(faved)` we're calling the `toggleFav` function on the scope of the ng1 directive. Notice what we did here: we didn't modify the `pin.faved` state within the ng2 directive (although, we could have). Instead, we asked the ng2 `PinControlsComponent` to simply emit the pin when `toggleFav` is called there. (If this is confusing, take a second look at `toggleFav` of `PinControlsComponent`.)

Again, the reason we do this is because we're showing how you can keep your existing functionality (`scope.toggleFav`) in ng1, but start porting over components to ng2. In this case, the ng1 `pin` directive listens for the `faved` event on the ng2 `PinControlsComponent`.

If you refresh your page now, you'll notice that it doesn't work. That's because there's one more thing we need to do: downgrade `PinControlsComponent` to ng1.

Downgrading ng2 PinControlsComponent to ng1

The final step to using our components across ng2/ng1 borders is to use our `UpgradeAdapter` to downgrade our components (or upgrade, as we'll see in a bit).

We perform this downgrade in our `app.ts` file (where we called `upgradeAdapter.bootstrap`).

First we need to import the necessary angular libraries:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts

```

9 import {
10   NgModule,
11   forwardRef
12 } from '@angular/core';
13 import { CommonModule } from '@angular/common';
14 import {
15   FormsModule,
16 } from '@angular/forms';
17 import { BrowserModule } from "@angular/platform-browser";
18 import { UpgradeAdapter } from '@angular/upgrade';
19 declare var angular: any;
20 import 'interestAppNg1'; // "bare import" for side-effects

```

Then we create a .directive in (almost) the normal ng1 way:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts

```

34 angular.module('interestApp')
35   .directive('pinControls',
36     upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Component(PinControlsComponent))

```

Above, remember that when we import 'interestAppNg1' this will load up our ng1 app, which calls `angular.module('interestApp', [])`. That is, our ng1 app has already registered the `interestApp` module with `angular`.

Now we want to look up that module by calling `angular.module('interestApp')` and then add directives to it, just like we do in ng1 normally.



`angular.module` getter and setter syntax

If you recall, when we pass an array as the second argument to `angular.module`, we are *creating* a module. That is, `angular.module('foo', [])` will *create* the module `foo`. Informally, we call this the “setter” syntax.

Similarly, if we omit the array we are *getting* a module (that is assumed to already exist). That is, `angular.module('foo')` will *get* the module `foo`. We call this the “getter” syntax.



In this example, if you forget this distinction and call `angular.module('interestApp', [])` in `app.ts` (ng2) then you will accidentally overwrite your existing `interestApp` module and your app won’t work. Careful!

We're calling `.directive` and creating a directive called '`pinControls`'. This is standard ng1 practice. For the second argument, the directive definition object (DDO), we don't create the DDO manually. Instead, we call `upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Component`.

`downgradeNg2Component` will convert our `PinControlsComponent` into an ng1-compatible directive. Pretty neat.

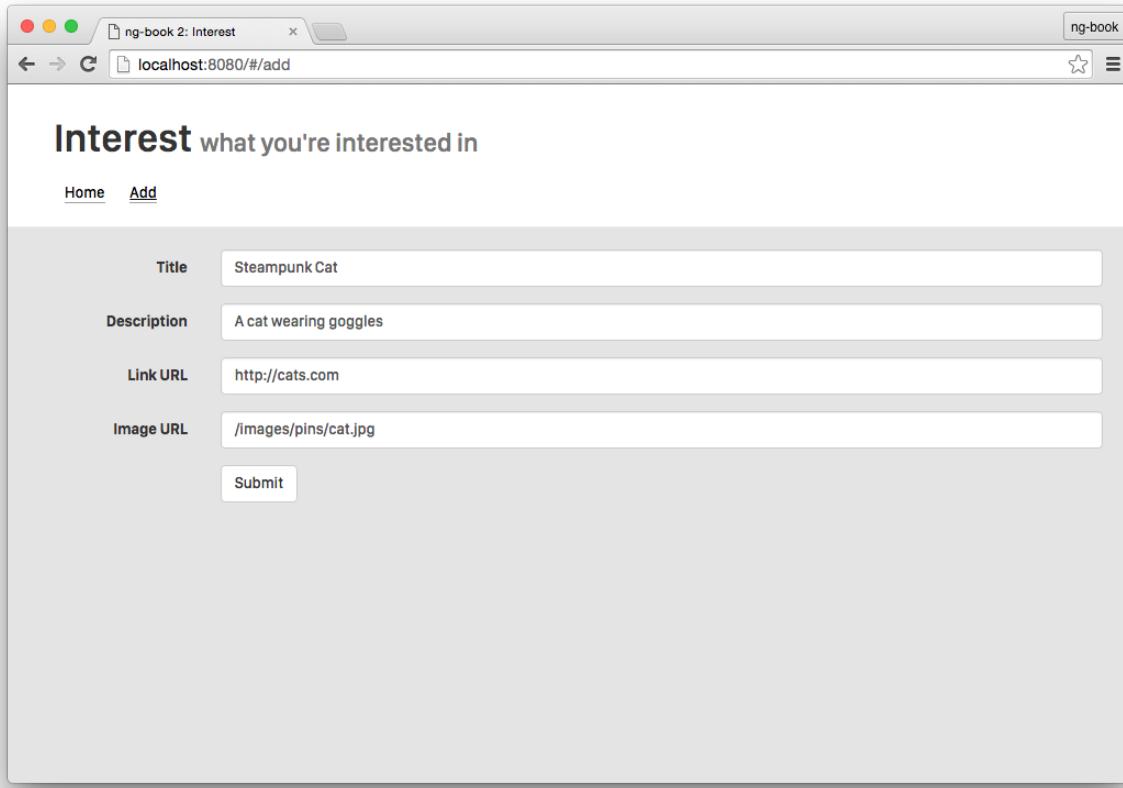
Now if you try refreshing, you'll notice that our faving works just like before, only now we're using ng2 embedded in ng1!



Faving works like a charm

Adding Pins with ng2

The next thing we want to do is upgrade the add pins page with an ng2 component.



Adding a New Pin Form

If you recall, this page does three things:

1. Present a form to the user for describing the pin
2. Use the `PinsService` to add the new pin to the list of pins
3. Redirect the user to the homepage

Let's think through how we're going to do these things from ng2.

Angular 2 provides a robust forms library. So there's no complication here. We're going to write a straight ng2 form.

However the `PinsService` comes from ng1. Often we have many existing services in ng1 and we don't have time to upgrade them all. So for this example, we're going to keep `PinsService` as an ng1 object, and *inject it into ng2*.

Similarly, we're using `ui-router` in ng1 for our routing. To change pages in `ui-router` we have to use the `$state` service, which is an ng1 service.

So what we're going to do is **upgrade** the `PinsService` and the `$state` service from ng1 to ng2. And this couldn't be any easier.

Upgrading ng1 PinsService and \$state to ng2

To upgrade ng1 services we call `upgradeAdapter.upgradeNg1Provider`:

`code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts`

```

44  /*
45   * Expose our ng1 content to ng2
46   */
47 upgradeAdapter.upgradeNg1Provider('PinsService');
48 upgradeAdapter.upgradeNg1Provider('$state');
```

And that's it. Now we can `@Inject` our ng1 services into ng2 components like so:

```

1 class AddPinComponent {
2     constructor(@Inject('PinsService') public pinsService: PinsService,
3                 @Inject('$state') public uiState: IStateService) {
4     }
5     // ...
6     // now you can use this.pinsService
7     // or this.uiState
8     // ...
9 }
```

In this constructor, there's a few things to look at:

The `@Inject` annotation, says that we want the next variable to be assigned the value of what the injection will resolve to. In the first case, that would be our ng1 `PinsService`.

In TypeScript, in a constructor when you use the `public` keyword, it is a shorthand for assigning that variable to `this`. That is, here when we say `public pinsService` what we're saying is, 1. declare a property `pinsService` on instances of this class and 2. assign the constructor argument `pinsService` to `this.pinsService`.

The result is that we can access `this.pinsService` throughout our class.

Lastly we define the type of both services we're injecting: `PinsService` and `IStateService`.

`PinsService` comes from the `app.d.ts` we defined previously:

code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.d.ts

```
14  export interface PinsService {
15    pins(): Promise<Pin[]>;
16    addPin(pin: Pin): Promise<any>;
17 }
```

And `IStateService` comes from the typings for `ui-router`, which we installed with `typings`.

By telling TypeScript the types of these services we can enjoy type-checking as we write our code.

Let's write the rest of our `AddPinComponent`.

Writing ng2 `AddPinComponent`

We start by importing the types we need:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts

```
1 /*
2  * AddPinComponent: a component that controls the "add pin" page
3  */
4 import {
5   Component,
6   Inject
7 } from '@angular/core';
8 import { Pin, PinsService } from 'interestAppNg1';
9 import { IStateService } from 'angular-ui-router';
```

Again, notice that we're importing our custom types `Pin` and `PinsService`. And we're also importing `IStateService` from `angular-ui-router`.

`AddPinComponent` `@Component`

Our `@Component` annotation is straightforward:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts

```
11 @Component({
12   selector: 'add-pin',
13   templateUrl: '/templates/add-ng2.html'
14 })
```

AddPinComponent template

We're loading our template using a `templateUrl`. In that template, we setup our form much like the ng1 form, only we're using ng2 form directives.



We're not going to describe `ngModel` / `ngSubmit` deeply here. If you'd like to know more about how Angular 2 forms work, checkout [the forms chapter](#), where we describe forms in depth.

code/conversion/hybrid/templates/add-ng2.html

```
1 <div class="container">
2   <div class="row">
3
4     <form (ngSubmit)="onSubmit()"
5       class="form-horizontal">
6
7       <div class="form-group">
8         <label for="title"
9           class="col-sm-2 control-label">Title</label>
10        <div class="col-sm-10">
11          <input type="text"
12            class="form-control"
13            id="title"
14            name="title"
15            placeholder="Title"
16            [(ngModel)]="newPin.title">
17        </div>
```

We're using two directives here: `ngSubmit` and `ngModel`.

We use `(ngSubmit)` on the form to call the `onSubmit` function when the form is submitted. (We'll define `onSubmit` on the `AddPinComponent` controller below.)

We use `[(ngModel)]` to bind the value of the `title` input tag to the value of `newPin.title` on the controller.

Here's the full listing of the template:

[code/conversion/hybrid/templates/add-ng2.html](#)

```
1 <div class="container">
2   <div class="row">
3
4     <form (ngSubmit)="onSubmit()" 
5       class="form-horizontal">
6
7       <div class="form-group">
8         <label for="title"
9           class="col-sm-2 control-label">Title</label>
10        <div class="col-sm-10">
11          <input type="text"
12            class="form-control"
13            id="title"
14            name="title"
15            placeholder="Title"
16            [(ngModel)]="newPin.title">
17        </div>
18      </div>
19
20      <div class="form-group">
21        <label for="description"
22          class="col-sm-2 control-label">Description</label>
23        <div class="col-sm-10">
24          <input type="text"
25            class="form-control"
26            id="description"
27            name="description"
28            placeholder="Description"
29            [(ngModel)]="newPin.description">
30        </div>
31      </div>
32
33      <div class="form-group">
34        <label for="url"
35          class="col-sm-2 control-label">Link URL</label>
36        <div class="col-sm-10">
37          <input type="text"
38            class="form-control"
39            id="url"
40            name="url"
41            placeholder="Link URL"
```

```

42          [(ngModel)]="newPin.url">
43      </div>
44  </div>
45
46  <div class="form-group">
47      <label for="url"
48          class="col-sm-2 control-label">Image URL</label>
49      <div class="col-sm-10">
50          <input type="text"
51              class="form-control"
52              id="url"
53              name="url"
54              placeholder="Image URL"
55              [(ngModel)]="newPin.src">
56      </div>
57  </div>
58
59  <div class="form-group">
60      <div class="col-sm-offset-2 col-sm-10">
61          <button type="submit"
62              class="btn btn-default"
63              >Submit</button>
64      </div>
65  </div>
66  <div *ngIf="saving">
67      Saving...
68  </div>
69 </form>

```

AddPinComponent Controller

Now we can define AddPinComponent. We start by setting up two instance variables:

[code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts](#)

```

15 export class AddPinComponent {
16     saving: boolean = false;
17     newPin: Pin;

```

We use `saving` to indicate to the user that the save is in progress and we use `newPin` to store the Pin we're working with.

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts

```

19   constructor(@Inject('PinsService') private pinsService: PinsService,
20               @Inject('$state') private uiState: IStateService) {
21     this.newPin = this.makeNewPin();
22   }

```

In our constructor we inject the services, as we discussed above. We also set `this.newPin` to the value of `makeNewPin`, which we'll define now:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts

```

24   makeNewPin(): Pin {
25     return {
26       title: 'Steampunk Cat',
27       description: 'A cat wearing goggles',
28       user_name: 'me',
29       avatar_src: 'images/avatars/me.jpg',
30       src: '/images/pins/cat.jpg',
31       url: 'http://cats.com',
32       faved: false,
33       id: Math.floor(Math.random() * 10000).toString()
34     };
35   }

```

This looks a lot like how we defined it in ng1, only now we have the benefit of it being typed.

When the form is submitted, we call `onSubmit`. Let's define that:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/components/AddPinComponent.ts

```

37   onSubmit(): void {
38     this.saving = true;
39     console.log('submitted', this.newPin);
40     setTimeout(() => {
41       this.pinsService.addPin(this.newPin).then(() => {
42         this.newPin = this.makeNewPin();
43         this.saving = false;
44         this.uiState.go('home');
45       });
46     }, 2000);
47   }

```

Again, we're using a timeout to *simulate* the effect of what would happen if we had to call out to a server to save this pin. Here, we're using `setTimeout`. Compare that to how we defined this function in ng1:

[code/conversion/ng1/js/app.js](#)

```

82   ctrl.submitPin = function() {
83     ctrl.saving = true;
84     $timeout(function()) {
85       PinsService.addPin(ctrl.newPin).then(function()) {
86         ctrl.newPin = makeNewPin();
87         ctrl.saving = false;
88         $state.go('home');
89       });
90     }, 2000);
91   }

```

Notice that in ng1 we had to use the `$timeout` service. Why is that? Because ng1 is based around the digest loop. If you use `setTimeout` in ng1, then when the callback function is called, it's "outside" of angular and so your changes aren't propagated unless something kicks off a digest loop (e.g. using `$scope.apply`).

However in ng2, we can use `setTimeout` directly because change detection in ng2 uses Zones and is therefore, more or less automatic. We don't need to worry about the digest loop in the same way, which is really nice.

In `onSubmit` we're calling out to the `PinsService` by:

```

1 this.pinsService.addPin(this.newPin).then(() => {
2 // ...

```

Again, the `PinsService` is accessible via `this.pinsService` because of how we defined the constructor. The compiler doesn't complain because we said that `addPin` takes a `Pin` as the first argument in our `app.d.ts`:

[code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.d.ts](#)

```

14 export interface PinsService {
15   pins(): Promise<Pin[]>;
16   addPin(pin: Pin): Promise<any>;
17 }

```

And we defined `this.newPin` to be a `Pin`.

After `addPin` resolves, we reset the pin using `makeNewPin` and set `this.saving = false`.

To go back to the homepage, we use the `ui-router` `$state` service, which we stored as `this.uiState`. So we can change states by calling `this.uiState.go('home')`.

Using AddPinComponent

Now let's use the AddPinComponent.

Downgrade ng2 AddPinComponent

To use AddPinComponent we need to downgrade it:

`code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts`

```
34 angular.module('interestApp')
35   .directive('pinControls',
36     upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Component(PinControlsComponent))
37   .directive('addPin',
38     upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Component(AddPinComponent));
```

This will create the `addPin` directive in ng1, which will match the tag `<add-pin>`.

Routing to add-pin

In order to use our new AddPinComponent page, we need to place it somewhere within our ng1 app. What we're going to do is take the `add` state in our router and just set the `<add-pin>` directive to be the template:

`code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.js`

```
39   .state('add', {
40     template: "<add-pin></add-pin>",
41     url: '/add',
42     resolve: {
43       'pins': function(PinsService) {
44         return PinsService.pins();
45       }
46     }
47   })
```

Exposing an ng2 service to ng1

So far we've downgraded ng2 components to be used in ng2, and upgraded ng1 services to be used in ng2. But as our application start converting over to ng2, we'll probably start writing services in Typescript/ng2 that we'll want to expose to our ng1 code.

Let's create a simple service in ng2: an "analytics" service that will record events.

The idea is that we have an `AnalyticsService` in our app that we use to `recordEvents`. In reality, we're just going to `console.log` the event and store it in an array. But it gives us a chance to focus on what's important: describing how we share a ng2 service with ng1.

Writing the AnalyticsService

Let's take a look at the AnalyticsService implementation:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/services/AnalyticsService.ts

```

1 import { Injectable } from '@angular/core';
2
3 /**
4  * Analytics Service records metrics about what the user is doing
5 */
6 @Injectable()
7 export class AnalyticsService {
8   events: string[] = [];
9
10  public recordEvent(event: string): void {
11    console.log(`Event: ${event}`);
12    this.events.push(event);
13  }
14 }
15
16 export var analyticsServiceInjectables: Array<any> = [
17   { provide: AnalyticsService, useClass: AnalyticsService }
18 ];

```

There are two things to note here: 1. recordEvent and 2. being Injectable

recordEvent is straightforward: we take an event: string, log it, and store it in events. In your application you would probably send the event to an external service like Google Analytics or Mixpanel.

To make this service injectable, we do two things: 1. Annotate the class with @Injectable and 2. bind the token AnalyticsService to this class.

Now Angular will manage a singleton of this service and we will be able to inject it where we need it.

Downgrade ng2 AnalyticsService to ng1

Before we can use the AnalyticsService in ng1, we need to downgrade it.

The process of downgrading an ng2 service to ng1 is similar to the process of downgrading a directive, but there is one extra step: we need to make sure AnalyticsService is in the list of providers for our NgModule:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts

```

50  @NgModule({
51    declarations: [
52      PinControlsComponent,
53      AddPinComponent
54    ],
55    imports: [
56      CommonModule,
57      BrowserModule,
58      FormsModule
59    ],
60    providers: [
61      AnalyticsService,
62    ]
63  })
64  class Interest AppModule { }

```

Then we can use `downgradeNg2Provider`:

code/conversion/hybrid/ts/app.ts

```

40 angular.module('interestApp')
41   .factory('AnalyticsService',
42     upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Provider(AnalyticsService));

```

We call `angular.module('interestApp')` to get our ng1 module and then call `.factory` like we would in ng1. To downgrade the service, we call

`upgradeAdapter.downgradeNg2Provider(AnalyticsService)`, which wraps our `AnalyticsService` in a function that adapts it to an ng1 factory.

Using `AnalyticsService` in ng1

Now we can inject our ng2 `AnalyticsService` into ng1. Let's say we want to record whenever the `HomeController` is visited. We could record this event like so:

code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.js

```
60 .controller('HomeController', function(pins, AnalyticsService) {
61   AnalyticsService.recordEvent('HomeControllerVisited');
62   this.pins = pins;
63 })
```

Here we inject `AnalyticsService` as if it was a normal ng1 service we call `recordEvent`. Fantastic!

We can use this service anywhere we would use injection in ng1. For instance, we can also inject the `AnalyticsService` into our ng1 `pin` directive:

code/conversion/hybrid/js/app.js

```
64 .directive('pin', function(AnalyticsService) {
65   return {
66     restrict: 'E',
67     templateUrl: '/templates/pin.html',
68     scope: {
69       'pin': "=item"
70     },
71     link: function(scope, elem, attrs) {
72       scope.toggleFav = function() {
73         AnalyticsService.recordEvent('PinFaved');
74         scope.pin.faved = !scope.pin.faved;
75       }
76     }
77   }
78 })
```

Summary

Now you have all the tools you need to start upgrading your ng1 app to a hybrid ng1/ng2 app. The interoperability between ng1 and ng2 works very well and we owe a lot to the Angular team for making this so easy.

Being able to exchange directives and services between ng1 and ng2 make it super easy to start upgrading your apps. We can't always upgrade our apps to ng2 overnight, but the `UpgradeAdapter` lets us start using ng2 - without having to throw our old code away.

References

If you're looking to learn more about hybrid Angular apps, here are a few resources:

- The Official Angular Upgrade Guide¹⁴⁸
- The Angular2 Upgrade Spec Test¹⁴⁹
- The Angular2 Source for DowngradeNg2ComponentAdapter¹⁵⁰

¹⁴⁸<https://angular.io/docs/ts/latest/guide/upgrade.html>

¹⁴⁹https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/master/modules/angular2/test/upgrade/upgrade_spec.ts

¹⁵⁰https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/master/modules/angular2/src/upgrade/downgrade_ng2_adapter.ts

NativeScript: Mobile Applications for the Angular Developer

In this chapter, we're going to walk through how to build your first NativeScript app. NativeScript is a huge topic that could warrant it's own book.

Here we're going to explain NativeScript for the Angular Developer. By the end of this chapter you'll understand the differences between NativeScript and a 'regular' Angular web-app, and have the foundation to be creating your own native apps using NativeScript and Angular.

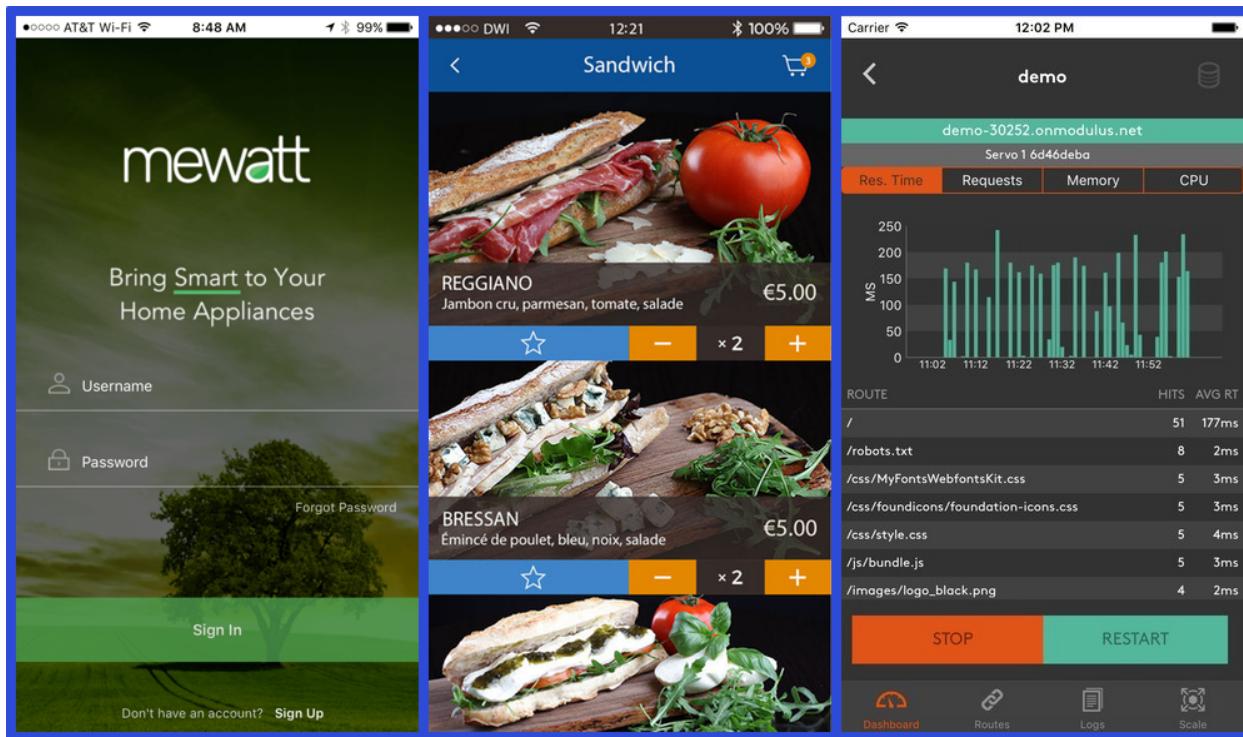
Being that Angular was designed to be unspecific to any particular deployment platform, you can take much of your web application code and reuse it beyond just the web.

It is the norm for businesses to have not only a fully functional web application, but a mobile application to compliment it as well. A few years back, companies would need to spend countless dollars to fund a team of iOS and Android developers to accomplish the same task of creating a mobile application.

With Angular, mobile development becomes not only cheaper, but more maintainable and efficient.

What is NativeScript?

NativeScript is a cross platform mobile development framework that leverages technologies you already know: JavaScript, CSS, and of course, Angular.



NativeScript Showcase

With NativeScript, developers can build native iOS and Android applications using a single shared code base.

Where NativeScript Differs from Other Popular Frameworks

NativeScript isn't the first or only framework to make it easy to develop Android and iOS applications using a single code base. Mobile development frameworks can be separated into two: *hybrid* mobile and *native* mobile.

Hybrid Mobile Applications

Hybrid mobile frameworks are those such as [Ionic Framework](#)¹⁵¹, [PhoneGap](#)¹⁵², [Apache Cordova](#)¹⁵³, and [Onsen UI](#)¹⁵⁴. These are frameworks that allow you to develop mobile applications using web technologies, but render these mobile applications in what's called a *web view*. A web view is essentially a web browser and it allows you to use HTML with full DOM support for all your component rendering.

The conveniences of a web view is not without limitation. The number one flaw in using a web view to render mobile applications comes down to performance. Not all mobile devices are treated

¹⁵¹<https://ionicframework.com/>

¹⁵²<http://phonegap.com/>

¹⁵³<https://cordova.apache.org/>

¹⁵⁴<https://onsen.io/>

as equal even if they have the same version of Android or iOS. There are thousands of different mobile handsets in existence all with varying hardware and processing power, not to mention all the custom flavors of Android. Because of this diversity, the consistency in web view performance is very poor, leaving some people with an amazing user experience and some with hardly useable applications.

Native Mobile Applications

Native mobile applications built with frameworks such as [NativeScript¹⁵⁵](#), [React Native¹⁵⁶](#), and [Xamarin¹⁵⁷](#) do not render in a web view. These are applications that use the native UI components that Google and Apple made available to developers and as a result don't suffer from performance instability.

So how does one choose between the available native mobile frameworks? The simple answer is to choose between each of their underlying development technologies. React Native uses ReactJS, a common JavaScript framework for web developers, and Xamarin uses C#, a common development language for .NET developers. NativeScript of course uses Angular.

As an Angular developer, it makes sense to go the NativeScript route because we'll get fantastic native performance while keeping our the familiar Angular development experience.

What are the System and Development Requirements for NativeScript?

NativeScript doesn't have any system requirements beyond what you'd need when developing Objective-C based iOS applications or Java based Android applications.

For example, let's say you wanted to build and deploy an Android application developed with NativeScript. You would need at least the following:

- Windows, Linux, or Mac
- Java Development Kit (JDK) 8+
- 4GB of hard drive space
- 4GB of RAM

The above system and software requirements are what's necessary for installing and using the Android SDK.

If you wanted to build and deploy an iOS application with NativeScript, the requirements are a bit different:

¹⁵⁵<https://www.nativescript.org/>

¹⁵⁶<https://facebook.github.io/react-native/>

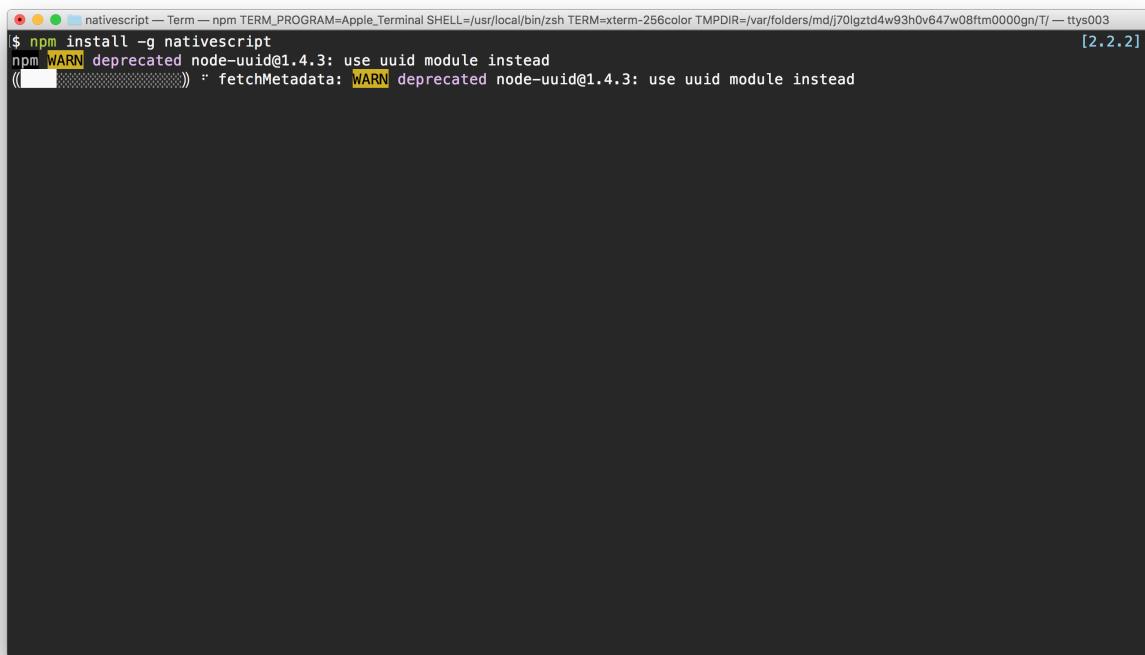
¹⁵⁷<https://www.xamarin.com/>

- Mac
- Xcode 7+
- 5GB of hard drive space
- 4GB of RAM

Notice the main difference here is that a Mac is required. While you can develop Android and iOS applications with NativeScript, you cannot actually build and deploy iOS applications unless you're using a Mac. This is a limitation that exists because of Apple.

From a development perspective, NativeScript uses the Node Package Manager (NPM) a tool that is part of Node.js and something you probably already have installed as an Angular developer. With NPM, the NativeScript CLI can be installed using the following command:

```
1 npm install -g nativescript
```



```
$ npm install -g nativescript
npm WARN deprecated node-uuid@1.4.3: use uuid module instead
(( [REDACTED] )) " fetchMetadata: [WARN] deprecated node-uuid@1.4.3: use uuid module instead
```

Installing NativeScript

A list of available commands can be found by running `tns --help` or `tns help` if you wish to view them in a web browser rather than the Command Prompt or Terminal.

For more information on installing NativeScript for Mac, Windows, and Linux, visit the [NativeScript installation documentation¹⁵⁸](#).

¹⁵⁸<https://docs.nativescript.org/start/quick-setup.html>



There are a significant number of tools to be installed to do native app development. Once everything is installed properly, NativeScript development is relatively painless, but make sure you visit the URL above if you run into any trouble getting the NativeScript build tools installed.

With the NativeScript CLI, native mobile applications can be developed with Angular.

Creating your First Mobile Application with NativeScript and Angular

To be successful in developing NativeScript applications with Angular, you should already have the NativeScript CLI tool installed and either Xcode or the Android SDK installed, or both.

The goal here is to become familiar with the mobile application creation process and some of the UX and UI differences between an Angular web application and an Angular NativeScript application.

Using the Command Prompt (Windows) or Terminal (Mac and Linux), execute the following:

```
1 tns create NgProject --ng
```

The above command will create a project directory, NgProject, wherever your command line's active directory is located. The `--ng` flag indicates that we want to create an Angular with TypeScript project. It is necessary to use the `--ng` flag because NativeScript doesn't require Angular to build mobile applications. It is an option, one that we're going to take full advantage of.

Adding Build Platforms for Cross Platform Deployment

While a project has been created and can be actively developed, there are no build platforms such as Android or iOS enabled for building and deployment.

To build for a specific platform, it must first be added. Using the NativeScript CLI, execute the following:

```
1 tns platform add [platform]
```

Just swap out `[platform]` with either `android` or `ios` depending on which you wish to add, remembering that iOS requires a Mac with Xcode installed.

Building and Testing for Android and iOS

When the application is ready for testing or deployment to the app stores, we can make use of a few NativeScript CLI commands. Before deployment, you'll probably want to test the application on your device or emulator. Using the command line, execute the following to emulate the application:

```
1 tns emulate [platform]
```

Swapping [platform] with android or ios will launch the application in the specified emulator. To test the application on a device, swap out `emulate` with the word `run` while your device is connected to your development machine.

```
1 tns run [platform]
```

The emulation process can often take a bit of time because a lot of recompilation happens in the process. To make development more efficient, the NativeScript CLI offers live-reload functionality called `livesync`. We can utilize this feature by executing the following command in our terminal:

```
1 tns livesync [platform] --emulator --watch
```

After swapping [platform] with either android or ios, changes made to TypeScript, CSS, or HTML files will be automatically deployed to the Android or iOS simulator, much faster than if you were to strictly emulate the application.

When it comes to deploying our app to the app store, we can use the following command:

```
1 tns build [platform]
```

After replacing [platform] with the appropriate platform, the binaries and build packages will be created.

Installing JavaScript, Android, and iOS Plugins and Packages

Like with any Angular web application, there are external components available to make the development process easier. This applies to NativeScript applications as well.

Most JavaScript packages will work in a NativeScript application as long as there isn't a dependency on the DOM. As previously mentioned, NativeScript being a native framework, doesn't use a web view and has no concept of a DOM. JavaScript libraries can be included via NPM, for example:

```
1 npm install jssha --save
```

The above would install the JavaScript hashing library, jsSHA, to your Angular NativeScript project.

There are native plugins available strictly for NativeScript as well. These are typically plugins that make use of native device features or interface with Android or iOS directly in some fashion.

Take, for example, the NativeScript SQLite plugin:

```
1 tns plugin add nativescript-sqlite
```

The above command will install SQLite functionality for both Android and iOS.

Understanding the Web to NativeScript UI and UX Differences

As a web developer you're probably very familiar with HTML and common design practices for building attractive, responsive, and overall great web applications. With NativeScript we're using Angular and CSS, but we're not using HTML. Instead we are using XML which won't have the same markup tags that you'd find in HTML.

So how do you take your UI and UX skills to mobile?

There are a few things that need to be taken into consideration when designing your mobile application. You need to worry about the screen layout and the screen components.

Planning the NativeScript Page Layout

When designing a web application, common layout components include `<div>` tags and `<table>` tags. Generally if you want a grid of rows and columns you'd use a table and if you wanted a stack of components you'd use a div because it acted as a container.

In NativeScript, you don't have the `<div>` and `<table>` tags, but you have something similar. Instead you have the `<StackLayout>` and `<GridLayout>` tags.

So let's compare web and NativeScript.

Let's say we wanted to contain a bunch of HTML components on a website. You might do something like the following:

```
1 <div>
2   <span>Nic Raboy was here</span>
3   <span>https://www.thepolyglotdeveloper.com</span>
4 </div>
```

To accomplish the same in a NativeScript application, you'd do the following:

```
1 <StackLayout>
2     <Label text="Nic Raboy was here"></Label>
3     <Label text="https://www.thepolyglotdeveloper.com"></Label>
4 </StackLayout>
```

In both the web and NativeScript scenarios you can nest the `<div>` and `<StackLayout>` tags as appropriate to create more component groupings.

The use of grids in NativeScript and on the web are a bit different in structure, but the same in concept. Take the following HTML:

```
1 <table>
2     <tr>
3         <td>Nic</td>
4         <td>Raboy</td>
5     </tr>
6     <tr>
7         <td>Burke</td>
8         <td>Holland</td>
9     </tr>
10    </table>
```

In NativeScript, instead of defining rows and columns with `<tr>` and `<td>` tags something a little different happens:

```
1 <GridLayout rows="auto, auto" columns="*, *" >
2     <Label text="Nic" row="0" col="0"></Label>
3     <Label text="Raboy" row="0" col="1"></Label>
4     <Label text="Burke" row="1" col="0"></Label>
5     <Label text="Holland" row="1" col="1"></Label>
6 </GridLayout>
```

In the above `<GridLayout>` we define that we want two rows that take the height of their child components and two columns that stretch evenly to fill the screen.

But what about a flexbox, commonly found on the web?

When building websites, there is the opportunity to set `<div>` tags, or any other container, to have a CSS property of `display: flex`. This allows websites to behave appropriately for different screen sizes. Nearly the same can be used in NativeScript using the `<FlexboxLayout>` as a container, which is nearly the same as the web's implementation.

Adding UI Components to the Page

When it comes to NativeScript there are many UI components available, each accomplishing something different. For example we already saw how to display static text on the screen through the use of the `<Label>` component, but what other options are available?

There are too many components to name, but some of the common components include buttons, images, lists, and inputs. These are all components that are common to what you'd find in a web application as well.

To add a button to our application, we'd add the following to one of our layouts:

```
1 <Button text="Submit Me" (tap)="myFunc()"></Button>
```

Notice the use of the `(tap)` attribute. This is not specific to the UI component, but more a mixture of Angular and NativeScript. In a web application these events are better known as `(click)` events, however, they both accomplish the same.

To include an image, local or remote, within an application, we can use the `<Image>` tag like so (similar to the `` tag on the web):

```
1 <Image src="https://placehold.it/350x150"></Image>
```

Many mobile applications, like web applications, collect data from users. This data is collected through forms composed of text input fields. To accept text input in a NativeScript application, make use of the `<TextField>` tag like the following:

```
1 <TextField  
2   text="First Name"  
3   [(ngModel)]="firstname"></TextField>
```

The `[(ngModel)]` attribute seen above is identical to that which is found in an Angular web application. It allows the binding of data between the UI and the TypeScript paired to it.

It is often necessary to list large amounts of data within a mobile application. This data is presented in what is called a `<ListView>`. These lists are populated from arrays of strings or objects that are defined within the application TypeScript.

```
1 <ListView [items]="people">
2   <Template let-person="item">
3     <Label [text]="person.firstname"></Label>
4   </Template>
5 </ListView>
```

The above snippet will create a list from an array of objects called `people`. Each object in the array will be called `person` and the `firstname` of each person will be displayed in a list row.

Again, there are many other components available, some not heard of in the land of web development. However, they are all similar by design.

Just like with web components, NativeScript UI components don't look attractive in their vanilla state. They need to be themed and styled with some artistic flair.

Styling Components with CSS

There are a few options available when it comes to giving a NativeScript application a boost in the attractiveness department, just as there is in web design.

NativeScript allows UI components to be styled with a CSS subset. To be clear, most web CSS will work in NativeScript, but not everything. To change the font color of a `<Label>` component, the following is an option:

```
1 .title {
2   color: #cc0000;
3 }
```

The class name can then be applied to the UI component in the same fashion as with HTML.

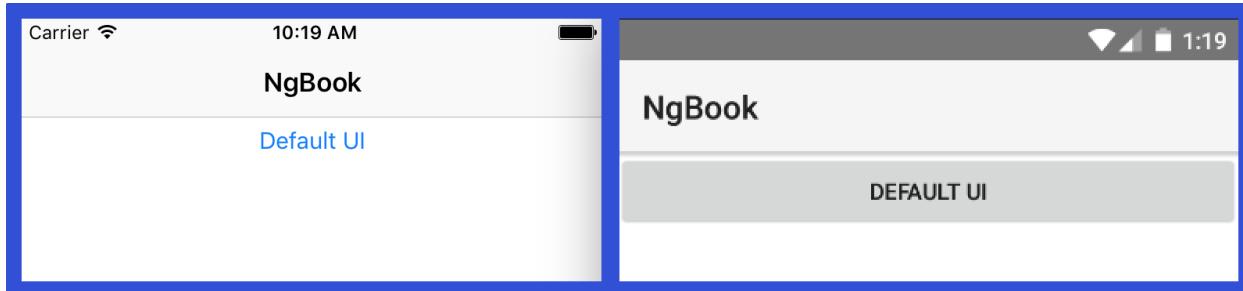
Creating a custom stylesheet isn't the only solution when it comes to making a NativeScript application more attractive. When building a website, there are frameworks such as Bootstrap that were designed to make life easier. We can translate this same concept with NativeScript.

There is what is called NativeScript Theme, which is a package of CSS styles designed to be easily added to any application.

Take the following action bar with button example:

```
1 <ActionBar title="NgBook"></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3   <Button text="Default UI"></Button>
4 </StackLayout>
```

The above code would generate a native, but very plain looking action bar with a very plain looking button. On Android and iOS, it would look like the following:

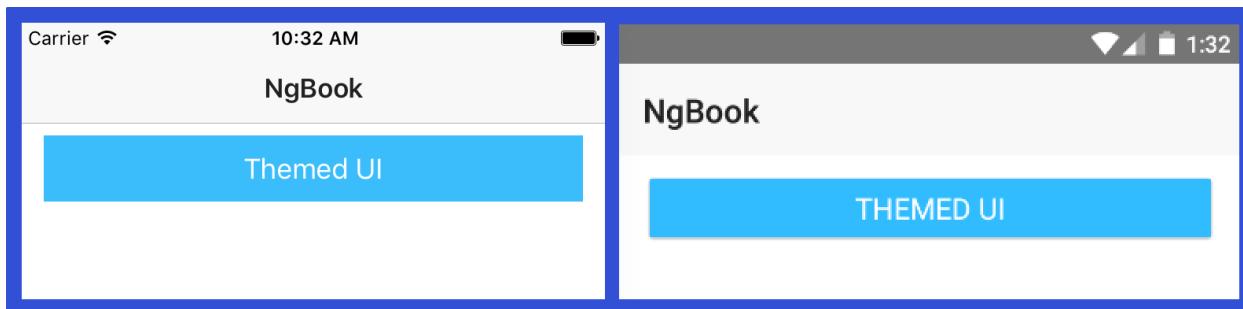


NativeScript Basic CSS

This simple UI can be significantly improved by using NativeScript Theme. For example, take the minor revisions to the code snippet found below:

```
1 <ActionBar title="NgBook" class="action-bar"></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3   <Button text="Themed UI" class="btn btn-primary"></Button>
4 </StackLayout>
```

A few class names were applied to the components giving them a much more pleasant look and feel as demonstrated in the image below:



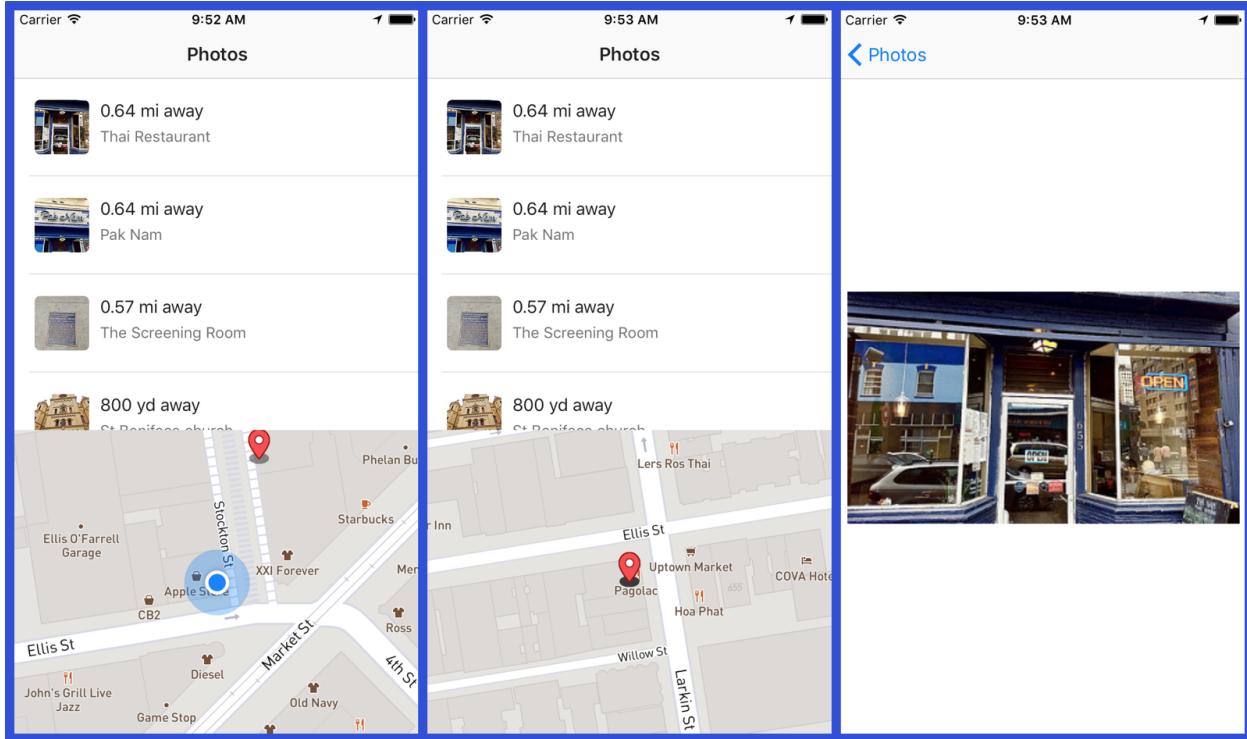
NativeScript Theme CSS

The naming conventions for the theme classes have a similar naming convention to those found in the popular web frameworks.

Developing a Geolocation Based Photo Application

Taking what we know about Angular, web development, and the NativeScript mobile framework, we can apply it towards creating a native and functional mobile application for both iOS and Android.

Much of what comes next will be a review of the Angular skills you already have, but in a mobile example. The example application will use geolocation and the Flickr API to show images that were captured near you.



NativeScript Photos Near Me

The application will have two pages that act as a master-detail interface meaning the first page will list data and the second page will show more information about the data selected from the first page.



The completed project can be found in the sample code under [code/nativescript/photos-near-me](#).

Creating a Fresh NativeScript Project

To get the most out of this demo, it would be good to start with a new project. As a review to what was mentioned previously, a project can be created by executing the following:

```
1 tns create GeoPhotoProject --ng
2 cd GeoPhotoProject
3 tns platform add android
4 tns platform add ios
```

The above commands will create an Angular NativeScript project called **GeoPhotoProject** with the Android and iOS build platforms. To be able to build iOS applications we must be using a Mac with Xcode installed.

The default project template will be a single page application, so we'll have to add more pages and configure the Angular Router.

Creating a Multiple Page Master-Detail Interface

The default project template uses the project's `app/app.component.html` file as the default page. This file will still be valuable in this project, but we're going to create two new pages.

Let's create a few of the new components we'll use by executing the following commands to create necessary files and directories:

```
1 mkdir -p app/components/image-component
2 mkdir -p app/components/imagesList-component
3 touch app/components/image-component/image.component.ts
4 touch app/components/image-component/image.component.html
5 touch app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts
6 touch app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.html
```

We can also create these directories manually in our Explorer window, if the `mkdir` or `touch` commands are not available in our command-line (or if we just feel more comfortable in the UI).

The first page in our application flow will be the `imagesList.component` page to display all the list of photos.

Let's open the project's `app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList-component.ts` file and include the following basic class code:

```
1 import { Component, NgZone } from "@angular/core";
2 import { Router } from "@angular/router";
3
4 @Component({
5   selector: "ImagesListComponent",
6   templateUrl: "components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.html"
7 })
8 export class ImagesListComponent {
9
10   public constructor(private zone: NgZone, private router: Router) { }
11
12 }
```

In the above code the `ImagesListComponent` class is being defined and various Angular components are being imported and injected into the `constructor` method in the usual method.

The UI that goes with the `ImagesListComponent` class is found in the `app/components/imageList-component/imagesList-component.html` file. For now, let's update the file to contain following HTML markup:

```
1 <ActionBar title="Photos" class="action-bar"></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3 </StackLayout>
```

Before we add useful functionality to the first page of our application, let's lay the foundation to the second page and link them together.

Open the project's `app/components/image-component/image-component.ts` file and include the following TypeScript code:

```
1 import { Component, OnInit } from "@angular/core";
2 import { ActivatedRoute } from "@angular/router";
3
4 @Component({
5   templateUrl: "components/image-component/image.component.html"
6 })
7 export class ImageComponent implements OnInit {
8
9   public constructor(private activatedRoute: ActivatedRoute) { }
10
11   public ngOnInit() { }
12 }
```

In the above code the `ImageComponent` class is created and various Angular components are imported and injected in the `constructor` method. The core difference here, as of now, is the `ngOnInit` method which is going to be used to load data after the page loads.

The UI that goes with the TypeScript code is found in the `app/components/image-component/image-component.html` file and it will contain, for now, the following HTML markup:

```
1 <ActionBar></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3 </StackLayout>
```

With the pages available, they need to be brought together for Angular routing. This requires two things to happen. First, the routes need to be defined and second they need to be included in the project's `@NgModule` block.

Let's create an `app/app.routing.ts` file in our project and include the following routing configuration code:

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/app.routing.ts

```
1 import { ImagesListComponent } from "./components/imagesList-component/imagesList";
2 component";
3 import { ImageComponent } from "./components/image-component/image.component";
4
5 export const routes = [
6   { path: "", component: ImagesListComponent },
7   { path: "image-component/:photo_id", component: ImageComponent },
8 ];
9
10 export const navigatableComponents = [
11   ImagesListComponent,
12   ImageComponent
13 ];
```

In the above code, both the `ImagesListComponent` and `ImageComponent` classes were imported. The routes define how to navigate to each of the classes and what data can be passed. The `ImagesListComponent` has an empty path which represents the default, or first page that loads when the application starts. The `ImageComponent` has a path with one URL parameter which represent a piece of data that can be passed from the `ImagesListComponent` page to the `ImageComponent` page.

Without getting too far ahead of ourselves, the `photo_id` represents the photo we wish to load in the second page. This is a piece to the Flickr API.

The `app/app.routing.ts` file needs to be imported and added to the project's `@NgModule` block. In our project's `app/app.module.ts` file and include the following TypeScript code:

```
1 import { NativeScriptModule } from "nativescript-angular/platform";
2 import { NgModule } from "@angular/core";
3 import { NativeScriptFormsModule } from "nativescript-angular/forms";
4 import { NativeScriptHttpModule } from "nativescript-angular/http";
5 import { NativeScriptRouterModule } from "nativescript-angular/router";
6 import { registerElement } from "nativescript-angular/element-registry";
7
8 import { AppComponent } from "./app.component";
9 import { routes, navigatableComponents } from "./app.routing";
10
11 @NgModule({
12   imports: [
13     NativeScriptModule,
14     NativeScriptFormsModule,
15     NativeScriptHttpModule,
16     NativeScriptRouterModule,
17     NativeScriptRouterModule.forRoot(routes)
18   ],
19   declarations: [
20     AppComponent,
21     ...navigatableComponents,
22   ],
23   bootstrap: [AppComponent],
24   providers: []
25 })
26 export class AppModule {}
```

There is more setup in this file than what you'll find in the default. To save us some time we're importing the `NativeScriptFormsModule`, `NativeScriptHttpModule`, and `NativeScriptRouterModule` along with the `routes` and `navigatableComponents` variables that were defined in the previous file.

Each module is added to the `imports` array of the `@NgModule` block and the two page classes found in the `navigatableComponents` variable are added to the `declarations` array.

Even though the application doesn't do much at the moment, it is linked together and ready to go. Adding UI components and functionality will be explored later on.

Finally, we'll need to add a place for our pages to render via our routes. In our main app component in `app/app.component.html`, let's add the `<page-router-outlet>` markup to tell Angular where to render our subroutes. Since we don't have any common views between views, can replace all of the content with this markup:

```
1 <page-router-outlet></page-router-outlet>
```

Creating a Flickr Service for Obtaining Photos and Data

Flickr will be a critical part of this application. Instead of calling the Flickr API directly in each of the pages we wish to use it, the better approach would be to create an Angular service, also known as a provider.

In a Flickr provider we can add logic to query for photos based on latitude and longitude information as well as get information about particular photos.

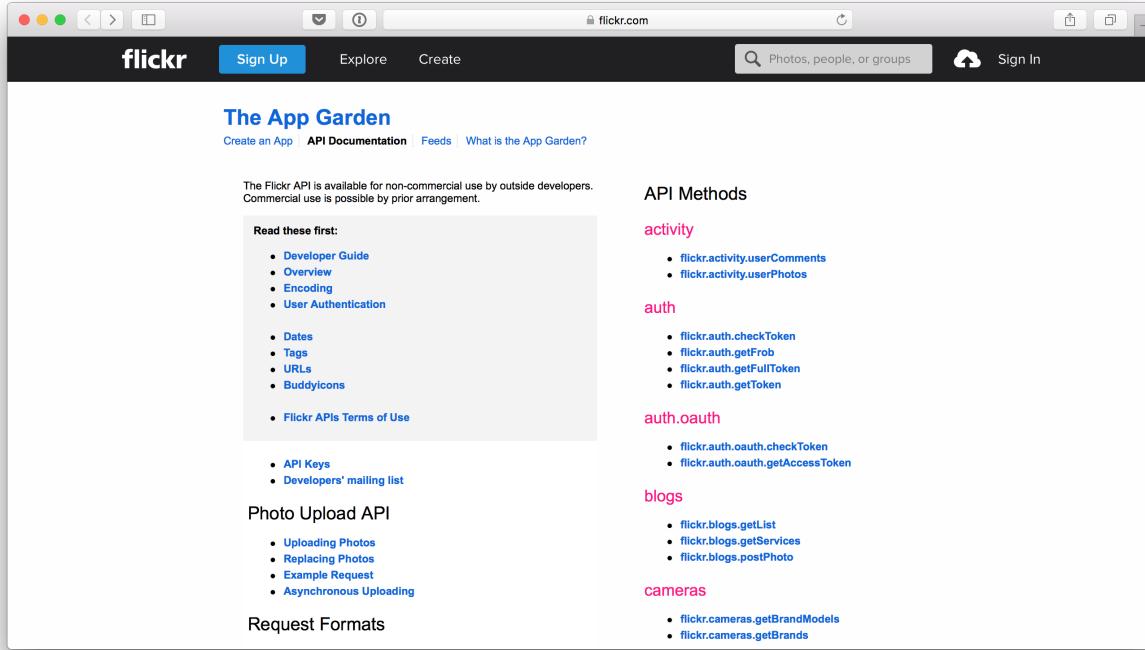
Before designing this provider it is a good idea to create a global configuration file for the application. This will prevent hard coded URL values, amongst other things, in the application.

Let's create a `app/config.ts` file and include the following:

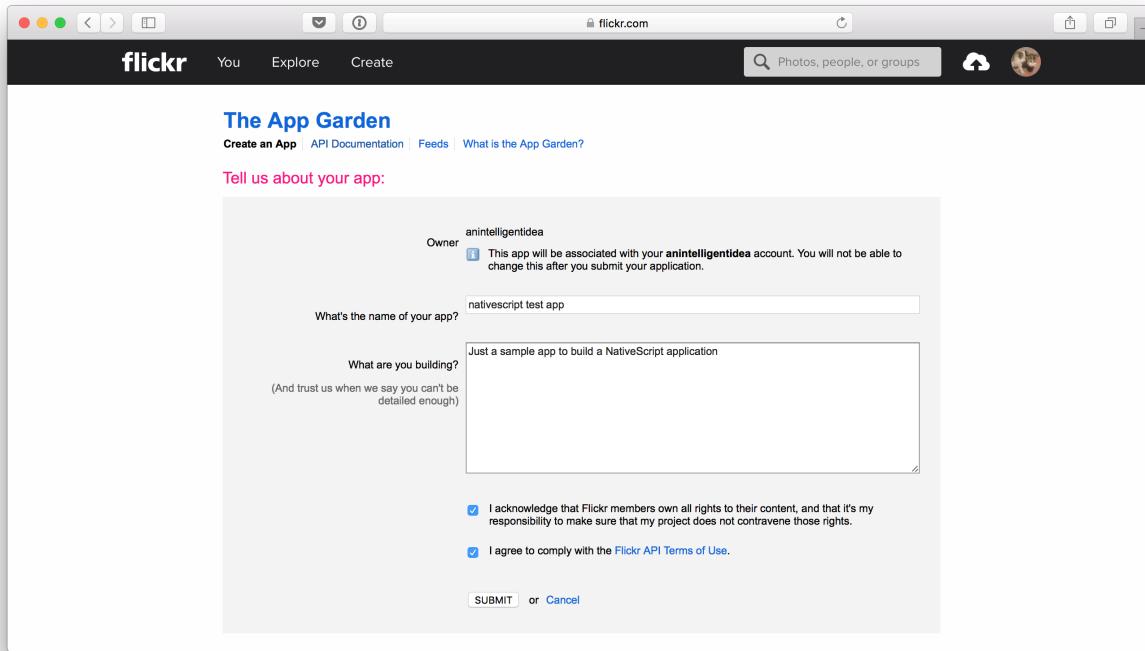
```
1 export const Config = {  
2     Flickr: {  
3         CLIENT_ID: "FLICKR_CLIENT_ID_HERE",  
4         API_URL: "https://api.flickr.com/services/rest/?"  
5     }  
6 };
```

Before using the Flickr API, an account needs to be created to obtain a client id. We'll head to <https://www.flickr.com/services/api/>¹⁵⁹ and create an account.

¹⁵⁹<https://www.flickr.com/services/api/>



Flickr will create a `client_id` that will be unique to our application. The value of the `FLICKR_CLIENT_ID_HERE` in our `app/config.ts` file.



With the configuration file created, we need to define a data model for the Flickr responses. While not absolutely necessary, it does create a more maintainable TypeScript application.

Let's create the `app/models` directory, if it does not already exist:

```
1 mkdir app/models
```

Create an `app/models/getInfoResponse.ts` file and include the following TypeScript code:

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/models/getInfoResponse.ts`

```
1 interface Owner {
2     username: string;
3     realname: string;
4 }
5
6 export class GetInfoResponse {
7     owner: Owner;
8     farm: number;
9     server: number;
10    secret: string;
11    id: number;
12    url: string;
13 }
```

The above represents the data that is returned from the Flickr `flickr.photos.getInfo` RESTful endpoint. The data makes it possible to obtain an image file along with holding information about that image file.

The second model we need is for Flickr search data. Create an `app/models/photosSearchResponse.ts` file with the following TypeScript code:

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/models/photosSearchResponse.ts`

```
1 export class PhotosSearchResponse {
2     id: string;
3     owner: string;
4     secret: string;
5     server: number;
6     title: string;
7     latitude: string;
8     longitude: string;
9     datetaken: string;
10    url_t: string;
11    url_m: string;
12    url_q: string;
13    url_n: string;
14    distance: string;
15
16    constructor() {
17        this.url_n = " ";
18    }
19 }
```

The above model holds useful information such as the photo id, the owner, and geolocation information all useful when discovering images and displaying them on the second page of the application.

With the data models created, we can now create the Flickr service. Let's create a file at `app/services/flickr.service.ts` in the project.

```
1 mkdir app/services
2 touch app/services/flickr.service.ts
```

We'll start with this foundation, in the `flickr.service.ts` file:

```

1 import { Component, Injectable } from "@angular/core";
2 import { Http, Response } from "@angular/http";
3 import { Observable } from "rxjs/Rx";
4 import { Config } from "../app.config";
5 import { PhotosSearchResponse } from "../models/photosSearchResponse";
6 import { GetInfoResponse } from "../models/getInfoResponse";
7 import "rxjs/add/operator/map";
8
9 @Injectable()
10 export class FlickrService {
11
12     public constructor(private http: Http) { }
13
14     public photosSearch(lat: number, lon: number): Observable<PhotosSearchRespon\
15 se[]> { }
16
17     public getPhotoInfo(photoId: number): Observable<GetInfoResponse> { }
18
19 }

```

Both the `photosSearch` and `getPhotoInfo` functions return observables which are streams of data obtained by HTTP requests to the Flickr API.

The `photosSearch` function will take a latitude and longitude and apply it towards Flickr's API like follows:

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/services/flickr.service.ts`

```

14     public photosSearch(lat: number, lon: number): Observable<PhotosSearchRespon\
15 se[]> {
16         let url = `${Config.Flickr.API_URL}method=flickr.photos.search&api_key=$\
17 ${Config.Flickr.CLIENT_ID}&content_type=1&lat=${lat}&lon=${lon}&extras=url_q,geo&\
18 format=json&nojsoncallback=1`;
19
20         return this.http.get(url)
21             .map(response => response.json().photos.photo)
22             .catch(error => Observable.throw(error));
23     }

```

An HTTP request is made per the Flickr API documentation. Using RxJS, the response of the request is transformed using the `map` operator to be of type `PhotosSearchResponse`. If there is an error in the response, it will be caught through the normal http promise error chain. Just like normal Angular, our HTTP request won't execute until the observable is subscribed.

The `getPhotoInfo` method will take a photo id, probably from the result returned in the previous `photosSearch` function:

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/services/flickr.service.ts`

```
22  public getPhotoInfo(photoId: number): Observable<GetInfoResponse> {
23    let url = `${Config.Flickr.API_URL}method=flickr.photos.getInfo&api_key=`
24    `${Config.Flickr.CLIENT_ID}&photo_id=${photoId}&format=json&nojsoncallback=1`;
25
26    return this.http.get(url)
27      .map(response => response.json().photo)
28      .catch(error => Observable.throw(error));
29 }
```

Like with the `photosSearch` function, the `getPhotoInfo` function makes a HTTP request against the Flickr API and parse the response using RxJS.

Before the Flickr provider can be used throughout the application, it must be added to the `@NgModule` block similarly to how the application pages were added.

Inside the project's `app/app.module.ts` file, we need to import the Flickr service must be imported and then add it to the providers array in the `@NgModule` block:

```
1 import { FlickrService } from "./services/flickr.service";
2
3 @NgModule({
4   // ...
5   providers: [FlickrService]
6 })
7 ...
```

The Flickr provider can now be used in the various pages of the application.

Creating a Service for Calculating Device Location and Distance

Up until now, all the TypeScript has been general to Angular and with nothing to do with NativeScript. This geolocation application will have dependence on the location of the Android or iOS device so NativeScript must be used to natively interface with the GPS components.

Because GPS will be used throughout the application, it is a good idea to create an Angular provider for it. This will keep the code clean and maintainable.

Before creating the provider, a JavaScript library must be installed into the project.

```
1 npm install humanize-distance --save
```

The `humanize-distance` library allows us to calculate the distance between two latitude and longitude locations. This will be particularly useful when checking our user's device location versus that of a photo returned from Flickr.

We'll also need to include a nativescript library called `nativescript-geolocation` using the `tns plugin` command:

```
1 tns plugin add nativescript-geolocation
```

Let's create another service called the `geolocation.service`:

```
1 touch app/services/geolocation.service.ts
```

In this new file, let's include the following foundation code:

```
1 import { Injectable } from "@angular/core";
2 import * as geolocation from "nativescript-geolocation";
3 var humanizeDistance = require("humanize-distance");
4
5 @Injectable()
6 export class GeolocationService {
7
8     public latitude: number;
9     public longitude: number;
10
11    public getLocation(): Promise<any> { }
12
13    public getDistanceFrom(latitude: number, longitude: number): string { }
14
15    private _getCurrentLocation(): Promise<any> { }
16
17 }
```

This provider will be injectable into the application pages. It will use the `nativescript-geolocation` plugin which interfaces with native Android and iOS GPS code. The `humanize-distance` library is imported differently because it is JavaScript rather than TypeScript.

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/services/geolocation.service.ts

```
35  private _getCurrentLocation(): Promise<any> {
36      return new Promise(
37          (resolve, reject) => {
38              geolocation.getCurrentLocation({
39                  desiredAccuracy: Accuracy.high,
40                  timeout: 20000
41              })
42              .then(location => {
43
44                  this.latitude = location.latitude;
45                  this.longitude = location.longitude;
46
47                  resolve();
48              })
49              .catch(error => {
50                  reject(error);
51              })
52          }
53      );
54  }
```

Using the geolocation plugin we can get the current longitude and latitude of the device GPS. This is an asynchronous request and must be added to a JavaScript promise or observable. The result of `_getCurrentLocation` will be a promise of any data.

Not all devices have GPS hardware and both Android and iOS require permissions to use location services. Because of this a few checks must be put into place.

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/services/geolocation.service.ts

```
12  public getLocation(): Promise<any> {
13      return new Promise(
14          (resolve, reject) => {
15              if (!geolocation.isEnabled()) {
16                  geolocation.enableLocationRequest(true).then(() => {
17                      this._getCurrentLocation()
18                          .then(resolve)
19                          .catch(reject);
20                  });
21              }
22          else {
```

```
23         this._getCurrentLocation()
24             .then(resolve)
25             .catch(reject);
26     }
27 }
28 );
29 }
```

Using the `getLocation` method a check to see if the geolocation service is enabled is made. If it is not enabled, a request to enable it will be made. Provided that everything checks out, a call to the other `_getCurrentLocation` function will be made. This also applies if the geolocation service is enabled already.

With the device location in hand, a distance can be calculated from a different location, more than likely the picture distance.

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/services/geolocation.service.ts`

```
31     public getDistanceFrom(latitude: number, longitude: number): string {
32         return humanizeDistance({ latitude: latitude, longitude: longitude }, { \
33             latitude: this.latitude, longitude: this.longitude }, 'en-US', 'us');
34     }
```

The `getDistanceFrom` method will use the `humanize-distance` library to get us a better distance format like kilometers, miles, etc.

Like with the Flickr provider, the geolocation provider needs to be added the project's `@NgModule` block. Let's open our project's `app/app.module.ts` file and include the following lines:

```
1 import { GeolocationService } from "./services/geolocation.service";
2
3 @NgModule({
4     // ...
5     providers: [FlickrService, GeolocationService]
6 })
7 ...
```

Essentially, we're importing the provider and adding it to the providers array of the `@NgModule` block. At this point the geolocation provider can be used throughout the application.

Including Mapbox Functionality in the NativeScript Application

As of right now neither of the two application routes have any functionality that is particularly useful. The application has two very useful providers, but they aren't being used yet.

Since geolocation will be used, it makes sense to present a map. There are many options when it comes to maps. Two popular map solutions are Mapbox and Google Maps. For this example Mapbox renders itself the most convenient.

To install Mapbox in a NativeScript application, execute the following:

```
1 tns plugin add nativescript-mapbox
```

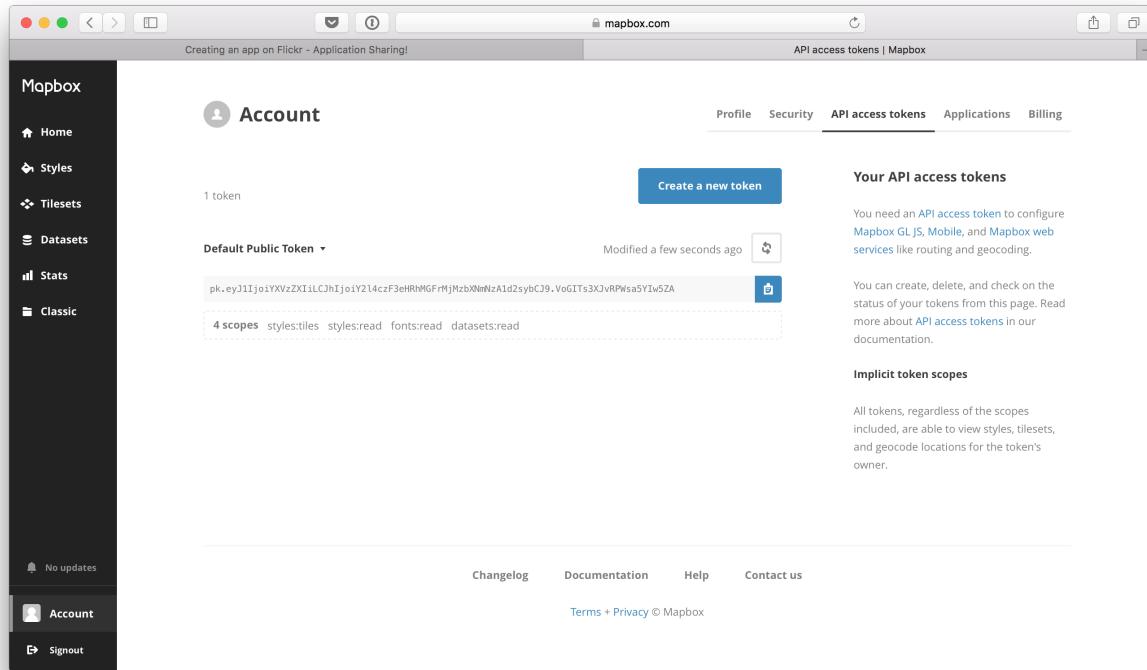
The Mapbox plugin for NativeScript has its own set of available HTML markup tags. To expose these tags in an Angular application, they must be registered in the project's `app/app.module.ts` file like so:

```
1 import { registerElement } from "nativescript-angular/element-registry";
2
3 var map = require("nativescript-mapbox");
4 registerElement("Mapbox", () => map.Mapbox);
```

Once registered, the `<Mapbox>` tag can be used within HTML files. However, Mapbox requires a valid API token in order to be used.

Register for an API token via the [Mapbox Developers Page¹⁶⁰](#).

¹⁶⁰<https://www.mapbox.com/developers/>



Let's store the value of the mapbox access_token open the project's `app/config.js` file. This is the same file where we added the Flickr API information. Modify this file to look like the following:

```
1 export const Config = {
2     Flickr: {
3         CLIENT_ID: "FLICKR_CLIENT_ID_HERE",
4         API_URL: "https://api.flickr.com/services/rest/?"
5     },
6     MapBox: {
7         ACCESS_TOKEN: "MAPBOX_ACCESS_TOKEN_HERE"
8     }
9 };
```

The Mapbox API token will be obtained similarly to how the Flickr API token was obtained within the application. While Mapbox hasn't been added to the UI or the page logic, it is not able to be added.

Implementing the First Page of the Geolocation Application

There was a lot of preparation that went into this project so far, but each of the pages are now ready to be crafted.

Open the `app/components/imageList-component/imageList.component.ts` file that was created earlier. We added foundation, but now it is time to finish it with functional logic.

```
1 import { Component, NgZone } from "@angular/core";
2 import { FlickrService } from "../../services/flickr.service";
3 import { PhotosSearchResponse } from "../../models/photosSearchResponse";
4 import { Router } from "@angular/router";
5 import { GeolocationService } from "../../services/geolocation.service";
6 import { Config } from "../../app.config";
7
8 @Component({
9   selector: "ImagesListComponent",
10  templateUrl: "components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.html"
11 })
12 export class ImagesListComponent {
13
14   private mapbox: any;
15   public mapboxKey: string;
16   public photos: PhotosSearchResponse[];
17
18   public constructor(private flickrService: FlickrService, private geolocation\
19 Service: GeolocationService, private zone: NgZone, private router: Router) { }
20
21   public onMapReady(args) { }
22
23   public dropMarkers() { }
24
25   public centerMap(args: any) { }
26
27   public showPhoto(args: any) { }
28
29   public loadPhotos() { }
30
31 }
```

In the above TypeScript file, each of the services and models that were previously created are now being imported into the page. The `ImagesListComponent` has a private variable which will hold the Mapbox and several public variables that will be bound to the UI.

In the constructor method each of the two providers are injected so they can be used throughout the current page of the application.

In a typical Angular application an `OnInit` would be used after the constructor method has executed. To prevent a race condition, this page will not make use of it. Instead, an `onMapReady`

method will be created and used via the HTML markup. In other words, when the Mapbox thinks it's ready, this `onMapReady` method will trigger.

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts`

```
22  public onMapReady(args) {
23      this.mapbox = args.map;
24      this.geolocationService.getLocation().then(() => {
25          this.loadPhotos().subscribe(
26              photos => {
27                  this.photos = photos.map((photo) => {
28                      photo.distance = this.geolocationService.getDistanceFrom(
29                          parseFloat(photo.latitude),
30                          parseFloat(photo.longitude));
31                      return photo;
32                  });
33                  this.dropMarkers();
34                  this.mapbox.setCenter({
35                      lat: this.geolocationService.latitude,
36                      lng: this.geolocationService.longitude,
37                      animated: true
38                  });
39              },
40              error => console.log(error));
41      });
42  }
```

Once triggered, the `mapbox` variable will be set with the current Mapbox. Using the geolocation service, the device GPS location is obtained and Flickr photos near the location are queried. A humanized distance is calculated for each of the photos retrieved from the API call.

The photos obtained from the Flickr API are stored in the `photos` array at which point they are placed as markers on the map using the `dropMarkers` method. At the end of the initialization period the map is centered on the devices location.

The `dropMarkers` method called from the `onMapReady` looks like the following:

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts

```
44  public dropMarkers() {
45      let markers = this.photos.map((photo: PhotosSearchResponse, index: number\
46 r) => {
47          return {
48              lat: photo.latitude,
49              lng: photo.longitude,
50              onTap: () => {
51                  this.zone.run(() => {
52                      this.showPhoto({ index: index });
53                  });
54              }
55          }
56      });
57      this.mapbox.addMarkers(markers);
58  }
```

In the above method, the photos array is recreated through a JavaScript map and stored as markers. The new objects found in the array include the longitude and latitude of the photo and a tap event, showPhoto, which will navigate to the next page. To keep everything in sync, the showPhoto method must be added within the Angular zone.

The markers array is added to the Mapbox for display on the soon to be created map component.

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts

```
68  public showPhoto(args: any) {
69      let photo = this.photos[args.index];
70      this.router.navigate(["/image-component", photo.id]);
71  }
```

The route to the second page of the application requires a photo id. This information is obtained from a specific photo that was selected. Remember, the photo information was added within the dropMarkers method.

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts

```
73  public loadPhotos() {
74      return this.flickrService.photosSearch(
75          this.geolocationService.latitude,
76          this.geolocationService.longitude);
77  }
```

The `loadPhotos` method was used in the `onMapReady` method for subscribing to the Flickr observable. It was created to make the lines of the file shorter and easier to read.

The final method of the first application page, `centerMap`, will center the map on a particular photo:

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/imagesList-component/imagesList.component.ts

```
59  public centerMap(args: any) {
60      let photo = this.photos[args.index];
61      this.mapbox.setCenter({
62          lat: parseFloat(photo.latitude),
63          lng: parseFloat(photo.longitude),
64          animated: false
65      });
66  }
```

So what does the UI markup look like for the TypeScript logic that was just implemented? Open the project's `app/components/imageList-component/imageList.component.html` file. The UI is composed of two vertical sections, a list of pictures which resides on the upper level and a map which resides on the lower level.

```
1 <ActionBar title="Photos" class="action-bar"></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3     <GridLayout columns="*" rows="*, 280">
4         <ListView [items]="photos" row="0" col="0" class="list-group" (itemTap)=\
5 "centerMap($event)">
6             </ListView>
7             <ContentView row="1" col="0">
8                 </ContentView>
9             </GridLayout>
10    </StackLayout>
```

In the above markup a `GridLayout` will allow for vertical sections, hence the two row values. The asterisk in the `columns` means that each row will take the full width of the screen. Since there is an

asterisk and numeric value in the rows, the bottom row will have a height of 280 and the top row will take all remaining part of the screen.

The `ListView` is setup to iterate over each element in the `public photos` array. When a row is tapped, the `centerMap` method is called to position the map over the photo that was clicked. The `ContentView` is the second row and it will hold the map.

The `ListView` is incomplete though. It should really look like the following:

```
1 <ListView [items]="photos" row="0" col="0" class="list-group" (itemTap)="centerM\
2 ap($event)">
3   <template let-item="item">
4     <GridLayout columns="auto, *" rows="auto" class="list-group-item">
5       <Image [src]="item.url_q" width="50" height="50" col="0" class="thum\
6 b img-rounded"></Image>
7       <StackLayout row="0" col="1">
8         <Label [text]="item.distance + ' away'" class="list-group-item-h\
9 eading"></Label>
10        <Label [text]="item.title" class="list-group-item-text" textWrap\
11 = "true"></Label>
12      </StackLayout>
13    </GridLayout>
14  </template>
15 </ListView>
```

Each row of the `ListView` will have two columns and an automatically sized row height. The first column of the list row will be the image returned from the Flickr API and the second column will have stacked text which includes the photo title and the humanized distance.

```
1 <ContentView row="1" col="0">
2   <Mapbox
3     accessToken="{{ mapboxKey }}"
4     mapStyle="streets"
5     zoomLevel="17"
6     hideLogo="true"
7     showUserLocation="true"
8     (mapReady)="onMapReady($event)">
9   </Mapbox>
10 </ContentView>
```

The `Mapbox` calls the `onMapReady` function and uses the `mapboxKey` found in the configuration file. Other default properties are used as well.

The first, and default, page of the application is now complete. However, a page for showing the picture still needs to be completed. This is the page navigated to after tapping a marker on the map.

Implementing the Second Page of the Geolocation Application

The second and final page of the application will show an image based on what was selected in the previous page. Open the project's `app/components/image-component/image.component.ts` file and include the following TypeScript code:

```
1 import { Component, OnInit } from "@angular/core";
2 import { ActivatedRoute } from "@angular/router";
3 import { FlickrService } from "../../services/flickr.service";
4
5 @Component({
6   templateUrl: "components/image-component/image.component.html"
7 })
8 export class ImageComponent implements OnInit {
9
10   public url: string;
11
12   public constructor(private activatedRoute: ActivatedRoute, private flickrService: FlickrService) { }
13
14   public ngOnInit() { }
15
16   public getPhoto(photoId: number) { }
17
18 }
19 }
```

The Flickr provider was imported to what was created previously and it is injected into the constructor method. The `url` variable will hold the image URL that will be bound to and presented in the UI.

`code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/image-component/image.component.ts`

```
14   public ngOnInit() {
15     this.activatedRoute.params.subscribe(params => {
16       let photoId = params["photo_id"];
17       this.getPhoto(photoId);
18     });
19   }
```

When this page is initialized, the `ngOnInit` method will obtain the URL parameter and pass it to the `getPhoto` message.

code/nativescript/photos-near-me/app/components/image-component/image.component.ts

```
21  public getPhoto(photoId: number) {
22      this.flickrService.getPhotoInfo(photoId).subscribe(
23          photo => {
24              this.url = `https://farm${photo.farm}.staticflickr.com/${photo.s\
25 erver}/${photo.id}_${photo.secret}_n.jpg`;
26          },
27          error => console.log(error)
28      );
29  }
```

After making a request to the Flickr API with the Flickr provider, the public `url` variable will be filled.

With the logic in place, open the project's `app/components/image-component/image-component.html` file and include the following markup:

```
1 <ActionBar></ActionBar>
2 <StackLayout>
3     <Image [src]="url" width="360" height="360"></Image>
4 </StackLayout>
```

The `Image` tag will present an image based on the `url` that was populated in the TypeScript code. Within the action bar, there will be a back button to navigate to the previous page.

Try it out!

Now that we have the basic structure for our app in place, try running:

```
1 tns livesync android --emulator --watch
2 # or
3 tns livesync ios --emulator --watch
```

When you're ready to create a build call:

```
1 tns build android
2 # or
3 tns build ios
```

NativeScript for Angular Developers

NativeScript makes it very easy for Angular developers to develop native mobile applications that use native device features, SDKs, and concepts. As technology evolves for the best, the need to know Java or Objective-C is dwindling in favor of these cross platform mobile development frameworks.

Obviously there is a lot more to learn about using NativeScript than we can cover in just this first chapter. Checkout these resources:

- [Official NativeScript Site¹⁶¹](https://www.nativescript.org/)
- [Official NativeScript Docs¹⁶²](https://docs.nativescript.org/)
- [NativeScript App Examples¹⁶³](https://www.nativescript.org/app-samples-with-code)
- [NativeScript on StackOverflow¹⁶⁴](http://stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/nativescript)

¹⁶¹<https://www.nativescript.org/>

¹⁶²<https://docs.nativescript.org/>

¹⁶³<https://www.nativescript.org/app-samples-with-code>

¹⁶⁴<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/nativescript>

Changelog

This document highlights the changes for each version of ng-book. You can find this document on the web at: <https://www.ng-book.com/2/p/Changelog/>¹⁶⁵.

Be sure to check there to ensure that you have the latest revision.

Revision 53 - 2017-03-01

- Added a section on deployment to the first chapter
- Updated “How Angular Works” to use `@angular/cli`
- Updated `@angular/cli` to version `1.0.0-rc.0`
- Added a note about how to run the examples in “Built-in Directives”
- Updated “How to Read This Book” with a note about each project’s `README.md`

Revision 52 - 2017-02-22

- Added “How to Read This Book”
- Updated `angular-cli` to use `@angular/cli` package
- Clarity updates to the first chapter
- Book updated to `angular-2.4.8`

Revision 51 - 2017-02-14

Fixes code formatting bugs in the first chapter

Revision 50 - 2017-02-10

Book updated to `angular-2.4.7`

Revision 49 - 2017-01-18

Minor fixes

Revision 48 - 2017-01-13

Added chapter on building native mobile apps with NativeScript and Angular

¹⁶⁵<https://www.ng-book.com/2/p/Changelog/>

Revision 47 - 2017-01-06

Fixes missing images in Built-in Directives

Revision 46 - 2017-01-03

Book up to date with angular-2.4.0

- Added Protractor E2E tests for every project
- “Routing”, Fixed a child route pathMatch ambiguity

Revision 45 - 2016-12-05

Book up to date with angular-2.3.0-rc.0

Revision 44 - 2016-11-17

Fixed typos in chapters:

- “Writing your First Angular 2 Web Application”, reported by Mike B., Steve A., Terry W., Alessandro C., Andrew Blair
- “TypeScript”, reported by Kevin D.
- “How Angular Works”, reported by Kevin D. and Jason T.
- “Forms”, reported by Kevin D.
- “HTTP”, reported by Kevin D.
- “Routing”, reported by Kevin D.
- “Advanced Components”, reported by Kevin D.
- “Built-in Directives”, reported by Jason T. and Farooq A.
- “Dependency Injection”, reported by Kevin D.
- “Testing”, reported by Kevin D.
- “Converting an Angular 1 App to Angular 2”, reported by Kevin D.

Revision 43 - 2016-11-08

Book up to date with angular-2.2.0-rc.0

Revision 42 - 2016-10-14

Entire book up to date with angular-2.1.0 Bonus video content and sample app completed (premium package users)

- Chapter “Built-in Components” renamed to “Built-in Directives”
- Service dependencies made private, reported by Jamie B.

Fixed typos and clarified in chapters:

- “How Angular Works”, reported by kbiesbrock
- “Converting to ng2”, reported by Dilip S.
- “Built-in Directives”, reported by Pieris C.
- “Dependency Injection”, reported by Tim P.
- “Routing”, reported by Kashyap M
- “Advanced Components”, reported by Kashyap M., by Justin B. and many by Németh T.

Revision 41 - 2016-09-28

Rewrote the first chapter to use `ng-cli` and the new styleguide.

- “First App” Chapter:
 - Split files into style-guide friendly templates and components
 - Fixed a bunch of typos reported by David S., and Luis H., Jan L., Aaron Spilman
- “HTTP” Chapter - fixed typos - Thanks Jim H.!

Revision 40 - 2016-09-20

Entire book up to date with angular-2.0.0 final!

Revision 39 - 2016-09-03

Entire book up to date with angular-2.0.0-rc.6

Revision 38 - 2016-08-29

Entire book up to date with angular-2.0.0-rc.5

- Entire book changes:
 - Upgraded every example to use NgModules
 - Upgraded tests to use TestBuilder

Revision 37 - 2016-08-02

New chapter: Intermediate Redux in Angular 2!

Bugfixes:

- `ts-cli` -> `ts-node` - Thanks Tim. P

Revision 36 - 2016-07-20

New chapter: Redux in TypeScript and Angular 2!

- Re-ordered chapters

Revision 35 - 2016-06-30

Book and code up to date with `angular-2.0.0-rc.4`

- Routing upgraded to new router
- Forms upgraded to new forms library
- Testing chapter updated to match new routing and forms

Revision 34 - 2016-06-15

Book and code up to date with `angular-2.0.0-rc.2`

Note: still using `router-deprecated` at this time.

Revision 33 - 2016-05-11

New chapter: Dependency Injection!

Revision 32 - 2016-05-06

Entire book up to date with `angular-2.0.0-rc.1`!

- Entire book changes:
 - Renamed all imports to match the new packages (see below)
 - Upgrade to `typings` (removes all `tsd` references)
 - Directive local variables now use `let` instead of `#`. E.g. `*ngFor="#item in items"` becomes `*ngFor="let item in items"`

- In projects that use System.js, create an external file for configuration (instead of writing it in the index.html <script> tags)
- “Testing” Chapter:
 - injectAsync has been removed. Instead you use async and inject together, both come from @angular/core/testing
- “Advanced Components” Chapter:
 - In ngBookRepeat, when creating a child view manually with createEmbeddedView, the context is passed as the second argument (instead of calling setLocal).

Details:

Renamed libraries:

- angular2/core -> @angular/core
- angular2/compiler -> @angular/compiler
- angular2/common -> @angular/common
- angular2/platform/common -> @angular/common
- angular2/common_dom -> @angular/common
- angular2/platform/browser -> @angular/platform-browser-dynamic
- angular2/platform/server -> @angular/platform-server
- angular2/testing -> @angular/core/testing
- angular2/upgrade -> @angular/upgrade
- angular2/http -> @angular/http
- angular2/router -> @angular/router
- angular2/platform/testing/browser -> @angular/platform-browser-dynamic/testing

Revision 31 - 2016-04-28

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.16

Revision 30 - 2016-04-20

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.15

Revision 29 - 2016-04-08

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.14

Revision 28 - 2016-04-01

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.13 - (no joke!)

Revision 27 - 2016-03-25

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.12

Revision 26 - 2016-03-24

Advanced Components chapter added!

Revision 25 - 2016-03-21

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.11

Note: angular-2.0.0-beta.10 skipped because the release had a couple of bugs.

Revision 24 - 2016-03-10

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.9

Revision 23 - 2016-03-04

All chapters up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.8

- “Routing” Chapter
 - Fixed a few typos - Németh T.
 - Fixed path to nested routes description - Dante D.
- “First App” Chapter
 - Fixed typos - Luca F.
 - Removed unnecessary import of NgFor - Neufeld M.
- “Forms” Chapter
 - Typos - Miha Z., Németh T.
- “How Angular Works” Chapter
 - Typos - Koen R., Jeremy T., Németh T.
- “TypeScript” Chapter
 - Typos - Németh T.
- “Data Architecture with RxJS” Chapter
 - Typos - Németh T.
- “HTTP” Chapter
 - Typos - Németh T.
- “Testing” Chapter
 - Typos - Németh T.

Revision 22 - 2016-02-24

- r20 & beta.6 introduced some bugs regarding the typescript compiler and new typing files that were required to be included. This revision fixes those bugs
- Added a note about how to deal with the error: `error TS2307: Cannot find module 'angular2/platform/browser'`
- “First App” Chapter - added a tiny note about the typings references
- Updated all non-webpack examples to have a `clean` npm command as well as change the `tsconfig.json` to include the `app.ts` when appropriate

Revision 21 - 2016-02-20

All chapters up to date with `angular-2.0.0-beta.7`

Revision 20 - 2016-02-11

All chapters up to date with `angular-2.0.0-beta.6` (see note below)

- “How Angular Works” Chapter
 - Fixed Typo. Thanks @AndreaMiotto
 - Added missing brackets in attributes on `MyComponent` - Thanks Németh T.
- “Forms” Chapter
 - Grammar fix - Németh T.
 - Added missing line of code in “Field coloring” - Németh T.
- “RxJs” Chapters
 - Grammar fix - Németh T.
- Note: beta.4 and beta.5 were replaced with beta.6. See the angular 2 CHANGELOG¹⁶⁶

Revision 19 - 2016-02-04

All chapters up to date with `angular-2.0.0-beta.3`

Revision 18 - 2016-01-29

All chapters up to date with `angular-2.0.0-beta.2`

Revision 17 - 2016-01-28

- Added Testing Chapter

¹⁶⁶<https://github.com/angular/angular/blob/master/CHANGELOG.md#200-beta5-2016-02-10>

Revision 16 - 2016-01-14

- Added “How to Convert ng1 App to ng2” Chapter
- All chapters now up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.1
- All package.json files pinned to specific versions
- “HTTP” Chapter
 - Fixed typo - Thanks Ole S!
- “Built-in Components” Chapter
 - Fixed ngIf typo

Revision 15 - 2016-01-07

All chapters now up to date with angular-2.0.0-beta.0!

- “RxJS” Chapters
 - Updated to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
- “HTTP” Chapter
 - Updated to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
- Fixed line numbers for code that loads from files to match the line numbers on file
- “How Angular Works” Chapter - Fixed swapped LHS / RHS language. - Thanks, Miroslav J.

Revision 14 - 2015-12-23

- “First App” Chapter
 - Fixed typo on hello-world @Component - Thanks Matt D.
 - Fixed typescript dependency in hello_world package.json
- “Forms Chapter”
 - Updated to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
- “How Angular Works Chapter”
 - Significant rewrite to make it clearer
 - Updated to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
- “Routing Chapter”
 - Significant rewrite to make it clearer
 - Updated to angular-2.0.0-beta.0

Revision 13 - 2015-12-17

Angular 2 beta.0 is out!

- “First App” Chapter
 - Updated reddit app to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
 - Updated hello_world app to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
 - Added Semantic UI¹⁶⁷ styles
- “Built-in Components” Chapter
 - Updated built-in directives sample apps to angular-2.0.0-beta.0
 - Added Semantic UI

Revision 12 - 2015-11-16

- “Routing” Chapter
 - Fixed ROUTER_DIRECTIVES typo - Wayne R.
- “First App” Chapter
 - Updated example to angular-2.0.0-alpha-46
 - Fixed some bolding around NgFor to clarify the code example - Henrique M.
 - Fixed Duplicate identifier 'Promise'. errors due to a bad tsconfig.json in angular2-reddit-base/ - Todd F.
 - Fixed language typos caught by Steffen G.
 - “Forms” Chapter
 - * Updated example to angular-2.0.0-alpha-46
 - Fixes the method of subscribing to Observables in the “Form with Events” section
 - * Fixed a few typos and language issues - Christopher C., Travis P.
- “TypeScript” Chapter
 - * Fixed some unclear language about enum - Frede H.
- “Built-in Components” Chapter
 - * Fixed a typo where [class] needed to be [ng-class] - Neal B.
- “How Angular Works” Chapter
 - * Fixed language typos - Henrique M.

Revision 11 - 2015-11-09

- Fixed explanation of TypeScript benefits - Thanks Don H!
- Fixed tons of typos found by Wayne R - Thanks Wayne!
- “How Angular Works” Chapter

¹⁶⁷<http://semantic-ui.com>

- Fixed typos - Jegor U.
- Converted a component to use inputs/outputs - Jegor U.
- Fixed number to myNumber typo - Wayne R.
- “Built-in Components” Chapter
 - Fixed language typos - Wayne R., Jek C., Jegor U.
 - Added a tip-box explaining object keys with dashes - Wayne R.
 - Use controller view value for ng-style color instead of the form field value - Wayne R.
- “Forms” Chapter
 - Fixed language typos - Wayne R., Jegor U.
- “Data Architecture in Angular 2”
 - Was accidentally part of “Forms” and is now promoted to an introductory mini-chapter - Wayne R.
- “RxJS Pt 1.” Chapter
 - Fixed language typos - Wayne R.
- “RxJS Pt 2.” Chapter
 - Fixed Unicode problem - Birk S.
 - Clarified language around combineLatest return value - Birk S.
- “TypeScript” Chapter
 - Fixed language typo - Travis P., Don H.
- “Routing” Chapter
 - Fixed language typos - Jegor U., Birk S.
- “First App” Chapter
 - Fixed link to ng_for - Mickey V.
- “HTTP” Chapter
 - Fixed language typos - Birk S.
 - Clarified ElementRef role in YouTubeSearchComponent
 - Fixed link to RequestOptions - Birk S.

Revision 10 - 2015-10-30

- Upgraded Writing your First Angular2 Web Application chapter to angular-2.0.0-alpha.44
- Upgraded Routing chapter to angular-2.0.0-alpha.44
- Fixed ‘pages#about’ on the rails route example. - Thanks Rob Y!

Revision 9 - 2015-10-15

- Added Routing Chapter

Revision 8 - 2015-10-08

- Upgraded chapters 1-5 to angular-2.0.0-alpha.39
- properties and events renamed to inputs and outputs
- Fixed an issue in the First App chapter that said #newtitle bound to the value of the input (it's really binding to the Control object) - Danny L
- CSSClass renamed to NgClass
- ng-non-bindable is now built-in so you don't need to inject it as a directive
- Updated the forms chapter as there were several changes to the forms API
- Fixed NgFor source url in First App chapter - Frede H.

Revision 7 - 2015-09-23

- Added HTTP Chapter
- Fixed For -> NgFor typo - Sanjay S.

Revision 6 - 2015-08-28

- Added RxJS Chapter Data Architecture with Observables - Part 1 : Services
- Added RxJS Chapter Data Architecture with Observables - Part 2 : View Components

Revision 5

- Finished built-in components chapter

Revision 4

- Added built-in components chapter draft
- Added a warning about linewrapping of long URLs - Thanks Kevin B!
- Explained how annotations are bound to components on the First App chapter - thanks Richard M. and others
- Copy typo fixes - thanks Richard M.!
- Fixed TypeScript using integer instead of number - Richard M. and Roel V.
- Fixed "var nate =" listings require a comma to be a valid JS object - thanks Roel V.
- Renamed a few "For" directive mentions to "NgFor" - thanks Richard M.
- Fixed type on "RedditArticle" - thanks Richard M.
- Explained how annotations are bound to components on the First App chapter (thanks Richard M. and others)
- Typos and grammar improvements on First App chapter (thanks Kevin B)
- Typos and code improvements on How Angular Works (thanks Roel V.)

Revision 3

- Added forms chapter

Revision 2

- Updated `For` directive to `NgFor` accross all chapters and examples (templates changed from `*for=` to `*ng-for=` as well)
- Changed the suggested static web server from `http-server` to `live-server` so the execution command is valid both in OSX/Linux and Windows
- Changed the `@Component`'s `properties` property to match the latest AngularJS 2 format
- Updated `angular2.dev.js` bundle to latest version for all examples
- Updated `typings` folder with latest version for all examples

Revision 1

Initial version of the book